

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

Food and Drug Administration

21 CFR Parts 1, 16, 106, 110, 114, 117, 120, 123, 129, 179, and 211

[Docket No. FDA-2011-N-0920]

RIN 0910-AG36

Current Good Manufacturing Practice and Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls  
for Human Food

AGENCY: Food and Drug Administration, HHS.

ACTION: Proposed rule.

SUMMARY: The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) is proposing to amend its regulation for Current Good Manufacturing Practice In Manufacturing, Packing, or Holding Human Food (CGMPs) to modernize it and to add requirements for domestic and foreign facilities that are required to register under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the FD&C Act) to establish and implement hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls for human food. FDA also is proposing to revise certain definitions in FDA's current regulation for Registration of Food Facilities to clarify the scope of the exemption from registration requirements provided by the FD&C Act for "farms." FDA is taking this action as part of its announced initiative to revisit the CGMPs since they were last revised in 1986 and to implement new statutory provisions in the FD&C Act. The proposed rule is intended to build a food safety system for the future that makes modern, science-, and risk-based preventive controls the norm across all sectors of the food system.

DATES: Submit either electronic or written comments on the proposed rule by [INSERT DATE 120 DAYS AFTER DATE OF PUBLICATION IN THE FEDERAL REGISTER]. Submit comments on information collection issues under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 by [INSERT DATE 30 DAYS AFTER DATE OF PUBLICATION IN THE FEDERAL REGISTER], (see the “Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995” section of this document).

ADDRESSES: You may submit comments, identified by Docket No. FDA-2011-N-0920 and/or RIN 0910-AG36, by any of the following methods, except that comments on information collection issues under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 must be submitted to the Office of Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget (OMB) (see the “Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995” section of this document).

#### Electronic Submissions

Submit electronic comments in the following way:

- Federal eRulemaking Portal: <http://www.regulations.gov>. Follow the instructions for submitting comments.

#### Written Submissions

Submit written submissions in the following ways:

- FAX: 301-827-6870.
- Mail/Hand delivery/Courier (for paper or CD-ROM submissions): Division of Dockets Management (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852.

Instructions: All submissions received must include the Agency name and Docket No. for this rulemaking. All comments received may be posted without change to <http://www.regulations.gov>, including any personal information provided. For additional

information on submitting comments, see the “Comments” heading of the SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION section of this document.

Docket: For access to the docket to read background documents or comments received, go to <http://www.regulations.gov> and insert the docket number, found in brackets in the heading of this document, into the “Search” box and follow the prompts and/or go to the Division of Dockets Management, 5630 Fishers Lane, rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:

With regard to the proposed rule:

Jenny Scott,  
Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (HFS-300),  
Food and Drug Administration,  
5100 Paint Branch Pkwy.,  
College Park, MD 20740,  
240-402-2166.

With regard to the information collection:

Domini Bean,  
Office of Information Management,  
Food and Drug Administration,  
1350 Picard Dr.,  
PI50-400T,  
Rockville, MD 20850,  
[domini.bean@fda.hhs.gov](mailto:domini.bean@fda.hhs.gov).

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

## Table of Contents

### Executive Summary

Purpose and Coverage of the Proposed Rule

Summary of the Major Provisions of the Proposed Rule

Costs and Benefits

### I. Introduction

### II. Background

A. Regulatory Framework for Human Food

B. FDA Food Safety Modernization Act

C. Preventive Controls and Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP)

### Systems

D. Food Safety Problems Associated With Manufacturing, Processing, Packing, and

### Holding Food for Human Consumption

E. The Role of Testing as a Verification Measure in a Food Safety System

F. The Role of Supplier Approval and Verification Programs in a Food Safety System

### III. Legal Authority

A. Changes to Current 21 CFR Part 1, Subparts H, I, and J

B. Changes to Current 21 CFR Part 110

C. Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

### IV. Public Meeting and Preliminary Stakeholder Comments

A. Introduction

B. Comments on Allergen Control

C. Comments on Accredited Laboratories

D. Comments on Environmental Monitoring and Product Testing

E. Comments on Flexibility of Regulations and Guidance

F. Comments on Food Defense

G. Comments on Guidance and Outreach

H. Comments on Preventive Controls

I. Comments on Small and Very Small Business

J. Comments on Submission of Food Safety Plan to FDA

K. Comments on Modified Requirements for Warehouses

V. Placement of Regulatory Requirements

VI. Highlights of the Proposed Rule

A. Overview

B. Proposed Revisions to 21 CFR Part 1, Subparts H, I, and J

C. Proposed Revisions to General Provisions of 21 CFR Part 110 (Part 110) (Proposed Part 117, Subpart A)

D. Proposed Revisions to Current Good Manufacturing Practice Requirements of Part 110 (Proposed Part 117, Subpart B)

E. Proposed New Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls (Proposed Part 117, Subpart C)

F. Proposed New Provisions for Modified Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart D)

G. Proposed New Provisions for Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility (Proposed Part 117, Subpart E)

H. Proposed New Recordkeeping Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart F)

VII. Compliance Dates

## VIII. Rulemaking Required by Section 103(c) of FSMA: On-Farm Activities

### A. Section 103(c) of FSMA

B. The Current Legal and Regulatory Framework Under Sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act and Regulations Implementing Section 415 of the FD&C Act

### C. Why This Rulemaking Is Needed

D. Organizing Principles for How the Status of a Food As a Raw Agricultural Commodity or As a Processed Food Affects the Requirements Applicable to a Farm Under Sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act

### E. Proposed Revisions to 21 CFR Part 1

### F. Impact of Proposed Revisions to the Definitions in 21 CFR Part 1

### G. Qualitative Risk Assessment of On-Farm Activities Outside of the Farm Definition

### H. Results of the Qualitative Risk Assessment

I. Tentative Conclusions Regarding On-Farm Low-Risk Activity/Food Combinations Under Section 418 of the FD&C Act

J. Tentative Conclusions Regarding On-Farm Low-Risk Activity/Food Combinations Under Section 421 of the FD&C Act

## IX. Proposed General Revisions to Current Part 110

### A. Title

### B. Proposed Redesignations

### C. Proposed Revisions for Consistency of Terms

### D. Proposed Additions Regarding Cross-Contact

### E. Proposed Revisions for Consistency With the Definition of “Food”

### F. Proposed Revisions to Address Guidance in Current Part 110

G. Proposed Editorial Changes

X. Proposed Revisions to General Provisions of Part 110 (Proposed Part 117, Subpart A)

A. Proposed § 117.1--Applicability and Status

B. Proposed § 117.3--Definitions

C. Proposed § 117.5--Exemptions

D. Proposed § 117.7--Applicability of Part 117 to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food That is Not Exposed to the Environment

XI. Proposed Revisions to Current Good Manufacturing Practice Requirements of Part 110 (Proposed Part 117, Subpart B)

A. Proposed Deletion of Guidance From Current Part 110

B. Other Potential Revisions to Current Guidance

C. Proposed Revisions for Consistency of Terms

D. Proposed Revisions to Address Cross-Contact

E. Proposed and Potential Revisions to Current § 110.10--Personnel (Proposed § 117.10)

F. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.20--Plant and Grounds (Proposed § 117.20)

G. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35--Sanitary Operations (Proposed § 117.35)

H. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37--Sanitary Facilities and Controls (Proposed § 117.37)

I. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.40--Equipment and Utensils (Proposed § 117.40)

J. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.80--Processes and Controls (Proposed § 117.80)

K. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.93--Warehousing and Distribution (Proposed § 117.93)

L. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.110--Natural or Unavoidable Defects in Food for Human Use That Present No Health Hazard (Proposed § 117.110)

M. Potential Revisions to Establish Requirements in Place of Current Guidance

N. Request for Comment on Additional CGMP Requirements

XII. Proposed New Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls (Proposed Part 117, Subpart C)

A. Proposed § 117.126--Requirement for a Food Safety Plan

B. Proposed § 117.130--Hazard Analysis

C. Proposed § 117.135--Preventive Controls for Hazards That Are Reasonably Likely to Occur

D. Proposed § 117.137--Recall Plan for Food With a Hazard That Is Reasonably Likely to Occur

E. Proposed § 117.140--Monitoring

F. Proposed § 117.145--Corrective Actions

G. Proposed § 117.150--Verification

H. Proposed § 117.155--Requirements Applicable to a Qualified Individual

I. Proposed § 117.175--Records Required for Subpart C

J. Request for Comment on Additional Preventive Controls and Verification Procedures Not Being Proposed

K. Request for Comment on Other Potential Provisions Not Explicitly Included in Section 418 of the FD&C Act

XIII. Proposed New Provisions for Modified Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart D)

A. Proposed § 117.201--Modified Requirements That Apply to a Qualified Facility



- B. Proposed § 117.206---Modified Requirements That Apply to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food That Is Not Exposed to the Environment
- XIV. Proposed New Provisions for Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility (Proposed Part 117, Subpart E)
  - A. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act
  - B. Proposed § 117.251--Circumstances That May Lead FDA to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility
  - C. Proposed § 117.254--Issuance of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility
  - D. Proposed § 117.257--Contents of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility
  - E. Proposed § 117.260--Compliance With, or Appeal of, an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility
  - F. Proposed § 117.264--Procedure for Submitting an Appeal
  - G. Proposed § 117.267--Procedure for Requesting an Informal Hearing
  - H. Proposed § 117.270--Requirements Applicable to an Informal Hearing
  - I. Proposed § 117.274--Presiding Officer for an Appeal and for an Informal Hearing
  - J. Proposed § 117.277--Time Frame for Issuing a Decision on an Appeal
  - K. Proposed § 117.280--Revocation of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility
  - L. Proposed § 117.284--Final Agency Action
  - M. Conforming Amendments to 21 CFR Part 16
- XV. Proposed New Recordkeeping Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart F)

- A. Relevant Statutory Provisions
- B. Proposed § 117.301--Records Subject to the Requirements of this Subpart F
- C. Proposed § 117.305-General Requirements Applying to Records
- D. Proposed § 117.310--Additional Requirements Applying to the Food Safety Plan
- E. Proposed § 117.315--Requirements for Record Retention
- F. Proposed § 117.320--Requirements for Official Review
- G. Proposed § 117.325--Public Disclosure

XVI. FSMA's Rulemaking Provisions

- A. Requirements in Section 418(n)(3) of the FD&C Act Regarding Content
- B. Requirements in Section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act Regarding Review of Hazard

Analysis and Preventive Controls Programs in Existence on the Date of Enactment of FSMA

XVII. Proposed Removal of 21 CFR Part 110--Current Good Manufacturing Practice In Manufacturing, Packing, Or Holding Human Food

XVIII. Proposed Conforming Amendments

XIX. Preliminary Regulatory Impact Analysis

- A. Overview
- B. Regulatory Flexibility Act
- C. Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act of 1996
- D. Unfunded Mandates Reform Act of 1995
- E. Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995
- F. Public Access to the Analyses

XX. Analysis of Environmental Impact

XXI. Federalism

XXII. Comments

XXIII. References

Appendix

I. The Role of Testing as a Verification Measure in a Modern Food Safety System

A. Verification of Preventive Controls

B. Scientifically Valid Sampling and Testing

C. Verification Testing of Raw Materials and Ingredients

D. Verification of Sanitation Controls to Significantly Minimize or Prevent the Potential for an Environmental Pathogen to Contaminate Food

E. Role of Environmental Monitoring in Verifying the Implementation and Effectiveness of Sanitation Controls in Significantly Minimizing or Preventing the Potential for an Environmental Pathogen to Contaminate Food

F. The Role of Finished Product Testing in Verifying the Implementation and Effectiveness of Preventive Controls

G. Metrics for Microbiological Risk Management

II. The Role of Supplier Approval and Verification Programs in a Food Safety System

III. References

Executive Summary

Purpose and Coverage of the Proposed Rule

The proposed rule would revise FDA's current good manufacturing practice (CGMP) regulations regarding the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of human food in two fundamental ways. First, it would add new preventive controls provisions as required by the FDA Food Safety Modernization Act (FSMA). In general, with some exceptions the new

preventive controls provisions would apply to facilities that are required to register with FDA under FDA's current food facility registration regulations. These preventive controls would include requirements for covered facilities to maintain a food safety plan, perform a hazard analysis, and institute preventive controls for the mitigation of those hazards. Facilities would also be required to monitor their controls, verify that they were effective, take any appropriate corrective actions, and maintain records documenting these actions. Second, the proposed rule would update, revise, or otherwise clarify certain requirements of our CGMP regulations, which were last updated in 1986.

In addition, this proposed rule would clarify the scope of the exemption for "farms" in FDA's current food facility registration regulations and make corresponding clarifications to FDA's current regulations for the establishment, maintenance, and availability of records. These clarifications would affect who would be subject to the current regulations for registration and recordkeeping as well as the new preventive controls requirements that would be established by this proposed rule.

To put these changes in context, and to provide legal, regulatory, scientific, and technical information relevant to the new provisions, we provide several sections of background. This background discusses the history of food regulation and current regulatory framework, provides an overview of the provisions of FSMA applicable to this proposed rule, explains the principles and history of the use of Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) systems, and describes a variety of hazards that have been associated with foods and food safety problems (including outbreaks of foodborne illness) that have resulted from these hazards. An Appendix also describes the role of testing as a verification measure in a food safety system, and the role of supplier approval and verification programs in a food safety system.

### Summary of the Major Provisions of the Proposed Rule

The proposed rule would implement the requirements of FSMA for covered facilities to establish and implement a food safety system that includes a hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls. Specifically, the proposed rule would establish requirements for:

- A written food safety plan;
- Hazard analysis;
- Preventive controls for hazards that are reasonably likely to occur;
- Monitoring;
- Corrective actions;
- Verification; and
- Associated records.

The application of the preventive controls would be required only in cases where facilities determine that hazards are reasonably likely to occur. We do not expect that all possible preventive measures and verification procedures would be applied to all foods at all facilities.

The proposed rule would also establish a series of exemptions (including modified requirements in some cases) from the requirements for hazard analysis and preventive controls. Facilities that manufacture, process, pack or hold food and that are required to register with FDA under section 415 of the FD&C Act would be required to comply with the proposed regulation unless they are covered by an exemption. The table immediately below summarizes these proposed exemptions in general terms. Importantly, the table in this Executive Summary does not include all the details that you must consider to determine whether an exemption applies to

you. We provide those details in the proposed regulation (proposed § 117.5) and explain them in section X.C of this document.

Proposed Exemptions from the New Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

Who or What Would Be Exempt From the Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls	Notes
<p>“Qualified Facility” as defined by FSMA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business with average annual sales of &lt; \$500,000 and at least half the sales to consumers or local retailers or restaurants (within the same state or within 275 miles); or</li> <li>• Very small business               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Option 1: Average annual sales of &lt; \$250,000</li> <li>• Option 2: Average annual sales of &lt; \$500,000</li> <li>• Option 3: Average annual sales of &lt;\$1,000,000</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>FDA is proposing three options for defining “very small business” and requests comment on which to adopt in a final rule.</p> <p>Modified requirements would apply - i.e., a qualified facility would be required to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notify FDA about its status; and</li> <li>• Either:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Notify FDA that it is addressing hazards through preventive controls and monitoring; or</li> <li>○ Notify FDA that it complies with applicable local regulations, and notify consumers of the name and complete business address of the facility where the food was manufactured or processed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low risk, on farm activities performed by small business (&lt; 500 employees)</li> </ul> <p>-or-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low-risk, on-farm activities performed by a very small business               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Option 1: very small = &lt;\$250,000</li> <li>○ Option 2: very small = &lt;\$500,000</li> <li>○ Option 3: very small = &lt;\$1,000,000</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Small and very small on-farm businesses conducting these low risk activities would be exempt from most of the rule’s requirements.</p> <p>We would define the low-risk activities that qualify for the exemption, including the specific foods to which they relate (such as re-packing intact fruits and vegetables, or grinding/milling/cracking/crushing grains)</p>
<p>Activities that are subject to the seafood HACCP requirements of part 123 (21 CFR part 123)</p>	<p>The facility must be in compliance with part 123.</p>
<p>Activities that are subject to the juice HACCP requirements of part 120 (21 CFR part 120)</p>	<p>The facility must be in compliance with part 120.</p>
<p>Activities that are subject to the “low-acid canned food” requirements of part 113 (21 CFR part 113)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The exemption applies only with respect to microbiological hazards.</li> <li>• The facility must be in compliance with part 113.</li> </ul>
<p>The manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of a dietary supplement that is subject to the CGMP requirements of part 111 (21 CFR part 111)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The facility must be in compliance with part 111.</li> <li>• The facility must be in compliance with requirements for serious adverse event reporting for dietary supplements</li> </ul>
<p>Activities of a facility that are subject to section 419 of the FD&amp;C Act (Standards for Produce Safety)</p>	<p>Elsewhere in this issue of the <u>Federal Register</u>, FDA is proposing standards for produce safety.</p>

Who or What Would Be Exempt From the Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls	Notes
Alcoholic beverages at a facility that is required to obtain a permit from, register with, or obtain approval of a notice or application from the Secretary of the Treasury as a condition of doing business in the United States	The exemption also would apply to food other than alcoholic beverages at such a facility, provided that the food is in prepackaged form and constitutes not more than 5 percent of the overall sales of the facility.
Facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing	A facility that stores raw agricultural commodities that are fruits and vegetables would not be exempt.
A facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment	Modified requirements would apply for the storage of refrigerated packaged food.

The proposed rule also would establish the conditions under which an exemption granted to a “qualified facility” could be withdrawn, and the procedures that would be followed to withdraw such an exemption. The proposed rule would establish requirements that would apply to all records that would be required by the various proposed provisions. The proposed recordkeeping provisions would implement specific requirements of FSMA regarding records associated with the new provisions for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls and would allow facilities to show, and FDA to determine, compliance with the regulatory requirements.

The proposed rule would require that a qualified individual prepare the food safety plan, validate preventive controls, review records for implementation and effectiveness of preventive controls and the appropriateness of corrective actions, and perform the required reanalysis of a food safety plan. The proposed rule also would establish minimum requirements for the “qualified individual,” who would be required to successfully complete training with a standardized curriculum or be otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a

food safety system. Only a trained individual or individual qualified by job experience is capable of effectively executing these activities.

FDA is requesting comment on when and how other elements of a preventive controls system are an appropriate means of implementing the statutory directives, including: a product testing program, an environmental monitoring program, and a supplier approval and verification program, as appropriate.

Costs and Benefits

We summarize the domestic annualized costs of the three options for the proposed rule in the table immediately below. We are unable to estimate the benefits of the proposed rule. Instead we show the Breakeven Illness Percentage for each of the three options for the proposed rule. This is calculated by dividing the number of illnesses that would have to be prevented annually under each option by the total estimated number of illnesses attributable to FDA-regulated food products under the scope of each option of the proposed rule. This ignores the costs to foreign firms and benefits to foreign consumers.

	Total Domestic Costs Annualized at 7 Per Cent over 7 Years	Annual Breakeven Illness Percentage
Proposed Rule with Very Small Business Defined as Less Than or Equal to \$250,000 in Annual Revenue	\$475 million	24
Proposed Rule with Very Small Business Defined as Less Than or Equal to \$500,000 in Annual Revenue	\$395 million	20
Proposed Rule with Very Small Business Defined as Less Than or Equal to \$1,000,000 in Annual Revenue	\$319 million	16

I. Introduction



Each year, about 48 million Americans (1 in 6) get sick, 128,000 are hospitalized, and 3,000 die from food-borne diseases, according to recent estimates from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). This is a significant public health burden that is largely preventable. While many illnesses are the result of improper food handling practices in the home and food service settings, which would not be addressed by this proposed rule, FDA believes that improvements to its current good manufacturing practice (CGMP) regulations in part 110 (21 CFR part 110), including those prescribed by the FDA Food Safety Modernization Act (FSMA) (Pub. L. 111-533), can play an important role in reducing foodborne illness.

FSMA, signed into law by President Obama on January 4, 2011, enables FDA to better protect public health by helping to ensure the safety and security of the food supply. FSMA enables us to focus more on preventing food safety problems rather than relying primarily on reacting to problems after they occur. The law also provides us with new enforcement authorities to help achieve higher rates of compliance with risk-based, prevention-oriented safety standards and to better respond to and contain problems when they do occur. In addition, the law gives us important new tools to better ensure the safety of imported foods and directs us to build an integrated national food safety system in partnership with State, local, tribal, and territorial authorities.

This new law continues efforts by the food industry and government to protect and improve the safety of the nation's food supply. At the Federal level, these efforts go back to the Pure Food and Drug Act of 1906, the United States' first national food safety law. FSMA carries forward the basic principle embodied in the 1906 law that food establishments have the primary responsibility and capacity to make food safe and that government's role is to set standards for food safety and provide oversight to help ensure standards are met.

Since passage of the 1906 Act, and the most recent revision of its basic food safety provisions in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act of 1938, the combined efforts of the food industry and government have produced a set of standards and practices that make the U.S. food supply among the safest in the world. These efforts include the development and adoption by FDA of CGMP standards that have long provided the regulatory foundation for food safety. They also include, in more recent years, the adoption for some elements of the food supply of more targeted, risk-based approaches, such as the Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP) approach to food safety.

HACCP was pioneered by the food industry and reflects the understanding that food safety is best assured if each producer and processor understands the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur in their particular product and operation and puts in place scientifically sound preventive controls to significantly minimize or eliminate the hazard. FDA has by regulation required seafood and juice processors to implement the HACCP approach to preventive controls. The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) has also mandated HACCP for meat and poultry processors, and many food companies have implemented such modern preventive control systems for other commodities.

While these efforts have contributed to progress on food safety, and the United States has one of the safest food supplies in the world, significant food safety challenges persist in today's complex, dynamic, and global food system. Today's food supply is highly diverse and increasingly complex, with many new foods in the marketplace that pose new food safety challenges. New pathogens are emerging, and we are seeing commonly known pathogens appear in foods where they have not been traditionally seen. The population of individuals at greater risk for foodborne illness, such as those who are immune-compromised, is increasing.

When illness outbreaks occur, they can have devastating impacts on public health and impose substantial economic disruption and cost on the food industry. The food safety challenge is only compounded by globalization, which has resulted in approximately 15 percent of the U.S. food supply being imported, including 80 percent of our seafood, 50 percent of our fresh fruit, and 20 percent of our vegetables.

Congress responded to today's food safety challenges by enacting FSMA. FSMA builds on past experience and the strong foundation provided by the current food safety system, but it also marks an historic turning point for food safety. FSMA directs FDA to build a food safety system for the future that makes modern, science- and risk-based preventive controls the norm across all sectors of the food system; meets the food safety challenges of the global food system; and establishes stronger partnerships for food safety across all levels of government and with the private sector to ensure optimal use of public and private resources. FDA has embarked on a comprehensive effort to build the food safety system mandated by Congress, as described on its FSMA implementation web page at <http://www.fda.gov/fsma>.

A top priority for FDA are those FSMA-required regulations that provide the framework for industry's implementation of preventive controls and FDA's ability to oversee their implementation for both domestic and imported food. These include, among others, regulations establishing preventive control standards for human food and animal food facilities, produce safety standards, standards that define the accountability of importers to verify the safety of food produced overseas, and a new program for accrediting public and private bodies to provide credible certifications that regulated entities are meeting U.S. safety standards. A proposed rule on foreign supplier verification is closely interconnected to this rule on preventive controls for human food, and is expected to publish soon.

In this document, we propose standards to implement the requirement in section 103 of FSMA for the adoption of preventive controls in human food facilities. The preamble that follows provides critical background on FDA's previous efforts in establishing and implementing CGMPs and preventive controls, because these past efforts are the critical starting point and foundation for FSMA implementation. The preamble then explains and provides background on the rationale for our proposed updating of current CGMP requirements and for the new rules implementing FSMA's preventive controls requirement. We are seeking comments on all aspects of this proposal.

## II. Background

### A. Regulatory Framework for Human Food

#### 1. Current Good Manufacturing Practice in Manufacturing, Packing or Holding Human Food

In the Federal Register of April 26, 1969, FDA issued a final rule to establish in 21 CFR part 128 CGMP requirements for the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of human food (34 FR 6977). The CGMP regulation established criteria for effective sanitation control in the manufacture, processing, packing, or holding of human foods to effect compliance with section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 342(a)(4)), under which food is adulterated if it has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health (33 FR 19023, December 20, 1968). In 1973, we amended the CGMP regulation by adding a new section regarding natural or unavoidable defect levels in foods. (38 FR 854, January 5, 1973). In 1977, we redesignated the CGMP regulation as part 110 (21 CFR part 110) (42 FR 14301 at 14338, March 5, 1977).

In the Federal Register of June 19, 1986, FDA issued a final rule to revise the CGMP regulation in part 110 (hereinafter current part 110) (51 FR 22458). That final rule established new, updated, and more detailed CGMP requirements for food industry personnel; plants and grounds; sanitary facilities, controls, and operations; equipment and utensils; processes and controls; warehousing and distribution; and natural or avoidable defect levels (51 FR 22458). During the rulemaking to establish current part 110, we clarified that the CGMP regulations also identify the applicable criteria for implementing the requirements of section 402(a)(3) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 342(a)(3)), such that compliance with the CGMP requirements is also required to ensure that food does not consist in whole or in part of any filthy, putrid, or decomposed substance, or are otherwise unfit for food (51 FR 22458 at 22462). In addition, we noted that the CGMP requirements in part 110 serve two purposes: (1) to provide guidance on how to reduce insanitary manufacturing practices and on how to protect against food becoming contaminated; and (2) to state explicit, objective requirements that enable industry to know what FDA expects when an investigator visits one of its plants (51 FR 22458 at 22459).

In the rulemaking to establish current part 110, we also invoked section 361 of the Public Health Service Act (PHS Act) (42 U.S.C. 264), which authorizes FDA to issue regulations for any requirements that, in the Commissioner's judgment, are necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of food-borne communicable diseases from one State to another (44 FR 33238 at 33239, June 8, 1979). As we noted in that rulemaking, “[b]ecause this authority is designed to eliminate the introduction of diseases . . . from one State to another, this authority must of necessity be exercised upon the disease-causing substance within the State where the food is manufactured, processed, or held,” and that “[d]ue to the nationwide,

interrelated structure of the food industry, communicable diseases may, without proper intrastate food controls, easily spread interstate” (44 FR 33238 at 33239).

Current part 110 serves as an “umbrella” regulation applicable to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of all human food, with the exception that it does not apply to establishments engaged solely in the harvesting, storage, or distribution of raw agricultural commodities (RACs) which are ordinarily cleaned, prepared, treated, or otherwise processed before being marketed to consumers (§ 110.19(a)).

In 2002, FDA convened a CGMP Modernization Working Group (the CGMP Working Group) to determine whether part 110 is in need of further revision. The CGMP Working Group initiated research programs, presented preliminary findings, and solicited public comments, data, and scientific information through three public meetings (69 FR 40312, July 2, 2004). In 2005, the CGMP Working Group issued a report (hereinafter the CGMP Working Group Report) summarizing the oral and written comments we received in response to the Federal Register notice announcing the public meetings, as well as our key findings (Ref. 1).

The CGMP Working Group Report presented seven “opportunities” for CGMP modernization. The report called for:

- Requiring appropriate training for food production supervisors and workers, including the maintenance of personnel training records;
- Requiring the creation and implementation of a written food allergen control plan for food processing establishments that handle major food allergens;
- Requiring a written environmental pathogen control program, including the maintenance of appropriate implementation records, for food processors that produce ready-to-eat foods that support the growth of the pathogenic microorganism Listeria monocytogenes;

- Requiring food processors to develop and maintain written cleaning and sanitation procedures, at a minimum for all food-contact equipment and food-contact surfaces, that define the scope, cleaning or sanitation objective, management responsibility, monitoring, corrective action, and recordkeeping associated with the cleaning or sanitation procedure;
- Considering whether to remove the current exemption for facilities solely engaged in the harvesting, packing, storage, and distribution of RACs by requesting further public comment on this issue;
- Requiring food processors to maintain certain critical records that document that controls and systems that ensure food safety are being properly implemented and requiring that FDA be given access to such documents to verify compliance with the CGMP requirements; and
- Requesting further public comments and suggestions regarding how the use of time-temperature relationships can be incorporated into CGMP regulations or guidances for proper refrigerated storage or hot holding (Ref. 1).

## 2. Other Food Safety Regulations Established by FDA

Although the umbrella CGMP requirements of current part 110 apply to the full range of human food, FDA concluded over time that they do not directly address unique safety issues associated with the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of certain specific types of food products. We therefore promulgated additional food safety regulations to provide for specific process controls for the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of certain specific foods that are not captured by the more general part 110 CGMP requirements.

Currently, such specific food safety regulations include those for:

- Thermally processed low-acid foods packaged in hermetically sealed containers (i.e., “low-acid canned foods,” hereinafter referred to as LACF) (part 113 (21 CFR 113))

(Although some hermetically sealed containers (e.g., pouches and glass bottles) used to package thermally processed low-acid foods generally would not be viewed as “cans,” the term “low-acid canned foods” has been used for decades as a shorthand description for “thermally processed low-acid foods packaged in hermetically sealed containers,” and we continue to use that term and its abbreviation, LACF, for the purposes of this document);

- Acidified food (part 114 (21 CFR part 114));
- Bottled drinking water (part 129 (21 CFR part 129));
- Infant formula (parts 106 and 107 (21 CFR parts 106 and 107));
- Fish and fishery products (part 123 (21 CFR part 123));
- Juice (part 120 (21 CFR part 120));
- Dietary supplements (part 111 (21 CFR part 111));
- Refrigeration of shell eggs held for retail distribution (§ 115.50 (21 CFR 115.50);

and

- Production, storage, and transportation of shell eggs (part 118) (21 CFR part 118)).

We discuss these food safety regulations immediately below.

a. Acidified food and LACF. In the Federal Register of January 24, 1973, FDA issued a final rule (the canned food CGMP regulation) to establish specific CGMP requirements to address safety issues unique to the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of thermally processed foods packaged in hermetically sealed containers (38 FR 2398). In the Federal Register of May 14, 1973, we issued a final rule to establish an emergency permit control regulation, in accordance with section 404 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 344), to serve as an enforcement mechanism for the canned food regulation (38 FR 12716). In the Federal Register



of January 29, 1974, we issued a final rule to establish procedures to implement the emergency permit control enforcement mechanism (39 FR 3748). The emergency permit control regulation is currently codified in 21 CFR part 108.

In 1979, we issued a final rule to revise the canned food CGMP regulation and separate it into two distinct regulations. One of these regulations, established in part 113, is directed to the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of LACF (44 FR 16209, March 16, 1979). The second regulation, established in part 114, is directed to the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of acidified foods (44 FR 16230, March 16, 1979). Acidified foods are low-acid foods to which acid(s) or acid food(s) are added; they have a water activity greater than 0.85 and have a finished equilibrium pH of 4.6 or below; and certain foods are excluded from the coverage of part 114 (21 CFR 114.3(b)). In the Federal Register of March 16, 1979, we also issued an emergency permit control regulation to serve as an enforcement mechanism for the new acidified foods regulation (44 FR 16204).

In establishing the regulations for LACF and acidified foods, FDA determined that CGMP regulations specific to LACFs and acidified foods are necessary to control the presence of Clostridium botulinum (C. botulinum), a bacterium commonly found in soil that can form spores that are capable of prolonged survival under adverse conditions and produce a botulinum toxin under anaerobic conditions, such as those in canned foods (41 FR 30442, July 23, 1976). Botulinum toxin can cause botulism, a rare but serious paralytic illness that can be fatal and is considered a medical emergency (Ref. 2). The primary factors that determine the formation and growth of C. botulinum in food are pH, water activity, and storage conditions, and LACFs and acidified foods can pose a risk of botulism if these critical factors are not carefully controlled (44 FR 16209).

Part 113 establishes requirements for equipment; control of components, food product containers, closures, and in-process material; production and process controls; and records and reports for LACF. Part 114 establishes requirements for production and process controls and records and reports for acidified foods. In light of the severity of the hazard presented by botulinum toxin, parts 113 and 114 require that supervisory personnel be trained at schools approved by FDA (§§ 113.10 and 114.10, respectively).

The enforcement regulations in §§ 108.25 and 108.35 require manufacturers, processors, and packers of acidified foods and LACF, respectively, to file food canning establishment registration information with FDA. The registration information must include, among other things: the name, principal place of business, and the location of the establishment engaged in the manufacturing, processing, or packing of acidified foods or LACF; processing methods; and a list of the foods prepared at the establishment (§§ 108.25(c) and 108.35(c), respectively).

Under the procedural enforcement regulations of subpart A of part 108, if after an investigation we determine that a manufacturer, processor, or packer of acidified foods or LACF is not in compliance with the requirements of §§ 108.25 or 108.35, respectively, we may issue an order requiring that the entity apply for and obtain a temporary emergency permit from us, which we might or might not issue, before introducing any acidified food or LACF into interstate commerce. Subpart A of part 108 also establishes the criteria and procedures related to a determination of the need for an emergency permit, revocation of the determination of need for an emergency permit, issuance or denial of an emergency permit, and suspension and reinstatement of an emergency permit.

**b. Bottled drinking water.** In the Federal Register of November 26, 1973, FDA issued a final rule to establish quality standard regulations establishing allowable levels for

microbiological, physical, chemical, and radiological contaminants in bottled drinking water (38 FR 32558). The quality standard regulation is codified at 21 CFR § 165.110(b). In the Federal Register of March 12, 1975, we issued a final rule to establish CGMP requirements for the processing and bottling of bottled drinking water (40 FR 11566). The bottled water CGMP regulation is codified in part 129 (21 CFR part 129).

FDA promulgated part 129 in light of surveys and analyses of field investigations that we and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) conducted in 1971 and 1972. The surveys and analyses revealed, among other things, that some bottled water failed to meet some of the prevailing regulatory criteria for non-bottled, public drinking water (38 FR 1019 at 1019, January 8, 1973), some of the bottling plants surveyed did not conduct adequate bacteriological and chemical analyses of their products, and in other cases, bottling was not performed under sanitary conditions (38 FR 32563).

Part 129 requires that bottled water be safe and that it be processed, bottled, held, and transported under sanitary conditions. Processing practices addressed in part 129 include the protection of the water source from contamination, sanitation at the bottling facility, and quality control to ensure the safety of the water. Part 129 also establishes certain analytical testing requirements for chemical, physical, radiological, and microbiological contaminants.

c. Infant formula. The Infant Formula Act of 1980 (the 1980 infant formula act) (Pub. L. 96-359) amended the FD&C Act to include section 412 (21 U.S.C. 350a) and was intended to improve protection of infants consuming infant formula products by establishing greater regulatory control over the formulation and production of infant formula. Enactment of the law resulted largely from the emergence of a substantial number of cases involving a serious medical disorder known as hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis, which is most frequently characterized by

an infant's inability to thrive. The illnesses were found to be associated with prolonged exclusive use of soy protein-based infant formulas that lacked adequate amounts of the essential nutrient, chloride (45 FR 86362 at 86362, December 30, 1980).

In response to the 1980 act, FDA issued final rules to establish the following regulations regarding infant formula:

- Subpart B of part 106 (21 CFR part 106, subpart B) regarding infant formula quality control procedures (47 FR 17016, April 20, 1982);
- Subpart D of part 107 (21 CFR part 107, subpart D) regarding infant formula recalls (47 FR 18832, April 30, 1982);
- Subpart B of part 107 (21 CFR part 107, subpart B) regarding the labeling of infant formula (50 FR 1833, January 4, 1985);
- Subpart C of part 107 (21 CFR part 107, subpart C) regarding exempt infant formula (50 FR 48183, November 22, 1985);
- Subpart D of part 107 (21 CFR part 107, subpart D) regarding nutrient requirements for infant formulas (50 FR 45106, October 30, 1985).

In 1986, Congress amended section 412 of the FD&C Act as part of the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1986 (Pub. L. 99-570) (the 1986 infant formula amendments) to address concerns regarding the sufficiency of quality control testing, CGMP, recordkeeping, and recall requirements. In 1989, FDA issued revised recall regulations in subpart E of part 107 (54 FR 4006, January 27, 1989), and in 1991, FDA issued regulations in § 106.100 to implement the provisions of the 1986 infant formula amendments for records and record retention (56 FR 66566, December 24, 1991).

In the Federal Register of July 9, 1996, FDA issued a proposed rule to implement the remaining provisions of the 1986 infant formula amendments (61 FR 36154). Specifically, we proposed to amend the existing infant formula regulations in parts 106 and 107 to: (1) establish CGMPs, including microbiological testing; (2) revise the quality control procedures in part 106 to ensure that an infant formula contains the level of nutrients necessary to support infant growth and development; (3) specify audit procedures to ensure compliance with CGMP and quality control procedure regulations; (4) establish requirements for quality factors to ensure that required nutrients will be in a bioavailable form; (5) establish batch and CGMP recordkeeping requirements; (6) specify submission requirements for registration and notification to FDA before the introduction of an infant formula into interstate commerce; and (7) update 21 CFR part 107 to reflect the 1986 amendments. In 2002 and 2003, FDA held three Food Advisory Committee meetings (67 FR 12571, March 19, 2002; 67 FR 63933; October 16, 2002; 68 FR 8299; February 20, 2003). FDA reopened the comment period for the proposed rule twice (68 FR 22341, April 28, 2003; and 71 FR 43393, August 1, 2006). FDA is developing a final rule.

d. Fish and fishery products. In the Federal Register of December 18, 1995, FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 123 procedures for the safe and sanitary processing and importing of fish and fishery products (60 FR 65096). Part 123 requires seafood processors to develop, implement, and document sanitation control procedures and mandates the application of HACCP procedures. In the remainder of this document, the phrases “seafood HACCP regulation” and “HACCP regulation for seafood” refer to part 123. We discuss the HACCP concept in more detail in section II.C of this document. We describe the seafood HACCP regulation in more detail in section II.C.5.a of this document.

e. Juice. In the Federal Register of January 19, 2001, FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 120 (21 CFR part 120) requirements to ensure the safe and sanitary processing and importation of fruit and vegetable juices and juice products by mandating the application of HACCP principles to the processing of these foods (66 FR 6138). In the remainder of this document, the phrases “juice HACCP regulation” and “HACCP regulation for juice” refer to part 120. We describe the juice HACCP regulation in more detail in section II.C.5.c of this document.

f. Dietary supplements. The Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of 1994 (DSHEA) (Pub. L. 103-417) among other things added section 402(g) to the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 342(g)). Section 402(g)(2) in part authorizes the Secretary of HHS to promulgate regulations to prescribe CGMPs for dietary supplements. Section 402(g)(2) also stipulates that such regulations must be modeled after existing CGMP regulations for food.

In the Federal Register of June 25, 2007, FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 111 (21 CFR part 111) CGMP requirements for the manufacturing, packaging, labeling, and holding of dietary supplements to ensure their quality (72 FR 34752). FDA established part 111 because the umbrella food CGMP provisions of part 110 alone do not adequately address the unique characteristics of dietary supplements (72 FR 34752 at 34761). For example, unlike most foods, the majority of dietary supplements are packaged into tablets, gel caps, and capsules; some dietary supplements may contain bioactive ingredients for which specific, controlled amounts are intended to be in each tablet or capsule; vitamins can present a concentrated source of biologically active components that have adverse health consequences at high doses; and herbal and botanical dietary supplements are often complex mixtures that can vary in composition and be contaminated with substances having adverse health consequences depending on factors such

as the part of the plant used, the location of harvesting and growing conditions that can vary from year-to-year (72 FR 34752 at 34761).

Part 111 includes those requirements of part 110 that are common to the manufacturing, packaging, labeling and holding of dietary supplements, such as requirements for personnel, physical plant and grounds, and equipment and utensils. Part 111 also establishes requirements such as for the use of written procedures for certain operations; a production and process control system that includes the establishment of specifications for incoming ingredients and finished product; certain requirements for testing of incoming ingredients and finished product; the establishment and implementation of quality control operations; the preparation and use of a written master manufacturing record for each unique formulation and for each batch size of a given dietary supplement; the preparation of an individual batch production record every time a dietary supplement batch is produced; the establishment and use of certain laboratory control processes; the investigation of any product complaint that involves the possibility of a failure to meet any CGMP requirement; and the establishment and retention of records associated with the manufacture, packaging, labeling, or holding of a dietary supplement for specified periods of time.

g. Refrigeration of shell eggs held for retail distribution. In the Federal Register of December 5, 2000, FDA issued a final rule that established in § 115.50 (21 CFR § 115.50) refrigeration requirements for shell eggs held for retail distribution (the shell egg refrigeration regulation) (65 FR 76092). FDA promulgated the shell egg refrigeration regulation to prevent foodborne illnesses and deaths resulting from the contamination of shell eggs with Salmonella Enteritidis (SE), a specific Salmonella serotype. As discussed in the proposed rule to establish the shell egg refrigeration regulation (64 FR 36492, July 6, 1999), the disease salmonellosis

results from an intestinal infection with Salmonella microorganisms and is characterized by diarrhea, fever, abdominal cramps, headache, nausea, and vomiting. Most healthy people recover, but the infection can spread to the bloodstream, and then to other areas of the body, leading to severe and fatal illness, which is more likely to occur in children, the elderly, and persons with weakened immune systems. Salmonella spp. is among the leading bacterial causes of foodborne illness in the United States, and shell eggs are the predominant source of SE related cases of salmonellosis in the United States where a food vehicle is identified for the illness (64 FR 36492 at 36493).

The shell egg refrigeration regulation requires that shell eggs held at retail establishments be stored and displayed under refrigeration at a temperature of 7.2 °C (45 °F) or less to help prevent the growth of Salmonella spp., except for shell eggs that have been specifically processed to destroy all viable Salmonella spp. that might be present. The shell egg refrigeration regulation includes administrative procedures with which refrigeration requirements may be enforced, including providing for the diversion or destruction of shell eggs that have been held in violation of the refrigeration requirements.

h. Production, storage, and transportation of shell eggs. In the Federal Register of July 9, 2009 (74 FR 33030), FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 118 (21 CFR part 118) requirements for shell egg producers to register with FDA, implement measures to prevent SE from contaminating eggs on the farm and from further growth during storage and transportation, and maintain records related to their compliance with the requirements of the regulation. As with the shell egg refrigeration rule, FDA promulgated part 118 to reduce SE-associated illnesses and deaths by reducing the risk that shell eggs are contaminated with SE (74 FR 33030).



### 3. Food Safety Guidance to Industry

FDA has issued numerous guidance documents (hereinafter, “guidance” or “guidances”) to assist the food industry in implementing food safety regulatory requirements under FDA’s jurisdiction. We issue guidances, in accordance with our regulations in § 10.115 (21 CFR 10.115) for “good guidance practices,” to describe our interpretation of or policy on a regulatory issue. Guidances do not establish legally enforceable rights or responsibilities and do not legally bind the public or FDA (§ 10.115(d)(1)). Accordingly, regulated industry is not required to employ the approaches contained in a guidance and instead may choose to use an alternative approach, provided that the alternative approach complies with the relevant statutes and regulations (§ 10.115(d)(2)). Although guidances do not legally bind FDA, they represent our current thinking on a particular interpretation of or policy regarding a given regulatory issue (§ 10.115(d)(3)). Under §§ 10.115(c)(1) and (g), we publish a guidance in draft form for public comment before issuing the guidance in final form, except where prior public participation is not feasible or appropriate, if the guidance (1) sets forth initial interpretations of statutory or regulatory requirements, (2) sets forth changes in interpretation or policy that are of more than a minor nature; (3) includes complex scientific issues, or (4) covers highly controversial issues.

FDA generally issues guidance to industry for the purpose of communicating our policy decisions and interpretations of our regulatory requirements so that regulated industry better understands how to comply with those requirements. In some cases, we issue guidance specifically targeted to assisting industry in complying with a particular food safety regulation. For example, we have issued guidances to assist industry in complying with the seafood HACCP regulation (Ref. 3) and the juice HACCP regulation (Ref. 4). In other cases, we issue guidance that is more narrowly focused in scope or is not directly targeted to assisting industry in

complying with a particular food safety regulation. For example, we have issued guidance that addresses the chemical contamination of candy with lead (Ref. 5) and guidance on measures to address the risk for contamination by *Salmonella* spp. in food containing a peanut-derived product as an ingredient (Ref. 6).

#### 4. Food Safety Compliance Policy Guides

FDA issues guidance to its staff in the form of compliance policy guides (CPGs). The primary purpose of a CPG is to explain FDA's policy on regulatory issues related to the statutes and regulations that we are responsible for implementing. CPGs advise FDA field inspection and compliance personnel as to FDA's standards and procedures to be applied when determining industry compliance with our regulatory requirements. FDA issues CPGs in accordance with our regulation for good guidance practices in § 10.115 and makes the CPGs available to the public, thereby providing regulated industry with additional insight into how we interpret the statutes and regulations we are responsible for implementing for purposes of assessing compliance with our regulatory requirements. In general, our food safety CPGs are relatively focused in scope. For example, we have issued a CPG regarding microbial contaminants in dairy products (Ref. 7 Ref. 7), and a CPG that sets forth the criteria that are to be used by FDA personnel to determine whether foods other than dairy products will be considered adulterated because of the presence of *Salmonella* spp. (Ref. 8).

#### 5. Current Inspection System

Section 704 of the FD&C Act authorizes FDA to enter and inspect establishments in which food is manufactured, processed, packed, or held and to inspect all pertinent equipment, finished and unfinished materials, containers, and labeling located in such establishments (21 U.S.C. 374). We inspect food establishments both for cause, for example as part of foodborne

illness outbreak investigations, and as a matter of routine practice. Section 421 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350j), which was added to the FD&C Act by section 201 of FSMA, directs FDA to “identify high risk-facilities and . . . allocate resources to inspect facilities according to the known safety risks of the facilities” as determined by several factors, including among other things “[t]he known safety risks of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility” and “[t]he compliance history of a facility” (Section 421(a)(1)). In addition, Section 421 requires FDA to: immediately “increase the frequency of inspection of all facilities,” and includes schedules for the increased frequency with which “domestic high-risk facilities,” “domestic non-high risk facilities,” and “foreign facilities” must be inspected over time (Section 421(a)(2)). Section 421 also directs FDA to “allocate resources to inspect any article of food imported into the United States according to the known safety risks of the article of food” as determined by a number of factors, including among other things “[t]he known safety risks of the countries or regions” from which the food originates or through which it is transported, and “[t]he compliance history of the importer” (Section 421(b)).

FDA inspectors, or inspectors from other Federal agencies or the States authorized to conduct inspections on our behalf, inspect food establishments to determine whether the establishments are in compliance with the requirements of the FD&C Act and other applicable laws and regulations, and document their findings in Establishment Inspection Reports. Following an inspection, FDA may decide that: (1) no further action is required because no objectionable conditions or practices were found during the inspection; (2) voluntary action on the part of the food establishment is appropriate to correct violations that are serious enough to document but not serious enough to warrant a regulatory action, or (3) the practices and

conditions discovered during the inspection are significant enough to require regulatory action by FDA (Ref. 9).

If we decide to initiate a regulatory action against a food establishment, we may elect to take an advisory action, such as issuing a Warning Letter, an Untitled Letter, or scheduling a regulatory meeting (Ref. 10). If we determine that the conditions and practices found at a food establishment constitute serious violations of the law that cannot be, or have not been, resolved by voluntary compliance, we may decide to initiate an administrative or judicial action, such as an administrative detention, an order to cease distribution and give notice under section 423(b) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 3501), a seizure of violative products, an injunction, or a criminal prosecution (Ref. 11) (Ref. 12).

## 6. Systems for Identifying Food Safety Problems

a. Contamination of food and foodborne illness. Food can become contaminated (e.g., with biological, chemical, physical, or radiological hazards) at many different steps in the farm-to-table continuum: on the farm; in packing, manufacturing/processing, or distribution facilities; during storage or transit; at retail establishments; in restaurants; and in the home. As discussed more fully in section II.D of this document, consumption of contaminated food can lead to acute or long term illness or injury. Early detection of contamination enables food establishments to prevent contaminated food from entering commerce. When contamination is not detected in time to prevent contaminated food from entering commerce, the contamination may be detected while the food is in storage or in transit; at retail establishments; in restaurants; or in the home. This often necessitates a recall to retrieve the contaminated product from commerce.

We learn about contaminated food through a variety of mechanisms, including required reporting by industry; investigations of outbreaks of foodborne illness; recalls; and state surveillance and reporting programs. We discuss these mechanisms immediately below.

b. Required reporting by industry. In some cases, a firm that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food, or a regulatory official, detects contamination of a food in the market. This may occur even when there is no known or suspected association between the food and reports of foodborne illness. The Food and Drug Administration Amendments Act of 2007 (Pub. L. 110-085) established, among other things, section 417 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350f), which requires FDA to establish a Reportable Food Registry (RFR). A “reportable food” is an article of food (other than dietary supplements or infant formula) for which there is a reasonable probability that the use of, or exposure to, such article of food will cause serious adverse health consequences or death to humans or animals (Section 417(a)(2) of the FD&C Act). Under section 417(d)(1) of the FD&C Act, food firms that are “responsible parties” as defined in the statute are required to notify FDA electronically with certain information within 24 hours of determining that a food they manufactured, processed, packed, or held is a reportable food. On September 8, 2009, FDA launched the electronic portal for submission of these required reports. Information about reportable foods becomes part of the RFR.

Infant formula and dietary supplements are excluded from the requirements of the RFR. Infant formula manufacturers must comply with notification requirements for violative infant formula as established in 21 CFR § 107.240. Manufacturers, packers and/or distributors whose names appear on the label of a dietary supplement marketed in the United States must submit to FDA any report received of a serious adverse event associated with that dietary supplement when

used in the United States, accompanied by a copy of the dietary supplement's label, under section 761 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 379aa-1).

When contamination of food could cause illness or injury, quick action is necessary to remove the food from the market. FDA evaluates the information submitted to the RFR and that submitted by infant formula and dietary supplement firms and takes regulatory action when appropriate. Often this information can be used to determine the distribution of contaminated (and potentially contaminated) food, including raw agricultural commodities, food ingredients, and single- or multi-ingredient processed foods.

c. Outbreaks of foodborne illness. In some cases, contaminated food goes undetected until it is associated with an outbreak of foodborne illness. (An outbreak of foodborne illness is the occurrence of two or more cases of a similar illness resulting from the ingestion of a common food.) When an outbreak of foodborne illness occurs, quick action is critical to prevent additional illness. The CDC of HHS, and State, local, territorial and/or tribal health departments conduct epidemiologic investigations to identify the food(s) that may be involved in an outbreak. Many outbreaks are reported to the National Outbreak Reporting System (NORS) by the State, local, territorial, or tribal health department that conducted the outbreak investigation. Outbreak reporting is voluntary. Multi-state outbreaks are generally reported to NORS by CDC (Ref. 13). The Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD) allows the public direct access to information on foodborne outbreaks reported to CDC (Ref. 14).

In July 1995, the Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network (FoodNet) was established as a collaborative program among CDC, 10 state health departments, USDA's Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS), and FDA. FoodNet conducts surveillance for infections caused by specific pathogenic microorganisms as diagnosed by laboratory testing of samples

from patients. The surveillance area includes approximately 15 percent of the United States population (approximately 46 million persons). The objectives of FoodNet are to determine the burden of foodborne illness in the United States; monitor trends in the burden of specific foodborne illness over time; attribute the burden of foodborne illness to specific foods and settings; and disseminate information that can lead to improvements in public health practice and the development of interventions to reduce the burden of foodborne illness (Ref. 15).

Information from FoodNet is used to assess the impact of food safety initiatives on the burden of foodborne illness (Ref. 16).

FDA works closely with CDC to monitor those outbreaks in which there is some indication or early information to suggest that an FDA regulated product may be implicated in an outbreak of foodborne illness. In some cases (e.g., when it appears unlikely that an implicated food was contaminated at the point of sale, such as at a restaurant), FDA works closely with multidisciplinary Federal, State, local, territorial, and tribal investigators during the investigation of the outbreak. Depending on the circumstances, such multidisciplinary investigations may involve a traceback investigation (i.e., an investigation to determine and document the production chain and the source(s) of contaminated or potentially contaminated food); a traceforward operation (i.e., an operation to determine the distribution of contaminated or potentially contaminated food); regulatory inspections; and, in some cases, root cause investigations (to try and determine the specific causes of contamination and contributing factors).

PulseNet is another collaborative program for the surveillance and detection of foodborne illness that is coordinated by the CDC, with laboratory participants from state health departments, local health departments, and Federal agencies, including FDA and FSIS. Using

pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE), PulseNet participants perform standardized molecular subtyping (or fingerprinting) of foodborne disease causing bacteria. The patterns are then submitted electronically to PulseNet, which is a dynamic database that allows for the rapid comparison of patterns and facilitates identification of common source outbreaks. PulseNet is considered to be a powerful intelligence network that allows for the collection and analysis of state and local epidemiological surveillance data for the identification of outbreaks that may otherwise go unnoticed. In addition, PulseNet helps food regulatory agencies identify areas where the implementation of new measures and enhanced surveillance are likely to increase the safety of our food supply.

The Food Emergency Response Network (FERN) is a network coordinated by the FDA and USDA to integrate the nation's food testing laboratory (Ref. 17). The FERN supports all four phases of incident management – prevention, preparedness, response, and recovery – and coordinates the testing activities of Federal, state, and local laboratories. As of April 2011, FERN has 172 laboratory members (39 Federal, 116 State, and 17 local), located in all 50 States and Puerto Rico. FERN member laboratories represent the large majority of food testing laboratories in the U.S., including public health, agriculture, veterinary diagnostic and environmental laboratories. At this point, it is estimated that the FERN membership represents about 85% of all eligible food regulatory laboratories in the U.S.

FERN members use a web-based information network (the Electronic Laboratory Exchange Network, or eLEXNET) (Ref. 18) as their primary, real-time data exchange and communication system. Many participating laboratories conduct food surveillance testing programs for microbial pathogens (e.g., E. coli O157:H7, Salmonella spp., Listeria monocytogenes), aflatoxin, antibiotics, undeclared allergens, heavy metals, and other threats to



the food supply. Laboratory results can be uploaded into eLEXNET for the early identification of threats to the food supply. For example, overlaying laboratory results with distribution and epidemiological data can assist in identifying the source of the outbreak. The system also allows officials to analyze risks and identify trends for future surveillance efforts. In addition, the eLEXNET serves as a method repository for laboratories to rapidly search, access, review, and print methods.

d. Recalls. In 1978, we established a program regarding recalls, including guidance on policy, procedures, and industry responsibilities (43 FR 26202, June 16, 1978). Our regulations in part 7, subpart C (21 CFR part 7, subpart C) address recall policy; health hazard evaluation and recall classification; recall strategy; FDA-requested recall; firm-initiated recall; recall communications; public notification of recall; recall status reports; termination of a recall; and general industry guidance. In addition, under authority in section 412(f) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350a(f)), we have issued regulations establishing specific requirements for infant formula recalls (21 CFR part 107, subpart E). More recently, FSMA amended the FD&C Act by establishing section 423 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350l), which provides FDA with mandatory recall authority for food (other than infant formula, which remains subject to section 412(f) of the FD&C Act).

Section 7.41 (Health hazard evaluation and recall classification) describes how we evaluate the health hazard presented by a product being recalled by considering whether any disease or injuries have already occurred from the use of the product; whether any existing conditions could contribute to a clinical situation that could expose consumers to a health hazard; how the hazard could impact various segments of the population (e.g., children, surgical patients), with particular attention paid to the hazard to those individuals who may be at greatest

risk; the degree of seriousness of the health hazard to which the populations at risk would be exposed; the likelihood of occurrence of the hazard; and the potential consequences (immediate or long-range) of occurrence of the hazard. On the basis of this evaluation, we classify the recall (i.e., Class I, Class II, or Class III) to indicate the relative degree of health hazard of the product being recalled or considered for recall. A Class I recall is a situation in which there is a reasonable probability that the use of, or exposure to, a violative product will cause serious adverse health consequences or death (§ 7.3(m)(1)). A Class II recall is a situation in which use of, or exposure to, a violative product may cause temporary or medically reversible adverse health consequences or where the probability of serious adverse health consequences is remote (§ 7.3(m)(2)). A Class III recall is a situation in which use of, or exposure to, a violative product is not likely to cause adverse health consequences (§ 7.3(m)(3)).

In recent years, recalls of food ingredients have highlighted the potentially large impact that contamination (or potential contamination) of a single food ingredient can have on thousands of food products containing that ingredient (Ref. 19) (Ref. 20 ) (Ref. 21) (Ref. 22) (Ref. 23) (Ref. 24), with correspondingly significant disruption and cost for industry and consumers.

e. State surveillance and reporting programs. State food safety agencies are involved in identifying contaminated food by conducting surveillance testing (Ref. 25). Communication of surveillance testing results by state food safety agencies to FDA is essential for identifying contaminated food. State food safety agencies also conduct thousands of inspections and collect and analyze food samples at food manufacturers/processors every year under contract to FDA. The states perform inspections of food manufacturers, processors, packers and holders to determine compliance with the FD&C Act, state law, or both. Such inspections focus on

identifying significant CGMP violations and insanitary conditions which may render the food injurious to health, particularly those involving the introduction of, lack of controls for, and/or growth promotion of pathogenic organisms. State inspections also focus on identifying practices or other conditions that may have caused food to become filthy, putrid, decomposed, or contaminated with foreign objects (Ref. 26). FDA coordinates eLEXNET), which is a web-based information network that allows state food safety officials to share laboratory analysis findings with FDA and other Federal, state and local food safety agencies (Ref. 18). FDA also participates in FERN, which is an FDA/FSIS joint initiative to integrate the nation's food-testing laboratories at the local, state, and Federal levels into a network that is able to respond to emergencies involving biological, chemical, or radiological contamination of food (Ref. 17).

#### 7. Outreach to Consumers and Educators

As part of its efforts to protect the public health, FDA engages in outreach efforts to provide consumers and educators with information regarding the safe handling, preparation, and consumption of food to reduce the incidence of foodborne illness.

We conduct some of our consumer and educator outreach initiatives in cooperation with other Federal departments and agencies. For example, HHS, USDA, and their constituent agencies maintain the Internet site FoodSafety.gov. FoodSafety.gov, which provides consumers and health educators with the most current information regarding, among other things, food recalls and alerts, health risks posed by particular food safety hazards, instructions for the safe handling and preparation of food, and the most current news and information released by FDA and the other participating Federal departments and agencies regarding food safety issues (Ref. 27).

We also engage in consumer outreach in partnership with non-governmental entities. Most prominently, HHS, USDA, and the U.S. Department of Education work with industry associations, academic institutions, consumer and public health organizations, and professional societies in the food sciences to support the Partnership for Food Safety Education. This partnership, among other things, educates consumers about the importance of safe food handling and health risks posed by specific foodborne illnesses, prepares and disseminates food safety curricula for use by educators, and provides information regarding how consumers can be aware of and respond to food recalls (Ref. 28).

FDA also conducts its own independent informational outreach efforts specifically designed for consumers (Ref. 29) and for educators (Ref. 30).

#### B. FDA Food Safety Modernization Act

##### 1. Requirements for Food Facilities

On January 4, 2011, the FDA Food Safety Modernization Act (FSMA) (Public Law 111–353) was signed into law. Section 103 of FSMA, Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls, amends the FD&C Act to create a new section 418 with the same name. Many of the provisions in section 103 of FSMA that are relevant to this rulemaking are codified in section 418 of the FD&C Act.

a. General requirements. Section 418 of the FD&C Act contains requirements applicable to food facilities and mandates agency rulemaking. Section 418(a) is a general provision that requires the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to evaluate the hazards that could affect food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility, identify and implement preventive controls, monitor the performance of those controls, and maintain records of the monitoring. Section 418(a) specifies that the purpose of the preventive controls is to “prevent

the occurrence of such hazards and provide assurances that such food is not adulterated under section 402 [of the FD&C Act] or misbranded under section 403(w) [of the FD&C Act] ....”

In addition to those areas specified in section 418(a) of the FD&C Act, sections 418(b)-(i) contain more specific requirements applicable to facilities. These include corrective actions (§ 418(e)), verification (§ 418(f)), a written plan and documentation (§ 418(h)), and reanalysis of hazards (§ 418(i)). Section 103(e) of FSMA creates a new section 301(uu) in the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 331(uu)) to prohibit “[t]he operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is not in compliance with section 418 [of the FD&C Act].” In section XII of this document, we discuss proposed requirements (proposed subpart C) that would implement these provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

**b. Qualified facilities.** Section 418(l) of the FD&C Act (Modified Requirements for Qualified Facilities) establishes criteria for a facility to be a qualified facility, establishes an exemption for qualified facilities, establishes modified requirements for qualified facilities, and provides that the Secretary may withdraw the exemption otherwise granted to qualified facilities in specified circumstances. Under section 418(l)(1) of the FD&C Act, a facility is a qualified facility if (1) it is a very small business as the term would be defined by this rulemaking or (2) it falls within specified limitations on the average annual monetary value of its sales and types of customers. Section 418(l)(2)(A) of the FD&C Act exempts a qualified facility from the requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls as set forth in sections 418(a)-(i) of the FD&C Act, as well as the requirements issued under section 418(n) of the FD&C Act. Section 418(l)(2)(B) of the FD&C Act requires a qualified facility to submit documentation to the Secretary related to its qualified status and also submit either

documentation of the facility's implementation and monitoring of preventive controls or documentation of its compliance with other appropriate non-Federal food safety laws. Section 418(l)(3) of the FD&C Act authorizes the Secretary to withdraw the exemption from a qualified facility in specified circumstances. In section X.C.1 of this document, we discuss a proposed exemption for qualified facilities (proposed § 117.5(a)). In section XIV of this document, we discuss a proposed process for withdrawing an exemption for a qualified facility (proposed subpart E). In section XIII.A of this document, we discuss proposed modified requirements for qualified facilities (proposed § 117.201).

c. Exemptions and exceptions. In addition to the exemption for qualified facilities in section 418(l)(2)(A) of the FD&C Act, there are several other exemptions and exceptions to the requirements specified in section 418 of the FD&C Act. Section 418(j) of the FD&C Act provides an exemption for facilities that are required to comply and are in compliance with the regulations for seafood HACCP, juice HACCP, or thermally processed low-acid foods packed in hermetically sealed containers. Section 418(k) of the FD&C Act provides an exception for activities of facilities subject to section 419 of the FD&C Act (Standards for Produce Safety). Section 103(g) of FSMA provides an exemption for certain activities regarding a dietary supplement that is in compliance with sections 402(g)(2) and 761 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 342(g)(2), 379aa-1). In sections X.C.2 through X.C.4 of this document, we discuss proposed exemptions for activities that are subject to part 123 (proposed § 117.5(b)), part 120 (proposed § 117.5(c)), part 113 (proposed § 117.5(d)), section 419 of the FD&C Act (proposed § 117.5(f)), or the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of dietary supplements (proposed § 117.5(e)).

As discussed in section II.B.2.e of this document, section 418(m) of the FD&C Act also authorizes the Secretary to create exemptions or modifications to the requirements with respect to certain facilities.

d. Rule of construction regarding alcohol-related facilities. As discussed in more detail in section X.C.7 of this document, section 116 of FSMA (21 U.S.C. 2206) (Alcohol-Related Facilities) provides a rule of construction for certain facilities engaged in the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcoholic beverages and other food. In section X.C.7 of this document, we discuss proposed exemptions related to such facilities (proposed § 117.5(i)).

## 2. Requirements for Agency Rulemaking

Section 103 of FSMA contains two separate rulemaking provisions. Section 103(a) of FSMA requires rulemaking related to the hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls required by section 418 of the FD&C Act. In addition, section 103(c) of FSMA requires rulemaking in two areas: (1) clarification of certain aspects of the definition of the term “farm” under section 415 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350d) (Registration of Food Facilities) and (2) possible exemption from or modification of requirements of section 418 and section 421 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350j) (Targeting of Inspection Resources for Domestic Facilities, Foreign Facilities, and Ports of Entry; Annual Report) for certain facilities as the Secretary deems appropriate and as further specified in section 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA.

a. General rulemaking requirements. Section 418(n)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act requires that not later than 18 months after the date of FSMA’s enactment, the Secretary issue regulations “to establish science-based minimum standards for conducting a hazard analysis, documenting hazards, implementing preventive controls, and documenting the implementation of the preventive controls ....”

b. Definition of small and very small business. Section 418(1)(5) of the FD&C Act requires the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Agriculture, to conduct a study of the food processing sector regulated by the Secretary and to make determinations in five areas. These areas include, in part, (1) distribution of food production by type and size of operation, (2) the proportion of food produced by each type and size of operation, (3) the number and types of food facilities co-located on farms, (4) the incidence of foodborne illness originating from each size and type of operation, and (5) the effect on foodborne illness risk associated with certain activities regarding food.

Section 418(n)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act requires that the regulations define the terms “small business” and “very small business,” taking into consideration the study of the food processing sector required by section 418(1)(5) of the FD&C Act. These terms are significant because section 103 of FSMA contains several provisions specific to such entities.

- Small and very small businesses are subject to modifications or exemptions from requirements under section 418 or 421 of the FD&C Act for facilities engaged only in specific types of on-farm activities and involving foods that the Secretary determines to be low risk (§ 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA).
- Small and very small businesses are not subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act until 6 months (small businesses) or 18 months (very small businesses) after the effective date of FDA’s final rule (§ 103(i) of FSMA).
- A very small business is deemed a “qualified facility” and would, therefore, qualify for the exemptions as discussed in section X.C.1 of this document. (§ 418(1)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act).



Consistent with section 418(l)(5) of the FD&C Act, FDA has consulted with USDA during its study of the food processing sector (Ref. 31). The study is available in the docket established for this proposed rule (Ref. 32). We request comment on that study. In section X.B.4 of this document, we discuss our proposed definitions for small business and very small business. We will consider comments regarding the study, as well as comments regarding our proposed definitions for small and very small business, in any final rule based on this proposed rule.

c. Clarification of the term “facility.” Generally, section 418 of the FD&C Act applies to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a “facility.” Section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act defines “facility” as “a domestic facility or a foreign facility that is required to register under section 415.” Section 415 of the FD&C Act, in turn, requires any facility engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding food for consumption in the United States to register with the Secretary.

The requirement in section 415 of the FD&C Act that a facility must register does not apply to farms. FDA’s implementing regulations for section 415 (see part 1, subpart H) (21 CFR part 1, subpart H; hereinafter the section 415 registration regulations) define “farm,” in relevant part, as “a facility in one general physical location devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops, the raising of animals (including seafood), or both” (§ 1.227(b)(3)) (21 CFR 1.227(b)(3)). The term “farm” includes a facility that packs or holds food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership (§ 1.227(b)(3)(i)). Under that same definition, the term “farm” also includes a facility that manufactures/processes food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership (§ 1.227(b)(3)(ii)).

Section 103(c)(1)(A) of FSMA requires that not later than 9 months after the date of enactment, the Secretary publish a notice of proposed rulemaking in the Federal Register to issue regulations for purposes of section 415 of the FD&C Act with respect to “activities that constitute on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership” and “activities that constitute on-farm manufacturing or processing of food that is not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.” The regulation is intended to “enhance the implementation” of section 415 and “clarify the activities that are included within the definition of the term ‘facility’” (§ 301(c)(1)(B) of FSMA). In section VIII.E of this document, we discuss our proposal to revise the section 415 registration regulations to enhance the implementation of section 415 and to clarify the definition of the term “facility.”

d. Science-based risk analysis and requirements under sections 418 and 421 of the FD&C Act. Section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA requires that in issuing the proposed rule the Secretary conduct a science-based risk analysis of:

- “Specific types of on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership, as such packing and holding relates to specific foods; and
- Specific on-farm manufacturing and processing activities as such activities relate to specific foods that are not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.”

As part of the rulemaking, the Secretary is required to consider the results of the science-based risk analysis and exempt certain facilities from the requirements in sections 418 and 421 of the FD&C Act or modify those requirements, as the Secretary determines appropriate, if such

facilities are only engaged in specific types of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activities the Secretary determines to be low risk, and involving specific foods that the Secretary determines to be low risk (§ 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA). Any exemption or modification is limited to small and very small businesses (§ 103(c)(1)(D)(ii) of FSMA).

In section VIII.G of this document, we discuss our approach to the requirement in FSMA section 103(c) for a science-based risk analysis of the types of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding operations that can involve food that is not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership for purposes of section 415 of the FD&C Act and request comment on that approach. The final approach will consider comments received to this proposed rule.

In sections VIII.I and X.C of this document, we discuss proposed exemptions for small and very small businesses that are solely engaged in certain types of “low risk” activities involving the on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of certain “low risk” foods from the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act (proposed § 117.5(g) and (h)). In section VIII.J of this document, we discuss our tentative conclusion that we should not exempt or modify the frequency requirements under 421 based solely upon whether a facility only engages in such low-risk activity/food combinations and is a small or very small business and we seek comment on this proposal.

e. Exemption or modification of requirements for certain facilities. Under section 418(m) of the FD&C Act, the Secretary may exempt or modify the requirements for compliance of section 418 of the FD&C Act for hazard analysis and preventive controls for facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of RACs (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing. As discussed in section X.C.8 of this document, in accordance with

the discretionary language of section 418(m), FDA tentatively concludes that facilities solely engaged in the storage of RACs, other than fruits and vegetables, intended for further distribution or processing should be exempt from the requirements for hazard analysis and preventive controls that we are proposing to establish in subpart C of part 117.

Section 418(m) of the FD&C Act also authorizes the Secretary to exempt or modify the requirements for compliance with section 418 for facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment. In section X.D of this document, we describe our proposal for how the requirements of part 117 would apply to such facilities (proposed § 117.7). In section X.D.4 of this document, we propose modified requirements for such facilities, directed at the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment and that require time/temperature control to limit the growth of, or toxin formation by, microorganisms of public health significance (proposed § 117.206).

f. Animal food and intentional adulteration. FDA proposes to implement section 103 of FSMA in several regulations, rather than a single regulation that covers all food and hazards subject to preventive controls. This proposal is applicable to certain hazards that may be associated with a food facility that manufactures, processes, packs or holds human food. Section 103 of FSMA applies to “food,” which is not limited to human food. Section 201(f) of the FD&C Act defines “food” to include “articles used for food or drink for man or other animals” (21 U.S.C. 321(f)). FDA tentatively concludes that the differences between human and animal food are best addressed through separate regulations. FDA plans to propose a separate regulation applicable to certain hazards that may be associated with a food facility that manufactures, processes, packs or holds animal food. Establishments that manufacture, process, pack, or hold food for both humans and animals should consider this proposed rule as well as the

future proposed rule directed to CGMPs and hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls for food for animals, as there may be differences in the requirements that would be applicable to such establishments under the two proposed rules.

In addition, this rulemaking is not intended to address “hazards that may be intentionally introduced, including by acts of terrorism.” (§ 418(b)(2) of the FD&C Act). FDA plans to implement section 103 of FSMA regarding such hazards in a separate rulemaking in the future. FDA tentatively concludes that intentional hazards, which are not addressed in traditional HACCP or other food safety systems, likely will require different kinds of controls and would be best addressed in a separate rulemaking. However, we also recognize that some kinds of intentional adulterants could be viewed as reasonably likely to occur, e.g., in foods concerning which there is a widely recognized risk of economically motivated adulteration in certain circumstances. An example of this kind of hazard is the addition of melamine to certain food products apparently to enhance perceived quality and/or protein content. We request comment on whether to include potential hazards that may be intentionally introduced for economic reasons. We also request comment on when an economically motivated adulterant can be considered reasonably likely to occur.

### C. Preventive Controls and Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP) Systems

#### 1. HACCP Systems

HACCP is a preventive strategy for food safety that involves a systematic approach to the identification and assessment of the risk (likelihood of occurrence and severity) of hazards from a particular food or food production process or practice and the control of those hazards.

HACCP has been endorsed by the National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods (NACMCF) as an effective and rational means of ensuring food safety. NACMCF is an

advisory committee chartered under USDA (Ref. 33). NACMCF includes participants from USDA's FSIS, HHS (FDA and CDC), the Department of Commerce (National Marine Fisheries Service), the Department of Defense (Office of the Army Surgeon General), academia, industry, state employees and consumer groups. NACMCF provides guidance and recommendations to the Secretaries of USDA and HHS, as well as other Federal agencies, regarding the microbiological safety of foods. Although HACCP was first introduced in 1971 at the National Conference for Food Protection, it was not widely used by the food industry until the concept was more fully developed by NACMCF. In 1989 NACMCF adopted "HACCP Principles for Food Production," which was revised in 1992; in 1997, NACMCF adopted its current version, "Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point Principles and Application Guidelines" (Ref. 34). Revisions in both the 1992 and 1997 NACMCF HACCP documents were patterned after changes made in HACCP documents issued by the Codex Alimentarius Commission (Codex). (The Codex Alimentarius Commission was formed in 1963 by the Food and Agriculture Organization and the World Health Organization of the United Nations to develop food standards, guidelines, and related texts such as codes of practice, and is recognized under the World Trade Organization Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures as the international standards organization for food safety.) (See the discussion of Codex HACCP documents in section II.C.5.e of this document).

HACCP is designed for use in all segments of the food industry from growing, harvesting, processing, manufacturing, distributing, and merchandising to preparing food for consumption (Ref. 34). Under HACCP, a food operation develops a plan that identifies food hazards applicable to the food and production process, and the points in the production process where a food hazard could be introduced, controlled or enhanced. A failure at these points would

likely result in a food hazard being created or allowed to persist. These points are referred to as critical control points (CCPs). Under HACCP, identified CCPs are systematically monitored to ensure that critical limits are not exceeded, and records are kept of that monitoring. Corrective actions are taken when control of a CCP is lost, including proper disposition of the food produced during that period, and these actions are documented. The effectiveness of HACCP is also systematically verified by the food operation.

## 2. Section 103 of FSMA and HACCP

FDA tentatively concludes for several reasons that HACCP is the appropriate framework to reference in interpreting and implementing section 103 of FSMA. As discussed in section II.B of this document, section 103 of FSMA amended the FD&C Act by adding section 418. Section 418 of the FD&C Act and section 103 of FSMA are both titled “Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls.” This title identifies two critical elements of HACCP – hazard analysis and preventive controls. As discussed in section II.C.4.a of this document, a hazard analysis is the first of the seven principles of HACCP, and is key to an effective food safety system. Further, establishment of a system of preventive controls for these hazards is the central purpose of HACCP. (See 66 FR 6138 and 60 FR 65096 stating that FDA issued the juice and seafood HACCP regulations because a system of preventive controls is the most effective and efficient way to ensure that these products are safe.) In addition, section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act requires that in promulgating the regulations to implement preventive controls, “the Secretary shall review regulatory hazard analysis and preventive control programs in existence . . . to ensure that such regulations are consistent, to the extent practicable, with applicable domestic and internationally-recognized standards ....” (See section XVI.B of this document for a discussion of this review.) The hazard analysis and preventive control systems in existence are

all based on HACCP principles. Further, section 418 uses HACCP terminology throughout, including hazard analysis, monitoring, corrective actions, and verification. The close relationship of section 418 to HACCP is further illustrated by an exemption created in section 418(j) for “seafood, juice, and low-acid canned food facilities subject to HACCP.”

At the same time, FDA notes that not every provision in section 418 of the FD&C Act is identical to HACCP as described in current literature. For example, as discussed in section II.C.4.b of this document, HACCP systems focus on determining CCPs, whereas section 418(c) requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any (emphasis added). As another example, as discussed in section II.C.4.c of this document, HACCP systems focus on establishing critical limits for CCPs, whereas section 418(c) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and implement preventive controls, including at CCPs, if any, without specifying that the preventive controls establish critical limits. In fact, section 418 of the FD&C Act does not use the term “critical limit.” Although the approach in section 418 and this proposed rule aligns well with HACCP, it differs in part in that preventive controls may be required at points other than at critical control points and critical limits would not be required for all preventive controls.

As another example, as discussed in section II.C.4.a of this document, HACCP systems refer to hazards as “biological, chemical and physical agents” whereas section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility, including “biological, chemical, physical, and radiological hazards” (emphasis added). Although radiological hazards are not common, the consequences to consumers of exposure to radiological



hazards may be severe (e.g., cancer). As discussed in section II.C.4.a of this document, under HACCP systems the hazard analysis includes a written assessment of the likelihood that the hazard will occur and its severity if it does occur (emphasis added). Thus, section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act is consistent with the framework for HACCP even though it lists an additional type of hazard that must be considered and controlled as necessary.

Throughout this document, we identify the sections of FSMA applicable to specific proposed provisions and describe how the proposed provisions relate to HACCP principles as established by NACMCF in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, by Federal agencies in HACCP regulations, and by Codex in the HACCP Annex in the Codex General Principles of Food Hygiene (Ref. 35).

### 3. Five Preliminary Tasks of HACCP/Preventive Controls

The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend a process for developing a HACCP system, or the implementation of a HACCP plan (Ref. 34). The “five preliminary tasks” of HACCP include: (1) Assembling a HACCP team; (2) describing the food and its distribution; (3) identifying the intended use and consumers of the food; (4) developing a flow diagram; and (5) verifying the flow diagram. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines advise that these preliminary tasks be accomplished before the application of HACCP principles to developing a HACCP plan for a specific food and process. Although FDA is not proposing to mandate that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility conduct these preliminary tasks, facilities will greatly benefit from completing these preliminary tasks in developing their hazard analysis and risk-based preventive control systems.

#### 4. The Seven Principles of HACCP

NACMCF has developed and adopted seven principles that describe the HACCP concept: (1) Conduct a hazard analysis; (2) Determine the CCPs; (3) Establish the critical limits; (4) Establish monitoring procedures; (5) Establish corrective actions; (6) Establish verification procedures; and (7) Establish recordkeeping and documentation procedures (Ref. 34). We discuss these immediately below.

a. Principle 1: Conduct a hazard analysis. The first HACCP principle is the identification of the hazards associated with the product and process. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define a hazard as a biological, chemical, or physical agent that is reasonably likely to cause illness or injury in the absence of its control (Ref. 34). The hazard analysis includes an identification of the hazard, an assessment of the likelihood that the hazard will occur and its severity if it does occur, and identification of control measures for each identified hazard, all of which should be documented.

b. Principle 2: Determine the CCPs. The second HACCP principle is identification of CCPs. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define a CCP as a step at which control can be applied and is essential to prevent or eliminate a food safety hazard or reduce it to an acceptable level (Ref. 34). Steps in the manufacturing process that may be CCPs include heat treatment, chilling, product formulation, and metal detection.

c. Principle 3: Establish the critical limits. The third HACCP principle is establishing the critical limits, which involves establishing values for parameters that must be met for each control measure associated with a CCP. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define a critical limit as a maximum and/or minimum value to which a biological, chemical or physical parameter must be controlled at a CCP to prevent, eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level the occurrence

of a food safety hazard (Ref. 34). Critical limits can be thought of as boundaries of safety for each CCP (Codex defines a critical limit as a criterion which separates acceptability from unacceptability (Ref. 35)) and may be set for control measures such as temperature, time, physical dimensions, moisture level, water activity, pH, and available chlorine. A critical limit is used to distinguish between safe and unsafe operating conditions at a CCP. For example, the minimum temperature and the minimum time at that temperature in a heat treatment step that will kill specific pathogens identified as hazards for a food are the critical limits for that CCP.

d. Principle 4: Establish monitoring procedures. The fourth HACCP principle is establishing monitoring procedures. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define monitoring to mean conducting a planned sequence of observations or measurements to assess whether a CCP is under control and to produce an accurate record of the monitoring for use in future verification procedures (Ref. 34). For example, monitoring can assess whether a CCP is operating within its critical limit. An unsafe food may result if a process is not properly controlled and a deviation occurs. Because of the potentially serious consequences of a deviation from a critical limit, monitoring procedures must be effective. Depending on the circumstances, monitoring may be on a continuous or a non-continuous basis. Continuous monitoring of a critical limit is possible with many types of physical and chemical methods. When it is not possible to monitor a critical limit on a continuous basis, monitoring intervals must be established that are frequent enough to determine whether the measure designed to control the hazard is consistently being met.

e. Principle 5: Establish corrective actions. The fifth HACCP principle is establishing corrective actions. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define corrective actions as procedures followed when a deviation occurs (Ref. 34). While the HACCP system is intended to prevent deviations in a planned process from occurring, total prevention can rarely, if ever, be achieved.

Therefore, procedures need to be in place to fix or correct the cause of the deviation to ensure that the CCP is brought under control, there is appropriate disposition of any food produced during a deviation, and records are made of the corrective actions taken. Out-of-control situations should be used to identify opportunities for improvement of the process to prevent future occurrences.

f. Principle 6: Establish verification procedures. The sixth HACCP principle is establishing verification procedures. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define verification as those activities, other than monitoring, that determine the validity of the HACCP plan and that the system is operating according to the plan (Ref. 34). These activities may involve the application of methods, procedures, tests, and evaluations, other than monitoring. Verification activities, particularly those directed to validation, may be very scientific and technical in nature. For additional information about verification activities, see the discussion in section XII.G of this document. For additional information about the specific verification activity of “validation,” see the discussion in section XII.G.2 of this document.

g. Principle 7: Establish recordkeeping and documentation procedures. The seventh HACCP principle is establishing recordkeeping and documentation procedures. Written HACCP records list the hazards, CCPs, and critical limits identified by the facility, as well as the procedures that the facility intends to use to implement the system. Written HACCP records also include those generated during the operation of the HACCP system.

## 5. History of the Use of HACCP

a. HACCP regulation for fish and fishery products. In 1995, FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 123 procedures for the safe and sanitary processing and importing of fish and fishery products (60 FR 65096). Part 123 requires, among other things, that seafood processors

apply HACCP principles to the processing of seafood. In the proposed rule to establish part 123, FDA identified several food safety hazards specific to the processing of fish and fishery products that warranted the promulgation of the seafood HACCP regulation, including microbiological hazards, naturally occurring toxins, chemical contaminants that might be present in the aquatic environment, and decomposition of fish and fishery products that might result from improper product handling and produce the toxin, histamine (59 FR 4142 at 4143 – 4144, January 28, 1994).

The HACCP regulation for seafood incorporated the seven HACCP principles as established in the 1992 revision of NACMCF's HACCP Principles for Food Production ("Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point System") (Ref. 36). The HACCP regulation for seafood also requires that individuals assigned the tasks of developing, reassessing, or modifying a HACCP plan, and conducting required records review must be adequately trained in the application of HACCP principles to fish and fishery products, evidenced either by the successful completion of the equivalent of a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by FDA or by sufficiently adequate work experience (§ 123.10). The HACCP regulation for seafood does not require the use of NACMCF's five preliminary tasks as prerequisites to conducting a hazard analysis or developing a HACCP plan. We believe, however, that processors greatly benefit from using these preliminary steps in developing their HACCP systems (60 FR 65096 at 65117).

The HACCP regulation for seafood also requires that processors of seafood products monitor the conditions and practices of a sanitation standard operating procedure (SSOP); correct, in a timely manner, those conditions and practices that are not met; and document the monitoring and corrections (§ 123.11). In addition, the HACCP regulation for seafood is explicit that the general, umbrella CGMP requirements for human food of part 110 apply to processors of

fish and fishery products in determining whether the facilities, methods, practices, and controls used are safe, and whether the products have been processed under sanitary conditions (§ 123.5(a)).

In section XII of this document, we describe provisions of the HACCP regulation for seafood in more detail when we compare the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls that are the subject of this document to provisions of current HACCP systems, including the HACCP regulation for seafood.

b. HACCP regulation for meat and poultry. In 1996, FSIS issued a final rule to establish in 9 CFR part 417 a regulation that, among other things, requires each meat and poultry establishment to develop and implement a system of HACCP controls designed to improve the safety of their products (61 FR 38806, July 25, 1996). In the remainder of this document, the phrase “FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry” refers to 9 CFR part 417. FSIS issued its HACCP regulation for meat and poultry in light of outbreaks of foodborne illness and studies (conducted by the National Academy of Sciences, the U.S. General Accounting Office, and FSIS) that established the need for fundamental change in the FSIS meat and poultry inspection program to improve food safety, reduce the risk of foodborne illness in the United States, and make better use of FSIS’ resources (61 FR 38806 at 38807).

The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry incorporates the seven HACCP principles as established in the 1992 revision of NACMCF’s HACCP Principles for Food Production (Ref. 36). Unlike our HACCP regulations for seafood and for juice, the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires two of the NACMCF preliminary tasks – i.e., that a flow chart describing the steps of each process and product flow in the establishment be

prepared and that the intended use and consumers of the finished product be identified (9 CFR 417.2(a)(2)).

The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires the establishment to develop, implement and maintain written SSOPs that describe the procedures an establishment will conduct daily, before and during operations, to prevent direct contamination or adulteration of products (9 CFR 416.11 and 416.12(a)). Establishments must monitor the implementation of the SSOPs (9 CFR 416.13(c)), take appropriate corrective actions (9 CFR 416.15), and maintain records that document the implementation and monitoring of the SSOPs (9 CFR 416.16).

In section XII of this document, we describe provisions of the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry in more detail when we compare the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls that are the subject of this document to provisions of current HACCP systems, including the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry.

c. HACCP regulation for juice. In 2001, FDA issued a final rule to establish in part 120 requirements to ensure the safe and sanitary processing and importation of fruit and vegetable juices for beverages (66 FR 6138). Part 120 requires, among other things, that processors of juice products apply HACCP principles to the processing of juice. We issued the juice HACCP regulation in light of a number of food safety hazards associated with juice products, including microbiological hazards that led to outbreaks of foodborne illness associated with juice products (63 FR 20449, at 20450-20451, April 24, 1998).

The HACCP regulation for juice incorporated the seven HACCP principles as established in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines adopted in 1997 and published in 1998 (Ref. 34). As with the HACCP regulation for seafood, the HACCP regulation for juice requires that individuals assigned the tasks of developing the hazard analysis, developing a HACCP plan, and verifying

and modifying the HACCP plan must be adequately trained in the application of HACCP principles to juice products, evidenced either by the successful completion of the equivalent of a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by FDA or by sufficiently adequate work experience (§ 120.13). As with the HACCP regulation for seafood, the HACCP regulation for juice does not require the use of NACMCF's five preliminary tasks as prerequisites to conducting a hazard analysis or developing a HACCP plan.

As with the HACCP regulation for seafood, the HACCP regulation for juice requires that processors of juice products monitor the conditions and practices of a sanitation standard operating procedure (SSOP); correct, in a timely manner, those conditions and practices that are not met; and document the monitoring and corrections (§ 120.6). In addition, the HACCP regulation for juice is explicit that the umbrella CGMP requirements of part 110 apply in determining whether the facilities, methods, practices, and controls used to process juice are safe, and whether the juice products have been processed under sanitary conditions (§ 120.5).

Unlike the HACCP regulation for seafood, the HACCP regulation for juice, with certain exceptions, establishes requirements for process controls for pathogen reduction (§ 120.24). The HACCP regulation for juice also establishes requirements for process verification for juice processors, under certain circumstances, to analyze their finished juice products for the presence of E. coli using specified sampling and analytical methodologies (§ 120.25).

In section XII of this document, we describe provisions of the HACCP regulation for juice in more detail when we compare the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls that are the subject of this document to provisions of current HACCP systems, including the HACCP regulation for juice.



d. Dairy HACCP pilot program. The Pasteurized Milk Ordinance (PMO) is a model milk regulation recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service/FDA for voluntary adoption by State and local milk control agencies. This model milk regulation includes provisions governing the processing, packaging and sale of Grade “A” milk and milk products and provides administrative and technical details on how to obtain satisfactory compliance. It is published to assist States and municipalities in initiating and maintaining effective programs for the prevention of milkborne disease. Currently all fifty states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico have adopted the PMO by reference or have codified the PMO in state requirements. At its biennial conferences, the National Conference on Interstate Milk Shipments (NCIMS) considers changes and modifications to the Grade “A” PMO.

Appendix K of the PMO (the PMO HACCP Appendix) describes a voluntary, NCIMS HACCP Program alternative to the traditional inspection system. No milk plant, receiving station or transfer station may participate in the voluntary NCIMS HACCP Program unless the Regulatory Agency responsible for the oversight of the facility agrees to participate with the dairy plant(s), receiving station(s) and transfer station(s) in the NCIMS HACCP Program (Ref. 37).

The PMO HACCP Appendix incorporates the seven HACCP principles established in the 1998 NACMCF HACCP guidelines and essentially follows the same requirements as described in the HACCP regulation for juice (part 120). SSOPs are referred to as “required prerequisite programs (PPs).” In contrast to the HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, the PMO HACCP Appendix requires that, in addition to the required PPs, any other PPs that the hazard analysis is relying upon to reduce the likelihood of hazards such that they would not be reasonably likely to occur also be monitored, audited, and documented. In this respect, the PMO HACCP Appendix

is broader in scope than HACCP, in that it emphasizes the importance of monitoring, auditing, and documentation for the complete food safety system rather than focusing monitoring, auditing, and documentation solely on critical control points.

e. HACCP in the international food safety community. HACCP is recognized in the international food safety community as the state-of-the-art means to ensure the safety and integrity of food. In particular, the Committee on Food Hygiene of Codex has endorsed the HACCP concept as a worldwide guideline incorporated as an Annex into the Codex General Principles of Food Hygiene (GPFH) (Ref. 35). The European Union (EU) and other countries around the world have begun to require that foods be processed using a HACCP system. A discussion on the comparison of hazard analysis and preventive controls standards in section XVI.B includes those in Regulation (EC) No 852/2004 of the European Parliament and Council of the European Union Regulation (Ref. 38) (the EU Regulation), the Australia-New Zealand Food Standards Code (Ref. 39), and the Canadian Food Inspection Agency's Food Safety Enhancement Program (Ref. 40), all of which are based on the Codex HACCP Annex.

The HACCP reference documents from NACMCF and Codex have changed over the years as experience has been gained from the application of the concept in food production. These reference documents remain consistent with each other. This harmonization is critical, as these documents serve as the basis for hazard analysis and preventive controls standards internationally, thus providing for harmonized food safety standards among countries. Such harmonization facilitates trade by establishing a framework for ensuring safety. In addition to these standards serving as the basis for requirements by governments, there has been widespread international adoption of HACCP/preventive controls by industry at the company level, and as the foundation for food safety in third-party auditing schemes and certification efforts for

companies, such as those benchmarked through the Global Food Safety Initiative (GFSI) (Ref. 41). (See section II of the Appendix to this document for more information on GFSI.)

The proposed rule would require that a food safety system similar to HACCP be implemented in food facilities and would harmonize our requirements with the recommendations and requirements of internationally recognized food safety experts/authorities, such as experts/authorities in NACMCF (Ref. 34), Codex (Ref. 35), FSANZ (Ref. 39), CFIA (Ref. 40), and the European Union (Ref. 38). The World Health Organization has recognized the importance of the HACCP system for prevention of foodborne diseases for more than 30 years and has played an important role in its development and promotion (Ref. 42). FAO likewise emphasizes the importance of HACCP and promotes it through international training and food safety manuals, e.g., for mycotoxin prevention and control (Ref. 43).

The Final Act of the Uruguay Round of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), particularly the Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (the "SPS Agreement") and the Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade, had significant implications for Codex standards. Specifically, the SPS Agreement identifies Codex standards, guidelines and other recommendations as the baseline for consumer protection. As a result, the work of Codex (including the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35) has become the reference for international food safety requirements. The Codex GPFH recommends a HACCP approach wherever possible to enhance food safety (Ref. 44). The international recognition of the HACCP approach as essential to ensuring the safety and suitability of food for human consumption enhances the potential for international trade as well as food safety (Ref. 43).

D. Food Safety Problems Associated With Manufacturing, Processing, Packing, and Holding of  
Food for Human Consumption

1. Contamination of Food

Food can become contaminated (e.g., with biological, chemical, physical, or radiological hazards) at many different steps in the farm-to-table continuum: on the farm; in packing, manufacturing/processing, or distribution facilities; during storage or transit; at retail establishments; in restaurants; and in the home. Consumption of contaminated food can lead to acute or long term illness or injury. CDC estimates that each year approximately 48 million illnesses, 128,000 hospitalizations, and 3,000 deaths are food related (Ref. 45) (Ref. 46). These numbers include all illnesses that CDC estimates are attributable to food, including those illnesses caused by unspecified agents. These estimates also include a correction factor to account for the fact that foodborne illness is under-reported (Ref. 47). Focusing only on the foodborne illnesses attributable to particular pathogens, a recent CDC report estimated that consumption of food contaminated with pathogenic bacteria (such as Campylobacter spp., Clostridium perfringens, Shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli (STEC) O157, STEC non-O157, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella spp., Vibrio species, Yersinia enterocolitica), parasites (such as Cryptosporidium spp. and Giardia intestinalis) and viruses (such as norovirus) cause more than 9 million episodes of foodborne illness, nearly 56,000 hospitalizations, and more than 1,300 deaths in the United States each year (Ref. 45). (A pathogenic microorganism is a microorganism capable of causing illness or injury.) Other food-related problems are caused by chemicals, allergens, and other harmful substances, such as glass (see sections II.D.2.b through II.D.2.d of this document for a discussion of these problems).

Early detection of contamination enables food establishments to prevent contaminated food from leaving their premises. When contamination is not detected in time to prevent contaminated food from leaving an establishment, the contamination may be detected while the food is in storage or in transit; at retail establishments; in restaurants; or in the home and often results in the need for a recall. Contamination after the food leaves the establishment may be detected during an investigation of an outbreak of foodborne illness or may be detected by end users (e.g., restaurants and consumers may identify physical hazards such as metal fragments or pieces of glass).

In recent years, we have taken a number of actions to prevent contamination of food at each step in the farm-to-table continuum. We have worked with other Federal, State, local, territorial, tribal, and foreign counterpart food safety agencies to strengthen the Nation's food safety systems across the entire distribution chain. This cooperative work has resulted in a greater awareness of potential vulnerabilities, the creation of more effective prevention programs, new or better surveillance systems, and the ability to respond more quickly to outbreaks of foodborne illness. (An outbreak of foodborne illness is the occurrence of two or more cases of a similar illness resulting from the ingestion of a common food.) However, changes in consumer preferences, changes in industry practices, and the rising volume of imports continue to pose significant challenges for FDA (72 FR 8750, February 27, 2007; 73 FR 55115, September 24, 2008). There are also many foodborne illnesses associated with unknown agents, which presents challenges in outbreak investigations (Ref. 46). In addition, microorganisms can change their characteristics by acquiring genes, including those for virulence, from other microorganisms (Ref. 48).

## 2. Microbiological, Chemical, Physical, and Radiological Hazards

In the following discussion of hazards, we highlight four categories: microbial, chemical (including allergens), physical, and radiological. Of the four types of hazards, there is far more information and data on microbiological problems associated with foods than with the others.

a. Microbiological hazards. Foodborne illness can have very serious consequences, including death. Below, we discuss several microorganisms commonly associated with foodborne illness.

### Salmonella spp.

Salmonella contamination has been associated with eggs, milk and dairy products, fish, shrimp, frog legs, yeast, coconut, sauces and salad dressing, cake mixes, cream-filled desserts and toppings, dried gelatin, peanut butter, cocoa, and chocolate (Ref. 49). In a recent report tracking trends in foodborne illness, CDC reported that in 2010 Salmonella spp. was the most common foodborne pathogen and the most common cause of hospitalization and death (Ref. 50). The incidence of foodborne illness due to Salmonella spp. has not declined significantly in the last 15 years (Ref. 50). Salmonella spp. can cause serious and sometimes fatal infections in young children, frail or elderly people, and others with weakened immune systems (Ref. 49) (Ref. 51). Healthy persons infected with Salmonella spp. often experience fever, diarrhea (which may be bloody), nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. In rare circumstances, infection with Salmonella spp. can result in the organism getting into the blood stream and producing more severe illnesses such as arterial infections (i.e., infected aneurysms), endocarditis, and arthritis (Ref. 49) (Ref. 51).

### Listeria monocytogenes

Listeria monocytogenes is another pathogen often implicated in foodborne illness. In 2011, CDC reported that of all the foodborne pathogens tracked by CDC through FoodNet, L. monocytogenes had the highest case fatality rate (12.8 percent) and the highest hospitalization rate (89.6 percent) (Ref. 50). L. monocytogenes is a bacterium that occurs widely in both agricultural (soil, plants and water) and food processing environments. L. monocytogenes can multiply slowly at refrigeration temperatures, thereby challenging an important defense against foodborne pathogens – i.e., refrigeration (Ref. 52) (Ref. 53). Ingestion of L. monocytogenes can cause listeriosis, which can be a life-threatening human illness. Serious illness almost always occurs in people considered to be at higher risk, such as the elderly and those who have a preexisting illness that reduces the effectiveness of their immune system (Ref. 54). In addition, perinatal listeriosis results from foodborne exposure of the pregnant mother leading to in utero exposure of the fetus, resulting in fetal infection that leads to fetal death, premature birth, or neonatal illness and death. L. monocytogenes also causes listerial gastroenteritis, a syndrome typically associated with mild gastrointestinal symptoms in healthy individuals (Ref. 54) (Ref. 55).

The risk of illness from L. monocytogenes associated with a particular food is dependent on five key factors (Ref. 52) (Ref. 53):

- Amount and frequency of consumption of a food;
- Frequency and extent of contamination of a food with L. monocytogenes;
- Ability of the food to support the growth of L. monocytogenes;
- Temperature of refrigerated/chilled food storage; and
- Duration of refrigerated/chilled storage.

In 2003, FDA and FSIS, in consultation with CDC, released a quantitative assessment (the FDA/FSIS Lm RA) of relative risk associated with consumption of 23 categories of ready-to-eat (RTE) foods that had a history of contamination with L. monocytogenes, or that were implicated epidemiologically with an outbreak or a sporadic case of listeriosis (Ref. 53). The FDA/FSIS Lm RA shows that the risk of illness from L. monocytogenes increases with the number of cells ingested and that there is greater risk of illness from RTE foods that support growth of L. monocytogenes than from those that do not (Ref. 56). FAO/WHO released a risk assessment on L. monocytogenes in RTE foods in 2004. A key finding of that risk assessment was that the models developed predict that nearly all cases of listeriosis result from the consumption of high numbers of the pathogen (Ref. 54). Refrigerated foods present a greater risk from L. monocytogenes because some refrigerated foods that support growth may be held for an extended period of time, thus increasing the risk if L. monocytogenes is present in a food. Growth of L. monocytogenes does not occur if the food is frozen, but the organism may survive. If a frozen food contaminated with L. monocytogenes is thawed and held at temperatures that support growth, e.g., under refrigeration, the risk of illness from L. monocytogenes in that food increases.

#### Escherichia coli O157:H7

One of the most serious foodborne pathogens in terms of symptoms is Escherichia coli O157:H7, one of the enterohemorrhagic strains of E. coli. While the incidence of E. coli O157:H7 infection has been declining in recent years, it is still among the top five pathogens causing hospitalization as a result of foodborne illness (Ref. 45).

E. coli is a normal inhabitant of the intestines of all animals, including humans. However, E. coli O157:H7 is a rare variety of E. coli that, among other virulence factors,



produces one or more related, potent toxins that cause severe damage to the lining of the intestine. Hemorrhagic colitis is the name of the acute disease caused by E. coli O157:H7. The illness is characterized by severe cramping (abdominal pain) and diarrhea, which often becomes bloody. Occasionally vomiting occurs. The illness is usually self-limited and lasts for an average of 8 days. Some victims, particularly the very young, develop hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), characterized by renal failure and hemolytic anemia. From 0 to 15 percent of hemorrhagic colitis victims may develop HUS. The disease can lead to permanent loss of kidney function and death (Ref. 49).

### Noroviruses

Noroviruses are a group of related, single-stranded RNA, non-enveloped viruses that cause acute gastroenteritis in humans. Norovirus is the official genus name for the group of viruses previously described as “Norwalk-like viruses” (NLV) or small round structured viruses (SRSVs) because of their morphologic features. Norovirus infection usually presents as acute-onset vomiting, watery non-bloody diarrhea with abdominal cramps, and nausea. Low-grade fever also occasionally occurs, and diarrhea is more common than vomiting in children. Dehydration is the most common complication, especially among the young and elderly, and may require medical attention. Symptoms usually last 24 to 72 hours. Recovery is usually complete and there is no evidence of any serious long-term sequelae (i.e., chronic conditions resulting from the illness) (Ref. 57). Noroviruses are transmitted primarily through the fecal-oral route, either by consumption of fecally contaminated food or water or by direct person-to-person spread. Noroviruses are highly contagious and as few as 10 viral particles may be sufficient to infect an individual. During outbreaks of norovirus gastroenteritis, more than one mode of transmission has been documented – e.g., initial foodborne transmission in a restaurant by a

contaminated food, followed by secondary person-to-person transmission to household contacts. CDC recently estimated that there are 5.4 million cases of domestically-acquired foodborne illness each year due to norovirus infection, and more than 58 percent of all foodborne illnesses can be attributed to norovirus (Ref. 45).

As part of the work of the CGMP Working Group, FDA reviewed its food recall records for recall actions that were classified I or II for fiscal years 1999 through 2003 to identify those recalls that took place because of problems that could have been prevented by CGMP-type preventive measures such as proper equipment sanitation, adequate training of employees, review of product labels for accuracy and agreement with the product formulation, and adequate preventive maintenance of equipment (Ref. 58). The review did not include Class III recalls because these recalled products are not likely to have caused adverse health consequences. FDA repeated this type of review 5 years later, for the period 2008-2009 (Ref. 59). In these two reports, the second most common reason for such recalls was microbiological contamination (Ref. 58) (Ref. 59). Approximately 17 percent of such recalls during 1999-2003 and 24 percent of such recalls during 2008-2009 were linked to microbiological hazards. During 2008-2009, the two most commonly implicated pathogens in such recalls were L. monocytogenes (9.9 percent) and Salmonella spp. (7.6 percent). In the first annual report on the Reportable Food Registry, the three main pathogens associated with the 229 primary reports received by the RFR were Salmonella spp. (37.6 percent), L. monocytogenes (14.4 percent), and E. coli O157:H7 (2.6 percent) (Ref. 60). In the second annual report on the Reportable Food Registry, the three main pathogens associated with the 225 primary reports received by the RFR were Salmonella spp. (38.2 percent), L. monocytogenes (17.8 percent), and E. coli O157:H7 (0.4 percent) (Ref. 61).

There are many other pathogens associated with foodborne illness; however the four described above have been implicated in many recent outbreaks of foodborne illness as demonstrated by the examples below.

- In 2006-2007, a commercial brand peanut butter contaminated with Salmonella enterica serotype Tennessee (usually shortened to Salmonella Tennessee) caused 715 confirmed cases of illness, including 129 hospitalizations (Ref. 62). (Salmonella spp. are grouped into serotypes (also called serovars) based on cell surface antigens, which are determined by serologic testing. The serotype is often named after the location where it was isolated.) This was the first outbreak associated with peanut butter in the United States (Ref. 63). Investigators detected Salmonella spp. in environmental samples collected at the manufacturer's facility as well as in finished product (Ref. 64) (Ref. 65). Two years later, in 2008-2009, another large Salmonella outbreak was linked to peanut butter and peanut paste (Ref. 66) (Ref. 67). Implicated products included contaminated peanut butter consumed at institutional settings and peanut crackers made with the contaminated peanut butter as an ingredient (Ref. 66). This single outbreak resulted in 714 confirmed cases of illnesses, including 166 hospitalizations, and 9 deaths (Ref. 67). Inspections conducted by FDA at the manufacturing facilities revealed lack of controls to prevent product contamination from pests, from an insanitary air-circulation system, from insanitary food-contact surfaces, and from the processing environment (Ref. 68) (Ref. 69).
- In 2007, a puffed snack food was implicated in a Salmonella Wandsworth and Salmonella Typhimurium outbreak. There were 87 confirmed reports of illnesses, including 8 hospitalizations. The likely source of contamination was a contaminated ingredient – i.e., imported dried vegetable powder that was applied to the puffed snack food after the cooking step (Ref. 51) (Ref. 70).

- From October 2008 to March 2009, a multistate L. monocytogenes outbreak was linked to Mexican-style cheese that was contaminated post-pasteurization. There were 8 confirmed cases of illness in 5 states (Ref. 71). An investigation at the plant revealed the potential for product contamination due to deficiencies in cleaning and plant and equipment maintenance (Ref. 72).

- In 2008-2009, white pepper was implicated in a Salmonella Rissen outbreak that resulted in a 87 confirmed cases of illness, including 8 hospitalizations and 1 death (Ref. 73) (Ref. 74). During the investigation, FDA isolated the outbreak strain from raw whole white pepper, in-process samples, finished products, and environmental samples taken at various locations throughout the processing areas (Ref. 75).

- In 2009, a prepackaged, refrigerated cookie dough was implicated in an E. coli O157:H7 outbreak that caused 76 confirmed cases of illness, including 35 hospitalizations (Ref. 76) (Ref. 77). E. coli O157:H7 was found in unopened packages of cookie dough in the production facility, although it was not the outbreak strain (Ref. 77) (Ref. 78).

- In 2011, an outbreak of listeriosis from cantaloupes was attributed to insanitary conditions at a facility that washed, packed, cooled, and stored intact cantaloupes (Ref. 79) (Ref. 80). The outbreak appears to have occurred due to a combination of factors, including pooled water on the floor of the facility (which was also difficult to clean), poorly designed equipment (not easily cleaned and sanitized) that was previously used for a different commodity, no pre-cool step, a truck parked near the packing area that had visited a cattle operation, and possible low level contamination from the growing/harvesting operation (Ref. 79).

b. Chemical hazards other than food allergens. There are a variety of “chemical” hazards that may be associated with food, including pesticide and drug residues, natural toxins,

decomposition resulting in the production of toxins such as histamine, unapproved food or color additives, and food allergens. (We discuss food allergens in more detail in the next section of this document). Under the FD&C Act, certain products, such as food additives, color additives, new animal drugs, and pesticides require premarket approval before they may be legally used. (In the case of pesticides, EPA “registers” (i.e., approves) the use of pesticides and establishes tolerances (the maximum amounts of residues that are permitted in or on a food) if the use of a particular pesticide may result in residues in or on food. FDA enforces those tolerances, except for meat, poultry, and certain egg products, which are the responsibility of FSIS (Ref. 81). Moreover, this approval can be limited so that the product may only be used legally on or with specific foods, or for specific purposes, for which approval has been obtained. This limitation reflects a longstanding recognition that the safety of these types of products is variable and must be established on a use-by-use basis. Whether an additive, drug, or pesticide is safe for a particular use, in a particular food, at a particular level, depends on factors such as the amount of the food that is consumed and, if the additive, drug, or pesticide is ingested by a living animal before slaughter, how the product is metabolized in that animal.

Therefore, an additive, drug, or pesticide that has been approved for use in some foods, but not other foods, is deemed by the FD&C Act to be unsafe for use with those other foods. By specifically identifying pesticides, drug residues, and unapproved food and color additives as potential known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that a facility must consider and evaluate in its hazard analysis, section 418(b) of the FD&C Act emphasizes the current provisions of the FD&C Act regarding substances that require premarket review.

Natural toxins (such as aflatoxin in foods such as peanuts and tree nuts and patulin in apple juice products) are well recognized as hazards (Ref. 82) (Ref. 83) (Ref. 84) (Ref. 85).

Decomposition products such as histamine, produced from the amino acid histidine when certain bacteria grow, can pose a risk to health. Biogenic amines other than histamine have been associated with illnesses, and these may also be formed when bacteria grow in some foods. Although certain fish species are the most common source of illness from histamine and other biogenic amines, illness from histamine has been reported from consumption of other foods, in particular cheese (Ref. 86) (Ref. 87). Heavy metals (such as lead) can lead to adverse health consequences (such as impaired cognitive development in children) (Ref. 88).

Depending on the particular chemical hazard and its level in the food, contamination of food with a chemical hazard may lead to immediate or near-term onset of illness (e.g., gastrointestinal illness), or may more commonly be associated with chronic exposure and long-term effects. Industrial chemicals (such as caustic cleaning compounds) can cause an acute reaction. Examples of long-term effects include impaired cognitive development in children exposed over time to relatively low levels of lead in contaminated candy (Ref. 88) and liver cancer as the result of chronic exposure to the mycotoxin aflatoxin (Ref. 89 (Ref. 90).

c. Chemical hazards--food allergens. Food allergies are immune-mediated adverse reactions to proteins. It has been estimated that food allergies affect four to six percent of children and two to three percent of adults (Ref. 91) (Ref. 92) (Ref. 93). A recent study by CDC estimates that approximately 3 million children in the United States (3.9 percent) have food allergies (Ref. 94). This study also reported that the prevalence of food allergies increased by 18 percent in this age group between 1997 and 2007 (Ref. 94).

The severity of a food allergic reaction varies depending on factors such as the amount of allergen ingested, the type of allergen, and the presence of other underlying medical conditions. Sensitive individuals may experience reactions to allergen doses as low as a few micrograms of

food protein (Ref. 95) (Ref. 96) (Ref. 97). As high as one-third of sensitive individuals can experience severe reactions at the minimal eliciting dose of an allergen.

Allergic reactions from food result in an estimated 125,000 emergency room visits in the United States each year (Ref. 98), and as many as 100-150 deaths in the United States each year (Ref. 99) (Ref. 100). For children under 18 years of age, CDC estimates that there are approximately 9,500 food allergy-related hospitalizations per year (Ref. 101). The signs and symptoms associated with allergic reactions can range from oral irritation and swelling to cardiovascular collapse (Ref. 102).

Although more than 170 different foods have been reported to cause allergic reactions, most severe reactions are caused by the major food allergens defined in the Food Allergen Labeling and Consumer Protection Act (FALCPA) (21 U.S.C. 321(qq)): milk, egg, fish, crustacean shellfish, tree nuts, wheat, peanuts, and soybeans. These eight allergens account for 90 percent of allergic reactions in affected individuals (Ref. 101). FALCPA amended the FD&C Act to prescribe the manner in which food labels must disclose that a food is, or contains an ingredient that bears or contains, a major food allergen (one of the eight listed above).

The most common CGMP related problem we have identified that resulted in a recall, both before and after FALCPA was passed, is labeling problems (i.e., undeclared allergen). In conjunction with the work of the CGMP Working Group, FDA reviewed CGMP-related food recalls during the period 1999-2003 (Ref. 58). Labeling problems accounted for 68 percent of food recalls, including 34 percent of recalls due to undeclared major food allergens. FDA followed up with a similar review of CGMP-related food recalls during the period 2008-2009, with a focus on primary recalls. (A primary recall is a recall initiated by a firm where the food safety problem first occurred. A subsequent recall is triggered by a primary recall. In a

subsequent recall, the recalling firm is a recipient of an ingredient that is implicated in a primary recall.) In that follow-up review, labeling problems accounted for 62 percent of primary food recalls, including 43 percent of recalls due to undeclared major food allergens (Ref. 59). Thus, although FALCPA was passed in 2004, we continue to see problems with undeclared allergens in foods, as evidenced by recalls.

Some of the problems with undeclared allergens come to light only after consumers experience allergic reactions. For example, in August 2010, a prepared food with undeclared milk was recalled after a consumer complaint of an allergic reaction. It was discovered that the “natural flavors” used might have contained a milk product, but milk was not listed as an allergen on the product label (Ref. 103). In December 2010, a snack product with undeclared egg was recalled after a consumer complaint of an allergic reaction. The egg-containing product was mistakenly packaged in packaging designed for a similar product that did not contain egg (Ref. 104).

d. Physical hazards. Physical hazards include stones, glass, or metal fragments that could inadvertently be introduced into food. Physical hazards may be associated with raw materials, especially raw agricultural commodities. The facility and equipment can also be a source of physical hazards, e.g., container glass and metal fragments such as nuts and bolts from equipment used in manufacturing/processing.

The first RFR Annual Report issued in January 2011 identified only three primary RFR entries for “foreign objects” (which were physical hazards that could have resulted in serious adverse health consequences or death), and all of these were in animal feed or pet food (Ref. 60). However, there have been recalls of human foods due to contamination or potential contamination with physical hazards. In October 2010, several types of frozen vegetables were



recalled after shards of broken glass were found in some packages (Ref. 105) and in May 2011 several types of English muffins and bread products were recalled due to possible contamination with small pieces of metal (Ref. 106).

e. Radiological hazards. Radiological contamination of foods is a rare event. Examples of radiological hazards include radionuclides such as radium-226, radium-228, uranium-235, uranium-238, plutonium-239, strontium-90, iodine-131, and cesium-137. The most common way these radionuclides are incorporated into foods is through use of water that contains a radionuclide to manufacture a food. For example, in certain locations in the United States, high concentrations of radium-226, radium-228 and uranium have been detected in private wells (Ref. 107) (Ref. 108). Radiological hazards also may result from accidental contamination, e.g., contamination arising from accidental release from a nuclear facility or from damage to a nuclear facility from a natural disaster. In 2011, following the damage to a nuclear power plant during an earthquake and tsunami in Japan, radioactivity was subsequently detected in foods, particularly milk, vegetables, and seafood produced in areas neighboring the plant (Ref. 109).

Consuming food contaminated with radioactive material will increase the amount of radioactivity a person is exposed to, which could have adverse health effects. The health effect depends upon the radionuclide and the amount a person is exposed to. For instance, exposure to certain levels of radioactive iodine is associated with increased risk of thyroid cancer (Ref. 109).

f. Summary. As discussed above, food safety problems associated with microbiological, chemical, physical, and radiological hazards continue to cause illnesses and deaths and result in significant recalls. In its reviews of CGMP-related food recalls, FDA summarized key factors that contributed to the food safety problems that initiated the recalls. For recalls during 1999-2003, FDA concluded that the contributing factors (there could be more than one for a single

recall) included incorrect packaging/labeling (68 percent), ineffective employee training (32 percent), failure to follow processing standard operation procedures (26 percent), excess/mistaken addition of chemicals/ingredients (9 percent), contamination of raw materials (8 percent), ineffective use of sanitation principles (8 percent), and unknown (4 percent). For recalls during 2008-2009, FDA used a slightly different methodology to categorize the contributing factors; the contributing factors included lack of label controls (57 percent), lack of supplier controls (37 percent), deficiencies in employee training (24 percent), lack of sanitation controls (17 percent), poor processing controls (13 percent), lack of environmental monitoring (9 percent), and unknown (1 percent). The findings from the two recall analyses demonstrate that over the past decade, similar types of food safety problems caused by similar types of contributing factors continue to challenge the food industry (Ref. 58) (Ref. 59).

### 3. Preventing Food Safety Problems

As discussed in section II.C of this document, HACCP is a preventive food safety strategy that is a systematic approach to the identification and assessment of the risk of hazards from a particular food or food production process or practice and the control of those hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. The HACCP system aims to identify the points in the manufacturing process at which hazards might occur and to continuously monitor and control those points in an attempt to ensure that products meet pre-specified performance criteria (Ref. 34). The HACCP system is universally endorsed by international bodies such as Codex, the Food and Agriculture Organization, and the World Health Organization. During the last few years, HACCP systems have been mandated by U.S. Federal regulations established by FDA for seafood and juice, and established by FSIS for meat and poultry. (In the remainder of this document, we use the term “Federal HACCP regulations” to refer to these HACCP regulations

for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry.) Codex has issued guidelines for HACCP systems (Ref. 35), and several industrialized nations or unions have mandated HACCP for part or all of their food industries (Ref. 38) (Ref. 39) (Ref. 40).

As discussed in sections II.C.1 through II.C.4 of this document, HACCP is a preventive system made up of interdependent activities including hazard analysis, preventive controls, monitoring, corrective actions, verification, and record keeping associated with these activities. These activities work together to prevent food safety problems; the individual activities, by themselves, are not as effective as the combination of these activities in the complete HACCP system. For example, a facility may determine that certain pathogens are reasonably likely to occur in a food product and establish and implement a heat treatment, for a specified combination of time and temperature, as a control to prevent the pathogens from contaminating finished food products. Unless the facility monitors the temperature and time during the heat treatment, the facility will not be able to determine whether its preventive control was, in fact, implemented. Moreover, the monitoring, by itself, would provide less value if the temperature was not documented during the monitoring and the documentation was not reviewed so that the facility can verify that the proper temperature was achieved for sufficient time. If the proper temperature or time is not achieved, corrective actions would be necessary to ensure that the food is reprocessed, diverted to a use that does not raise a food safety concern, or disposed. For the heat treatment to be effective, the level of any pathogens contaminating ingredients or other raw materials used to make the food must not exceed the level of pathogens that the heat treatment is validated to eliminate.

As discussed in section III of this document, FDA tentatively concludes that a modern food safety system based on HACCP principles can address the food safety problems discussed in sections II.D.1 through II.D.2 of this document.

#### E. The Role of Testing as a Verification Measure in a Food Safety System

The safety of food is principally ensured by the effective implementation of scientifically valid preventive control measures throughout the food chain (Ref. 34) (Ref. 110). Prevention of hazards in food is much more effective than trying to differentiate safe from unsafe food using testing. Although testing is rarely considered a control measure, it plays a very important role in ensuring the safety of food. An important purpose of testing is to verify that control measures, including those related to suppliers and those verified through environmental monitoring, are controlling the hazard (Ref. 111) (Ref. 112). Testing is used in conjunction with other verification measures in the food safety system, such as audits of suppliers, observations of whether activities are being conducted according to the food safety plan, and reviewing records to determine whether process controls are meeting specified limits for parameters established in the food safety plan. As discussed in the Appendix to this document (see sections I.C, I.E, and I.F of the Appendix), microbial testing may include:

- Testing raw materials and ingredients to verify that suppliers have significantly minimized or prevented hazards reasonably likely to occur in the raw materials and ingredients;
- Testing the environment to verify that sanitation controls have significantly minimized or prevented the potential for environmental pathogens to contaminate RTE food; and
- Testing finished product to verify that preventive controls have significantly minimized or prevented hazards reasonably likely to occur in the food.

Each type of testing provides information applicable to managing hazards in foods, depending on the food and process. We discuss the role of testing as a verification measure in a food safety system in section I of the Appendix to this document.

#### F. The Role of Supplier Approval and Verification Programs in a Food Safety System

The development of a supplier approval and verification program can be part of a preventive approach. Because many facilities acting as suppliers procure their raw materials and ingredients from other suppliers, there is often a chain of suppliers before a raw material or other ingredient reaches the manufacturer/processor. Using a preventive approach, a facility receiving raw materials or ingredients from a supplier can help ensure that the supplier (or a supplier to the supplier) has implemented preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur in that raw material or other ingredient unless the receiving facility will itself control the identified hazard.

A supplier approval and verification program is a means of ensuring that raw materials and ingredients are procured from those suppliers that can meet company specifications and have appropriate programs in place, including those related to the safety of the raw materials and ingredients. A supplier approval program can ensure a methodical approach to identifying such suppliers. A supplier verification program can help provide initial and ongoing assurance that suppliers are complying with practices to achieve adequate control of hazards in raw materials or ingredients. We discuss supplier approval and verification programs in more detail in section II of the Appendix to this document.

### III. Legal Authority

FDA is proposing changes to the Current Good Manufacturing Regulation under the FD&C Act and the Public Health Service Act. FDA is proposing changes to 21 CFR Part 1,

Subparts H, I, and J under the FDA Food Safety Modernization Act and the FD&C Act. FDA is proposing all other new requirements under the FDA Food Safety Modernization Act, the FD&C Act and the Public Health Service Act.

#### A. Changes to Current 21 CFR Part 1, Subparts H, I, and J

Section 103(c)(1)(A) of FSMA requires that the Secretary publish a notice of proposed rulemaking in the Federal Register to issue regulations for purposes of section 415 of the FD&C Act (Registration of Food Facilities) with respect to “activities that constitute on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership” and “activities that constitute on-farm manufacturing or processing of food that is not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.” In section VIII.E of this document, we discuss our proposal to revise the section 415 registration regulations (21 CFR subpart H) to clarify the types of activities that are included as part of the definition of the term “facility” under section 415 of the FD&C Act and the scope of the exemption for “farms” provided by section 415 of the FD&C Act. The proposed rule also would make corresponding changes in part 1, subpart I (Prior Notice of Imported Food) and in part 1, subpart J (Establishment, Maintenance, and Availability of Records). FDA’s legal authority to modify these regulations is derived from section 103(c) of FSMA and 21 U.S.C. 414, 415, 381(m) and 371(a).

#### B. Changes to Current 21 CFR Part 110

FDA’s legal authority to require Current Good Manufacturing Practices derives from sections 402(a)(3), (a)(4) and 701(a) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 342(a)(3), 342(a)(4), and 371(a)). Section 402(a)(3) of the FD&C Act provides that a food is adulterated if it consists in whole or in part of any filthy, putrid, or decomposed substance, or if it is otherwise unfit for

food. Section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act provides that a food is adulterated if it has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health. Under section 701(a) of the FD&C Act, FDA is authorized to issue regulations for the efficient enforcement of the FD&C Act. The changes to the current CGMP regulation proposed in this document clarify the existing requirements of the regulation and update existing requirements to reflect changes in the food industry and in scientific understanding of food safety since issuance of the current regulation. In addition to the FD&C Act, FDA’s legal authority for the proposed changes to current CGMP requirements derives from the PHS Act to the extent such measures are related to communicable disease. Authority under the PHS Act for the proposed regulations is derived from the provisions of sections 311, 361, and 368 (42 U.S.C. 243, 264, and 271) that relate to communicable disease. The PHS Act authorizes the Secretary to make and enforce such regulations as “are necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases from foreign countries into the States \* \* \* or from one State \* \* \* into any other State” (section 361(a) of the PHS Act). (See sec. 1, Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1966 at 42 U.S.C. 202 for transfer of authority from the Surgeon General to the Secretary.)

### C. Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

Section 103 of FSMA, Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls, amends the FD&C Act to create a new section 418, which mandates rulemaking. Section 418(n)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act requires that the Secretary issue regulations “to establish science-based minimum standards for conducting a hazard analysis, documenting hazards, implementing preventive controls, and documenting the implementation of the preventive controls ....” Section 418(n)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act requires that the regulations define the terms “small business”

and “very small business,” taking into consideration the study of the food processing sector required by section 418(l)(5) of the FD&C Act. Further, section 103(e) of FSMA creates a new section 301(uu) in the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 331(uu)) to prohibit “[t]he operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is not in compliance with section 418 [of the FD&C Act].”

In addition to rulemaking requirements, section 418 contains requirements applicable to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility required to register under section 415. Section 418(a) is a general provision that requires the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to evaluate the hazards that could affect food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility, identify and implement preventive controls, monitor the performance of those controls, and maintain records of the monitoring. Section 418(a) specifies that the purpose of the preventive controls is to “prevent the occurrence of such hazards and provide assurances that such food is not adulterated under section 402 [of the FD&C Act] or misbranded under section 403(w) [of the FD&C Act] ....” In addition to the general requirements in section 418(a) of the FD&C Act, sections 418(b)-(i) contain more specific requirements applicable to facilities. These include hazard analysis (§ 418(b)), preventive controls (§ 418(c)), monitoring (§ 418(d)), corrective actions (§ 418(e)), verification (§ 418(f)), recordkeeping (§ 418(g)), a written plan and documentation (§ 418(h)), and reanalysis of hazards (§ 418(i)). In sections XII and XV of this document, we discuss proposed requirements (proposed subparts C and F) that would implement these provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

Sections 418(j)-(m) of the FD&C Act and sections 103(c)(1)(D) and (g) of FSMA provide authority for certain exemptions and modifications to the requirements of section 418 of



the FD&C Act. These include provisions related to seafood and juice HACCP, and low-acid canned food (§ 418(j)); activities of facilities subject to section 419 of the FD&C Act (Standards for Produce Safety) (§ 418(k)); qualified facilities (§ 418(l)); facilities that are solely engaged in the production of food for animals other than man, the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing, or the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment (§ 418(m)); facilities engaged only in certain low-risk on-farm activities on certain foods conducted by small or very small businesses (§ 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA), and dietary supplements (§ 103(g) of FSMA). In sections X.C, XIII, and XIV of this document, we discuss proposed provisions (proposed § 117.5(a)-(j), and proposed subparts D and E) that would implement these provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act and section 103 of FSMA.

FDA tentatively concludes that the provisions in subpart C and related requirements in subparts A, D, and F should be applicable to activities that are intrastate in character. Facilities are required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act regardless of whether the food from the facility enters interstate commerce (§ 1.225(b)). The plain language of Section 418 of the FD&C Act applies to facilities that are required to register under section 415 (§ 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act) and does not exclude a facility because food from such a facility is not in interstate commerce. Section 301(uu) of the FD&C Act provides that “the operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is not in compliance with section 418”, or the causing thereof, is a prohibited act.

FDA also is proposing the provisions in subpart C and related requirements in Subparts A, D, and F, under sections 402(a)(3), 402(a)(4), 403(w), and 701(a) of the FD&C Act to the

extent such requirements are necessary to prevent food from being held under insanitary conditions whereby it may become contaminated with filth or rendered injurious to health, or being unfit for food; and to the extent necessary to prevent food from being misbranded under section 403(w). FDA is also proposing those provisions under sections 311, 361, and 368 of the PHS Act relating to communicable disease to the extent those provisions are necessary to prevent the interstate spread of communicable disease. FDA tentatively concludes that a modern food safety system based on HACCP principles can address the food safety problems discussed in section II.D of this document. The food safety system that we are proposing would require a facility to conduct a hazard analysis to determine those hazards that are reasonably likely to occur and establish and implement preventive controls for those hazards. To ensure that controls are properly implemented and effectively controlling the hazards, the proposed food safety system would establish requirements for monitoring, corrective actions, and verification, including validation that the preventive controls are adequate to control the identified hazards. Certain activities would be required to be conducted (or overseen) by a qualified individual and certain activities would be required to be documented. A written food safety plan would include the hazard analysis, the preventive controls that would be established and implemented to address those hazards determined to be reasonably likely to occur, procedures for monitoring, corrective actions, and verification, and a recall plan. The written plan and other documentation would be required to be made promptly available to FDA upon oral or written request.

FDA tentatively concludes that, taken as a whole, the food safety system described here is necessary to help prevent food safety problems associated with microbiological, chemical, physical, and radiological hazards in foods. Therefore, the proposed system is necessary to prevent food from being adulterated because it is unfit for food or because it has been held under

insanitary conditions whereby it may become contaminated with filth or may be rendered injurious to health; to prevent food from becoming misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act; and to prevent the spread of communicable disease.

#### IV. Public Meeting and Preliminary Stakeholder Comments

##### A. Introduction

On April 20, 2011, FDA held a public meeting entitled “FDA Food Safety Modernization Act: Focus on Preventive Controls for Facilities” (Federal Register of April 13, 2011, 71 FR 20588). The purpose of the public meeting was to provide interested persons with an opportunity to discuss implementation of the provisions in section 418 of the FD&C Act. Although the meeting included introductory presentations by FDA, the primary purpose of the meeting was to listen to our stakeholders. In order to meet that goal, FDA provided multiple opportunities for individuals to express their views, including by providing opportunities for individuals to make presentations at the meeting during an open public and webcast comment session, whereby participants could make presentations in person or via webcast, and during another listening session that was held at the end of the day. Various stakeholders made presentations during these public sessions, including presentations made by representatives from consumer groups, industry trade associations, food companies, and state agencies. The major topics discussed in these comments included food allergens and the importance of allergen controls, verification and the importance of testing, submission of food safety plans to FDA, education and training on preventive controls, the need for flexibility in the regulations, modified requirements for certain packaged food items not exposed to the environment, on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing and holding activities, and states partnering with FDA to conduct inspections.

Stakeholders were given additional opportunities to express their views during break-out sessions focused on specific topics. Topics for the break-out sessions included preventive controls guidance, on-farm manufacturing and small business, preventive controls and the relationship to CGMPs, product testing and environmental monitoring, and training and technical assistance. A transcript of FDA's remarks at the opening session, the open public and webcast comment session, and the listening session is available on FDA's Web site (Ref. 113). In addition, webcast videos were prepared for the public meeting and subsequently provided on FDA's Web site, including webcast videos of the opening session, open public comment session, listening session, and several breakout sessions (Ref. 114).

The notice announcing the public meeting also requested written comments. In response to this request, FDA received 30 written comment letters. The major issues presented in the written comment letters included the following: allergen control, accredited laboratories, environmental monitoring and product testing, flexibility of regulations and guidance, food defense, guidance and outreach, preventive controls, small businesses and exempted facilities, submission of the food safety plans to FDA, and modified requirements for warehouses. In the remainder of this section, we summarize each of the major issues raised in the written comments and identify the key proposed provisions applicable to the comments.

#### B. Comments on Allergen Control

Comments state that FDA should address the evaluation of allergens as a food hazard and the need for preventive controls for allergens in its implementation of section 418 of the FD&C Act. One comment notes that an effective allergen control plan is critical to protecting the health and confidence of consumers. Comments recommend that any required allergen control programs be limited to "major food allergens," as defined in the FD&C Act.

We propose a definition of “food allergen” (proposed § 117.3) in section X.B.4 of this document and discuss proposed requirements for preventive controls directed to food allergens (proposed § 117.135(d)(2)) in section XII.C.6 of this document.

#### C. Comments on Accredited Laboratories

Several comments urge FDA to require use of accredited laboratories only when there is a known or suspected food safety problem and not in the routine course of business (testing raw/ingredient, in-process, or finished product). Some comments state it would be inconsistent with its statutory authority for FDA to require use of accredited laboratories beyond limited “for cause” circumstances, e.g., testing for “identified or suspected food safety problems” or imports.

Section 202 of FSMA creates a new section 422 in the FD&C Act addressing laboratory accreditation for the analyses of foods, including use of accredited laboratories in certain circumstances. This document does not propose additional requirements for the use of accredited laboratories and does not include a discussion of section 422 of the FD&C Act.

#### D. Comments on Environmental Monitoring and Product Testing

Many comments assert that the role and need for product testing and environmental monitoring varies depending on the type of products and processing operation and that it should be the facility’s responsibility to determine the testing needed to verify that its preventive controls are effective. Others state that environmental and product testing may be appropriate in certain instances as verification activities, but they do not constitute a control step. A number of comments assert that finished product testing is extremely costly and cannot establish safety. As such, they recommend that industry and FDA should focus on ensuring that preventive measures are properly designated and effective instead of relying on finished product testing. One comment mentions that effective testing programs use aggressive and robust environmental

testing and recognize the limited value of finished product testing. A few comments point out that finished product testing is particularly important for RTE products, and others suggest that environmental monitoring should be required only in the part of the facility that handles exposed RTE product. Some comments maintain that FDA should require verification testing when any food has an identified hazard for which a facility has implemented a preventive control, and others state that high-risk plants should be required to do microbial sampling to a standard and frequency set by FDA. A few comments encourage FDA to require plants to conduct both environmental sampling and testing of finished products to provide assurances that product coming off the end of the line has been produced in accordance with the plant's preventive control plan.

Section I in the Appendix to this document discusses a number of issues associated with environmental monitoring and product testing. Although we are not including provisions for environmental monitoring or product testing in this proposed rule, in section XII.J of this document, we request comment on these issues.

#### E. Comments on Flexibility of Regulations and Guidance

The majority of comments addressing this topic state that regulations and guidance should be science and risk-based, non-prescriptive, and flexible because of the wide variety of facilities that will be subject to the regulations. One notes that regulations should not require companies to hire outside consultants either explicitly or in practical terms because of their complexity.

As discussed in section XVI.A of this document, section 418(n)(3) of the FD&C Act requires that the content of the regulations promulgated under § 418(n)(1) of the FD&C Act provide sufficient flexibility to be practicable for all sizes and types of facilities; comply with

chapter 35 of title 44, United States code (commonly known as the “Paperwork Reduction Act”); acknowledge differences in risk and minimize, as appropriate, the number of separate standards that apply to separate foods; and not require a facility to hire a consultant or other third party to identify, implement, certify, or audit preventative controls. Section XVI.A of this document also addresses how this proposed rule complies with the requirements in section 418(n)(3) of the FD&C Act.

#### F. Comments on Food Defense

Numerous comments reiterate the need for food defense to be treated distinctly from food safety, because they address separate issues and often involve different types of expertise within companies. They recommend that FDA allow manufacturers to develop and maintain two distinct sets of documents on these separate issues. One comment suggests that FDA consider implementing the food and feed defense-related provisions of FSMA through guidance, rather than regulation.

FDA discusses its tentative decision not to address “hazards that may be intentionally introduced, including by acts of terrorism” in section II.B.2.f of this document. As stated there, FDA plans to implement section 103 regarding such hazards in a separate rulemaking in the future.

#### G. Comments on Guidance and Outreach

Comments urge FDA to focus on education and outreach for farms, facilities, distributors, inspectors, and state departments of agriculture. They support guidance that would include information on conducting valid hazard analyses and risk assessments, implementing preventive controls, and what constitutes a valid food safety plan. They also support guidance that would provide access to background resources, such as scientific studies, risk analyses and

risk-based modeling. They state that guidance should include examples of food safety plans, both acceptable and unacceptable ones. One comment envisions several different types of guidance: how to identify hazards and how to distinguish preventive controls associated with HACCP plans from those falling outside HACCP plans; preventive controls that should be considered for certain categories of food (e.g., high risk food); and what constitutes a hazard and how you determine its likely occurrence.

Section 103(b) of FSMA requires FDA to issue a guidance document related to the “regulations promulgated under subsection (b)(1) with respect to the hazard analysis and preventive controls under section 418” of the FD&C Act. In addition, section 103(d) of FSMA requires, within 180 days after the issuance of the regulations, that FDA issue a small entity compliance policy guide setting forth in plain language the requirements of the regulations established under section 418(n) of the FD&C Act and section 103 of FSMA to assist small entities in complying with the hazard analysis and other activities required under section 418 of the FD&C Act and section 103 of FSMA. On May 23, 2011, FDA published a Federal Register notice announcing the opening of a docket [Docket No. FDA-2011-N-0238] to obtain information about preventive controls and other practices used by facilities to identify and address hazards associated with specific types of food and specific processes (76 FR 29767). FDA established this docket to provide an opportunity for interested parties to provide information and share views that will inform the development of guidance on preventive controls for food facilities that manufacture, process, pack, or hold human food. FDA anticipates issuing these required guidance documents in a timely manner in coordination with issuing the final regulations to assist our stakeholders in complying with the regulations.



FDA did not conduct HACCP training for persons subject to our HACCP regulations for seafood or juice. However, when implementing those regulations, FDA worked with an alliance of representatives from Federal and State agencies, industry and academia, to create a uniform, core training program that serves as the standardized curriculum against which other course materials can be judged. FDA will be working with an alliance to develop such a standardized curriculum for any final rule establishing requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls.

#### H. Comments on Preventive Controls

A number of comments point out that not all preventive controls need to be constructed as critical control points. Some urge FDA to work with each industry segment to develop a set of general preventive controls for that segment or to use existing preventive controls programs that may already exist for a segment of industry; those general preventive controls would be tailored to each situation, plant design, and product. One comment asserts that preventive controls must consider incoming water as a key risk and states that the risk assessment must be informed by current standards and methodologies and take into account resistance to traditional disinfectants.

FDA is proposing requirements for preventive controls in proposed § 117.135 (discussed in section XII.C of this document).

#### I. Comments on Small and Very Small Businesses

Several comments urge FDA to define a very small business. Many recommend that these businesses should be significantly smaller than those that gross \$500,000 a year. One comment proposes that FDA define very small business as having fewer than 20 employees, stating that the Small Business Administration has done so. Another suggests that “very small”

business be defined by the volume of product that they put into commerce. For facilities that satisfy criteria for the “qualified facility” exemption and therefore have the option of submitting documentation related to preventive controls or compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, several comments urge FDA to require that such facilities submit documentation of one option or the other. One comment disagrees that small processors should be exempt, since small processors frequently pose a risk to the public precisely because of their lack of sophistication and availability of trained technical staff.

We discuss our proposed definitions for small and very small businesses (proposed § 117.3) in section X.B.4 of this document. We discuss our proposed definition for “qualified facility” (proposed § 117.3) in section X.B.4 of this document; our proposed exemption from subpart C for a “qualified facility” (proposed § 117.5(a)) in section X.C.1 of this document; proposed modified requirements for a “qualified facility” (proposed § 117.201) in section XIII.A of this document; and a proposed process that would govern withdrawal of an exemption from subpart C for a “qualified facility” (proposed Subpart E) in section XIV of this document.

#### J. Comments on Submission of Food Safety Plan to FDA

Most comments agree that FDA should not require electronic submission of food safety plans, pointing out that not only would it be impractical, but also that food safety plans are most appropriately reviewed by FDA during on-site facility inspections, with the support of people familiar with the system who can answer questions and show an inspector relevant equipment, operations, and procedures. They note that plans are of limited utility outside of the plant context. However, a few comments state that FDA should request all initial food safety plans, as this would give us an idea of any misunderstandings of the preventive control requirements.

These comments also note that submission of plans could help FDA quickly determine if high-risk facilities are developing effective plans and might help FDA prioritize inspections.

FDA is not proposing to require submission of food safety plans. We discuss this topic and request comment on alternate approaches in section XII.K of this document.

#### K. Comments on Modified Requirements for Warehouses

All comments submitted on the issue of warehouses urge FDA to modify the preventive controls requirements for facilities, such as warehouses, that are solely engaged in the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment, since no manufacturing or processing takes place at such food warehouses and the product is not exposed to the environment. Most state that the facility should have procedures in place addressing general controls, such as sanitation, pest control, storage, segregation, security, and recordkeeping.

FDA is proposing modified requirements for warehouses solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment in proposed § 117.7 (discussed in section X.D of this document) and proposed § 117.206 (discussed in section XIII.B of this document).

#### V. Placement of Regulatory Requirements

We are proposing to establish the revised umbrella CGMP requirements, together with the new requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls, in proposed part 117. As discussed in section XVII of this document, we are proposing to remove current part 110 after the compliance date for all businesses to be in compliance with the requirements of new part 117.

#### VI. Highlights of the Proposed Rule

## A. Overview

The proposed rule would revise FDA's current regulations in part 110 regarding the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of human food in two fundamental ways. First, it would add new provisions to implement section 103 of FSMA. Second, it would update, revise, or otherwise clarify certain requirements of our current regulations in part 110. The new provisions and revisions to the current CGMP requirements would be established in part 117.

Under the proposed rule, new part 117 would be divided into the following subparts:

- Subpart A--General Provisions;
- Subpart B--Current Good Manufacturing Practice;
- Subpart C--Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls;
- Subpart D--Modified Requirements;
- Subpart E--Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility; and
- Subpart F--Requirements Applying to Records That Must Be Established and

Maintained.

- Subpart G would be reserved.

In the remainder of this section, we highlight key provisions of the proposed rule.

## B. Proposed Revisions to 21 CFR Part 1, Subparts H, I, and J

To implement section 103(c) of FSMA, the proposed rule would revise certain definitions in FDA's current section 415 registration regulations. These revisions would clarify the types of activities that are included as part of the definition of the term "facility" under section 415 of the FD&C Act and the scope of the exemption for "farms" provided by section 415 of the FD&C Act. The proposed rule also would make corresponding changes in part 1, subpart I (Prior

Notice of Imported Food) and in part 1, subpart J (Establishment, Maintenance, and Availability of Records). .

C. Proposed Revisions to General Provisions of 21 CFR Part 110 (Part 110)

(Proposed Part 117, Subpart A)

The proposed rule would both revise current provisions of subpart A of part 110 and add new provisions to subpart A as it would be established in proposed part 117. The new provisions would include specified exemptions for certain facilities, or for certain activities conducted by facilities, from the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and preventive controls in proposed part 117, subpart C. The proposed exemptions would be consistent with requirements established by FSMA or discretion provided by FSMA. The subjects of the specified exemptions relate to:

- A “qualified” facility;
- Activities subject to our existing HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, our regulations governing microbiological hazards in low acid canned foods, and our dietary supplement CGMP regulations;
  - Activities of a facility that are subject to the Standards for Produce Safety in section 419 of the FD&C Act;
  - Certain low-risk packing or holding activity/food combinations conducted on a farm by a small or very small business;
  - Certain low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations conducted on a farm by a small or very small business;

- The receipt, manufacturing, processing, packing, holding, and distribution of alcoholic beverages and other prepackaged food sold in conjunction with alcoholic beverages (e.g., gift baskets);
- Facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of RACs (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing; and
- Facilities solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment, although the storage of such food that requires time/temperature control to prevent the growth of, or toxin formation by, pathogenic microorganisms would be subject to modified requirements that would be established in proposed subpart D.

D. Proposed Revisions to Current Good Manufacturing Practice Requirements of Part 110

(Proposed Part 117, Subpart B)

In order to modernize current CGMP requirements, the proposed rule would make revisions including:

- Modernizing and updating the language throughout (e.g., by replacing the word “shall” with the word “must” and by using certain terms consistently throughout proposed part 117);
- Deleting certain provisions containing recommendations, including the specific temperatures for maintaining refrigerated, frozen or hot foods;
- Clarifying that certain CGMP provisions requiring protection against contamination require protection against cross-contact of food as well to address allergens; and
- Proposing that provisions directed to preventing contamination of food and food-contact substances be directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well.

## E. Proposed New Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

### (Proposed Part 117, Subpart C)

#### 1. Written Food Safety Plan

We propose to require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility have and implement a written food safety plan that includes as applicable:

- A hazard analysis;
- Preventive controls;
- Monitoring procedures;
- Corrective action procedures;
- Verification procedures; and
- A recall plan.

#### 2. Written Hazard Analysis

We propose to require that the written hazard analysis identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, including biological, chemical, physical, and radiological hazards. The hazard analysis would include an evaluation of the identified hazards to determine whether the hazards are reasonably likely to occur, including an assessment of the severity of the illness or injury if the hazard were to occur.

#### 3. Written Preventive Controls

We propose to require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and implement preventive controls (including at critical control points, if any) to provide assurances that hazards that are reasonably likely to occur will be significantly minimized or prevented and that the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by such facility will not be

adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. The preventive controls would include, as appropriate:

- Parameters associated with the control of the hazard and the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any biological, chemical, physical, or radiological parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur;

- Process controls;
- Food allergen controls;
- Sanitation controls;
- A recall plan; and
- Any other necessary controls.

#### 4. Written Recall Plan

We propose to require that the written recall plan be developed for food with hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

#### 5. Monitoring

We propose to require the monitoring of the preventive controls to provide assurance that they are consistently performed, including requirements to establish and implement written monitoring procedures and establish and maintain records documenting the implementation of the monitoring procedures.

#### 6. Corrective Actions

We propose to require that facilities establish and implement written corrective action procedures that would be used if preventive controls are not properly implemented and take corrective actions in the event of an unanticipated problem.



## 7. Verification

We propose to require that facilities conduct certain verification activities, including:

- Validation of a subset of the preventive controls;
- Verification that monitoring is being conducted;
- Verification that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made;

and

- Verification that the preventive controls are consistently implemented and are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

We also propose to require reanalysis of the food safety plan at least once every 3 years and more often when circumstances warrant.

## 8. Qualified Individual

We propose to establish qualification requirements for a “qualified individual,” who would be required to do or oversee the preparation of the food safety plan, validation of preventive controls, review of records for implementation and effectiveness of preventive controls and the appropriateness of corrective actions, and reanalysis of a food safety plan. A “qualified individual” would be required to successfully complete training with a standardized curriculum or be otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system. Job experience may qualify an individual to perform these functions if such experience has provided an individual with knowledge at least equivalent to that provided through the standardized curriculum.

## 9. List of Required Records

We propose to establish a list of records that would be required under proposed subpart C, including the written food safety plan and records documenting monitoring of preventive controls, corrective actions, verification, and applicable training for the qualified individual.

### F. Proposed New Provisions for Modified Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart D)

Proposed subpart D would implement certain provisions in sections 418(l) and (m) of the FD&C Act for modified requirements with respect to:

- Qualified facilities: Implementing the modified requirements specified in section 418(l) of the FD&C Act for facilities that satisfy the statutory criteria for a “qualified facility,” we propose to establish requirements that include:

- Submission to FDA of documentation that the facility is a qualified facility; and
- Submission to FDA of documentation demonstrating that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the performance of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective;

or

- Submission to FDA of documentation that the facility is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries.

- Facilities solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment: Acting on the discretion provided to FDA by section 418(m) of the FD&C Act, we propose to require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the

storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment conduct certain activities for any such refrigerated packaged food that requires time/temperature control to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance, including:

- Establishing and implementing temperature controls;
- Monitoring the temperature controls;
- Taking appropriate corrective actions when there is a problem with

temperature controls;

- Verifying that temperature controls are consistently implemented; and
- Establishing and maintaining the following records:
- Records documenting the monitoring of temperature controls;
- Records of corrective actions; and
- Records documenting verification activities.

We seek comment on these proposed requirements.

#### G. Proposed New Provisions for Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

##### (Proposed Part 117, Subpart E)

Proposed subpart E would implement the provisions of section 418(1)(3) of the FD&C Act and establish the conditions under which an exemption granted to a “qualified facility” could be withdrawn, and the procedures that would be followed to withdraw such an exemption.

#### H. Proposed New Recordkeeping Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart F)

Proposed subpart F would establish requirements that would apply to all records that would be required by the various proposed provisions of proposed part 117, including:

- General requirements related to the content and form of records;

- Additional requirements specific to the food safety plan;
- Requirements for record retention;
- Requirements for official review of records by FDA; and
- Public disclosure.

## VII. Compliance Dates

Section 103(i)(1) of FSMA, General Rule, provides that “[t]he amendments made by this section shall take effect 18 months after the date of enactment” (i.e., by July 4, 2012). Section 103(i)(2) of FSMA, Flexibility for Small Businesses, provides that “[n]otwithstanding paragraph (1),” the amendments made by this section “shall apply” to a small business and very small business beginning on the dates that are 6 months and 18 months, respectively, “after the effective date” of FDA’s final regulation.

FDA is implementing the amendments made by section 103 to the FD&C Act through this rulemaking (except as relates to animal food and intentional contamination). FDA tentatively concludes that it is appropriate to provide a sufficient time period following publication of the final regulation for facilities to come into compliance. The final regulation will contain provisions that affect which facilities are subject to section 418 and which provisions apply to particular facilities. Without these provisions of the regulation in effect, facilities would be uncertain as to the applicability of certain requirements to them. Further, FDA tentatively concludes that compliance with section 418 will be facilitated greatly by the detail and explanation that will be provided by the final regulation.

The current practices of many businesses are sufficient to satisfy some of the proposed requirements. However, the majority of businesses will need to make at least some changes if the proposed regulations are adopted. FDA recognizes that it can take time to implement a food

safety system that would require, among other things, performance of a hazard analysis, development of preventive controls, and monitoring of preventive controls.

FDA is proposing that the final rule would be effective 60 days after publication in the Federal Register, with staggered compliance dates. However, we recognize that businesses of all sizes may need more time to comply with the new requirements established under FSMA. FDA believes that it is reasonable to allow for 1 year after the date of publication of the final rule for businesses other than small and very small businesses to come into compliance with the new requirements established under FSMA. FDA also believes that it is reasonable to allow for 2 years after the date of publication of the final rule for small businesses to come into compliance with the new requirements established under FSMA, and 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule for very small businesses to come into compliance with the new requirements established under FSMA. FDA intends to work closely with the food industry, extension and education organizations, and state partners to develop the tools and training programs needed to facilitate implementation of this rule.

FDA also is proposing to modernize the existing CGMP requirements, and businesses already subject to current part 110 will be subject to the modernized CGMPs that would be established in proposed part 117. FDA believes that it is reasonable to allow for the same compliance periods for the modernized CGMPs as for the other provisions in proposed part 117 so that a facility would be subject to all of the relevant provisions in proposed part 117 at the same time. To provide for this staggered implementation of the modernized CGMPs, FDA is proposing to establish the revised regulations in a new part (i.e., part 117) so that current part 110 can remain unchanged and in effect for compliance purposes until all businesses have reached the date when they must be in compliance with new part 117. Thus, as discussed in section XVII

of this document, we are proposing that current part 110 be removed on the date that is 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule.

## VIII. Rulemaking Required by Section 103(c) of FSMA: On-Farm Activities

### A. Section 103(c) of FSMA

#### 1. Clarification of the Activities That Are Included As Part of the Definition of the Term “Facility” under Section 415 of the FD&C Act

Section 103(c)(1)(A) of FSMA requires the Secretary to “publish a notice of proposed rulemaking in the Federal Register to promulgate regulations with respect to -- (i) activities that constitute on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership for purposes of section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C 350d), as amended by [FSMA]; and (ii) activities that constitute on-farm manufacturing or processing of food that is not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership for purposes of such section 415.” Section 103(c)(1)(B) of FSMA stipulates that such rulemaking “shall enhance the implementation of such section 415 and clarify the activities that are included as part of the definition of the term “facility” under such section.” Section 415 of the FD&C Act, in turn, directs the Secretary to require by regulation that any facility engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding food for consumption in the United States be registered with the Secretary. The registration requirement in section 415 of the FD&C Act does not apply to farms. Our regulations that implement section 415 and require food facilities to register with FDA are established in part 1 (21 CFR part 1), subpart H (Registration of Food Facilities) (the section 415 registration regulations).

To implement sections 103(c)(1)(A) and (B) of FSMA, in this document we are proposing to clarify the treatment of activities that are included as part of the definition of the

term “facility” in section 415 of the FD&C Act in order to enhance the implementation of section 415. By doing so, we also clarify the coverage of section 418 of the FD&C Act, because section 418 applies to domestic and foreign facilities that are required to register under section 415 (see section 418(o)(2)) except where exemptions from section 418 apply. In the remainder of this section VIII of this document:

- We discuss the current legal and regulatory framework for farms under sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act, including requirements for registration of food facilities in the section 415 registration regulations. (See section VIII.B.)
- We explain why we tentatively conclude that rulemaking is needed to implement sections 103(c)(1)(A) and (B) of FSMA. (See section VIII.C.)
- We explain how the status of a food as a raw agricultural commodity (RAC) or a processed food affects the requirements applicable to a farm under sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act. We also articulate a comprehensive set of organizing principles that form the basis for proposed revisions to the section 415 registration regulations. (See section VIII.D.)
- We describe our proposed revisions to the definitions in the section 415 registration regulations, based on the organizing principles articulated in section VIII.D, to clarify the treatment of activities that are included as part of the definition of the term “facility” in those regulations and to enhance and clarify the application of those definitions. We also describe conforming changes to part 1, subpart I (Prior Notice of Imported Food) (hereinafter the prior notice regulations, established under section 307 of the Public Health Security and Bioterrorism Preparedness and Response Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–188) (hereinafter the “BT Act”)) and part 1, subpart J (Establishment, Maintenance, and Availability of Records)

(hereinafter the section 414 recordkeeping regulations, established under section 414 of the FD&C Act). (See section VIII.E.)

- We describe the impact of the proposed revisions to the definitions in the section 415 registration regulations on farms and on “farm mixed-type” facilities. A “farm mixed-type” facility conducts activities that are outside the scope of the definition of “farm” (e.g., slicing or chopping fruits or vegetables) even though it also conducts activities that are within the scope of the definition of farm (e.g., growing and harvesting crops or raising animals). Conducting activities outside the definition of “farm” triggers the requirements in the section 415 registration regulations) and, thus, brings the facility within the scope of section 418 of the FD&C Act. (See section VIII.F.)

## 2. Science-Based Risk Analysis Covering Specific Types of On-Farm Manufacturing, Processing, Packing and Holding Activities

Section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA directs the Secretary to conduct a science-based risk analysis as part of the section 103(c) rulemaking. The science-based risk analysis is to cover “(i) specific types of on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership, as such packing and holding relates to specific foods; and (ii) specific on-farm manufacturing and processing activities as such activities relate to specific foods that are not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.” In section VIII.G of this document, we describe a draft Qualitative Risk Assessment (the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA) (Ref. 115) we performed to satisfy this requirement.



### 3. Exemptions and Modified Requirements for Certain Facilities

Section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA requires that, as part of the section 103(c) rulemaking, “the Secretary shall consider the results of the science-based risk analysis... and shall exempt certain facilities from the requirements in section 418 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (as added by [section 103 of FSMA]) including hazard analysis and preventive controls, and the mandatory inspection frequency in section 421 of such Act (as added by section 201 [of FSMA]), or modify the requirements in such sections 418 or 421, as the Secretary determines appropriate, if such facilities are engaged only in specific types of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activities that the Secretary determines to be low risk involving specific foods the Secretary determines to be low risk.” Section 103(c)(1)(D)(ii) of FSMA provides that the exemptions or modifications described in section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) “shall not include an exemption from the requirement to register under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 350d), as amended by [FSMA], if applicable, and shall apply only to small businesses and very small businesses, as defined in the regulation promulgated under section 418(n) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act[.]” In section VIII.H of this document, we discuss the results of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA. In section VIII.I of this document, we set forth our tentative conclusions regarding combinations of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding activities and foods determined to be low risk, considering the results of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA. In section VIII.J of this document, we discuss a proposed approach to using the results of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA for the purposes of section 421 of the FD&C Act. In section X.C.6 of this document, we discuss our proposal to exempt low-risk combinations of activities and foods from the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act when performed by farm mixed-type facilities that are small or

very small businesses as would be defined in proposed § 117.3 (see discussion of the proposed definitions of “small business” and “very small business” in section X.B.4 of this document).

B. The Current Legal and Regulatory Framework Under  
Sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act and Regulations Implementing

Section 415 of the FD&C Act

As noted in the previous section, section 415 of the FD&C Act directs the Secretary to require by regulation that any facility engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding food for consumption in the United States be registered with the Secretary. Section 1.227 in the section 415 registration regulations includes definitions that are relevant to the scope of those regulations, including definitions for types of establishments (“facility” and “farm”) and for types of activities (“holding,” “manufacturing/processing,” “packaging,” and “packing”). In relevant part, these definitions play a role in determining whether an establishment is a facility that must register with FDA and implement a provision (in section 415(b)(1) of the FD&C Act) exempting “farms” from the registration requirement in section 415. We have issued guidance to assist food facilities in complying with the section 415 registration regulations (hereinafter “Food Facility Registration Guidance”) (Ref. 116).

Section 418(n) of the FD&C Act directs the Secretary to establish regulations implementing the requirements of section 418 for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls applicable to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a “facility.” Section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act defines “facility” for the purpose of section 418 as “a domestic or foreign facility that is required to register under section 415.”

Under the framework established by section 415 of the FD&C Act and the section 415 registration regulations, farms are establishments that do conduct activities described in the farm

definition in § 1.227(b)(3) but do not conduct other activities (such as manufacturing/processing on food that is not consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership) that would trigger the requirements in the section 415 registration regulations. Because establishments that satisfy the definition of “farm” in § 1.227(b)(3) are not required to register under section 415, they do not satisfy the definition of “facility” in section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act and, thus, they are not subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act.

The current legal and regulatory framework provided in sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act, the section 415 registration regulations, and the Food Facility Registration Guidance is relevant to the FSMA section 103(c) rulemaking and the FD&C Act section 418(n) rulemaking that are the subjects of this document. That framework determines which establishments and activities are subject to the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act. We describe key provisions applicable to the current legal and regulatory framework in Table 1.

Table 1. Key Provisions Applicable to the Current Legal and Regulatory Framework under Sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act

Provision of the Section 415 Registration Regulations or the FD&C Act	Definition or Requirement
§ 1.227(b)(2): Current definition of “facility”	For the purposes of section 415 of the FD&C Act, a facility is, in relevant part, any establishment, structure, or structures under one ownership at one general physical location, or, in the case of a mobile facility, traveling to multiple locations, that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States.
§ 1.225: Requirement to register	The owner, operator, or agent in charge of either a domestic or foreign facility must register in accordance with the section 415 registration regulations if the facility is engaged in the manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding of food for consumption in the United States, unless the facility qualifies for one of the exemptions in § 1.226.
§ 1.226(b): Exemption from registration for farms	Farms are not subject to the registration requirement in § 1.225.
§ 1.227(b)(3): Current definition of “farm”	Farm means a facility in one general physical location devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops, the raising of animals (including seafood), or both. Washing, trimming of outer leaves of, and cooling produce are considered part of harvesting. The term “farm” includes facilities that pack or hold food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership; and facilities that manufacture/process food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership.
§ 1.227(b)(5): Current definition of “holding”	Holding means storage of food. Holding facilities include warehouses, cold storage facilities, storage silos, grain elevators, and liquid storage tanks.

Provision of the Section 415 Registration Regulations or the FD&C Act	Definition or Requirement
§ 1.227(b)(6): Current definition of “manufacturing/processing”	Manufacturing/processing means making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food, including food crops or ingredients. Examples of manufacturing/processing activities are cutting, peeling, trimming, washing, waxing, eviscerating, rendering, cooking, baking, freezing, cooling, pasteurizing, homogenizing, mixing, formulating, bottling, milling, grinding, extracting juice, distilling, labeling, or packaging.
§ 1.227(b)(8): Current definition of “packaging”	Packaging (when used as a verb) means placing food into a container that directly contacts food and that the consumer receives.
§ 1.227(b)(9): Current definition of “packing”	Packing means placing food into a container other than packaging the food.
Section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act	A facility that is subject to the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act is a domestic facility or a foreign facility that is required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act.

Together, the provisions described in Table 1 establish that a business qualifies as a “farm” that is exempt from the section 415 registration regulations if it satisfies the definition of “farm” in § 1.227(b)(3), including the activities performed, where the activities take place, where the food used in the activities comes from, and where the food is consumed:

- A farm is devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops. Washing, trimming of outer leaves of, and cooling produce are considered part of harvesting.
- A farm can pack or hold food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership.
- A farm can manufacture/process food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership.

We note that FDA established the same definitions of the terms “facility,” “farm,” “holding,” “manufacturing/processing,” “packaging,” and “packing” in the section 414 recordkeeping regulations (§ 1.328), because farms are excluded from FDA’s authority to establish recordkeeping requirements under section 414(b) of the FD&C Act.

### C. Why This Rulemaking Is Needed

Farms are subject to many provisions of the FD&C Act and FDA's authorities thereunder, such as FDA's inspection authority under section 704 and the general adulteration provisions for food in section 402. FDA has long recognized that regulation of farms should be sensitive to the agricultural setting. As early as 1969, FDA exempted establishments "engaged solely in the harvesting, storage, or distribution" of raw agricultural commodities from certain regulatory requirements (34 FR 6977 at 6980, April 26, 1969). The BT Act provided FDA with the authority to require domestic and foreign facilities that manufacture, process, pack, or hold food for consumption in the United States to register with FDA, and to issue regulations regarding the establishment and maintenance of certain records (codified as sections 415 and 414 of the FD&C Act, respectively). Sections 415 and 414 explicitly exclude "farms," but do not define that term. In notice and comment rulemaking implementing these provisions, FDA developed a definition of the term "farm." FDA first proposed to define "farm" as a facility in one general physical location devoted to the growing of crops for food, the raising of animals for food (including seafood), or both. Under that proposed definition, the term "farm" would also have included (i) facilities that pack or hold food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown or raised on that farm or is consumed on that farm; and (ii) facilities that manufacture/process food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership (68 FR 5378 at 5418, February 3, 2003).

FDA received comments stating that the proposed definition was too narrow because it would not include farms that engage in activities traditionally performed on farms for nearly all commodities, such as washing, trimming outer leaves, and cooling (68 FR 58894 at 58905, October 10, 2003). Accordingly, to reflect the intent of Congress to exempt establishments

engaging in activities farms traditionally perform from the section 415 registration regulations, in the final rule FDA revised the first part of the farm definition in § 1.227(b)(3) to state that a farm is a facility in one general location that is devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops, the raising of animals (including seafood), or both, and that washing, trimming outer leaves, and cooling of food are considered part of harvesting (68 FR 58894 at 58905) (emphasis added). FDA also established the same definition of “farm” at § 1.328 for the purpose of exempting farms from the section 414 recordkeeping regulations (69 FR 71652, December 9, 2004). In post-rulemaking guidances implementing the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 regulations, FDA further addressed and interpreted the farm definition with the goal of doing so in a manner recognizing the traditional activities of establishments commonly recognized to be farms (see the Food Facility Registration Guidance (Ref. 116) and “Guidance for Industry: Questions and Answers Regarding Establishment and Maintenance of Records (Edition 4), September 2006 (hereinafter “Recordkeeping Guidance” (Ref. 117)).

#### Farm mixed-type facilities

Consistent with the current legal and regulatory framework under sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act and the section 415 registration regulations, activities within the farm definition in § 1.227(b)(3) would not be subject to the requirements of this proposed rule. Activities that are not within the farm definition and that trigger the section 415 registration regulations would be subject to the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act (and therefore to the relevant parts of this proposed rule), except where an exemption applies. (For a discussion of proposed exemptions, see section X.C of this document.)

For the purposes of this document, a “farm mixed-type facility” is an establishment that grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm

definition, but that also conducts activities that trigger the section 415 registration regulations (see the discussion of our proposed definition of “farm mixed-type facility” in section VIII.E of this document). Section 418 of the FD&C Act does not explicitly address whether a farm mixed-type facility is subject to section 418 with respect to all of its activities or only with respect to its activities that trigger the section 415 registration regulations. Considering the text of section 103 of FSMA and the FD&C Act as a whole, FDA tentatively concludes that a farm mixed-type facility should be subject to section 418 only with respect to its activities that trigger the section 415 registration regulations, and not with respect to its activities that are within the farm definition. Put another way, we would apply section 418 only to the “non-farm” portion of the establishment’s activities, and not to the “farm” portion of its activities.

Because section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act defines the term “facility” for the purposes of section 418 to mean only those facilities required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act, FDA tentatively concludes that Congress intended the exemptions from the section 415 registration regulations, including the farm exemption in § 1.226(b), to be meaningful for the purposes of defining the applicability of section 418. Section 418(a) requires the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility that is required to register under section 415 to “evaluate the hazards that could affect food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility” and to take other steps discussed more fully in section XII of this document, including identifying and implementing preventive controls, monitoring preventive controls, and maintaining records. The use of the phrase “food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility” in section 418(a) parallels the language in section 415(a)(1) providing that “[t]he Secretary shall by regulation require that any facility engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding food for consumption in the United States be registered with the Secretary.” Considering the text

of FSMA and the FD&C Act as a whole, FDA tentatively concludes that only those manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activities that trigger registration under the section 415 registration regulations should be considered to be manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food by a facility for the purposes of section 418. Put another way, FDA tentatively concludes that a mixed-type facility should only be subject to section 418 with respect to its activities that actually trigger the section 415 registration regulations, and not with respect to its other activities, at the same location, that would not trigger the section 415 registration regulations. To conclude otherwise would mean that, for example, the farm exemption from registration would be rendered irrelevant to the coverage of section 418, except for activities on farms that will be subject to requirements under section 419 of the FD&C Act (see the discussion of the exemption provided by section 418(k) of the FD&C Act to such farms in section X.C.5 of this document). Under such an interpretation many “farm” portions of farm mixed-type facilities would be subject to section 418, including, for example, dairies, egg farms, farms raising livestock for food, and farms growing produce that is not subject to requirements under section 419. However, section 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA, which directs FDA to consider exempting or modifying the requirements of section 418 for activities conducted by a farm mixed-type facility outside the farm exemption, seems to mean that Congress did not intend the “farm” portion of such a facility to be covered by section 418, even though Congress intended the “non-farm” portions of such a facility to be subject to section 418 (including under modified requirements) (provided that FDA concluded that it was appropriate to do so after conducting the science-based risk analysis required by section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA). (See section VIII.G for a discussion of the analysis FDA conducted and section VIII.H of this document for a discussion of FDA’s proposed actions in light of that analysis.).



Therefore, unless an exemption from section 418 of the FD&C Act applies, FDA tentatively concludes that a facility that is required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act should be subject to section 418 with respect to all its activities that trigger the section 415 registration regulations, but not with respect to its activities that would not trigger the section 415 registration regulations (such as activities within the farm definition set forth in § 1.227(b)(3)). Thus, it is particularly important to clarify the classification of various activities included in the “facility” definition in section 415 as manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding -- and in doing so to clarify the scope of the farm definition in § 1.227(b)(3) -- to make clear the extent to which a farm mixed-type facility must comply with section 418.

#### Clarification of activities relevant to farm mixed-type facilities

At the time FDA developed the farm definition and its interpretations of that definition, the practical impact of an activity’s classification as inside or outside that definition was limited to the potential to trigger the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations. With the advent of FSMA, the scope of the farm definition has taken on more importance because, for example and as discussed in this section, activities within the farm definition are not subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act, but activities outside the farm definition are subject to section 418. Therefore, it is important that FDA clarify the scope of the farm definition, including the classification of manufacturing, processing, packing and holding activities relevant to that definition, and adjust it if necessary and appropriate to enhance implementation of section 418 of the FD&C Act, as well as section 415 of the FD&C Act. Accordingly, in the remainder of this section VIII FDA articulates a comprehensive set of organizing principles that would form the basis for our proposal for classifying activities to more accurately reflect the scope of activities traditionally conducted by farms and to allow for more

certainty among industry with regard to how their activities will be regulated. We seek comment on this proposal.

D. Organizing Principles for How the Status of a Food As a Raw Agricultural Commodity  
or As a Processed Food Affects the Requirements Applicable to a Farm

Under Sections 415 and 418 of the FD&C Act

1. Statutory Framework for Raw Agricultural Commodities and Processed Food

To clarify the scope of the farm definition, FDA considered how the activities of farms relate to the statutory concepts of “raw agricultural commodity” and “processed food.” The FD&C Act defines “raw agricultural commodity” and “processed food” in relation to each other, and identifies certain activities that transform a RAC into a processed food and others that do not. Section 201(r) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 321(r)) defines “raw agricultural commodity” to mean “any food in its raw or natural state, including all fruits that are washed, colored, or otherwise treated in their unpeeled natural form prior to marketing.” Section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 321(gg)) defines “processed food” to mean “any food other than a raw agricultural commodity and includes any raw agricultural commodity that has been subject to processing, such as canning, cooking, freezing, dehydration, or milling.” In addition, section 201(q)(1)(B)(i)(II) of the FD&C Act (which defines pesticide chemicals) contains the following language regarding activities that do not transform a RAC into a processed food: “the treatment [with pesticide chemicals] is in a manner that does not change the status of the food as a raw agricultural commodity (including treatment through washing, waxing, fumigating, and packing such commodities in such manner).”

The status of a food as a RAC or processed food is relevant for many different purposes under the FD&C Act. For example, under section 403(q)(4) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C.

343(q)(4)), FDA has established a voluntary nutrition labeling program that applies to RACs but not to processed foods. Under 403(w) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 343(w)), labeling requirements related to major food allergens apply to processed foods but do not apply to RACs. Under sections 201(q), 403(k), 403(l), and 408 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 321(q), 343(k), 343(l), and 346a), the status of a food as a RAC has an impact on the manner in which pesticide chemicals and their residues are regulated. FSMA created more provisions in the FD&C Act and elsewhere that take status as a RAC or processed food into account, including section 417(f) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350f(f)), establishing notification requirements for reportable foods that do not apply to fruits and vegetables that are RACs; section 418(m) of the FD&C Act, which authorizes FDA to exempt or modify the requirements for compliance under section 418 with respect to facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of RACs other than fruits and vegetables intended for further distribution or processing; section 419(a)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350h(a)(1)(A)), which authorizes FDA to establish minimum science-based standards applicable to certain fruits and vegetables that are RACs; and section 204(d)(6)(D) of FSMA (21 U.S.C. 2223(d)(6)(D)), which contains special provisions for commingled RACs applicable to FDA's authority under section 204 of FSMA to establish additional recordkeeping requirements for high risk foods. FDA has also established by regulation an exemption from the current CGMP requirements applicable to establishments engaged solely in the harvesting, storage, or distribution of one or more RACs (§ 110.19). (We discuss this exemption in detail in section X.C.9 of this document.)

The term “raw agricultural commodity” and similar terms also appear in other Federal statutes. While these statutes are not implemented or enforced by FDA and do not directly impact the interpretation of the definitions in sections 201(r) and 201(gg) of the FD&C Act, they

do provide some suggestions about what “raw agricultural commodity” and related concepts can mean in various circumstances. For example, the Secretary of Transportation may prescribe commercial motor vehicle safety standards under 49 U.S.C. 31136, but the Motor Carrier Safety Improvement Act of 1999 (Pub. L. 106-159, title II, Sec. 229, Dec. 9, 1999), as added and amended by the Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (Pub. L. 109-59, title IV, Sec. 4115, 4130, Aug. 10, 2005), provided an exemption from maximum driving or on-duty times for drivers transporting “agricultural commodities” or farm supplies within specific areas during planting and harvest periods. In that circumstance, “agricultural commodity” is defined as “any agricultural commodity, non-processed food, feed, fiber, or livestock... and insects” (49 U.S.C. 31136 note). Another example is 19 U.S.C. 1677(4)(E), which provides for certain circumstances in which producers or growers of raw agricultural products may be considered part of the industry producing processed foods made from the raw agricultural product for the purposes of customs duties and tariffs related to such processed foods. In that circumstance, “raw agricultural product” is defined as “any farm or fishery product” (19 U.S.C. 1677(4)(E)). These statutes are informative in that they suggest that the “raw agricultural commodity” concept describes and signifies the products of farms in their natural states, or, in other words, that which a farm exists to produce on a basic level.

## 2. Interpretive Documents and Guidance Regarding Whether an Activity Transforms a Raw Agricultural Commodity Into a Processed Food

Because the status of a food as a RAC or processed food is of great importance in defining the jurisdiction of FDA and EPA over antimicrobial substances, FDA and EPA have developed guidance regarding whether or not various activities transform RACs into processed foods. FDA and EPA jointly issued a legal and policy interpretation of the agencies’ jurisdiction

under the FD&C Act over antimicrobial substances used in or on food (hereinafter the “1998 Joint EPA/FDA Policy Interpretation”) (63 FR 54532, October 9, 1998). In 1999, FDA issued guidance addressing several of the issues discussed in the 1998 Joint EPA/FDA Policy Interpretation. (See Guidance for Industry: Antimicrobial Food Additives, July 1999 (hereinafter “Antimicrobial Guidance”) (Ref. 118)). As discussed in these documents, FDA and EPA agreed that the following “post-harvest” activities do not transform a RAC into processed food within the meaning of that term in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act: “washing, coloring, waxing, hydro-cooling, refrigeration, shelling of nuts, ginning of cotton, and the removal of leaves, stems, and husks” (Ref. 118, section 7 and 63 FR 54532 at 54541). FDA and EPA also agreed that the following activities do transform a RAC into a processed food: “canning, freezing, cooking, pasteurization or homogenization, irradiation, milling, grinding, chopping, slicing, cutting, or peeling” (Ref. 118, section 7 and 63 FR 54532 at 54541). In addition, these documents set forth the conclusion of EPA and FDA that drying a RAC causes it to become a processed food, unless the drying is for the purpose of facilitating storage or transportation of the commodity (Ref. 118, section 7 and 63 FR 54532 at 54541-2); this conclusion was based on EPA’s policy statement on the status of dried commodities as RACs (61 FR 2386, January 25, 1996). FDA and EPA also identified slaughter of animals for food and activities done to carcasses post-slaughter as “processing” for the purposes of the processed food definition (Ref. 118, section 7 and 63 FR 54532 at 54542). Table 2 summarizes activities that cause food RACs to become processed foods and activities that do not change the status of a food RAC, as provided in the FD&C Act and addressed in the 1998 Joint EPA/FDA Policy Interpretation and the Antimicrobial Guidance.

Table 2. –The Effect of Activities on RACs That Are Foods

Activities That Change a RAC into a Processed Food	Activities That Do Not Change the Status of a RAC
Canning	Application of pesticides (including by washing,

	waxing, fumigation, or packing)
Chopping	Coloring
Cooking	Drying for the purpose of storage or transportation
Cutting	Hydro-cooling
Drying that creates a distinct commodity	Otherwise treating fruits in their unpeeled natural form
Freezing	Packing
Grinding	Refrigeration
Homogenization	Removal of leaves, stems, and husks
Irradiation	Shelling of nuts
Milling	Washing
Pasteurization	Waxing
Peeling	Activities designed only to isolate or separate the commodity from foreign objects or other parts of the plant
Slaughtering animals for food and activities done to carcasses post-slaughter, including skinning, eviscerating, and quartering	
Slicing	
Activities that alter the general state of the commodity	

The summary in Table 2 demonstrates that the activities that transform a RAC into a processed food (and are sometimes therefore referred to as “processing” in the context of a food’s status as a RAC or processed food) are not coextensive with the definition of “manufacturing/processing” that FDA established in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328 for the purposes of the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations, respectively. The definition of “Manufacturing/processing” in those regulations includes most food-handling activities because it is satisfied by any degree of “making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food.” In contrast, transforming a RAC into a processed food seems to require meeting a threshold of altering the general state of the commodity (Ref. 118, section 7 and 63 FR 54532 at 54541), sometimes referred to as transformation of the RAC into a new or distinct commodity (61 FR 2386 at 2388). Because the activities that transform a RAC into a processed food are not coextensive with the definition of “manufacturing/processing” in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, a given activity may be manufacturing/processing under the current definition in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328 without

transforming a RAC into a processed food. Examples of such activities include coloring, washing, and waxing.

### 3. The Organizing Principles

The current section 415 registration regulations, section 414 recordkeeping regulations, and related guidances demonstrate that some activities may be classified differently on farms and off farms. For example, “washing” is an example of manufacturing/processing under the definition of that term in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328. However, “washing” produce is identified as part of harvesting under the farm definition in §§ 1.227(b)(3) and 1.328, so washing on farms is harvesting rather than manufacturing/processing. To date, FDA has not articulated organizing principles explaining these differences. In this document, we are tentatively articulating the following organizing principles to explain and clarify the basis for our proposed revisions to the definitions that classify activities on-farm and off-farm in the section 415 registration regulations and in the section 414 recordkeeping regulations, and that we interpret in guidances. In section VIII.E of this document, we propose to incorporate these organizing principles into the definitions, previously established in §§ 1.227 and 1.328, that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities. FDA tentatively concludes that doing so would more accurately reflect which activities of these establishments should fall within the farm definition.

a. First organizing principle. The statutes we describe in section VIII.D.1 of this document, and previous interpretations of the concepts of RACs and processed food as set forth in the 1998 Joint EPA/FDA Policy Interpretation and the Antimicrobial Guidance, lead FDA to tentatively conclude that the basic purpose of farms is to produce RACS and that RACs are the essential products of farms. This tentative conclusion is the first organizing principle that we

would incorporate into the definitions that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities.

b. Second organizing principle. In light of the first organizing principle (i.e., that the basic purpose of farms is to produce RACs, and that RACs are the essential products of farms), we also tentatively conclude that activities that involve RACs and that farms traditionally do for the purposes of growing their own RACs, removing them from the growing areas, and preparing them for use as a food RAC, and for packing, holding and transporting them, should all be within the definition of “farm” in §§ 1.227(b)(3) and 1.328. Doing so would appropriately implement the intent of Congress (under sections 415(b)(1) and 414(b) of the FD&C Act) that FDA exempt “farms” from the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations. This is the case even if the same activities off-farm would be considered to be manufacturing/processing under the definition of that term in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, because those activities involve “making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food.” This tentative conclusion regarding a special classification for on-farm activities is the second organizing principle that we would incorporate into the definitions that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities.

c. Third organizing principle. In light of the first organizing principle (i.e., that the basic purpose of farms is to produce RACs, and that RACs --but not processed foods -- are the essential products of farms) FDA tentatively concludes that the second organizing principle (i.e., the special classification of on-farm activities) should only apply to RACs. Thus, the third organizing principle that we would incorporate into the definitions that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities is that activities should be classified based in



part on whether the food operated on is a RAC or a processed food, and on whether the activity transforms a RAC into a processed food. A farm that chooses to transform its RACs into processed foods should be considered to have chosen to expand its business beyond the traditional business of a farm, thereby opting to become a farm mixed-type facility subject to the section 415 registration regulations, section 414 recordkeeping regulations, and other requirements linked to the registration requirement of section 415 of the FD&C Act by FSMA (such as compliance with section 418 of the FD&C Act).

d. Fourth organizing principle. In light of the first organizing principle (i.e., that the essential purpose of a farm is to produce RACs, and that RACs are the essential products of farms), FDA also tentatively concludes that the second organizing principle (i.e., the special classification of on-farm activities) should only apply to RACs grown or raised on the farm itself or on other farms under the same ownership because the essential purpose of a farm is to produce its own RACs, not to handle RACs grown on unrelated farms for distribution into commerce. (For the purposes of this discussion, FDA refers to RACs grown or raised on a farm or another farm under the same ownership as a farm’s “own RACs,” in contrast to RACs grown on a farm under different ownership, which FDA refers to as “others’ RACs.”) Notably, when FDA first undertook to define “farm,” it received a comment implicitly recognizing this, urging the agency to define farms to include typical post-harvesting operations, if all food is grown on the farm (emphasis added) (68 FR 5378 at 5379). Therefore, activities farms may perform on others’ RACs should appropriately be classified as manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding in the same manner as these activities are classified off-farm when the RACs are to be distributed into commerce. In general, when a farm opts to perform activities outside the farm definition (and, thus, becomes a farm mixed-type facility), the establishment’s activities that are within the farm

definition should be classified as manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding in the same manner as for a farm that is not a mixed-type facility, but the activities that are outside the farm definition should be classified in the same manner as for an off-farm food establishment. This is the fourth organizing principle that we would incorporate into the definitions that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities.

e. Fifth organizing principle. FDA tentatively concludes that manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding food-- whether RACs or processed foods, from any source-- for consumption on the farm should remain within the farm definition because otherwise farms could not feed people and animals on the farm without being required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act. This is the fifth organizing principle that we would incorporate into the definitions that classify activities related to foods on farms and farm mixed-type facilities.

f. Summary of organizing principles. For the convenience of the reader, Table 3 summarizes the organizing principles that FDA is articulating in this document to explain and clarify the basis for our proposed revisions to the definitions that classify activities on-farm and off-farm in the section 415 registration regulations and in the section 414 recordkeeping regulations, and that we interpret in guidances.

Table 3. Summary of Organizing Principles Regarding Classification of Activities On-Farm and Off-Farm

No.	Organizing Principle
1	The basic purpose of farms is to produce RACs and RACs are the essential products of farms.
2	Activities that involve RACs and that farms traditionally do for the purposes of growing their own RACs, removing them from the growing areas, and preparing them for use as a food RAC, and for packing, holding and transporting them, should all be within the definition of “farm” in §§ 1.227 and 1.328.
3	Activities should be classified based in part on whether the food operated on is a RAC or a processed food, and on whether the activity transforms a RAC into a processed food.
4	Activities farms may perform on others’ RACs should appropriately be classified as manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding in the same manner as these activities are classified off-farm when the RACs are to be distributed into commerce.
5	Manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding food-- whether RACs or processed foods, from any source-- for consumption on the farm should remain within the farm definition.

## E. Proposed Revisions to 21 CFR Part 1

### 1. Proposed Redesignation of the Definitions in § 1.227

FDA is proposing to redesignate all definitions in the section 415 registration regulations (i.e., current § 1.227) to eliminate paragraph designations (such as (a), (b), (1), (2), and (3)).

Paragraph designations are not necessary when definitions are presented in alphabetical order.

New definitions that FDA is proposing to add to the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations would be added in alphabetical order.

### 2. Proposed Substantive Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328

FDA is proposing to revise the definitions in the section 415 registration regulations (§ 1.227) and in the section 414 recordkeeping regulations (§1.328), and to add new definitions to those regulations, to reflect the organizing principles articulated in section VIII.D of this document and to clarify how those definitions apply to specific activities depending on where the activities take place, the food used in the activities, where the food comes from, and where the food is consumed.

FDA is proposing to add a new definition of the term “Mixed-type facility” to §§ 1.227 and 1.328. “Mixed-type facility” would mean an establishment that engages in both activities that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the FD&C Act and activities that require the establishment to be registered. This term and its definition were initially developed in the preamble to the proposed rule on food facility registration (68 FR 5378 at 5381) and in the interim final rule on food facility registration (68 FR 58894 at 58906-7, 58914, 58934-8) and would be codified in our proposed revisions to §§ 1.227 and 1.328 with the same meaning. The proposed definition would also provide, as an example of such a facility, a definition of a “farm mixed-type facility.” A “farm mixed-type facility” would be defined as an establishment that

grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm definition, but also conducts activities that require the establishment to be registered. FDA tentatively concludes that it is necessary to define this term to satisfy the directives of FSMA section 103(c) to enhance the implementation of section 415 of the FD&C Act, clarify the activities that are included as part of the term facility under section 415, and to conduct this rulemaking addressing activities that constitute on-farm packing or holding of food not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership and activities that constitute on-farm manufacturing or processing of food not consumed on that farm or another farm under common ownership. Because the specific classes of activities mentioned in FSMA section 103(c) are, by definition, on-farm activities that do not fall within the farm definition, Congress has explicitly directed FDA to engage in rulemaking addressing establishments that conduct activities that are outside the farm definition on farms. Accordingly, FDA is proposing to define the term “farm mixed-type facility” to refer to these establishments.

FDA is proposing to add a new definition of the term “Harvesting” to §§ 1.227 and 1.328. Harvesting would apply to farms and farm mixed-type facilities and be defined as activities that are traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing raw agricultural commodities from the place they were grown or raised and preparing them for use as food. Harvesting would be limited to activities performed on raw agricultural commodities on the farm on which they were grown or raised, or another farm under the same ownership. Harvesting would not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. Gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves of, removing stems and husks from, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling raw agricultural commodities grown on a farm or

another farm under the same ownership would be listed as examples of harvesting. This proposed definition would include the same examples of “harvesting” that were previously part of the farm definition (washing, trimming of outer leaves, and cooling) and would add other examples to help clarify the scope of the definition of harvesting. FDA also proposes to make clear that these activities are “harvesting” when conducted on any of a farm’s own RACs, not just “produce.” For example, unpasteurized shell eggs are RACs, and washing such eggs on the farm on which the eggs were produced would be part of harvesting the eggs. “Harvesting” is a category of activities that is only applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities. Activities that would be “harvesting” when performed on a farm on the farm’s own RACs would be classified differently under other circumstances, such as at a processing facility that is not on a farm, or when performed by a farm on others’ RACs. For example, at an off-farm processing facility that pasteurizes eggs, washing the unpasteurized shell eggs after they are received would not be “harvesting” because it is not being performed on the farm that produced the eggs (or another farm under the same ownership). Instead, washing eggs at the off-farm processing facility would be “manufacturing/processing,” because it involves preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food.

FDA is proposing to revise the definition of “Holding” in current §§ 1.227(b)(5) and 1.328 by adding to the existing definition an expanded definition applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities. The proposed revision would state that, for farms and farm mixed-type facilities, holding would also include activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of RACs grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but would not include activities that transform a RAC, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. This

would mean that more activities than just storage of food would be classified as “holding” when a farm or farm mixed-type facility performs those activities on its own RACs. For example, fumigating or otherwise treating a farm’s own RACs against pests for the purpose of safe and effective storage would be “holding” under this proposed definition. However, fumigating or otherwise treating food against pests under other circumstances (such as off-farm or by a farm handling others’ RACs) would not be “holding” food because it is not storage of food, which would remain the definition of holding applicable to most circumstances.

FDA is proposing to revise the definition of “Manufacturing/processing” in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328 by adding to the existing definition a criterion applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities. The proposed revision would state that, for farms and farm mixed-type facilities, manufacturing/processing would not include activities that are part of harvesting, packing, or holding. Under this proposed revision, expanded definitions of “packing” and “holding,” and the extra category “harvesting” would apply to activities performed by farms and farm mixed-type facilities on their own RACs. These expanded and extra categories would not apply off-farm or to foods other than a farm’s own RACs or a farm mixed-type facility’s own RACs. Thus, some activities that would otherwise be manufacturing/processing would instead be defined as packing, holding, or harvesting by virtue of being performed by a farm or farm mixed-type facility on its own RACs. Accordingly, these activities would not be manufacturing/processing because they would already be classified into the expanded definitions of packing or holding, or into the extra category of harvesting.

FDA is proposing to revise the definition of “Packing” in current §§ 1.227(b)(9) and 1.328 by adding to the existing definition an expanded definition applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities. The proposed revision would state that, for farms and farm mixed-type

facilities, packing would also include activities (which may include packaging) traditionally performed by farms to prepare RACs grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage and transport, but would not include activities that transform a RAC, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. This would mean that more activities than just placing food into a container other than packaging would be classified as “packing” when a farm or farm mixed-type facility performs those activities on its own RACs. For example, packaging (placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives) a farm’s own RACs would be “packing” under this definition because farms traditionally do this to provide greater protection for fragile RACs than would be possible if the RACs were placed in containers other than the consumer container, and because this activity does not transform a RAC into a processed food. However, packaging food under other circumstances would not be “packing” food because packaging is explicitly excluded from the definition of packing applicable to most circumstances (placing food into a container other than packaging). Other examples of activities that could be packing when performed by a farm or a farm mixed-type facility on its own RACs include packaging or packing a mix of RACs together (e.g., in a bag containing three different colored bell peppers, or a box of mixed produce for a community sponsored agriculture program farm share); coating RACs with wax, oil, or resin coatings used for the purposes of storage or transport; placing stickers on RACs; labeling packages containing RACs; sorting, grading, or culling RACs; and drying RACs for the purpose of storage or transport.

Table 4 provides examples of how we would classify activities conducted off-farm and on-farm (including farm mixed-type facilities) using these proposed revisions to the definitions in the section 415 registration regulations and in the section 414 recordkeeping regulations.

Table 4. Classification of Activities Conducted Off-Farm and On-Farm (Including Farm Mixed-Type Facilities)

Classification	Off-Farm	On-Farm (Including Farm Mixed-Type Facilities)
Harvesting	<u>Notes:</u> Not applicable. Harvesting is a classification that only applies on farms and farm mixed-type facilities.	<u>Notes:</u> Activities traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing RACs from growing areas and preparing them for use as food. Harvesting is limited to activities performed on RACs on the farm on which they were grown or raised, or another farm under the same ownership. Harvesting does not include activities that change a RAC into processed food. Activities that are harvesting are within the farm definition.
Harvesting	<u>Examples:</u> Not applicable.	<u>Examples:</u> Activities that fit this definition when performed on a farm’s “own RACs” (a term we use to include RACs grown or raised on that farm or another farm under the same ownership) include gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves, removing stems and husks, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling. <u>These activities, performed on a farm’s own RACs, are inside the farm definition.</u>
Packing	<u>Notes:</u> Placing food in a container other than packaging the food (where packaging means placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives).	<u>Notes:</u> Placing food in a container other than packaging the food (using the same definition of packaging), or activities (which may include packaging) traditionally performed by farms to prepare RACs grown or raised on that farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage or transport. Packing does not include activities that change a RAC into a processed food. Activities that are packing are within the farm definition when they are performed on food grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership; under any other circumstances they are outside the farm definition.
Packing	<u>Examples:</u> Putting individual unit cartons into a larger box used for shipping, and putting articles of produce in non-consumer containers (such as shipping crates).	<u>Examples:</u> Activities that fit the definition of packing when performed on a farm’s own RACs include packaging, mixing, coating with wax/oil/resin for the purpose of storage or transport, stickering/labeling, drying for the purpose of storage or transport, and sorting/grading/culling. <u>These activities, performed on a farm’s own RACs, are inside the farm definition.</u>  Activities that fit the definition of packing when performed on a farm on any other foods, including RACs grown or raised on a farm not under the same ownership, include putting individual unit cartons into a larger box used for shipping, and putting articles of produce in non-consumer containers (such as shipping crates) -- the same activities that fit the definition of packing off farm. <u>These activities, performed on food other than a farm’s own RACs, are outside the farm definition unless done on food for consumption on the farm.</u>



Classification	Off-Farm	On-Farm (Including Farm Mixed-Type Facilities)
Holding	<u>Notes:</u> Storage of food.	<u>Notes:</u> Storage of food, or activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of RACs grown or raised on that farm or another farm under the same ownership. Holding does not include activities that change a RAC into a processed food. Activities that are holding are within the farm definition when they are performed on food grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership; under any other circumstances they are outside the farm definition.
Holding	<u>Example:</u> Storing food, such as in a warehouse.	<u>Examples:</u> activities that fit the definition of holding when performed on a farm's own RACs include fumigating during storage, and storing food, such as in a warehouse. <u>These activities, performed on a farm's own RACs, are inside the farm definition.</u>  An activity that fits the definition of holding when performed on a farm on any other foods, including RACs grown or raised on a farm not under the same ownership, is storing food, such as in a warehouse -- the same activity that fits the definition of holding off farm. <u>This activity, performed on food other than a farm's own RACs, is outside the farm definition unless done on food for consumption on the farm.</u>
Manufacturing/ Processing	<u>Notes:</u> Making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying, or manipulating food. Includes packaging (putting food in a container that directly contacts food and that the consumer receives).	<u>Notes:</u> Making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying, or manipulating food; except for things that fall into the categories of harvesting, packing, or holding (see rows above). Activities that are manufacturing/processing are outside the farm definition unless done on food for consumption on the farm.

Classification	Off-Farm	On-Farm (Including Farm Mixed-Type Facilities)
Manufacturing/ Processing	<u>Examples:</u> Activities that fit this definition include washing, trimming of outer leaves, removing stems and husks, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, cooling, packaging, mixing, coating, sticker/labeling, drying, sorting/grading/culling not incidental to packing or holding, fumigating, slaughtering animals or post-slaughter operations, irradiation, cutting/coring/chopping/slicing, canning, artificial ripening, cooking, pasteurizing/homogenizing, infusing, distilling, salting, smoking, grinding/milling, and freezing.	<u>Examples:</u> Activities that fit the definition of manufacturing/processing when performed on a farm’s own RACs include slaughtering animals or post-slaughter operations, irradiation, cutting/coring/chopping/slicing, canning, coating with things other than wax/oil/resin, drying that creates a distinct commodity, artificial ripening, cooking, pasteurizing/homogenizing, infusing, distilling, salting, smoking, grinding/milling, and freezing. <u>These activities, performed on a farm’s own RACs, are outside the farm definition unless done on food for consumption on the farm.</u>  Activities that fit the definition of manufacturing/processing when performed on a farm on any other foods, including RACs grown or raised on a farm not under the same ownership include washing, trimming of outer leaves, removing stems and husks, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, cooling, packaging, mixing, coating, sticker/labeling, drying, sorting/grading/culling not incidental to packing or holding, fumigating, slaughtering animals or post-slaughter operations, irradiation, cutting/coring/chopping/slicing, canning, artificial ripening, cooking, pasteurizing/homogenizing, infusing, distilling, salting, smoking, grinding/milling, and freezing-- the same activities that fit the definition of manufacturing/processing off farm. <u>These activities, performed on food other than a farm’s own RACs, are outside the farm definition unless done on food for consumption on the farm.</u>

### 3. Proposed Technical Amendments and Conforming Changes

As a technical amendment for clarity and for consistency with our current approach to citing the FD&C Act in new regulations, FDA is proposing to delete the definition of “Act” in current § 1.227 of the section 415 registration regulations and revise all remaining definitions in current § 1.227 to refer to “the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act” rather than “the act.” As a conforming change, FDA is proposing to revise current § 1.241 in the section 415 registration regulations to refer to “the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act” rather than “the act.”

Likewise, as a technical amendment for clarity and for consistency with our current approach to citing the FD&C Act in new regulations, FDA is proposing to delete the definition

of “Act” in current § 1.328 of the section 414 recordkeeping regulations and revise all remaining definitions in current § 1.328 to refer to “the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act” rather than “the act.” As a conforming change, FDA is proposing to revise current §§ 1.361 and 1.363 in the section 414 registration regulations to refer to “the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act” rather than “the act.”

As a conforming change to the proposed definition of “harvesting,” FDA is proposing to revise the definition of “Farm” in current §§ 1.227(b)(3) and § 1.328 to delete examples of harvesting that currently appear in that definition. With the proposed new, separate definition of harvesting, it would be redundant to retain the examples of harvesting within the definition of “Farm.”

As a conforming change to the proposed redesignation of § 1.227 to eliminate paragraph designations, FDA is proposing to revise § 1.276(b)(9) in the prior notice regulations to cross-reference § 1.227 (without any paragraph designations) rather than to cross-reference § 1.227(b)(6).

#### F. Impact of Proposed Revisions to the Definitions in 21 CFR Part 1

##### 1. Approach

FDA has previously addressed whether various activities fall within the farm definition or not and, as discussed more fully in sections VIII.F.2 through VIII.F.5 of this document, has provided guidance on these issues in the rulemakings establishing the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations and in accompanying guidance (Ref. 116) (Ref. 117). For most of the activities FDA has previously addressed, applying the proposed definitions described in section VIII.E of this document would result in the same classification with respect to whether the activities are within the farm definition or not. However, because we

have not previously articulated a comprehensive set of organizing principles that form the basis for classification of activities, in some cases the classification of an activity (e.g., packing, holding, or harvesting), or the rationale leading to the classification of an activity, may be different under the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1 than under the current definitions in part 1.

In sections VIII.F.2 through VIII.F.5 of this document, we discuss several examples of activities that we previously addressed and interpreted during the rulemakings to establish the section 415 registration regulations and the section 414 recordkeeping regulations, or in related guidances. We also explain what, if any, impact our proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1 would have on our interpretation of whether or how an activity conducted on a farm or a farm mixed-type facility would be within the farm definition or would be outside the farm definition (and, thus, trigger the section 415 registration regulations and be within the scope of section 418 of the FD&C Act). We focus on examples of activities where we consider that the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1 would result in some change in outcome. For the convenience of the reader, in section VIII.F.6 of this document we provide a table summarizing these examples.

In sections VIII.F.2 through VIII.F.5 of this document, for the sake of simplicity, we discuss activities that would be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition under this proposal, without stating each time that such activities would still be within the farm definition if performed on food for a farm or farm mixed-type facility's own consumption. The discussion below should not be read to suggest that the activities discussed could not be within the farm definition if they were performed on food for a farm or farm mixed-type facility's own consumption.

## 2. Application of Pesticides to a Farm or Farm Mixed-Type Facility's Own Raw Agricultural Commodities

The general term “treating” is part of the definition of manufacturing/processing in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, and would remain in the proposed revision to that definition. FDA previously addressed “treating against pests” on farms and farm mixed-type facilities in the preamble to the interim final rule on food facility registration (68 FR 58894 at 58905), the Food Facility Registration Guidance (Questions 2.5, 2.6, and 11.1) (Ref. 116), and the preamble to the Establishment and Maintenance of Records final rule (69 FR 71562, 71587, December 9, 2004). In those documents, FDA previously concluded that treating crops against pests by applying pesticides prior to harvest is an integral part of growing crops and is therefore “growing” within the farm definition. For other post-harvest pesticide applications FDA previously concluded that the applications are manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition, because such applications are directed at the food rather than at the entire plant. However, for one specific postharvest pesticide application (i.e., applying wash water containing chlorine), FDA previously concluded both that some uses are washing within the farm definition and that another use is manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. Specifically, FDA previously concluded that the following two uses of water containing chlorine are washing within the farm definition: (1) the application by a farm of chlorinated water from public or other water supplies that are chlorinated for other purposes and (2) the application by a farm of wash water containing chlorine added by the farm to wash water at levels below 200 parts per million (ppm) total chlorine. FDA also previously concluded that the application by a farm of wash water containing chlorine added by the farm to wash water at levels above 200 ppm is

manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition because such levels constitute treating the crop against pests rather than washing.

Some but not all of these previous conclusions regarding the application of a pesticide to a farm or farm mixed-type facility's own RACs would change under the proposed revisions to part 1. Under both the current definitions in part 1 and the proposed revisions to those definitions, treatment of food crops against pests before harvest while the crop is still in the growing area has been, and would continue to be, considered an inherent part of the growing process and thus classified within the farm definition. Thus, the classification of such treatments would not be affected by the proposed revisions to part 1.

However, under the proposed revisions to part 1 FDA would now classify pesticide treatments of a farm's own RACs or a farm mixed-type facility's own RACs for the purpose of safe or effective storage to be holding within the farm definition rather than manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. An example of such activity is fumigating a farm's own raw nuts to prevent insect infestation and damage during the potentially long storage period of the nuts. FDA is aware that such treatments are traditionally performed by farms and may be a practical necessity for the preservation of some crops during storage, and such treatments do not transform a RAC into a processed food. Thus, these treatments fit the proposed definition of "holding" applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities with respect to their own RACs.

Likewise, under the proposed revisions to part 1 FDA would now classify pesticide treatment of a farm's own RACs or a farm mixed-type facility's own RACs for the purpose of removing the crop from the growing area and preparing it for use as food to be harvesting. An example of such activity is washing a crop in water containing an antimicrobial chemical after

removing the crop from the growing area. Generally, antimicrobial chemicals are intended only to ensure the safety of the wash water. However, if an antimicrobial chemical was also intended to reduce the microbial load on the crop itself as a safety measure, under the proposed revisions to part 1 addition of that antimicrobial chemical to reduce the microbial load on a farm's own RACs or a farm mixed-type facility's own RACs would now be classified within the farm definition rather than be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. For example, the application of wash water containing chlorine added by the farm at levels above 200 ppm to its own RACs would now be classified as washing and/or treating (depending on the circumstances), either of which would be harvesting within the farm definition rather than as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. FDA is aware that such treatments are traditionally performed by farms and that they are part of preparing the crop for safe use as food, and such treatments do not transform a RAC into a processed food. Thus, these treatments fit the proposed definition of "harvesting" applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities with respect to their own RACs. Except for the two examples discussed above where FDA previously concluded that certain applications of water containing chlorine are washing within the farm definition, the classification of washing a crop in water containing an antimicrobial chemical as within the farm definition would represent a change from its previous classification as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition.

Continuing to use the general term "treating" in the proposed definition of manufacturing/processing in §§ 1.227 and 1.328 is not in conflict with the tentative conclusions FDA is reaching in this document. First, the general term "treating" refers broadly to treatments of any kind, and not specifically "treating against pests." Under both the current definitions and the proposed revisions to the definitions, some "treating" (e.g., delivering a heat treatment) has

been, and would continue to be, classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. Second, for a farm or farm mixed-type facility conducting operations on its own RACs, only those activities that do not satisfy either the expanded definition of packing or holding, or the new definition of harvesting, would be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. Thus, although application of a pesticide treatment to a farm's own RACs would now be classified within the farm definition when such treatment falls within the categories of holding or harvesting, application of a pesticide treatment off-farm has been, and would be continue to be, classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition, because the exclusion applicable to a farm or farm mixed-type facility operating on its own RACs would not apply.

### 3. Coating a Farm or Farm Mixed-Type Facility's Own Raw Agricultural Commodities for Storage or Transport (e.g., Wax, Oil, or Resin Coatings)

FDA lists "waxing" as an example of a manufacturing/processing activity in the definition of that term in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, and waxing would remain as an example in the proposed revision to that definition. In addition, FDA has previously addressed "waxing" on farms and farm mixed-type facilities in the preamble to the interim final rule on Food Facility Registration (68 FR 58894 at 58912) and the preamble to the Establishment and Maintenance of Records final rule (69 FR 71562 at 71587). In those documents, FDA previously concluded that on-farm waxing was manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition.

This previous conclusion that on-farm waxing was manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition would change for certain types of waxing under the proposed revisions to part 1. Under those proposed revisions, applying a coating to a farm or farm mixed-type facility's own



RACs for the purpose of protecting them during storage or transport, and not to create a distinct commodity, would now be within the expanded definition of packing and thus be classified within the farm definition rather than be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. Examples of such coatings are waxes, oils, and resins applied to fresh produce such as cucumbers, apples, and avocados. FDA is aware that such treatments are traditionally performed by farms to prepare crops for storage or transport. These coatings do not transform a RAC into a processed food. Thus, these treatments fit the proposed definition of “packing” applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities with respect to their own RACs. By contrast, if a farm or a farm mixed-type facility applies a coating to its own RACs in a manner that creates a distinct commodity (e.g., coating nuts in chocolate or coating apples in caramel), that activity would create a processed food and would not fit the expanded definition of packing. Thus, the act of applying the coating would continue to be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition.

Continuing to use “waxing” as an example in the proposed definition of manufacturing/processing in §§ 1.227 and 1.328 is not in conflict with these tentative conclusions. As explained with respect to pesticide treatments, activities that are conducted on a farm or farm mixed-type facility and are within the expanded definitions of packing and holding, or the new definition of harvesting, would be classified within the farm definition rather than classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition. The current definition of manufacturing/processing in §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328 and the examples of harvesting within the definition of farm in §§ 1.227(b)(3) and 1.328 demonstrate that FDA has consistently cited some activities as examples of manufacturing/processing as a general matter, but classified them differently in specific situations based on relevant circumstances. Washing, trimming, and

cooling are all examples of manufacturing/processing in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, but washing, trimming outer leaves of, and cooling produce are part of harvesting in the farm definition in current §§ 1.227(b)(3) and 1.328. Use of an activity as an example of manufacturing/processing in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, or the proposed revision of that definition, does not represent a conclusion that the activity is always classified as manufacturing/processing under all circumstances. FDA expects that its proposed revisions to part 1 will clarify this.

#### 4. Drying a Farm or Farm Mixed-Type Facility's Own Raw Agricultural Commodities to Create a Distinct Commodity

FDA has previously addressed drying RACs on farms and farm mixed-type facilities in the Food Facility Registration Guidance (Ref. 116) and the Recordkeeping Guidance (Ref. 117). In those documents, FDA previously reached three conclusions relevant to drying: (1) drying peppermint naturally during storage in a barn would not be manufacturing/processing; (2) drying hay naturally or artificially is an essential part of harvesting hay to prevent spontaneous combustion and is therefore not manufacturing/processing; and (3) drying alfalfa would be part of harvesting if it was an activity traditionally performed during the removing of the crop from the field through the safe storage of the crop.

One of these previous conclusions regarding drying (i.e., the previous conclusion regarding drying herbs) would change under the proposed revisions to part 1. As discussed in section VIII.D of this document, FDA tentatively concludes that the question of whether an activity transforms a RAC into a processed food should be part of defining what activities are within the farm definition, because RACs are essential products of farms and processed foods are not. Thus, activities that transform foods from RACs into processed foods would not be within

the expanded definitions of packing or holding, or the new definition of harvesting, that apply to farms and farm mixed-type facilities conducting activities on their own RACs. Instead, anything that transforms a RAC into a processed food would be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (unless it is done only for consumption on the farm or farm mixed-type facility).

In the Antimicrobial Guidance (Ref. 118), FDA approved of and referenced the 1996 EPA interpretive ruling entitled “Pesticides; Status of Dried Commodities as Raw Agricultural Commodities” (61 FR 2386). As discussed briefly in section VIII.D of this document, in the 1998 EPA/FDA Joint Policy Interpretation and the Antimicrobial Guidance, FDA and EPA concluded that a RAC becomes a processed food when it is dried, unless the purpose of the drying is to facilitate transportation or storage of the commodity prior to processing. As a practical matter, this means that some RACs become processed foods when they are dried, because the drying creates a distinct commodity from the RAC. An example of this kind of drying is drying grapes to create raisins; raisins are processed foods (61 FR 2386 at 2388). When the drying is for the purpose of storage or transport and does not create a distinct commodity, however (such as for grains, nuts, legumes, hays, other grasses, hops, rice, beans, and corn), the dried commodity remains a RAC (61 FR 2386 at 2388).

Accordingly, under the proposed revisions to part 1 drying hay and alfalfa would now be classified within the expanded definitions of packing or holding, depending on how the drying is conducted (before storage or during storage, respectively), because these crops are traditionally dried by farms for the purpose of preparing for storage or transport (for packing) or for safe and effective storage (for holding), and because drying these crops does not create a distinct commodity (so the dried commodity is still a RAC). Drying hay and alfalfa in the manner FDA

previously discussed would continue to be classified within the farm definition. In contrast, drying herbs such as peppermint would now be classified as manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition, because drying an herb creates a distinct commodity and therefore a processed food, just as drying a fruit creates a distinct commodity and therefore a processed food.

#### 5. Off-Farm Packaging of Raw Agricultural Commodities

Current §§ 1.227(b)(8) and 1.328 define “packaging” (when used as a verb) as placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives, and that definition of “packaging” would remain unchanged under the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1. Packaging is listed as an example of manufacturing/processing in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328 (as well as in § 1.226(a)), and would continue to be listed as an example of manufacturing/processing under the proposed revisions to part 1. As discussed in section VIII.E.2 of this document, current §§ 1.227(b)(9) and 1.328 distinguish “packaging” from “packing” and define “packing” as placing food into a container other than packaging the food. Under the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1, that definition of “packing” would be expanded to include activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of RACs grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but would not include activities that transform a RAC, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act.

FDA has previously addressed packaging on farms and farm mixed-type facilities, and off-farm, in the Food Facility Registration Guidance (Ref. 116), the preamble to the Establishment and Maintenance of Records final rule (69 FR 71562 at 71587), and the Recordkeeping Guidance (Ref. 117). In those documents, FDA previously reached four

conclusions relevant to “packaging” and “packing” activities on farms and farm mixed-type facilities: (1) placing RACs into consumer-ready containers (e.g., placing strawberries in clamshell packages, and placing eggs in a carton) both on the farm that grew them and at off-farm packing houses is “more akin to packing” than packaging (despite meeting the definition of packaging) because it does not alter the form of the food, so it is not manufacturing/processing; (2) bottling wine (placing it in a container that touches the food and that the consumer receives) is packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing because it preserves the manufactured condition of the wine; (3) placing cereal in a plastic cereal box liner is packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing; and (4) placing apples received from elsewhere in bulk into plastic bags is packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing.

Most of these conclusions would remain the same under the proposed revisions to part 1, although the reasoning for those conclusions would instead be based on the organizing principles articulated in the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1. Specifically, bottling wine and placing cereal in plastic box liners would continue to be classified as packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing, regardless of where such activities are performed, because those foods are processed foods to which the expanded proposed definition of packing would not be applicable. Placing apples received from elsewhere in bulk into plastic bags would continue to be classified as packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing, because the activity is conducted on others’ RACs.

Under the proposed revisions to the definitions in part 1, a farm or farm mixed-type facility that places its own RACs in consumer containers that contact the food would now be classified as packing because farms traditionally do this to prepare their RACs for storage or transport, and this activity does not transform the RACs into a processed food. Examples of this

kind of activity include an egg farm putting its own eggs in cartons, a strawberry farm placing its own strawberries in clamshell packages, or an apple farm placing its own apples into plastic bags. Such packing activities would continue to be classified within the farm definition.

Under the proposed revisions to part 1, there would be a change in how FDA considers the act of placing RACs into consumer containers (1) off-farm and (2) on a farm or farm mixed-type facility with respect to others' RACs. Off-farm, the expanded definition of packing would not apply, so this activity would now be classified as packaging (and, therefore, manufacturing/processing). Off-farm, as a practical matter this change should have no practical impact because off-farm establishments that conduct this activity are already required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act, and therefore already are subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act, whether this activity is classified as packing or manufacturing/processing. However, on a farm or farm mixed-type facility that places others' RACs into consumer containers, this activity would now be classified as packaging and therefore manufacturing/processing, because the expanded definition of packing would only apply to a farm's own RACs. This change in classification would impact a farm or farm mixed-type facility that conducts such activities if it is not currently required to register. This classification result is consistent with the organizing principles articulated in section VIII.D of this document because, while it may be a practical necessity for a farm to place its own fragile RACs in consumer packages to protect them during storage and transport, packaging others' RACs is not part of the essential purpose of a farm (producing the farm's own RACs). Farms that conduct such activities are acting as distributors for another farm's products and FDA considers that the activities they conduct on others' RACs should be classified as manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding in the same manner as are

activities performed by off-farm distributors of RACs. Therefore FDA tentatively concludes that these activities should now be outside the farm definition. We seek comment on this proposal.

6. Summary of Examples of the Impact of the Proposed Revisions to the Definitions in 21 CFR Part 1 on a Farm or Farm Mixed-Type Facility

For the convenience of the reader, Table 5 summarizes the examples discussed in sections VIII.F.2 through VIII.F.5 of this document.

Table 5. Summary of the Examples of the Impact of the Proposed Revisions to the Definitions in 21 CFR Part 1 on a Farm or Farm Mixed-Type Facility

Activity	How Does FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Current</u> Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using FDA’s <u>Current</u> Classification, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	How Would FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	Would the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions Represent a Change?
Application of Pesticide					
Applying pesticides to own RACs prior to harvest	Growing within the farm definition (because it is an integral part of growing crops)	No	Growing within the farm definition (because it is an integral part of growing crops)	No	No
Fumigating own raw nuts to prevent insect infestation and damage during the potentially long storage period of the nuts	Manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (because application of pesticides after harvest is necessarily directed at the food, not the entire plant)	Yes	Holding within the farm definition (for the purpose of safe or effective storage)	No	Yes

Activity	How Does FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Current</u> Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using FDA's <u>Current</u> Classification, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	How Would FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	Would the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions Represent a Change?
Use of pesticides in wash water applied to own RACs	Harvesting within the farm definition if water is from a public or other supply chlorinated for other purposes, or if chlorine is added at 200 ppm or less (washing that does not treat the crop); manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition if chlorine is added at levels above 200 ppm	Depends on source and level of chlorine in water; FDA has not previously addressed chemicals other than chlorine	Harvesting within the farm definition (washing and/or treating against pests for the purpose of removing the crop from the growing area and preparing it for use as food)	No	Yes
Coating					
Applying coatings to own RACs (e.g., applying waxes, oils, and resins to fresh produce; coating raw nuts in chocolate; coating apples in caramel)	Manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (waxing generally, not specific to fresh produce)	Yes, for waxing generally; FDA has not previously addressed other coatings	Waxes, oils, and resins on fresh produce: Packing within the farm definition (for the purpose of protecting them during storage or transport, and not to create a distinct commodity);  Chocolate on nuts or caramel on apples: Manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (creates a distinct commodity and thus creates a processed food)	Waxes, oils, and resins on fresh produce: No  Chocolate on nuts or caramel on apples: Yes	Yes
Drying					



Activity	How Does FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Current</u> Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using FDA's <u>Current</u> Classification, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	How Would FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	Would the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions Represent a Change?
Drying peppermint naturally during storage in a barn	Storage within the farm definition	No	Manufacturing/ processing outside the farm definition (transforms a RAC into a processed food)	Yes	Yes
Drying hay naturally or artificially	Harvesting within the farm definition (an essential part of harvesting hay to prevent spontaneous combustion)	No	Packing or holding within the farm definition (depending on whether the drying is before storage or during storage)	No	No
Drying alfalfa	Harvesting within the farm definition (traditionally performed during the removing of the crop from the field through the safe storage of the crop)	No	Packing within the farm definition (done before storage to prepare a RAC for storage or transport and does not create a distinct commodity)	No	No
Drying grapes to create raisins	FDA has not previously addressed this activity	FDA has not previously addressed this activity	Manufacturing/ processing outside the farm definition (transforms a RAC into a processed food)	Yes	Yes (because FDA is addressing this activity for the first time)
Packing/Packaging					

Activity	How Does FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Current</u> Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using FDA's <u>Current</u> Classification, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	How Would FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	Would the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions Represent a Change?
Bottling wine	Packaging, which is manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (because it preserves the manufactured condition of the wine)	Yes	Packaging, which is manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (because the food is a processed food so the expanded definition of packing does not apply)	Yes	No
Placing cereal in a plastic cereal box liner	Packaging, which is manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition	Yes	Packaging, which is manufacturing/processing outside the farm definition (because the food is a processed food so the expanded definition of packing does not apply)	Yes	No
Placing a farm's or farm mixed-type facility's own RACs into consumer-ready containers (e.g., placing strawberries in clamshell packages, and placing eggs in a carton)	Packing within the farm definition (because it does not alter the form of the food)	No	Packing within the farm definition (because farms traditionally do this to prepare their RACs for storage or transport, and this activity does not transform the RACs into a processed food)	No	No

Activity	How Does FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Current</u> Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using FDA’s <u>Current</u> Classification, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	How Would FDA Classify the Activity Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revisions to the Definitions in §§ 1.227 and 1.328?	Using the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions, Would Conducting the Activity Trigger the Section 415 Registration Regulations?	Would the Classification Under the <u>Proposed</u> Revised Definitions Represent a Change?
Placing others’ RACs into consumer-ready packages on a farm or farm mixed-type facility (e.g., placing others’ apples received in bulk into plastic bags)	Packaging, which is manufacturing/ processing outside the farm definition	Yes	Packaging, which is manufacturing/ processing outside the farm definition (because the activity is conducted on others’ RACS)	Yes	No
Placing others’ RACs into consumer-ready containers off-farm (e.g., placing strawberries in clamshell packages, and placing eggs in a carton at a facility not co-located on a farm or farm mixed-type facility)	Packing (because it does not alter the form of the food), but not within the farm definition because conducted off-farm	Yes	Packaging, which is manufacturing/ processing (because the activity is conducted off-farm, so the expanded definition of packing does not apply)	Yes	Yes, but while the classification of the activity changes from packing to manufacturing/ processing, under both the current and proposed revised definitions, the activity would trigger registration

G. Qualitative Risk Assessment of On-Farm Activities Outside of the Farm Definition

As discussed in section VIII.A.2 of this document, section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA directs the Secretary to conduct a science-based risk analysis as part of the section 103(c) rulemaking. The science-based risk analysis is to cover “(i) specific types of on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership, as such packing and holding relates to specific foods; and (ii) specific on-farm

manufacturing and processing activities as such activities relate to specific foods that are not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.”

As used in section 103(c)(1) of FSMA, the term “risk analysis” is ambiguous. One interpretation is that the common meaning of the term is intended – a simple evaluation of whether activity/food combinations are likely to result in the consumer becoming ill. Another interpretation is that the “risk analysis” should be consistent with the formal definition and related terms used by Codex with respect to food safety (Ref. 119):

- Risk is a function of the probability of an adverse health effect and the severity of that effect, consequential to a hazard(s) in food.
- Risk analysis is a process consisting of three components: risk assessment, risk management and risk communication.
- Risk assessment is a scientifically-based process consisting of hazard identification, hazard characterization, exposure assessment, and risk characterization.
- Risk management is the process, distinct from risk assessment, of weighing policy alternatives, in consultation with interested parties, considering risk assessment and other factors relevant for the health protection of consumers and for the promotion of fair trade practices, and, if needed, selecting appropriate prevention and control options.
- Risk communication is the interactive exchange of information and opinions throughout the risk analysis process concerning risk, risk-related factors and risk perceptions, among risk assessors, risk managers, consumers, industry, the academic community and other interested parties, including the explanation of risk assessment findings and the basis of risk management decisions.

Because section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA calls for a science-based risk analysis, we are applying the Codex definitions to the extent possible. It is not clear whether the requirement of section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA to conduct a science-based risk analysis was intended to encompass all three components of risk analysis. Section 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA requires the Secretary to consider the results of the science-based risk analysis and exempt certain facilities from the requirements in section 418 of the FD&C Act, including hazard analysis and preventive controls, and the mandatory inspection frequency of section 421, or to modify those requirements for facilities engaged in on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing or holding activities determined to be low risk involving foods determined to be low risk. Thus, section 103(c)(1)(D) of FSMA is focused on ensuring that the agency's risk management decisions with respect to exempting or modifying requirements applicable to low-risk on-farm activity/food combinations under sections 418 and 421 are science-based, as determined by an analysis of the risk of specific types of on-farm activity/food combinations required by section 103(c)(1)(C). We therefore tentatively conclude that the analysis required by section 103(c)(1)(C) should be limited to an assessment of the risk of specific types of on-farm activity/food combinations for the purposes of making the risk management decisions required by section 103(c)(1)(D). The risk communication component of the risk analysis is accomplished through the discussion of that assessment in this document, the opportunities for public comment (on the risk assessment and on this proposed rule), and our evaluation of, and response to, comments in a final rule.

Consistent with this approach, we conducted a qualitative risk assessment (Ref. 115) ("Section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA") related to activity/food combinations for the purpose of determining which activity/food combinations would be considered low risk. We focused on activity/food combinations that we identified as being conducted on farms (and, thus, might be

conducted by farm mixed-type facilities), but we did not consider activity/food combinations that would be solely within the farm definition (such as growing fruits and vegetables) and, thus, are not relevant to the requirements of section 103 of FSMA. We focused on considering the risk of activity/food combinations rather than separately considering the risk of specific food categories because doing so better enabled us to focus on whether a specific manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activity conducted on food by a farm mixed-type facility warranted an exemption from, or modified requirements for, the provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

Elsewhere in this issue of the Federal Register, FDA is making the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA available for public comment. We will consider comments regarding the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA in preparing a final version of the RA and will announce the availability of the final version of the RA when it is available. The final preventive controls rule will take into account the final version of the section 103(c)(1)(C) RA.

#### H. Results of the Qualitative Risk Assessment

In this section, we report the results of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA, arranged in three lists. References to “farms” in these lists should be understood to include farm mixed-type facilities. The lists are shaped by the proposed definitions for harvesting, manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding in the section 415 registration regulations (discussed in section VIII.E of this document), the organizing principles (discussed in section VIII.D of this document) that form the basis for those proposed definitions, and the examples of activity classifications (discussed in section VIII.F of this document). As discussed in section VIII.E of this document, the same activity may be classified differently (among the categories of harvesting, manufacturing/processing, packing, or holding) depending on whether the food being operated upon is a RAC and whether the RAC was grown or raised on the farm or farm mixed-

type facility performing the activity or a farm under the same ownership. We request comment on the lists in sections VIII.H.1 through VIII.H.3.

For the purposes of this document, a fruit is the edible reproductive body of a seed plant or tree nut (such as apple, orange, and almond) such that fruit means the harvestable or harvested part of a plant developed from a flower. For the purposes of this document, a vegetable is the edible part of an herbaceous plant (such as cabbage or potato) or fleshy fruiting body of a fungus (such as white button or shiitake) grown for an edible part such that vegetable means the harvestable or harvested part of any plant or fungus whose fruit, fleshy fruiting bodies, seeds, roots, tubers, bulbs, stems, leaves, or flower parts are used as food and includes mushrooms, sprouts, and herbs (such as basil or cilantro). Examples of fruits and vegetables are apples, apricots, avocados, bananas, berries, broccoli, cabbage, cantaloupe, carrots, cauliflower, celery, cherries, citrus, cucumbers, garlic, grapes, green beans, herbs (such as basil, chives, cilantro, mint, oregano, and parsley), honeydew, kiwifruit, lettuce, mangos, mushrooms, onions, papaya, peaches, pears, peas, peppers, pineapple, plums, radish, scallions, snow peas, spinach, sprouts, squash, tomatoes, and watermelon. For the purposes of this document, grains means the small, hard fruits or seeds of arable crops, or the crops bearing these fruits or seeds, that are grown and processed for use as meal, flour, baked goods, cereals and oils rather than for fresh consumption (including cereal grains, pseudo cereals, oilseeds and other plants used in the same fashion). Examples of food grains include barley, dent- or flint-corn, sorghum, oats, rice, rye, wheat, amaranth, quinoa, buckwheat, cotton seed, and soybeans.

For the purpose of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA, “intact fruits and vegetables” refers only to fruits and vegetables other than cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree nuts. Cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree

nuts can be considered part of “fruits and vegetables” as a general matter, but we addressed those foods separately for the purpose of section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA in order to accurately reflect differences in activity/food combinations likely to be performed on farm mixed-type facilities on those foods as compared to other fruits and vegetables, as well as specific hazards associated with certain of those foods.

1. List of low-risk on-farm packing and holding activity/food combinations when conducted on food not grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership

The section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA identified the following low-risk packing and holding activity/food combinations when conducted on a farm on food not grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership - i.e., packing or re-packing (including weighing or conveying incidental to packing or re-packing); sorting, culling, or grading incidental to packing or storing; and storing (ambient, cold and controlled atmosphere) of:

- Hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee;
- Cocoa products;
- Cocoa beans and coffee beans (raw or roasted);
- Grains and grain products;
- Honey (raw and pasteurized);
- Intact fruits and vegetables;
- Jams, jellies and preserves;
- Maple sap for syrup and maple syrup;
- Peanuts and tree nuts;
- Soft drinks and carbonated water; and
- Sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar.



We note that the same activities performed on a farm's own RACs, or food consumed on the farm or another farm under the same ownership, would be within the farm definition and therefore were outside the scope of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA.

2. List of low-risk on-farm manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations when conducted on the farm's own raw agricultural commodities for distribution into commerce

The section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA identified the following low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations when conducted on a farm on the farm's own RACs for distribution into commerce:

- Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;
- Boiling/evaporation of maple sap to make maple syrup;
- Chopping raw peanuts and raw tree nuts;
- Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples) and raw peanuts and raw tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);
- Drying/dehydrating intact fruits and vegetables (without the addition of sulfites) where the drying creates a distinct commodity (e.g., drying fruits or herbs);
- Extracting oil from grains;
- Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal) and raw peanuts or raw tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);
- Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);
- Making sugar from sugarcane and sugar beets; and
- Salting raw peanuts and raw tree nuts.

3. List of low-risk on-farm manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations when conducted on food other than the farm's own raw agricultural commodities, for distribution into commerce

The section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA identified the following low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations when conducted on a farm on food other than the farm's own RACs, for distribution into commerce.

- Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;
- Chopping peanuts and tree nuts;
- Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples) and peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);
- Cooling intact fruits and vegetables using cold air;
- Drying/dehydrating (whether for storage/transport or for creating a distinct commodity) intact fruits and vegetables (without sulfiting), cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts;
- Extracting oils from grains (e.g., corn, oilseeds, soybeans);
- Fermenting cocoa beans and coffee beans;
- Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal), and peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);
- Labeling (including stickering) hard candy, cocoa beans, cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans (other than milk chocolate), coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products (other than those containing wheat in a form that would not be recognized as

containing wheat without a label declaration), honey, jams/jellies/preserves, maple sap, maple syrup, intact single-ingredient peanuts or tree nuts (shelled and unshelled), soft drinks and carbonated beverages, sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

- Making hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee;
- Making cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans;
- Making honey;
- Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);
- Making maple syrup;
- Making soft drinks and carbonated water;
- Making sugar from sugar beets and sugarcane;
- Mixing cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain

products, honey, maple sap and maple syrup, and peanuts and tree nuts;

- Packaging hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and vegetables (other than modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies and preserves; maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts (including modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

- Salting peanuts and tree nuts;
- Shelling/hulling cocoa beans (i.e., winnowing), intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., dried beans and peas), and peanuts and tree nuts;
- Sifting grains and grain products;
- Sorting, culling and grading (other than when incidental to packing or storage)

hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and

vegetables; grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies and preserves; maple sap; maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts; soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets and sugarcane;

- Treating cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts against pests (other than during growing) (e.g., fumigation); and
- Waxing (wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables.

We note that the list in this section (i.e., section VIII.H.3) for low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations for foods other than a farm's own RACs is longer than the corresponding list in the previous section (i.e., section VIII.H.2) for low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations for a farm's own RACs. This relates to the fact that some activities that would be manufacturing/processing when performed on foods other than a farm's own RACs are not manufacturing/processing when performed on a farm's own RACs. As discussed in sections VIII.E and VIII.F of this document, when some activities are performed on the farm's own RACs, those activities are classified as packing, holding, or harvesting and are within the farm definition, making them outside the scope of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA and resulting in a shorter list of low-risk activity/food combinations for the purpose of the rulemaking required by section 103(c) of FSMA.

#### I. Tentative Conclusions Regarding On-Farm Low-Risk Activity/Food Combinations

##### Under Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Based on the results of the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA regarding on-farm low-risk activity/food combinations, we are proposing in § 117.5(g) and (h) to exempt farm mixed-type facilities that are small or very small businesses (as defined in proposed § 117.3) from

requirements under section 418 of the FD&C Act if the only activities subject to section 418 that the business conducts are low-risk activity/food combinations (see the discussion of these proposed exemptions in section X.C.6 of this document). The proposed exemptions would not exempt eligible facilities from the requirement to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act.

#### J. Tentative Conclusions Regarding On-Farm Low-Risk Activity/Food Combinations

##### Under Section 421 of the FD&C Act

We tentatively conclude that FDA should consider the low-risk on-farm activity/food combinations identified in the section 103(c)(1)(C) draft RA as a factor in identifying high-risk facilities that are small and very small businesses and allocating inspection resources under Section 421 of the FD&C Act, Targeting of Inspectional Resources for Domestic Facilities. However, at this time, FDA tentatively concludes that it should not exempt or modify the frequency requirements under 421 based solely upon whether a facility only engages in such low-risk activity/food combinations and is a small or very small business. Current data limitations impact our ability to accurately identify such facilities, and we must be able to identify such facilities in order to implement an exempted or modified inspection frequency schedule. We request comment on whether we should establish data submission requirements that would allow us to identify these types of facilities in order to exempt them from the inspection frequencies, or modify the inspection frequencies that apply to them, under section 421 of the FD&C Act. Examples of data elements that we might need in order to identify these facilities include: identification of a facility as a farm mixed-type facility, annual monetary value of sales, number of employees, food category/activity type. We also request comment on these possible data elements and any other criteria that may be appropriate for the purposes of allocating inspection resources to these facilities.

## IX. Proposed General Revisions to Current Part 110

### A. Title

FDA is proposing to revise the title of current subpart B from “Current Good Manufacturing Practice in Manufacturing, Packing, or Holding Human Food” to “Current Good Manufacturing Practice and Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls for Human Food.” The proposed title would reflect that proposed part 117 would include both CGMP requirements (including those established prior to the enactment of FSMA) and requirements for risk-based preventive controls for domestic and foreign facilities that are required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act. As proposed, the title of proposed part 117 would no longer identify specific activities (i.e., manufacturing, packing, and holding). The activities covered by the CGMP requirements would be identified within the requirements themselves and are not necessary to include in the title of proposed part 117. We request comment on the proposed title for part 117.

### B. Proposed Redesignations

FDA is proposing to redesignate the subparts of current part 110 and to include in proposed part 117, subpart B the CGMP provisions already established in part 110. The proposed redesignation will clearly separate current CGMP requirements, and any newly proposed CGMP requirements, from newly proposed requirements that would implement section 418 of the FD&C Act. The proposed redesignation is intended to make it easy for persons who would be exempt from requirements established under section 418 of the FD&C Act to identify the CGMP requirements that apply to them.

FDA also is proposing a general reorganization and redesignation of the provisions currently in part 110 as they would be established in proposed part 117. The proposed revisions

are intended to enhance the clarity of proposed part 117 as a whole. Table 6 shows the proposed reorganization and redesignation of current provisions. In sections X and XI of this document, we discuss proposed changes to the current provisions of part 110 in the order in which they would appear in a final rule based on this proposed rule. Provisions that we do not propose to delete or revise would be re-established in part 117 unchanged.

Table 6. Proposed Rearrangement of Provisions and Subparts of Current Part 110

Current Designation	Current Subpart Location	Proposed Redesignation	Proposed Subpart Location
§ 110.3--Definitions	Subpart A	Proposed § 117.3	Proposed Subpart A
§ 110.5--Current good manufacturing practice	Subpart A	Proposed § 117.1	Proposed Subpart A
§ 110.10--Personnel	Subpart A	Proposed § 117.10	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.19--Exclusions	Subpart A	Proposed § 117.5(k)	Proposed subpart A
§ 110.20--Plant and grounds	Subpart B	Proposed § 117.20	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.35--Sanitary operations	Subpart B	Proposed § 117.35	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.37--Sanitary facilities and controls	Subpart B	Proposed § 117.37	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.40--Equipment and utensils	Subpart C	Proposed § 117.40	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.80--Processes and controls	Subpart E	Proposed § 117.80	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.93--Warehousing and distribution	Subpart E	Proposed § 117.93	Proposed subpart B
§ 110.110--Natural or unavoidable defects in food for human use that present no health hazard	Subpart G	Proposed § 117.110	Proposed subpart B

### C. Proposed Revisions for Consistency of Terms

#### 1. Activities Subject to Proposed Part 117

FDA is proposing to revise provisions of current part 110 to make clear that the activities that would be subject to proposed part 117 include manufacturing, processing, packing and holding. We describe each of these proposed revisions elsewhere in this document, in an order consistent with the placement of the current or revised provision. Section 418 of the FD&C Act uses this group of terms to broadly identify activities that take place in food facilities. In addition, we have previously described activities that may be considered “manufacturing,

processing, packing, or holding” by establishing definitions for “manufacturing/processing” in current §§ 1.227(b)(6) and 1.328, “packing” in current §§ 1.227(b)(9) and 1.328, and “holding” in current §§ 1.227(b)(5) and 1.328. This proposed rule proposes certain revisions to these existing definitions (see section VIII.E of this document) and would incorporate the revised definitions of manufacturing/processing, packing, and holding in proposed part 117. We tentatively conclude there is no meaningful distinction between “manufacturing/processing,” “packing,” and “holding” as defined in our proposed revisions to §§ 1.227 and 1.328 and those terms as they have been used in current part 110. We also tentatively conclude that consistent use of these terms throughout proposed part 117, in reference to activities taking place in food facilities, establishments, or plants, would make the regulations more clear and have no substantive effect on the current requirements. We request comment on this proposed revision.

## 2. The Term “Facility”

FDA is proposing to replace the term “facility” or “facilities” in current part 110 with the term “establishment” or “plant” in proposed part 117 whenever the term “facility” or “facilities” could be confused with the firms that are subject to the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls required by section 418 of the FD&C Act. FDA is proposing this change to distinguish between the requirements of current part 110 (Current Good Manufacturing Practices) and requirements that we are proposing to establish under section 103 of FSMA. The term “facility” as used in current part 110 reflects the common meaning of that term as something designed, built, or installed to serve a specific function. However, after issuance of current part 110, in our regulation implementing section 415 of the FD&C Act, “Registration of Food Facilities” (§ 1.227(b)(2) in part 1, subpart H), we defined the term “facility” to have a very specific meaning for the purpose of that regulation as follows:



Current section 1.227(b)(2) provides in part that “[f]acility means any establishment, structure, or structures under one ownership at one general physical location, or, in the case of a mobile facility, traveling to multiple locations, that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States.” Part 1, subpart H broadly defines the term “facility” for the purposes of that subpart, and provides that facilities must register unless they qualify for one of the exemptions in that subpart. For example, current § 1.227(b)(3) defines “farm” as a type of facility, and § 1.226(b) provides that farms do not need to register.

Section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act defines “facility” for the purposes of section 418 to mean “a domestic facility or a foreign facility that is required to register under section 415” of the FD&C Act, and proposed § 117.3 would define “facility” to incorporate this statutory definition. Under proposed § 117.3, the term “facility” would have a meaning for the purposes of proposed part 117 that is more narrow than the common meaning of the term or the definition of facility in current § 1.227(b)(2), in that it would encompass only those facilities that are required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act (and part 1, subpart H). Our proposal to replace the term “facility” in current part 110 with “establishment” or “plant” in proposed part 117 is intended to avoid confusion about the applicability of proposed part 117 to plants or establishments that satisfy the definition of the term “facility” in current § 1.227(b) but are exempt from the requirement to register. We describe each of these proposed revisions elsewhere in this document, in an order consistent with the placement of the current or revised provision. We request comment on this proposed revision.

We are not proposing to replace the use of the term “facilities” in current requirements directed to specific functional parts of a plant or establishment, such as “toilet facilities” and “hand-washing facilities.” We tentatively conclude that the use of the term “facilities” in these

contexts would not create confusion. We request comment on whether there is potential for confusion such that we should eliminate all use of the term “facility” or “facilities” as it is used in current part 110 irrespective of context.

### 3. Owner, Operator, or Agent in Charge

Section 418 of the FD&C Act establishes requirements applicable to the “owner, operator, or agent in charge” of a facility. Current part 110 establishes requirements for persons not explicitly identified as “owner, operator, or agent in charge” of a food plant or establishment. For example, current § 110.10 establishes requirements applicable to “plant management” and current § 110.20(a) establishes requirements for the “operator” of a food plant. We request comment on whether there is any meaningful difference between the persons identified in current part 110 and the “owner, operator, or agent in charge” identified in section 418 of the FD&C Act. We also request comment on whether it would be appropriate to refer to the “owner, operator, or agent in charge” of a plant, establishment, or facility throughout proposed part 117 and, if so, whether the requirements would be clear if we revise the proposed rule to use pronouns (such as “you” and “your”) within proposed part 117. Pronouns are commonly used in contemporary regulations and simplify the presentation of the requirements.

### 4. Food-packaging Materials

Most provisions of current part 110 directed to preventing contamination of food and food-contact substances also are directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials. Because food-packaging materials come in contact with food, if they become contaminated this could lead to contamination of the food. FDA is proposing that provisions of current part 110 directed to preventing contamination of food and food-contact substances consistently be directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well. We

describe each of these proposed revisions elsewhere in this document, in an order consistent with the placement of the current or revised provision.

#### D. Proposed Additions Regarding Cross-Contact

Proposed § 117.3 would define the term “cross-contact” to mean the unintentional incorporation of a food allergen into a food. “Food allergen” would be defined as a major food allergen as defined in section 201(qq) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. As discussed in section X.B.4 of this document, it has been estimated that food allergies affect four to six percent of children and two to three percent of adults in the U.S. Food allergies can cause life threatening reactions to foods. Because there is no cure for food allergy, sensitive consumers and their families must practice avoidance to prevent reactions. To do so they must rely on food labels to be complete, clear, and accurate. Manufacturers can provide consumers with the food labels they need by using controls to ensure that labels declare all the food allergens that are intended to be present, controls to ensure that the correct label is applied to the product, and controls that prevent the unintended presence of food allergens through cross-contact.

Comments submitted to the Food CGMP Modernization Working Group emphasized the importance of controls to prevent cross-contact (Ref. 1). After considering the comments, the CGMP Working Group report recommended that food processing establishments that handle any of the major food allergens be required to develop and adopt a food allergen control plan that addresses six areas of control, one of which is “[p]revention of cross-contact during processing” (Ref. 1). FDA interprets current part 110 to require protection against cross-contact, which can constitute insanitary conditions that may cause a food to be adulterated under section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act if the food may have been rendered injurious to health. Consistent with this interpretation, FDA issued a Notice to Manufacturers titled “Allergy Warning Letter” on June

10, 1996, advising with regard to cross-contact that adhering to CGMPs is essential for effective reduction of adverse reactions, and urging manufacturers to take all steps necessary to eliminate cross contamination and to ensure the absence of unintended food allergens (Ref. 120). In the past, inadvertent incorporation of an allergen into a food was referred to as “contamination” or “cross contamination” (Ref. 121), and in many instances these terms are still used (Ref. 122). More recently, the term “cross-contact” (rather than “contamination” or “cross contamination”) has been applied with respect to unintentional transfer of allergenic proteins from a food containing the proteins to one that does not (Ref. 123) (Ref. 124), because an allergen is a normal component of food, and not itself a contaminant. Given this shift in the scientific literature distinguishing “cross-contact” from “contamination” and “cross contamination,” FDA tentatively concludes that it should begin using the term “cross-contact” to describe inadvertent incorporation of an allergen into food, rather than the general term “contamination,” for purposes of clarity. To make it clear that CGMPs require protection against cross-contact, and to ensure that CGMPs continue to address health concerns related to allergens, FDA is proposing to revise several provisions of current part 110 to explicitly address cross-contact in proposed part 117.

We describe each of these proposed additions elsewhere in this document, in an order consistent with the placement of the current or revised provision. We request comment on this proposed revision to the CGMPs.

#### E. Proposed Revisions for Consistency With the Definition of “Food”

Current § 110.3 defines “food” to mean food as defined in section 201(f) of the FD&C Act and includes raw materials and ingredients. We are proposing to retain that definition in this proposed rule. There is an overlap between raw materials and ingredients. Not all raw materials are ingredients. For example, under section 201(f) of the FD&C Act, a food additive is food and,

thus, the manufacture of a food additive is subject to current part 110. An example of a food additive is sucrose fatty acid esters. Under § 172.859, sucrose fatty acid esters are the mono-, di-, and tri-esters of sucrose with fatty acids and are derived from sucrose and edible tallow or hydrogenated edible tallow or edible vegetable oils. The only solvents which may be used in the preparation of sucrose fatty acid esters are those generally recognized as safe in food or regulated for such use by an appropriate section in this part. Ethyl acetate or methyl ethyl ketone or dimethyl sulfoxide and isobutyl alcohol (2-methyl-1-propanol) may be used in the preparation of sucrose fatty acid esters. The regulation for sucrose fatty acid esters identifies a number of raw materials used in the production of sucrose fatty acid esters. Because the production process transforms those raw materials into the substance “sucrose fatty acid esters,” those raw materials generally would not be viewed as “ingredients” of the final chemical product. Likewise, if a facility adds the food additive “sucrose fatty acid esters” to a food product, the facility would view that food additive as an ingredient of its food product, but would not view the chemicals used to produce sucrose fatty acid esters as ingredients of its food product.

The title of current § 110.80(a) and several provisions within current § 110.80 refer to “raw materials and other ingredients” rather than to “raw materials and ingredients” as in the definition of “food.” For consistency with the definition of food, we are proposing to change the title of current § 110.80(a) (which would be proposed § 117.80(b)) to “Raw materials and ingredients.” As a companion change to this change in title, we are proposing to substitute “ingredients” for “other ingredients” throughout provisions in current § 110.80 that refer to both raw materials and ingredients. We do not list every instance where this proposed revision would apply in proposed § 110.80.

#### F. Proposed Revisions to Address Guidance in Current Part 110

In 2000, we codified our policies and procedures for the development, issuance, and use of guidance documents in § 10.115 (21 CFR 10.115) (65 FR 56468, September 19, 2000). Under § 10.115(b), guidance documents are documents prepared for FDA staff, applicants/sponsors, and the public that describe our interpretation of or policy on a regulatory issue. They include documents that relate to the design, production, labeling, promotion, manufacturing, and testing of regulated products; the processing, content, and evaluation or approval of submissions; and inspection and enforcement policies. Under § 10.115(d), guidance documents do not establish legally enforceable rights or responsibilities and do not legally bind the public or FDA.

Comments submitted to the Food CGMP Modernization Working Group noted that several provisions of current part 110 use non-binding language such as “should” and recommended that we revise part 110 to express all provisions using binding language (e.g., “shall” in place of “should”) (Ref. 1). Consistent with these comments and with 21 CFR 10.115, we are proposing to delete some non-binding provisions of current part 110 (e.g., provisions using “should” or “compliance may be achieved by”). We request comment on this proposal. In section XI.M of this document, we request comment on whether to revise other non-binding provisions to establish new requirements in proposed part 117 or to simply retain them as useful provisions of a comprehensive CGMP. We describe each of these in more detail elsewhere in this document.

#### G. Proposed Editorial Changes

FDA is proposing to revise current part 110 to make several changes that are editorial in nature. These editorial changes have no substantive effect on the current requirements of part

110 and, thus, we do not list every instance where these proposed editorial changes would apply.

We are proposing to:

- Refer to the “Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act” rather than to “the act” for clarity and for consistency with our current approach to citing the FD&C Act in new regulations;
- Replace the term “shall” with the term “must.” The term “must” is a more common word than “shall,” and we are using “must” in new regulations.
- Replace the phrase “includes, but is not limited to” with “includes,” because the use of the word “includes” indicates that the specified list that follows is not exclusive. The phrase “but is not limited to” is unnecessary. (72 FR 34752 at 34765, June 25, 2007)
- Replace the phrase “adulteration within the meaning of the act” with the single term “adulteration” because “within the meaning of the act” is not needed for the term “adulteration” to have the meaning assigned by section 402 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. § 342 (Adulterated food)).
- Replace the term “whenever” with “when” for grammatical simplicity.

#### X. Proposed Revisions to General Provisions of Part 110 (Proposed Part 117, Subpart A)

##### A. Proposed § 117.1 - Applicability and Status

FDA is proposing to redesignate current § 110.5(a) as proposed § 117.1(a) with associated editorial changes described in section IX.G of this document. Current § 110.5(a) establishes that the criteria and definitions in part 110 apply in determining whether a food is adulterated (1) within the meaning of section 402(a)(3) of the act in that the food has been manufactured under such conditions that it is unfit for food; or (2) within the meaning of section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act in that the food has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been

rendered injurious to health. Current § 110.5(a) also establishes that the criteria and definitions in part 110 apply in determining whether a food is in violation of section 361 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 264). FDA is proposing to retain the provisions of current § 110.5(a) in proposed § 117.1(a). The provisions of current § 110.5(a) as re-established in proposed § 117.1(a) would continue to apply to all provisions that currently are established in part 110 and would be re-established in proposed part 117. Under this proposed rule, proposed § 117.1 also would apply to new provisions of proposed part 117, including provisions that would be added under the authority of sections 402(a)(3), 402(a)(4), or 418 of the FD&C Act, section 361 of the PHS Act, or a combination of those authorities. We note that section 418(a) of the FD&C Act provides that facilities subject to that section must “identify and implement preventive controls to ... provide assurances that ... food is not adulterated under section 402 [of the FD&C Act]” and that similar references to preventing adulteration under section 402 of the FD&C Act also appear in section 418(c) and (e). In section III of this document, we explain how the proposed provisions are necessary to protect against contamination with hazards that may adulterate food. We tentatively conclude that the link between the proposed provisions and the potential for adulteration provides a basis for applying the criteria and definitions in proposed part 117 in determining whether, under particular circumstances, a food is adulterated under section 402(a)(3) or (a)(4) or in violation of section 361 of the PHS Act.

Section 103(e) of FSMA amends section 301 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 331) by adding a new section - (uu) - to the list of acts and the causing thereof that are prohibited. Under section 301(uu), the following act, and the causing thereof, is prohibited: “[t]he operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is not in compliance with section 418 [of the



FD&C Act].” To clearly communicate that failure to comply with regulations established under section 418 is a prohibited act, proposed § 117.1(b) would establish that the operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is required to comply with, and is not in compliance with, section 418 of the FD&C Act or subparts C, D, E, or F of part 117 is a prohibited act under section 301(uu) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 331(uu)).

FDA is proposing to redesignate current § 110.5(b) as proposed § 117.1(c) with no changes. Current § 110.5(b) establishes that food covered by specific current good manufacturing practice regulations also is subject to the requirements of those regulations. As discussed in sections II.A.1 and II.A.2 of this document, following the establishment of the umbrella CGMPs in 1969 (34 FR 6977), FDA established additional CGMP requirements, including CGMP requirements for thermally processed low-acid foods packaged in hermetically sealed containers (proposed rule, 41 FR 30444, July 23, 1976; final rule, 44 FR 16209, March 16, 1979; currently established in part 113) and CGMP requirements for acidified foods (proposed rule, 41 FR 30457, July 23, 1976; final rule, 44 FR 16230, March 16, 1979; currently established in part 114). In the preamble to the proposed rule to establish current § 110.5(b), we explained that this provision was intended to communicate that foods covered by such specific CGMPs are still subject to part 110 (44 FR 33238, at 33239, June 8, 1979). Since current § 110.5(b) was established, we have established additional food safety regulations, such as the 1995 HACCP regulations in part 123 for fish and fishery products (60 FR 65096, December 18, 1995) and the 2001 HACCP regulations in part 120 for juice (66 FR 6138, January 19, 2001). As with foods that are subject to part 113 or part 114, foods that are subject to part 123 or part 120 are subject to the requirements of part 123 or 120 even though they are foods covered by the

current good manufacturing practice requirements that are currently established in part 110 and would be re-established in part 117. See section II.A of this document for a discussion of other food safety regulations for specific foods to which this would also apply.

Importantly, section 418 of the FD&C Act requires that we establish regulations to implement requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls for human food. As discussed in section V of this document, we tentatively conclude that it is appropriate to establish these requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls within the framework of current part 110, as would be re-established in proposed part 117. As discussed in section IX.A of this document, we are proposing that the title of proposed part 117 reflect the addition of these new requirements. As discussed more fully in section X.C of this document, section 418 of the FD&C Act establishes several exemptions from the proposed requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls. For example, section 418(j)(1) of the FD&C Act provides that section 418 of the FD&C Act “shall not apply to a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with... (A) [t]he Seafood Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Program...” (We interpret “Seafood Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Program” to mean the requirements of part 123 for fish and fishery products.) As discussed below, consistent with section 418(j)(1)(A), proposed § 117.5(b) would provide that proposed subpart C of proposed part 117 would not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 123 at a facility, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with part 123. However, under current § 110.5(b) and proposed § 117.1(c), all activities at that facility have been, and would continue to be, subject to the CGMP requirements in proposed subpart B and the requirements of part 123. The same would be true for establishments and facilities that are

subject to other food safety regulations, consistent with the exemptions that would be established in proposed § 117.5.

## B. Proposed § 117.3 - Definitions

### 1. Redesignation

FDA is proposing to redesignate all definitions in current § 110.3(a) through (r) as proposed § 117.3, eliminate paragraph designations (such as (a), (b), and (c)), and add new definitions in alphabetical order. Paragraph designations are not necessary when the definitions are presented in alphabetical order. Proposed § 117.3 would remain within subpart A.

### 2. Current Definitions That FDA Is Proposing to Delete

Current § 110.3(p) defines “shall” to be used to state mandatory requirements. FDA is proposing to delete the definition of “shall” and use “must” instead, as discussed in section IX.G of this document.

### 3. Current Definitions That FDA Is Proposing to Revise

Current § 110.3(e) defines “critical control point” to mean a point in a food process where there is a high probability that improper control may cause, allow, or contribute to a hazard or to filth in the final food or decomposition of the final food. Current § 110.3(e) was established in 1986. Current § 110.3(e) preceded various currently used definitions of “critical control point” (CCP) – e.g., in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35), and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood (part 123), juice (part 120), and meat and poultry (9 CFR 417). Proposed § 117.3 would revise the current definition of “critical control point” to match the statutory definition in section 418(o)(1) of the FD&C Act and to be consistent with definitions in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. Proposed § 117.3 would

define “critical control point” to mean a point, step, or procedure in a food process at which control can be applied and is essential to prevent or eliminate a food safety hazard or reduce such hazard to an acceptable level.

A non-substantive difference between the definition of CCP in proposed § 117.3 and the definition of CCP in § 120.3(d) is that proposed § 117.3 would incorporate the phrase “food safety hazard” into the definition of CCP, whereas § 120.3(d) uses the phrase “food hazard.” We see no meaningful difference between “food safety hazard” and “food hazard,” whether comparing proposed § 117.3 to § 120.3(d) or whether comparing § 120.3(d) to § 123.3(b) (which uses the phrase “food safety hazard” in its definition of CCP). In fact, we see no meaningful difference between “food safety hazard” and “hazard” and are proposing to define the term “hazard” rather than “food safety hazard” for the purpose of proposed part 117 (see the discussion of our definition of the term “hazard” in section X.B.4 of this document). Section 418 of the FD&C Act largely refers to “hazards” and the single reference to “food safety hazard” is in the statutory definition of CCP. Because the phrase “food safety hazard” appears in so many current definitions of CCP, we tentatively conclude it is appropriate to propose to establish the statutory definition of CCP into the proposed rule, even though this will be the only place in the proposed rule where we use the term “food safety hazard.”

There are slight differences in wording among the various currently used definitions of CCP – e.g., whether the definition uses the term “control” or the phrase “control measure” and in how the definition incorporates concepts such as “essential,” “preventing,” “eliminating” or “reducing to acceptable level” hazards. Part 123 preceded the 1998 NACMCF guidelines and, thus, has the most differences. For the purpose of this proposed rule, we do not see these differences as meaningful and tentatively conclude that the statutory definition of CCP in section

418(o)(1) of the FD&C Act is, for practical purposes, consistent with existing definitions and that our proposed definition of CCP would present no conflict with existing recommendations.

The definition of CCP in proposed § 117.3 would also differ from the definition of CCP in current § 110.3(e) in that the definition of CCP would no longer explicitly address filth. Deleting filth from the definition of CCP is consistent with section 418(o)(1) of the FD&C Act, and with the various current definitions of CCP, to emphasize food safety hazards generally rather than specifically identifying filth, which may or may not present a food safety hazard, depending on the circumstances. Similarly, the definition of CCP in proposed § 117.3 also would no longer explicitly address decomposition of the final food. However, section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act refers to decomposition among the hazards to be identified and evaluated and, thus, decomposition is considered within the term “hazard” when it affects the safety of the product.

Current § 110.3(g) defines “food-contact surfaces” as those surfaces that contact human food and those surfaces from which drainage onto the food or onto surfaces that contact the food ordinarily occurs during the normal course of operations. Current § 110.3(g) also specifies that “food-contact surfaces” includes utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment. FDA is proposing to revise the definition for “food-contact surfaces” to include the phrase “or other transfer” after “drainage.” FDA is proposing this revision to clarify that surfaces from which any transfer involving liquids or non-liquids onto the food or onto surfaces that contact the food are food-contact surfaces. Proposed § 117.3 would define “food-contact surfaces” to mean those surfaces that contact human food and those surfaces from which drainage, or other transfer, onto the food or onto surfaces that contact the food ordinarily occurs during the normal course of

operations. Proposed § 117.3 would also specify that “food-contact surfaces” includes utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment.

Current § 110.3(i) defines “microorganisms” to mean yeasts, molds, bacteria, and viruses and includes, but is not limited to, species having public health significance. Current § 110.3(i) also specifies that the term “undesirable microorganisms” includes those microorganisms that are of public health significance, that subject food to decomposition, that indicate that food is contaminated with filth, or that otherwise may cause food to be adulterated within the meaning of the act. Current § 110.3(i) also states that, occasionally in these regulations, FDA used the adjective “microbial” instead of using an adjectival phrase containing the word microorganism. FDA is proposing to revise the definition for “microorganisms” to also include protozoa and microscopic parasites. FDA is proposing this revision to clarify that FDA considers not only yeasts, molds, bacteria and viruses, but also protozoa and microscopic parasites, to be microorganisms of importance in the safe and sanitary production of foods. As discussed in section IX.G of this document, FDA is proposing to delete the phrases “but is not limited to,” and “within the meaning of the act.” FDA also is proposing to delete the last sentence in the definition because it is not needed. Proposed § 117.3 would define “microorganisms” to mean yeasts, molds, bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and microscopic parasites and includes species having public health significance. Proposed § 117.3 would also specify that the term “undesirable microorganisms” includes those microorganisms that are of public health significance, that subject food to decomposition, that indicate that food is contaminated with filth, or that otherwise may cause food to be adulterated.

Current § 110.3(k) defines “plant” to mean the building or facility or parts thereof, used for or in connection with the manufacturing, packaging, labeling, or holding of human food.

FDA is proposing to revise the definition for “plant” by adding “processing” and “packing” and deleting “labeling” and “packaging” so that activities listed in the definition are consistent with activities covered by proposed part 117. As discussed in section IX.C.2 of this document, FDA is proposing to consistently use the terms “manufacturing, processing, packing and holding” to reflect the group of terms used in section 418(a) of the FD&C Act to broadly identify activities that take place in food facilities. As discussed later in this section, “labeling” and “packaging” would be included in the definition of manufacturing/processing and do not need to be repeated in the definition of “plant.” As discussed above in section IX.C.2 of this document, FDA also is proposing to replace the term “facility” with the term “establishment.” Proposed § 117.3 would define “plant” to mean the building or establishment or parts thereof, used for or in connection with the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of human food.

Current § 110.3(n) defines “safe-moisture level” as a level of moisture low enough to prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in the finished product under the intended conditions of manufacturing, storage, and distribution. Current § 110.3(n) also specifies that the maximum safe moisture level for a food is based on its water activity ( $a_w$ ), and that an  $a_w$  will be considered safe for a food if adequate data are available that demonstrate that the food at or below the given  $a_w$  will not support the growth of undesirable microorganisms. FDA is proposing to revise the definition for “safe-moisture level” to:

- Delete the hyphen between “safe” and “moisture.” The hyphen is not necessary.
- Remove the word “maximum” before “safe moisture level.” FDA tentatively

concludes that this word is not needed, since the word “maximum” is implicit when referring to “safe” with respect to moisture level.

- Replace the phrase “based on” with “related to.” FDA tentatively concludes that the term “related to” is more appropriate because moisture level is not the only factor that determines water activity.

- Replace the phrase “manufacturing, storage, and distribution” with the phrase “manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding.” As discussed in section IX.C.1 of this document, we are proposing to use this group of terms to broadly identify activities that take place in food facilities.

With these proposed changes, proposed § 117.3 would define “safe moisture level” to mean a level of moisture low enough to prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in the finished product under the intended conditions of manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding. Proposed § 117.3 would also specify that the safe moisture level for a food is related to its water activity ( $a_w$ ), and that an  $a_w$  will be considered safe for a food if adequate data are available that demonstrate that the food at or below the given  $a_w$  will not support the growth of undesirable microorganisms.

Current § 110.3(o) defines “sanitize” to mean to adequately treat food-contact surfaces by a process that is effective in destroying vegetative cells of microorganisms of public health significance, and in substantially reducing numbers of other undesirable microorganisms, but without adversely affecting the product or its safety for the consumer. FDA is proposing to revise the definition for “sanitize” to include the term “cleaned” before “food-contact surfaces.” It is well established that sanitizers can be inactivated by organic material and, thus, are not effective unless used on clean surfaces (Ref. 125). Proposed § 117.3 would define “sanitize” to mean to adequately treat cleaned food-contact surfaces by a process that is effective in destroying vegetative cells of microorganisms of public health significance, and in substantially



reducing numbers of other undesirable microorganisms, but without adversely affecting the product or its safety for the consumer.

#### 4. New Definitions

FDA is proposing to define the term “affiliate” to mean any facility that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with another facility. The proposed definition would incorporate the definition in section 418(l)(4)(A) of the FD&C Act and would make the meaning of the term clear when used in the proposed definition of “qualified facility.”

FDA is proposing to define “calendar day” to mean every day shown on the calendar.

FDA is proposing to define the term “cross-contact” to mean the unintentional incorporation of a food allergen into a food. We discuss cross-contact in more detail in section IX.D of this document.

FDA is proposing to define the term “environmental pathogen” to mean a microorganism that is of public health significance and is capable of surviving and persisting within the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding environment. Examples of environmental pathogens include Salmonella spp. and Listeria monocytogenes. FDA requests comment on this definition and the types of organisms that should be considered environmental pathogens, including whether spores of pathogens such as Clostridium perfringens or Bacillus cereus should be considered environmental pathogens.

FDA is proposing to define the term “facility” to mean a domestic facility or a foreign facility that is required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act in accordance with the requirements of 21 CFR part 1, subpart H. The proposed definition would incorporate the definition in section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act.

FDA is proposing to define the term “farm” by reference to the definition of that term in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII of this document for detailed discussion of farms and mixed-type facilities. We are proposing to cross-reference the definition of “farm” rather than to define it in proposed part 117 because the definition of “farm,” under both current § 1.227(b)(3) and proposed § 1.227, includes the word “facility” with a meaning that is broader than the meaning of “facility” in section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act. Under part I, subpart H, the term “facility” is not limited to entities that are required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act. We are proposing to cross-reference the definition to reduce the potential confusion that could result if we used the term “facility” to have two different meanings within proposed part 117.

FDA is proposing to define the term “FDA” to mean the Food and Drug Administration. Defining this term within the definitions applicable to part 117 would eliminate the need to define the term within each distinct section of the regulation and would provide for the substitution of “Food and Drug Administration” with “FDA” each time “Food and Drug Administration” appears in current part 110.

FDA is proposing to define the term “food allergen” to mean a major food allergen as defined in section 201(qq) of the FD&C Act. Section 201(qq) defines the term “major food allergen” to mean any of the following: milk, egg, fish (e.g., bass, flounder, or cod), Crustacean shellfish (e.g., crab, lobster, or shrimp), tree nuts (e.g., almonds, pecans, or walnuts), wheat, peanuts, and soybeans, or a food ingredient that contains protein derived from one of these foods, with certain exceptions. The proposed definition would be consistent with the requirement in section 418(a) of the FD&C Act that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility “identify and implement preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent the occurrence of ... hazards and provide assurances that [food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the

facility] is not ... misbranded under section 403(w) [of the FD&C Act].” Section 403(w) of the FD&C Act provides certain labeling requirements for foods that bear or contain a major food allergen, with certain exceptions.

FDA is proposing to define the term “harvesting” as applicable to farms and farm mixed-type facilities and meaning activities that are traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing raw agricultural commodities from the place they were grown or raised and preparing them for use as food. The proposed definition would also specify that harvesting is limited to activities performed on raw agricultural commodities on the farm on which they were grown or raised, or another farm under the same ownership; and that harvesting does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. The proposed definition would state that gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves of, removing stems and husks from, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling raw agricultural commodities grown on a farm or another farm under the same ownership are examples of harvesting. We are proposing to use the same definition of “harvesting” as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “harvesting.”

FDA is proposing to define “hazard” to mean any biological, chemical, physical, or radiological agent that is reasonably likely to cause illness or injury in the absence of its control. The proposed definition is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34) and our HACCP regulation for juice (§120.3(g)) define “hazard” and “food hazard,” respectively as a biological, chemical, or physical agent that is reasonably likely to cause illness or injury in the absence of its control. The Codex HACCP

Annex defines “hazard” as a biological, chemical or physical agent in, or condition of, food with the potential to cause an adverse health effect (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for seafood (§123.3(f)) and the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry (9 CFR 417.1) define “food safety hazard” as any biological, chemical, or physical property that may cause a food to be unsafe for human consumption. A difference between the proposed definition of “hazard” and the definitions established in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry is that the proposed definition would include radiological agents whereas the various definitions of “hazard,” “food hazard” and “food safety hazard” under these HACCP systems do not. We are proposing to include radiological agents to implement section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act, which includes radiological hazards as an example of known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility. We describe biological, chemical, radiological, and physical hazards in sections II.D and XII.B.3 of this document.

FDA is proposing to define the term “hazard that is reasonably likely to occur” to mean a hazard for which a prudent person who manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food would establish controls because experience, illness data, scientific reports, or other information provides a basis to conclude that there is a reasonable possibility that the hazard will occur in the type of food being manufactured, processed, packed, or held in the absence of those controls. The proposed definition is consistent with Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. Our HACCP regulation for seafood describes a food safety hazard that is reasonably likely to occur as one for which a prudent processor would establish controls because experience, illness data, scientific reports, or other information provide a basis to conclude that there is a reasonable possibility that it will occur in the particular type of fish or fishery product

being processed in the absence of those controls (§123.6(a)). Our HACCP regulation for juice describes a food hazard that is reasonably likely to occur as one for which a prudent processor would establish controls because experience, illness data, scientific reports, or other information provide a basis to conclude that there is a reasonable possibility that, in the absence of those controls, the food hazard will occur in the particular type of product being processed (§ 120.7(a)(2)). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry describes a food safety hazard that is reasonably likely to occur as one for which a prudent establishment would establish controls because it historically has occurred, or because there is a reasonable possibility that it will occur in the particular type of product being processed, in the absence of those controls (9 CFR 417.2(a)). In section XII.B.4 of this document, we explain how the term “hazard that is reasonably likely to occur” would implement section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act and relate this term to the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex.

FDA is proposing to define the term “holding” to mean the storage of food. The proposed definition would also state that holding facilities include warehouses, cold storage facilities, storage silos, grain elevators, and liquid storage tanks; and that, for farms and farm mixed-type facilities, holding also includes activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. We are proposing to use the same definition of “holding” as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “holding.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “manufacturing/processing” to mean making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food, including food crops or ingredients. The proposed definition would also state that examples of manufacturing/processing activities are cutting, peeling, trimming, washing, waxing, eviscerating, rendering, cooking, baking, freezing, cooling, pasteurizing, homogenizing, mixing, formulating, bottling, milling, grinding, extracting juice, distilling, labeling, or packaging. The proposed definition would also specify that, for farms and farm mixed-type facilities, manufacturing/processing does not include activities that are part of harvesting, packing, or holding. We are proposing to use the same definition of “manufacturing/processing” as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “manufacturing/processing.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “mixed-type facility” to mean an establishment that engages in both activities that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the FD&C Act and activities that require the establishment to be registered. The proposed definition would also state that an example of such a facility is a “farm mixed-type facility,” which is an establishment that grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm definition, but also conducts activities that require the establishment to be registered. We are proposing to use the same definition as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “mixed-type facilities.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “monitor” to mean to conduct a planned sequence of observations or measurements to assess whether a process, point, or procedure is under control and to produce an accurate record for use in verification. The proposed definition is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP

regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The proposed definition is the same as the definition in our HACCP regulation for juice (§ 120.3(i)). The NACMCF guidelines define “monitor” to mean to conduct a planned sequence of observations or measurements to assess whether a CCP is under control and to produce an accurate record for future use in verification (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex defines “monitor” to mean the act of conducting a planned sequence of observations or measurements of control parameters to assess whether a CCP is under control (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for seafood, and the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry were each established before the current NACMCF HACCP guidelines and do not define the term “monitor.” However, as discussed in section XII.E of this document, both of these regulations establish requirements that are consistent with the definition of “monitor” in proposed § 117.3 and in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and our HACCP regulation for juice.

FDA is proposing to define the term “packaging” to mean (when used as a verb) placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives. FDA is proposing to use the same definition of “packaging” as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “packaging.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “packing” to mean placing food into a container other than packaging the food. The proposed definition would also specify that, for farms and farm mixed-type facilities, packing also includes activities traditionally performed by farms to prepare raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage and transport, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the FD&C Act. We are proposing to use the same definition of

“packing” as would be established in proposed § 1.227. See section VIII.E of this document for a detailed discussion of “packing.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “preventive controls” to mean those risk-based, reasonably appropriate procedures, practices, and processes that a person knowledgeable about the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food would employ to significantly minimize or prevent the hazards identified under the hazard analysis that are consistent with the current scientific understanding of safe food manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding at the time of the analysis. The proposed definition would incorporate the definition in section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act.

FDA is proposing to define the term “qualified end-user” to mean, with respect to a food, the consumer of the food (where the term consumer does not include a business); or a restaurant or retail food establishment (as those terms are defined in § 1.227) that (1) is located (a) in the same State as the qualified facility that sold the food to such restaurant or establishment; or (b) not more than 275 miles from such facility; and (2) is purchasing the food for sale directly to consumers at such restaurant or retail food establishment. The proposed definition would incorporate the definition in section 418(l)(4)(B) of the FD&C Act.

FDA is proposing to define the term “qualified facility” to mean (when including the sales by any subsidiary; affiliate; or subsidiaries or affiliates, collectively, of any entity of which the facility is a subsidiary or affiliate) a facility that is a very small business as defined in this part, or a facility as to which both of the following apply:

- During the 3-year period preceding the applicable calendar year, the average annual monetary value of the food manufactured, processed, packed or held at such facility that



is sold directly to qualified end-users (as defined in this part) during such period exceeded the average annual monetary value of the food sold by such facility to all other purchasers; and

- The average annual monetary value of all food sold during the 3-year period preceding the applicable calendar year was less than \$500,000, adjusted for inflation.

The proposed definition would incorporate the description of “qualified facility” in section 418(l)(1) of the FD&C Act with editorial changes to improve clarity.

FDA is proposing to define the term “qualified individual” to mean a person who has successfully completed training in the development and application of risk-based preventive controls at least equivalent to that received under a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by the FDA or is otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system. FDA is proposing to define the term “qualified individual” to have a concise term to use in proposed provisions that would require that an activity be performed by such an individual. We are proposing to establish requirements for a qualified individual in proposed section § 117.155 (see section XII.H of this document).

FDA is proposing to define the term “ready-to-eat food (RTE food)” to mean any food that is normally eaten in its raw state or any other food, including processed food, for which it is reasonably foreseeable that the food would be eaten without further processing that will significantly minimize biological hazards. Our proposed definition is consistent with the definition in the Codex Guidelines on the Application of General Principles of Food Hygiene to the Control of *Listeria Monocytogenes* in Foods (Ref. 52), which defines an RTE food as any food which is normally eaten in its raw state or any food handled, processed, mixed, cooked, or otherwise prepared into a form which is normally eaten without further listericidal steps. By referring to “any other food, including processed food,” our proposed definition for RTE food, in

combination with our proposed definition of “manufacturing/processing,” would incorporate the concepts in the Codex guidelines for control of Listeria that RTE food includes foods that have been processed, mixed, cooked, or otherwise prepared into a form that can be eaten without processing in a manner that adequately reduces pathogens. Our proposed definition would generalize the Codex definition established for the purpose of guidelines directed to a single hazard – i.e., the environmental pathogen L. monocytogenes – to any biological hazard that would be addressed under section 418 of the FD&C Act. In so doing, our proposed definition would state that RTE foods are normally eaten without further “processing that will significantly minimize biological hazards,” rather than “listericidal steps.” In a draft guidance directed to the control of L. monocytogenes in refrigerated or frozen RTE foods (Ref. 126), we defined RTE food to mean “a food that is customarily consumed without cooking by the consumer, or that reasonably appears to be suitable for consumption without cooking by the consumer.” We are proposing a definition of RTE food that is more closely aligned to the definition in the Codex guidelines on the control of Listeria than the definition in our draft guidance regarding the control of Listeria to emphasize that RTE foods include foods that are already processed to some degree but have reached the point at which no further steps to significantly minimize biological hazards will be applied before it is eaten. This emphasis is needed for clarity with respect to proposed requirements that would be directed to control of environmental pathogens at a facility. As discussed in section XII.B.4.b of this document, proposed § 117.130(c)(2) would require that a hazard analysis include an evaluation of whether environmental pathogens are reasonably likely to occur whenever a RTE food is exposed to the environment prior to packaging. As discussed in section XII.G.7 of this document, under proposed § 117.135(d)(3) preventive controls must include, as appropriate and where necessary to significantly minimize or prevent

hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (including any environmental pathogen that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging, any microorganism of public health significance that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food due to employee handling, and any food allergen hazard) sanitation controls that include procedures for the (A) Cleanliness of food-contact surfaces, including food-contact surfaces of utensils and equipment; and (B) Prevention of cross-contact and cross-contamination from insanitary objects and from personnel to food, food packaging material, and other food-contact surfaces and from raw product to processed product.

Our proposal to include in the proposed definition of RTE food the concept that it includes food that “is reasonably foreseeable that the food would be eaten without further processing to significantly minimize biological hazards” would retain the concept, in the draft guidance directed to the control of L. monocytogenes in refrigerated or frozen RTE foods, that an RTE food includes food that “reasonably appears to be suitable for consumption without cooking by the consumer.” For example, it is well known that consumers eat raw cookie dough; an outbreak of foodborne illness caused by E. coli O157:H7 has been linked to consumption of raw cookie dough (Ref. 77). It also is well known that consumers use dried soup mix in RTE form as a component of a dip; multiple dried soup mix products were recalled due to the potential for contamination with Salmonella spp. from an ingredient (hydrolyzed vegetable protein) (Ref. 24).

FDA is proposing to define the term “reasonably foreseeable hazard” to mean a potential biological, chemical, physical, or radiological hazard that may be associated with the facility or the food. The term “reasonably foreseeable hazard” is not used in NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, or Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, or meat

and poultry. However, the term is used in FSMA and, as discussed in section XII.B.2.a of this document, the concept is grounded in the hazard evaluation process in HACCP systems.

FDA is proposing to define the term “significantly minimize” to mean to reduce to an acceptable level, including to eliminate. The specific terms “significantly minimize” and “preventive control” are not used in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, or Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, or meat and poultry. However, these terms are used in FSMA and are consistent with the definition of “control measure” in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and our HACCP regulation for juice. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define “control measure” as any action or activity that can be used to prevent, eliminate or reduce a significant hazard (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex defines “control measure” as any action or activity that can be used to prevent or eliminate a food safety hazard or reduce it to an acceptable level (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for juice defines “control measure” as any action or activity to prevent, reduce to acceptable levels, or eliminate a hazard (§ 120.3(c)). Our HACCP regulation for seafood, and the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, which were established prior to the current NACMCF HACCP guidelines, do not define “control measure.” However, these Federal HACCP regulations nonetheless reflect the same concept that would be established in the proposed definition of “significantly minimize” in the definition of “critical control point,” which is defined in the HACCP regulation for seafood as a point, step, or procedure in a food process at which control can be applied, and a food safety hazard can as a result be prevented, eliminated, or reduced to acceptable levels (§ 123.3(b)) and in the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry as a point, step, or procedure in a food process at which control can be applied and, as a result, a food safety hazard can be prevented, eliminated, or reduced to acceptable levels (9 CFR 417.1).

FDA is proposing to define the term “small business” to mean, for the purposes of part 117, a business employing fewer than 500 persons. See section X.B.5 for additional discussion of the definition of small business.

FDA is proposing to define the term “subsidiary” to mean any company which is owned or controlled directly or indirectly by another company. The proposed definition would incorporate the definition in section 418(l)(4)(D) of the FD&C Act.

FDA is proposing to define the term “validation” to mean that element of verification focused on collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information to determine whether the food safety plan, when properly implemented, will effectively control the identified hazards. The proposed definition is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and our HACCP regulation for juice. The NACMCF guidelines (Ref. 34) and our HACCP regulation for juice (§ 120.3(p)) define validation as that element of verification focused on collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information to determine whether the HACCP plan, when properly implemented, will effectively control the identified food hazards. The Codex HACCP Annex defines validation as obtaining evidence that the elements of the HACCP plan are effective (Ref. 35). Another Codex document (i.e., “Guidelines for the Validation of Food Safety Control Measures” (Codex validation guidelines)) defines validation more broadly than in the realm of HACCP systems as obtaining evidence that a control measure or combination of control measures, if properly implemented, is capable of controlling the hazard to a specified outcome (Ref. 127). Our HACCP regulation for seafood, and the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, do not define the term “validation.” We discuss our proposed requirements for validation (proposed § 117.150(a)), and their relationship to HACCP systems, in section XII.G.2.a of this document.

FDA is proposing to define the term “verification” to mean those activities, other than monitoring, that establish the validity of the food safety plan and that the system is operating according to the plan. The proposed definition is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex and validation guidelines, and our HACCP regulation for juice. The NACMCF guidelines (Ref. 34), and our HACCP regulation for juice (§ 120.3(q)) define verification as those activities, other than monitoring, that determine the validity of the HACCP plan and that the system is operating according to the plan. The Codex HACCP Annex defines verification as the application of methods, procedures, tests and other evaluations, in addition to monitoring to determine compliance with the HACCP plan (Ref. 35). The Codex validation guidelines define verification as the application of methods, procedures, tests and other evaluations, in addition to monitoring to determine whether a control measure is or has been operating as intended (Ref. 127). Our HACCP regulation for seafood, and the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, do not define the term “verification.”

FDA is proposing to define the term “very small business” to mean, for the purposes of proposed part 117, a business that has less than \$250,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 1 of co-proposal). As one co-proposal, we are proposing to define the term “very small business” to mean a business that has less than \$500,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 2). As another co-proposal, we are proposing to define the term “very small business” to mean a business that has less than \$1,000,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 3). See section X.B.5 for additional discussion of the definition of very small business.

## 5. Food Processing Sector Study and the Definitions of “Small Business” and “Very Small Business”

FDA conducted a Food Processing Sector Study as required by section 418(l)(5) of the FD&C Act (Ref. 32) . The purpose of that study was to make determinations in five areas as required by section 418(l)(5)(A) of the FD&C Act and to use the results of the study in defining the terms “small business” and “very small business.” These areas include, in part, (1) distribution of food production by type and size of operation, (2) the proportion of food produced by each type and size of operation, (3) the number and types of food facilities co-located on farms, (4) the incidence of foodborne illness originating from each size and type of operation, and (5) the effect on foodborne illness risk associated with certain activities regarding food. The Food Processing Sector Study provides information on the number of establishments and average sales per establishment by industry and size of operation. FDA’s proposed definitions are informed by that study. The food processing sector study is available in the docket established for this proposed rule (Ref. 32). We request comment on that study. We will consider comments regarding the study, as well as comments regarding our proposed definitions “small business” and “very small business,” in any final rule based on this proposed rule.

Section 418(l)(5)(B) of the FD&C Act required consideration of harvestable acres, income, the number of employees, and the volume of product in defining the terms “small business” and “very small business.” The Food Processing Sector Study (Ref. 32) concluded that there was no consistent pattern across food categories in terms of which sizes of establishments contribute most to foodborne illness risk. “Harvestable acres,” “income,” “the number of employees,” and “the volume of food harvested” are all ways to measure the size of an operation. Income does not appear to be the most relevant measure, since facility income may

be derived from multiple sources, many of which are not food-related. “Harvestable acres” and “volume of food harvested” are similar measures that appear primarily relevant to the growing and harvesting of crops, which are activities not subject to this regulation. Harvestable acres and volume of food harvested do not provide a meaningful measure with respect to the risk from food produced by a farm mixed-type facility (a food facility co-located on a farm subject to this regulation); our qualitative risk assessment of manufacturing, processing, packing and holding activities conducted in a facility co-located on a farm showed that risk was related to activity/food combinations; these foods could be harvested from large or small farms (see section VIII.G of this document for a discussion of that qualitative risk assessment). A high risk activity/food combination could be conducted on a farm with many harvestable acres or very few harvestable acres. For example, an on-farm facility producing bagged salads (which would not be considered a low-risk activity/food combination) could be one that has very few acres, or the bagged salads production could be a small component of a large vegetable growing farm. FDA has previously used both number of employees and annual sales as criteria for defining small and very small businesses, e.g., in 21 CFR 120.1(b)(1) and (b)(2). We have limited data on number of employees, income, and annual sales upon which to base our definitions of small and very small business, but no data for “harvestable acres” or “the volume of food harvested.”

a. Definition of “Small Business.” FDA is proposing to define the term “small business” to mean, for the purposes of part 117, a business employing fewer than 500 persons. The proposed limit of 500 employees would include all employees of the business rather than be limited to the employees at a particular facility. We are proposing to establish the same definition for small business as that which has been established by the U.S. Small Business Administration under 13 CFR 121 for most food manufacturers. This is also the same definition



for small business as we used to define a small business in our juice HACCP regulation (§ 120.1(b)(1)). The definition of small business is relevant to two provisions in the proposed rule. It would affect which facilities qualify for the exemption in § 117.5(g) for on-farm packing or holding, and the exemption in § 117.5(h) for on-farm manufacturing/processing, of food by a small business if the only activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act are the specific low-risk activity/food combinations listed in those sections. It would also affect what the compliance date is for such facilities.

Effect on proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h).

Under proposed § 117.5(g) a farm mixed-type facility that meets the definition of a small business and only conducts specific packing or holding activity/food combinations would be eligible for an exemption from subpart C. Similarly, under proposed § 117.5(h) a farm mixed-type facility that meets the definition of a small business and only conducts specific manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations would be eligible for an exemption from subpart C. Based on the Food Processing Sector Study, we estimate that approximately 97,169 facilities would be part of a small business under the proposed definition and thus satisfy the size requirement of the exemption in proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h). Of those facilities, we estimate that approximately 1,661 would be co-located on farms. A subset of those facilities would qualify for the exemption from Subpart C based on their manufacturing/processing and packing and holding activities.

Other Effects.

Based on the Food Processing Sector Study we estimate that businesses employing fewer than 500 employees produce approximately 18 percent (based on sales) of all manufactured food produced in the United States. As discussed in section VII of this document, the compliance date

for a small business would be 2 years after the date of publication of the final rule. Under our proposed definition, 97,169 facilities would be subject to this compliance date.

b. Definition of “Very Small Business.” In addition to defining “small business,” FDA is required to define “very small business.” FDA has not reached a tentative conclusion on how best to define “very small business” for the purposes of this rule. Consequently, we are proposing three possible definitions based on annual sales of \$250,000, \$500,000, or \$1,000,000 and requesting comment on which of these three options to include in a final rule. All three proposed definitions are informed by the findings of the Food Processing Sector Study (Ref. 32). We request comment on whether a dollar amount of sales that is more than, or less than, the \$250,000, \$500,000, or \$1,000,000 dollar amounts we are proposing would be appropriate. We also request comment on how a particular dollar amount of sales would be in keeping with Congressional intent - i.e., in light of the provisions in section 418(l) regarding qualified facilities, including the statutory limitations on sales to qualified end-users.

The definition of very small business is relevant to 3 provisions of the proposed rule. It would affect which facilities qualify for the exemption in § 117.5(g) for on-farm packing or holding, and the exemption in § 117.5(h) for on-farm manufacturing/processing, of food by a very small business if the only activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act are the specific low-risk activity/food combinations listed in those sections. It would also affect which facilities are automatically “qualified” facilities subject to the modified requirements in § 117.201 and what the compliance date is for such facilities.

i. Effect on proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h). The definition of very small business affects which facilities qualify for the exemption in § 117.5(g) for on-farm packing or holding, and the exemption in § 117.5(h) for on-farm manufacturing/processing, of food by a

very small business if the only activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act are the specific low-risk activity/food combinations listed in those sections,

ii. Other Effects. The definition of very small business affects which facilities are automatically “qualified” facilities subject to the modified requirements in §117.201, and the applicable compliance dates for such facilities. There are two ways a facility may be “qualified” and thus subject to the modified requirements in proposed § 117.201. The first, limited annual monetary value of sales, is based on fixed criteria set out in FSMA § 418(l)(1)(C). The second, as provided by § 418(l)(1)(B), is to be a very small business as defined by FDA. Therefore, we discuss the affect of the proposed definitions for very small business in relation to the existing requirements for qualified facilities in § 418(l)(1)(C).

Less than \$250,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h).

One possible definition of the term “very small business,” for the purposes of proposed part 117, would be a business that has less than \$250,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 1 of the co-proposal). From the Food Processing Sector Study it is apparent that the number of co-located facilities is concentrated at the smaller end of the size spectrum. Using data from Dun & Bradstreet, FDA estimates that 736 facilities would meet the size requirement for the exemptions in proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h). A subset of those facilities would then qualify for the exemption from Subpart C based on their manufacturing/processing, packing or holding activities.

Less than \$250,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on number of qualified facilities.

The proposed definition of \$250,000 uses a dollar amount for sales that is, essentially, the same as the maximum dollar amount of sales by a qualified facility to end-users other than those

that would satisfy the definition of “qualified end-users,” except unlike with § 418(l)(1)(C), there would be no requirement that more than half of sales must be to qualified end-users. The \$250,000 definition of very small business would add approximately 34,600 domestic facilities to the number of qualified facilities beyond the approximately 11,500 domestic facilities that are qualified facilities under section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act, leading to a total of 46,100 domestic qualified facilities. These 46,100 domestic qualified facilities would have a 3 year compliance date. As a group, businesses with less than \$250,000 in total annual sales of foods produce less than one-half of one percent of all food produced in the United States when measured by dollar value.

Less than \$500,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h).

One possible definition of the term “very small business,” for the purposes of proposed part 117, would be a business that has less than \$500,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 2 of the co-proposal). From the Food Processing Sector Study it is apparent that the number of co-located facilities is concentrated at the smaller end of the size spectrum. Using data from Dun & Bradstreet, FDA estimates that 903 facilities would meet the size requirement for the exemptions in proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h). A subset of those facilities would then qualify for the exemption from Subpart C based on their manufacturing/processing, packing or holding activities.

Less than \$500,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on number of qualified facilities.

Defining very small business to mean a business that has less than \$500,000 in total annual sales of foods would add approximately 45,900 domestic facilities to the number of qualified facilities beyond the approximately 11,500 domestic facilities that are qualified

facilities under section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act, leading to a total of 57,400 domestic qualified facilities. These 57,400 domestic qualified facilities would have a 3 year compliance date. As a group, businesses with less than \$500,000 in total annual sales of foods produce less than one percent of all food produced in the United States when measured by dollar value

Less than \$1,000,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h).

One possible definition of the term “very small business,” for the purposes of proposed part 117, would be a business that has less than \$1,000,000 in total annual sales of foods, adjusted for inflation (Option 3 of the co-proposal). From the Food Processing Sector Study it is apparent that the number of co-located facilities is concentrated at the smaller end of the size spectrum. Using data from Dun & Bradstreet, FDA estimates that 1,227 facilities would meet the size requirement for the exemption in proposed § 117.5(g) and proposed § 117.5(h). A subset of those facilities would then qualify for the exemption from Subpart C based on their manufacturing/processing, packing or holding activities.

Less than \$1,000,000 in Total Annual Sales - Effect on number of qualified facilities.

As compared to option two, defining very small business to mean a business that has less than \$1,000,000 in total annual sales of foods would add approximately 63,500 domestic facilities to the number of qualified facilities beyond the approximately 11,500 domestic facilities that are qualified facilities under section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act, leading to a total of 75,000 domestic qualified facilities. These 75,000 domestic qualified facilities would have 3 year compliance date. As a group, businesses with less than \$1,000,000 in total annual sales of foods produce less than two percent of all food produced in the United States when measured by dollar value.

### C. Proposed § 117.5 - Exemptions

For a summary list of the exemptions in proposed § 117.5, see the table in the Executive Summary of this document.

#### 1. Proposed § 117.5(a)--Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

Section 418(l) of the FD&C Act establishes modified requirements for “qualified facilities.” We describe what a qualified facility is in section XIII.A of this document, where we propose the modified requirements for such a facility (proposed § 117.201). We also define the term “qualified facility” in proposed § 117.3 (see the discussion of definitions in section X.B.4 of this document). Section 418(l)(2)(A) of the FD&C Act provides that a qualified facility “shall not be subject to the requirements under [sections 418(a) through (i) and (n) of the FD&C Act];” as a practical matter with respect to the provisions of this proposed rule, section 418(l)(2)(A) of the FD&C Act provides that a qualified facility would be exempt from the proposed requirements of subpart C. Importantly, section 418(l)(3) of the FD&C Act provides that the Secretary of HHS may withdraw the exemption provided in section 418(l)(2)(A) under certain circumstances. We discuss the withdrawal provisions of section 418(l)(3), and our proposed provisions to implement section 418(l)(3) (proposed subpart E), in section XIV of this document.

We tentatively conclude that we should include the exemption provided in section 418(l)(2)(A) of the FD&C Act in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the provision. Proposed § 117.5(a) would provide that subpart C would not apply to a qualified facility, except as provided by subpart E (i.e., except as provided by the proposed provisions for withdrawal), and that qualified facilities are subject to the modified requirements in § 117.201.

## 2. Proposed § 117.5(b) and (c)--Exemptions Applicable to Food Subject to HACCP Requirements for Fish and Fishery Products or for Juice

Section 418(j)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act provides that section 418 of the FD&C Act shall not apply to a facility that is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, the Seafood Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Program. Likewise, section 418(j)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act provides that section 418 of the FD&C Act shall not apply to a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, “[t]he Juice Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Program....” (We interpret “Juice Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points Program” to mean the requirements of part 120 for juice.)

The purpose of sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) appears clear--to exclude food covered by and in compliance with current HACCP requirements (parts 120 and 123) from section 418 of the FD&C Act. The exclusion likely reflects a determination that the similarity of the existing HACCP requirements in parts 120 and 123 to the preventive control requirements in section 418 makes application of section 418 unnecessary to foods currently subject to and in compliance with part 120 or 123. Although the purpose of the exemption appears clear, FDA considers the language of sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) to be ambiguous with regard to application of the exemption. The language of sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) premise exemption from section 418 on an owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility being required to comply with, and being in compliance with, part 120 or 123 “with respect to such facility[.]” However, parts 120 and 123 do not apply to “facilities,” establishments, or plants. Rather, they apply to the specified foods (juice and fish and fishery products, respectively) and to persons defined as “processors” who conduct certain activities involving those foods. See, e.g., § 120.1 (“The requirements of

this part shall apply to any juice...”), § 120.3(k) (definition of “Processor”), § 123.3(l) (definition of “Processor”), and § 123.6(b) (“The purpose of this part is to set forth requirements specific to the processing of fish and fishery products”). Thus, it is unclear for purposes of sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) under what circumstances a juice or seafood processor is required to comply with parts 120 or 123 “with respect to [a] facility,” especially when such a person also conducts activities involving other foods not subject to parts 120 or 123 at the same facility. Because of this ambiguity, FDA considered three possible interpretations.

First, we could interpret sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) to exempt all food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by a facility from section 418 of the FD&C Act if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with and is in compliance with part 123 or 120 with respect to any activities in the facility. Under this interpretation, food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by a facility that is not subject to part 120 or 123 would be excluded from section 418 if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 120 or 123 for any food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility. For example, if a facility processes juice products and the owner, operator, or agent in charge is in compliance with the juice HACCP regulation (part 120), all food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility--both the juice subject to part 120 and food not subject to part 120 (e.g., dairy products)--would be exempt from section 418. The exclusion for juice appears consistent with the purpose of section 418(j)(1)(B) because the juice is already subject to the HACCP requirements in part 120. The resulting exclusion for dairy products, however, does not serve the purpose of the exclusion because the dairy products are not subject to the HACCP requirements in parts 120 or 123. Further, the exclusion of food



not subject to part 120 or 123 (e.g., dairy products) would create a gap in the coverage of preventive controls, and therefore not be protective of public health.

For example, there could be hazards reasonably likely to occur with regard to the dairy products, including environmental pathogens such as L. monocytogenes, but such hazards would not trigger any preventive control requirements because the facility would be excluded from section 418 of the FD&C Act. Finally, there is no apparent reason to regulate the same type of food not subject to part 120 or 123 (e.g., dairy products) differently depending on whether the food is manufactured, processed, packed, or held by a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds other food that is subject to part 120 or 123. Therefore, we tentatively conclude that this interpretation results in an exclusion that is too broad.

Second, we could interpret sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) to exempt an entire facility from section 418 only if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is subject to and in compliance with part 120 or 123 with regard to all food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by the facility. Under this interpretation, juice and seafood in a facility would, in addition to being subject to part 120 or 123, be subject to the requirements in section 418 if the facility manufactures, processes, packs, or holds any food not subject to part 120 or 123. For example, juice processing activities subject to part 120 at a facility that processes juice and dairy products would be subject to section 418 because the facility manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food not subject to part 120 or 123. The resulting application of section 418 to the dairy products in the example is a logical outcome--the dairy products are not subject to any other preventive control-type requirements. Further, the coverage gap created by the first possible interpretation is avoided. The application of section 418 to the juice in the example, however, is problematic. The juice is subject to part 120, thus application of section 418 to the juice would

result in a circumstance that the exclusion in sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) was likely intended to avoid--subjecting food covered by current HACCP requirements to additional preventive control requirements in section 418. Therefore, we tentatively conclude that this interpretation results in an exclusion that is too narrow.

Finally, we considered a third interpretation. We could interpret sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) of the FD&C Act to exempt those activities of a facility that are subject to part 120 or 123, and only those activities, regardless of whether the facility manufactures, processes, packs, or holds other food. This interpretation would fulfill the apparent goal of the exemption-- to exclude food covered by and in compliance with current HACCP requirements (parts 120 and 123) from section 418. Further, this interpretation is neither too broad (because it does not exclude food that is not subject to part 120 or 123) nor is it too narrow (because it does not result in overlapping requirements when food not subject to part 120 or 123 is processed in the same facility as food that is subject to part 120 or 123). This is the interpretation that seems most reasonable and that we propose to adopt in this proposed rule. We request comment on our interpretation of sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B).

We tentatively conclude that we should include the exemptions provided in sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) of the FD&C Act in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the exemption as we have interpreted it. Proposed § 117.5(b) would provide that Subpart C would not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 123 (Fish and Fishery Products) at a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 123 with respect to such activities. Likewise, proposed § 117.5(c) would provide that Subpart C would not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 120 (Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) Systems) at a facility if the

owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 120 with respect to such activities. Proposed § 117.5(b) and (c) would make clear that the exemptions provided by sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) of the FD&C Act would apply to particular activities at a facility rather than to the facility as a whole. For example, a facility producing juice and dairy beverages would be exempt only with respect to juices subject to, and in compliance with, part 120. Such a facility would be subject to subpart C with respect to its dairy beverages, unless it qualified for another exemption.

We request comment on the criteria that should be used to determine whether a facility is in compliance with part 123 or part 120.

### 3. Proposed § 117.5(d)--Exemption Applicable to Food Subject to Part 113 - Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged In Hermetically Sealed Containers

Section 418(j)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act provides that section 418 of the FD&C Act shall not apply to a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, “[t]he Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged in Hermetically Sealed Containers standards of the [FDA] (or any successor standards).” (We interpret “Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged in Hermetically Sealed Containers standards” to mean the requirements of part 113.) Importantly, section 418(j)(2) of the FD&C Act limits the express exemption associated with part 113 to microbiological hazards that are regulated under part 113 (or any successor regulations). FDA considers the language of section 418(j)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act to be ambiguous with regard to application of the exemption. As discussed with regard to sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) above, the language of section 418(j)(1)(C) premises exemption from section 418 of the FD&C Act on an owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility being required to comply with, and being in compliance with, part

113 “with respect to such facility[.]” However, part 113 does not apply to “facilities,” establishments, or plants. Rather, it applies to the specified foods (low-acid canned foods) and to persons defined as “commercial processors” who conduct certain activities involving those foods. See, e.g., § 113.3(d) (definition of “Commercial processor”), and section 404 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 344), which provides FDA with legal authority to issue part 113 (“[The Secretary] shall promulgate regulations providing for the issuance, to manufacturers, processors, or packers of such class of food [presenting specific risks defined in the section] in such locality of permits to which shall be attached such conditions governing the manufacture, processing, or packaging of such class of food...”). Thus, it is unclear for purposes of section 418(j)(1)(C) under what circumstances a low-acid canned food processor is required to comply with part 113 “with respect to [a] facility,” especially when such a person also conducts activities involving other foods not subject to part 113 at the same facility.

We considered the same three interpretations of section 418(j)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act as we considered for sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) of the FD&C Act for the purpose of proposed § 117.5(b) and (c). We tentatively conclude that we should interpret section 418(j)(1)(C) in the same manner as we interpreted sections 418(j)(1)(A) and (B) – i.e., to exempt those activities of a facility that are subject to part 113, and only those activities. Such an interpretation would fulfill the apparent goal of the exemption without being too narrow or too broad. We also tentatively conclude that we should include the exemption provided in section 418(j)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the exemption as we have interpreted it. Proposed § 117.5(d)(1) would provide that Subpart C would not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 113 (Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged in Hermetically Sealed Containers) at a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the

facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 113 with respect to such activities. For example, a facility producing both low-acid foods packaged in hermetically sealed containers and acidified foods subject to part 114 would be exempt only with respect to low-acid foods subject to, and in compliance with, part 113. Consistent with section 418(j)(2) of the FD&C Act, proposed § 117.5(d)(2) would establish that the exemption in proposed § 117.5(d)(1) would be applicable only with respect to the microbiological hazards that are regulated under part 113. A facility that is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 113 would be subject to the requirements in proposed subpart C for hazards such as chemical hazards (e.g., pesticide residues), physical hazards (e.g., metal fragments that could be introduced from equipment) and radiological hazards (e.g., high concentrations of radium-226, radium-228 or uranium in well water used in product). A facility that is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 113 also would be subject to the requirements in proposed subpart C for biological hazards not regulated under part 113. For example, the heat-stable toxin produced by the Staphylococcus aureus is a biological hazard that would not be inactivated or destroyed by the processing required under part 113 (Ref. 128) (Ref. 129).

We request comment on the criteria that should be used to determine whether a facility is in compliance with part 113.

#### 4. Proposed § 117.5(e)--Exemption Applicable to a Facility That Manufactures, Processes, Packs, or Holds a Dietary Supplement

Section 103(g) of FSMA provides that “[n]othing in the amendments made by [section 103 of FSMA] shall apply to any facility with regard to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of a dietary supplement that is in compliance with the requirements of sections 402(g)(2) and 761 of the [FD&C Act] (21 U.S.C. 342(g)(2), 379aa-1).” Section 402(g)(2) of the

FD&C Act authorizes FDA to issue regulations to require good manufacturing practices for dietary supplements. FDA has issued such a regulation at part 111 (21 CFR 111) (Current Good Manufacturing Practice in Manufacturing, Packaging, Labeling, or Holding Operations for Dietary Supplements). Section 761 of the FD&C Act requires serious adverse event reporting for dietary supplements. FDA has issued guidance implementing section 761 (Ref. 130).

We interpret section 103(g) of FSMA in a manner analogous to our interpretation of sections 418(j) and (k) of the FD&C Act – i.e., as an exemption from the requirements for hazard analysis and preventive controls that we are proposing to establish in subpart C of proposed part 117. We interpret the reference in section 103(g) of FSMA to “compliance with section 402(g)(2)” to mean compliance with part 111 (i.e., the regulation authorized by section 402(g)(2) of the FD&C Act). We tentatively conclude that Congressional intent regarding the reach of section 103(g) of FSMA is unambiguous in that section 103(g) of FSMA directly limits the provision “with regard to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of a dietary supplement ....” We also tentatively conclude that we should include a provision implementing section 103(g) of FSMA in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the provision. Proposed § 117.5(e) would provide that Subpart C would not apply to any facility with regard to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of a dietary supplement that is in compliance with the requirements of Part 111 (Current good manufacturing practice in manufacturing, packing, labeling, or holding operations for dietary supplements) and section 761 of the FD&C Act (Serious Adverse Event Reporting for Dietary Supplements).

We request comment on the criteria that should be used to determine whether a facility is in compliance with part 111 and with section 761 of the FD&C Act.

## 5. Proposed § 117.5(f)--Exemptions Applicable to Activities Subject to Standards for Produce Safety in Section 419 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(k) of the FD&C Act provides that section 418 of the FD&C Act “shall not apply to activities of a facility that are subject to section 419 [of the FD&C Act]”. Section 419, “Standards for Produce Safety,” requires FDA to establish by regulation “science-based minimum standards for the safe production and harvesting of those types of fruits and vegetables, including specific mixes or categories of fruits and vegetables, that are raw agricultural commodities for which [FDA] has determined that such standards minimize the risk of serious adverse health consequences or death.” Section 419(h) of the FD&C Act provides that section 419 of the FD&C Act “shall not apply to activities of a facility that are subject to section 418 [of the FD&C Act].” Elsewhere in this issue of the Federal Register, FDA is issuing a proposed rule to implement section 419. That proposed rule would apply section 419 to (1) “farms” (as would be defined in proposed §§ 1.227 and 1.328) that are not required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act; and to (2) farms that conduct an activity (or activities) that triggers the section 415 registration requirement (“farm mixed-type facilities”), but only with respect to their activities that are within the farm definition and therefore do not trigger the registration requirement. See section VIII.E of this document for a discussion of our proposed revisions and additions to the definitions in current §§ 1.227(b) and 1.328.

Establishments that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the FD&C Act as “farms” would not be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act when conducting activities within the farm definition. Farm mixed-type facilities would be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act when conducting those activities that trigger the section 415 registration requirement. We tentatively conclude that Congressional intent regarding the reach of section 418(k) of the FD&C

Act is unambiguous in that section 418(k) directly limits the exemption to activities of the facility that are subject to section 419 of the FD&C Act. We also tentatively conclude that we should include a provision implementing section 418(k) of the FD&C Act in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the exemption. Proposed § 117.5(f) would provide that Subpart C would not apply to activities of a facility that are subject to section 419 of the FD&C Act (Standards for Produce Safety).

As discussed immediately below in section X.C.6 of this document, proposed § 117.5(g) and (h) would provide for an exemption from the requirements of proposed subpart C for certain on-farm, low-risk manufacturing, processing, packing or holding activities by a small or very small business.

#### 6. Proposed § 117.5(g) and (h)--Exemption Applicable to Certain On-farm Manufacturing, Processing, Packing or Holding Food by a Small or Very Small Business

a. Requirements of section 103 of FSMA. As discussed in section VIII.A.1 of this document, section 103(c)(1)(A) of FSMA requires that the Secretary publish a proposed rule to promulgate regulations with respect to “(i) activities that constitute on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership for purposes of section 415 of the [FD&C Act]; and (ii) activities that constitute on-farm manufacturing or processing of food that is not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership for purposes of section 415.” Section 103(c)(1)(B) of FSMA directs that the rulemaking “shall enhance the implementation of such section 415 [of the FD&C Act] and clarify the activities that are included as part of the definition of the term “facility” under such section 415.” In section VIII of this document, we discuss clarifications of certain on-farm activities and whether they trigger the section 415 registration requirement in order to enhance



the implementation of section 415 by clarifying the treatment of various activities for purposes of section 415, including activities conducted on farms.

As discussed in section VIII.A.2 of this document, section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA requires that the Secretary conduct a science-based risk analysis of “(i) specific types of on-farm packing or holding of food that is not grown, raised, or consumed on such farm or another farm under the same ownership, as such packing and holding relates to specific foods; and (ii) specific on-farm manufacturing and processing activities as such activities relate to specific foods that are not consumed on that farm or on another farm under common ownership.” As discussed in section VIII.G of this document, consistent with the requirements of section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA we have conducted a qualitative risk assessment related to activity/food combinations for the purpose of determining which activity/food combinations would be considered low risk.

Section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA requires that, in promulgating the regulations under Section 103(c)(1)(A), “the Secretary shall consider the results of the science-based risk analysis conducted under [Section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA], and shall exempt certain facilities from the requirements in section 418 of the [FD&C Act]..., including hazard analysis and preventive controls, and the mandatory inspection frequency in section 421 of [the FD&C Act]... or modify the requirements in [sections 418 or 421 of the FD&C Act], as the Secretary determines appropriate, if such facilities are engaged only in specific types of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activities that the Secretary determines to be low risk involving specific foods the Secretary determines to be low risk.” Section 103(c)(1)(D)(ii) of FSMA provides that “[t]he exemptions or modifications under [section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA] shall not include an exemption from the requirement to register under section 415 of the [FD&C

Act]... if applicable, and shall apply only to small businesses and very small businesses, as defined in the regulation promulgated under section 418(n) of the [FD&C Act].”

b. FDA’s interpretation of section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA. FDA considers the language of section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) of FSMA to be unambiguous with regard to the reach of the exemption. The language of section 103(c)(1)(D)(i) includes the requirement “if such facilities are engaged only in specific types of on-farm manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activities that the Secretary determines to be low risk involving specific foods the Secretary determines to be low risk.” FDA tentatively concludes that this language is unambiguous and means that Congress intended us to exempt a facility from, or modify the requirements of, section 418 of the FD&C Act under this authority if the facility only conducts a limited set of low-risk activity/food combinations that would otherwise be subject to section 418, that is, to the extent the facility is subject to section 418, it “is engaged only in” the identified activities involving the identified foods. This interpretation seems both protective of public health and consistent with the preventive purpose of section 418 of the FD&C Act. This interpretation would mean that a facility would be required to conduct a hazard analysis and establish and implement risk-based preventive controls for all activities conducted on all foods (including low-risk activity/food combinations) if a facility conducts a single activity subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act that is not a low-risk activity/food combination, unless the facility qualifies for another exemption from subpart C.

c. Proposed § 117.5(g)--Exemptions for on-farm low-risk packing or holding activity/food combinations. Proposed § 117.5(g) would provide that subpart C would not apply to on-farm packing or holding of food by a small or very small business if the only packing and holding activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act that the business conducts are the

following low-risk packing or holding activity/food combinations on food not grown, raised, or consumed on that farm mixed-type facility or another farm or farm mixed-type facility under the same ownership - i.e., packing or re-packing (including weighing or conveying incidental to packing or re-packing); sorting, culling, or grading incidental to packing or storing; and storing (ambient, cold and controlled atmosphere) of:

- (1) Hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee;
- (2) Cocoa beans and coffee beans (raw and roasted);
- (3) Cocoa products.
- (4) Grains and grain products;
- (5) Honey (raw and pasteurized);
- (6) Intact fruits and vegetables (for purposes of proposed §§ 117.5(g) and (h) only, “intact fruits and vegetables” refers only to fruits and vegetables other than cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree nuts);
- (7) Jams, jellies and preserves;
- (8) Maple sap for syrup and maple syrup;
- (9) Peanuts and tree nuts;
- (10) Sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar; and
- (11) Soft drinks and carbonated water.

The low-risk on farm packing and holding activity/food combinations on food not grown, raised, or consumed on that farm mixed-type facility or another farm or farm mixed-type facility under the same ownership reflect the findings of the analysis required by section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA, discussed in sections VIII.G and VIII.H of this document. For purposes of proposed §§ 117.5(g) and (h) only, “intact fruits and vegetables” refers only to fruits and

vegetables other than cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree nuts. Cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree nuts can be considered part of “fruits and vegetables” as a general matter, but FDA has addressed those foods separately for the purpose of the analysis required by section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA and the proposed §§ 117.5(g) and (h) exemptions in order to accurately reflect differences in activity/food combinations likely to be performed on farm mixed-type facilities on those foods as compared to other fruits and vegetables, as well as differences in risk across those activity/food combinations.

d. Proposed § 117.5(h)--Exemptions for on-farm low-risk manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations. Proposed § 117.5(h) would provide that subpart C would not apply to on-farm low-risk manufacturing/processing activities conducted by a small or very small business if the only manufacturing/processing activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act that the business conducts are the following:

(1) When conducted on a farm mixed-type facility’s own raw agricultural commodities as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (those grown or raised on that farm mixed-type facility or another farm/farm mixed-type facility under the same ownership) for distribution into commerce:

- (i) Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;
- (ii) Boiling/evaporation of maple sap to make maple syrup;
- (iii) Chopping peanuts and tree nuts;
- (iv) Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples) and coating peanuts or tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);

(v) Drying/dehydrating intact fruits and vegetables (without the addition of sulfites)

where the drying creates a distinct commodity (e.g., drying fruits or herbs);

(vi) Extracting oil from grains (e.g., corn, oilseeds, soybeans);

(vii) Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal) and raw peanuts or raw tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);

(viii) Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);

(ix) Making sugar from sugar beets and sugarcane; and

(x) Salting raw peanuts and raw tree nuts;

(2) When conducted on food other than the farm mixed-type facility's own raw agricultural commodities for distribution into commerce:

(i) Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;

(ii) Chopping peanuts and tree nuts;

(iii) Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples), and peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);

(iv) Cooling intact fruits and vegetables using cold air;

(v) Drying/dehydrating (whether for storage/transport or for creating a distinct commodity) intact fruits and vegetables (without sulfiting), cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts;

(vi) Extracting oils from grains (e.g., corn, soybeans, oilseeds);

(vii) Fermenting cocoa beans and coffee beans;

(viii) Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal), and peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);

(ix) Labeling (including stickering) hard candy, cocoa beans, cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans (other than milk chocolate) coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products (other than those containing wheat in a form that would not be recognized as containing wheat without a label declaration), honey, jams/jellies/preserves, maple sap, maple syrup, intact single-ingredient peanuts or tree nuts (shelled and unshelled), soft drinks and carbonated beverages, sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(x) Making hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee;

(xi) Making cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans;

(xii) Making honey;

(xiii) Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);

(xiv) Making maple syrup;

(xv) Making soft drinks and carbonated water;

(xvi) Making sugar from sugar beets and sugarcane;

(xvii) Mixing cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products, honey, maple sap and maple syrup, and peanuts and tree nuts;

(xviii) Packaging hard candy, fudge, taffy, toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and vegetables (other than modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies and preserves; and maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts (including modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(xix) Salting peanuts and tree nuts;

(xx) Shelling cocoa beans (i.e., winnowing), intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., dried beans and peas), and peanuts and tree nuts;

(xxi) Sifting grains and grain products;

(xxii) Sorting, culling and grading (other than when incidental to packing or storage) hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and vegetables; grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies, and preserves; maple sap; maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts; soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(xxiii) Treating cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts against pests (other than during growing) (e.g., fumigation);

(xxiv) Waxing (wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables.

The low-risk on-farm manufacturing/processing activity/food combinations reflect the findings of the analysis required by section 103(c)(1)(C) of FSMA, discussed in sections VIII.G and VIII.H of this document.

## 7. Proposed § 117.5(i)-- Exemptions Related to Alcoholic Beverages

a. Requirements of FSMA. Section 116(a) of FSMA (21 U.S.C 2206(a)) provides that, except as provided by certain listed sections in FSMA, nothing in FSMA, or the amendments made by FSMA, “shall be construed to apply to a facility that- (1) under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 et seq.) or chapter 51 of subtitle E of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 5001 et seq.) is required to obtain a permit or to register with the Secretary of the Treasury as a condition of doing business in the United States; and (2) under section 415 of the [FD&C Act] is required to register as a facility because such facility is engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding 1 or more alcoholic beverages, with

respect to the activities of such facility that relate to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcoholic beverages.”

Section 116(b) of FSMA (21 U.S.C. 2206(b)) provides that section 116(a) of FSMA “shall not apply to a facility engaged in the receipt and distribution of any non-alcohol food, except that [section 116(a) of FSMA] shall apply to a facility described in [section 116(a) of FSMA] that receives and distributes non-alcohol food, provided such food is received and distributed- (1) in a prepackaged form that prevents any direct human contact with such food; and (2) in amounts that constitute not more than 5 percent of the overall sales of such facility, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.”

Section 116(c) of FSMA (21 U.S.C. 2206(c)) provides that, “[e]xcept as provided in [sections 116(a) and (b) of FSMA], [section 116] shall not be construed to exempt any food, other than alcoholic beverages, as defined in section 214 of the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 214), from the requirements of [FSMA] (including the amendments made by [FSMA]).”

b. FDA’s interpretation of Section 116(a)(1) of FSMA. FDA is aware that some facilities that manufacture, process, pack, or hold alcoholic beverages are required to obtain what is technically called a “permit” from the Secretary of the Treasury (“Treasury”) and some are required to “register” (such as “dealers” under 26 U.S.C. 5124) with Treasury. Others must adhere to functionally similar requirements by submitting a notice or application and obtaining approval from Treasury prior to commencing business. As examples, distilled spirits plants require a Federal Alcohol Administration Act (FAA Act) basic permit (27 U.S.C. 203-204) and must register under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (IRC) (26 U.S.C. 5171-72); wineries must obtain an FAA Act basic permit to produce or blend wine and as a bonded wine cellar must



obtain approval of an application under the IRC (26 U.S.C. 5351 and 5356); and breweries must file a brewer's notice under the IRC and must obtain approval of that notice from Treasury (26 U.S.C. 5401). Because Treasury informs FDA that these are functionally similar requirements, and because FDA has not identified a public health basis or an indication that Congress intended for these various facilities to be treated differently for the purposes of section 116 of FSMA, FDA tentatively concludes that the phrase "obtain a permit or register" is ambiguous and should be interpreted broadly, to include not only facilities that must obtain what is technically named a "permit" or must "register" with Treasury, but also those facilities that must adhere to functionally similar requirements as a condition of doing business in the United States, namely, by submitting a notice or application to Treasury and obtaining Treasury approval of that notice or application. Proposed § 117.5(i)(1)(i) would provide that obtaining approval of a notice or application from the Secretary of the Treasury as a condition of doing business in the United States under the relevant statutes would be treated the same as obtaining a permit or registering with Treasury under those statutes for the purposes of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

FDA understands that all of the facilities described in FSMA section 116(a)(1) are located in the United States (including Puerto Rico under the FAA Act). In isolation, therefore, section 116(a)(1) of FSMA appears to operate to exempt only certain domestic facilities from the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act. Under this interpretation, while domestic facilities would be exempt from section 418 of the FD&C Act if they met all of the required criteria, foreign facilities would not be exempt because they do not satisfy section 116(a)(1) of FSMA.

This raises the question of whether such a construction of section 116(a)(1) of FSMA would be consistent with the risk-based public health principles underlying section 418 of the

FD&C Act and FSMA generally; and raises concerns related to U.S. trade obligations, for example, those found in the World Trade Organization Agreements. See, e.g., The General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade 1994, (GATT 1994) Art. III(4) (“The products of the territory of any contracting party imported into the territory of any other contracting party shall be accorded treatment no less favorable than that accorded to like products of national origin in respect of all laws, regulations and requirements affecting their internal sale....”); Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures, (SPS Agreement), Art. 2(3) (“Member shall ensure that their sanitary and phytosanitary measures do not arbitrarily or unjustifiably discriminate between Members where identical or similar conditions prevail, including between their own territory and that of other Members.”). Importantly, section 404 of FSMA provides that “Nothing in this Act... shall be construed in a manner inconsistent with the agreement establishing the World Trade Organization or any other treaty or international agreement to which the United States is a party.”

As a result, FDA considers the language of section 116 of FSMA, read together with the language of section 404 of FSMA, to be ambiguous with regard to foreign facilities that manufacture, process, pack, or hold alcoholic beverages. There are multiple possible interpretations of this provision. For example, section 116 of FSMA could be read to exempt only domestic facilities from the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act, or section 404 of FSMA could be read to make the section 116(a)(1) exemption inapplicable for all facilities for the purposes of section 418 of the FD&C Act. In considering sections 116 and 404 together, FDA tentatively concludes that it is reasonable to construe section 116(a)(1) to refer not only to domestic firms, but also to foreign firms in order to be consistent with the risk-based public health principles underlying section 418 of the FD&C Act and FSMA generally, and to avoid

any inconsistency with treaties or international agreements to which the United States is a party. Accordingly, proposed § 117.5(i)(1)(i) would apply the exemption not only to domestic facilities that are required to secure a permit, registration, or approval from Treasury under the relevant statutes, but also to foreign facilities of a type that would require such a permit, registration, or approval if they were domestic facilities.

c. FDA's interpretation of Section 116(b) of FSMA. FDA also considers the language of section 116 of FSMA to be ambiguous with regard to the reach of the exemption for facilities that manufacture, process, pack, or hold alcoholic beverages and also receive, manufacture, process, pack, hold, or distribute non-alcohol food (for clarity FDA is using the term "food other than alcoholic beverages" rather than "non-alcohol food" in the codified and discussion that follows). Section 116(b) of FSMA provides that section 116(a) "shall not apply to a facility engaged in the receipt and distribution of any non-alcohol food," except when the non-alcohol food is "received and distributed-- (1) in a prepackaged form that prevents any direct human contact with such food; and (2) in amounts that constitute not more than 5 percent of the overall sales of such facility, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury."

In order to interpret the application of section 116 to food other than alcoholic beverages, FDA must interpret the meaning of the phrase "received and distributed ... in a prepackaged form that prevents any direct human contact with such food" in section 116(b) of FSMA. FDA tentatively concludes that this phrase refers to food that is completely enclosed in packaging during the entire time it is under the facility's direct control, such that direct human contact with such food is prevented. Under this interpretation, facilities that conduct activities using such packaged food without opening the packaging after receiving the food and before distributing it are receiving and distributing food in prepackaged form that prevents any direct human contact

with such food. For example, a winery that assembles gift baskets containing bottles of its own wine and prepackaged boxes of crackers purchased from a supplier, without opening the boxes of crackers, would be receiving and distributing the food other than alcoholic beverages (crackers) in prepackaged form that prevents direct human contact with such food.

Considering this interpretation and the fact that alcohol-related facilities also handle food other than alcoholic beverages in other ways, one interpretation of section 116(b) could be that facilities described in 116(a) that also receive and distribute any food other than alcoholic beverages would be entirely ineligible for the exemption, and therefore wholly subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act, unless such food is received and distributed in prepackaged form and in amounts that constitute no more than 5 percent of a facility's overall sales. For example, if a brewery receives grain and distributes spent grain as animal feed, the entire brewery and all of its activities, including the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of beer, would be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act under this interpretation because it receives and distributes food other than alcoholic beverages that is not in prepackaged form. However, if the same brewery simply disposed of its spent grain as waste, the brewery's manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of beer would not be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act. In other words, under this interpretation, whether the facility's manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcohol would be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act would depend on the facility's activities relating to food other than alcoholic beverages.

When considering the provision as a whole and in its statutory context, FDA tentatively concludes that another interpretation is more reasonable. The agency understands section 116 of FSMA, in general, to indicate that the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcoholic beverages at most alcohol-related facilities should not be subject to section 418 of the

FD&C Act. FDA understands section 116(b) of FSMA to indicate that the receipt and distribution of food other than alcoholic beverages, including any manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of such food occurring at the facility between receipt and distribution, should be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act, unless that food is received and distributed in prepackaged form and in amounts that constitute 5 percent or less of the facility's overall sales. Thus, activities related to alcoholic beverages (including the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcoholic beverages) at facilities within the scope of 116(a) of FSMA would not be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act. Activities related to food other than alcoholic beverages (including the receiving, manufacturing, processing, packing, holding, and distributing of such foods) would be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act even if those activities occur at facilities that are otherwise within the scope of 116(a) (unless they qualify for another exemption or are in prepackaged form and constitute 5 percent or less of the facility's overall sales). For example, if an alcoholic beverage distillery also makes non-alcoholic beverages, under this interpretation the alcoholic beverage distilling activities would be exempt from section 418 of the FD&C Act, but the activities related to non-alcoholic beverages would be subject to section 418 (assuming the non-alcoholic beverages are not in prepackaged form and constitute less than 5 percent of the facility's overall sales) unless they qualify for another exemption. This interpretation is also consistent with the rule of construction in section 116(c) of FSMA, which states, "except as provided in [sections 116(a) and (b) of FSMA], [section 116 of FSMA] shall not be construed to exempt any food, other than alcoholic beverages, . . . from the requirements of this Act."

When considering the statute as a whole, including its underlying purpose, this interpretation of section 116 also provides a more consistent, risk-based approach supported by

public health principles. FDA concludes that Congress must have considered identifying hazards and implementing preventive controls for the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of alcoholic beverages to warrant lower priority from a public health perspective than other foods. Congress may have made such a conclusion in light of the potential antimicrobial function of the alcohol content in such beverages and the concurrent regulation of alcoholic beverage-related facilities by both FDA and the Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau (TTB). The definition of "food" under the FD&C Act includes "articles used for food or drink" and thus includes alcoholic beverages. See 21 U.S.C. 321(f). As such, alcoholic beverages are subject to the FD&C Act adulteration provisions, and implementing regulations, related to food. For example, manufacturers of alcoholic beverages are responsible for adhering to the requirements of current part 110. In addition, alcoholic beverages are regulated by TTB under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act and Chapter 51 of the Internal Revenue Code, which together establish "a comprehensive system of controls of alcoholic beverages, including on-site inspections and procedures that require the advance approval of statements of process and of formulas showing each ingredient to be used in the product" (Ref. 131 at II.B). FDA tentatively concludes that Congress intended to exempt certain alcohol-related facilities from section 418 of the FD&C Act because it found that, in light of the relatively low public health risk presented by the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of alcoholic beverages and their joint regulation by both FDA and TTB, the current regulatory scheme was sufficient to control the hazards associated with the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding of alcoholic beverages. At the same time, FDA tentatively concludes that Congress did not intend to exempt manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food other than alcoholic beverages from

section 418 except in the very limited circumstances set forth in section 116(b)(1) and (2) of FSMA.

At times, the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of alcoholic beverages is inseparable from the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food other than alcoholic beverages. For example, a brewery that sells its spent grains as animal feed may be manufacturing beer and animal feed simultaneously for at least part of the brewing process. FDA tentatively concludes that section 418 of the FD&C Act does not apply to such inseparable activities. FDA tentatively concludes that section 418 applies to the food other than alcoholic beverages starting at the point at which it becomes physically separate from the alcoholic beverage because section 116(c) demonstrates Congress's intent to limit the reach of the exemption to alcoholic beverages. Thus, in the case of the brewery manufacturing animal feed, section 418 of the FD&C Act would apply to the spent grain sold as animal feed once the spent grain is physically separated from the beer, but not before that point.

Proposed § 117.5(i)(1) would provide that subpart C would not apply with respect to alcoholic beverages at facilities meeting the criteria in proposed § 117.5(i)(1)(i) and (ii). Proposed § 117.5(i)(2) would provide that subpart C would not apply with respect to food other than alcoholic beverages at facilities described in proposed § 117.5(i)(1), provided such food is in prepackaged form that prevents direct human contact with the food and constitutes not more than 5 percent of the overall sales of the facility, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.

We tentatively conclude that we should include a provision implementing section 116 of FSMA in the proposed rule to establish by regulation the reach of the provision. We request comment on our interpretation of section 116 of FSMA.

8. Proposed § 117.5(j)--Exemption Applicable to Facilities Solely Engaged in Storage of Raw Agricultural Commodities Other than Fruits and Vegetables Intended for Further Distribution or Processing

Section 418(m) of the FD&C Act provides in relevant part that FDA may by regulation “exempt or modify the requirements for compliance under [section 418 of the FD&C Act] with respect to facilities that are solely engaged in... the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing”.

Proposed § 117.5(j) would exempt facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing from the requirements of subpart C. This provision would exempt, for example, facilities that only store whole grains (such as corn, wheat, barley, rye, grain sorghum, oats, rice, wild rice, and soybeans), unpasteurized shell eggs, and unpasteurized milk from subpart C. This would include facilities such as grain elevators and silos, provided that such facilities do not conduct other activities subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act. Outbreaks of foodborne illness have not been traced back to storage facilities solely engaged in the storage of non-fruit or vegetable RACs. In addition, as discussed in section X.C.9 of this document, facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of RACs are exempt from the current CGMP regulation, and FDA proposes to maintain this exemption from the CGMPs. FDA tentatively concludes that there would not be significant public health benefit to be gained by subjecting facilities that solely store non-fruit and vegetable RACs intended for further distribution or processing to the requirements of subpart C. Such facilities would remain subject to the requirements of the FD&C Act. For example, if storage is done under insanitary conditions whereby the food may



become contaminated with filth or rendered injurious to health, the food would be adulterated under section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act.

#### 9. Proposed § 117.5(k)--Exemption Applicable to Farms, Activities of “Farm Mixed-type Facilities” Within the Definition of “Farm,” and the Holding or Transportation of One or More Raw Agricultural Commodities

Current § 110.19(a) provides that establishments engaged solely in the harvesting, storage, or distribution of one or more “raw agricultural commodities,” as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act, which are ordinarily cleaned, prepared, treated, or otherwise processed before being marketed to the consuming public, are exempt from the requirements of part 110. The exemption in current § 110.19(a) is commonly referred to as the “RAC exemption.” Current § 110.19(b) states that we will issue special regulations if it is necessary to cover operations excluded under current § 110.19(a). In section VIII.D of this document, we discuss the meaning of the term “raw agricultural commodity” (RAC).

FDA is proposing a series of changes to current § 110.19. As discussed more fully below, FDA is proposing to redesignate current § 110.19(a) as proposed § 117.5(k) and revise the newly established provision as follows:

- Delete current § 110.19(b);
- Make clear that the exemption from requirements in proposed part 117 remains limited to the current requirements (which presently are established in current part 110, subparts B, C, E, and G and would be re-established in proposed part 117, subpart B under this proposed rule); and
- Adjust and clarify what activities fall within this exemption based on experience and changes in related areas of the law since issuance of the CGMP regulation.

Proposed § 117.5(k) would provide that Subpart B does not apply to “farms” (as would be defined in proposed § 1.227), activities of farm mixed-type facilities (as would be defined in proposed § 1.227) that fall within the definition of “farm,” or the holding or transportation of one or more “raw agricultural commodities,” as defined in section 201(r) of the FD&C Act.

Redesignating current § 110.19(a) as proposed § 117.5(k) would simplify the rule by listing all exemptions in a single place. Deleting current § 110.19(b) would have no substantive effect, because current § 110.19(b) establishes no binding requirement on FDA or on persons that would be subject to part 110 and is unnecessary to retain in part 110. We may issue special regulations if it is necessary to do so irrespective of whether such a possibility is provided for in part 110. Making clear that the exemption remains limited to the requirements in current part 110 is necessary because establishments that previously qualified for the RAC exemption would be subject to section 418 of the FD&C Act if they are required to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act, unless they otherwise qualify for an exemption from section 418 (in proposed § 117.5(a) through (j)).

Based on FDA’s experience since issuance of the CGMP regulation and changes in related areas of the law since that time, FDA proposes to modify the existing language so that this exemption would apply to farms (as would be defined in proposed § 1.227), activities of farm mixed-type facilities that fall within the farm definition, and activities related to holding or transporting RACs.

FDA proposes to explicitly apply this exemption to “farms” within the meaning of that term in proposed § 1.227. In current § 110.19(a), FDA used the term “harvesting” to describe one type of activity that could qualify for the exemption. Current § 110.19(a) and its use of the term “harvesting” predated the BT Act of 2002, which exempted “farms” from the new

authorities in sections 414 and 415 of the FD&C Act. As discussed in section VIII.C of this document, FDA developed a definition of the term “farm” through notice and comment rulemaking implementing those authorities. Through those rulemakings, FDA learned that the terms “growing” and “harvesting” were not enough to capture the scope of the activities traditionally done on farms, and expanded the farm definition accordingly. Further, in this rulemaking, FDA is proposing to further clarify the scope of the farm definition. FDA recognizes today that farms within the definition of “farm” in proposed § 1.227 grow/raise and harvest their own RACs, pack and hold their own RACs or any food they may consume themselves, and/or manufacture food for their own consumption. The term “harvesting” in current § 110.19(a) is narrower than the current farm definition, but FDA concludes that the RAC exemption should apply to all activities within the farm definition and not merely to harvesting because other controls (such as those in the proposed produce safety rule under section 419 of the FD&C Act, and the statutory adulteration provision for food, section 402 of the FD&C Act) are more appropriate to apply to farms and their activities than is the CGMP regulation, which was developed and established for establishments other than farms. This is consistent with how FDA has interpreted the RAC exemption with respect to farms. For example, our “Guide to Produce Farm Investigations” (Ref. 132) advises FDA staff that “[f]arming operations, and subsequent operations in packing sheds and buildings, may not meet all requirements outlined in 21 CFR 110 or recommendations in the GAP Guide (Ref. 133). However these documents serve as a useful tool in assessing whether raw agricultural products are handled under conditions that may adulterate the food.” Farms within the proposed § 1.227 definition are also not covered by section 418 of the FD&C Act because they do not have to register under section 415 of the FD&C Act, so they are not covered by any of proposed part

117. Activities within the farm definition are addressed by the adulteration provisions of the FD&C Act and the requirements in part 118 for egg producers (as applicable), and will also be addressed (as applicable) in the proposed rule to establish produce safety standards under section 419 of the FD&C Act.

FDA also proposes to exclude activities of farm mixed-type facilities that fall within the farm definition in proposed § 1.227 from subpart B. See sections VIII.C and VIII.E of this document for a discussion of the term “farm mixed-type facility.” FDA tentatively concludes that the portion of a farm mixed-type facility that is within the farm definition should be treated the same for the purposes of subpart B as are the same activities on farms that only conduct activities within the farm definition. FDA also proposes to exclude activities related to holding or transporting RACs, whether or not such activities are performed on farms. The term “holding” would have the same meaning here as in the revisions we are proposing to current § 1.227(b)(5). Current § 110.19(a) uses the term “storage” to describe these activities. In proposed § 1.227, “holding” is defined as “storage of food” for establishments other than farms and farm mixed-type facilities. The term “transportation” would be used instead of the current term “distribution” to make clear that the scope of the activities exempted by that term is limited to movement of RACs in commerce by a motor vehicle or rail vehicle, and does not extend to other activities, such as packing, that might be considered to be part of the broader term “distribution.” Entities that would be entirely exempted by these terms in the proposed revised provision would include warehouses, silos, or other entities that only store RACs and transporters that only handle RACs. Because section 418 of the FD&C Act applies to any facility that is required to register under section 415 unless an exemption from section 418 applies, it is a separate question whether these entities would be subject to subpart C. Many of

the establishments that are exempted from subpart B by this proposed provision are also likely to be exempt from subpart C or subject to modified requirements under section 418 of the FD&C Act, either because they do not have to register under section 415 (e.g., common carriers), or they qualify for an exemption or modified requirements under section 418 (e.g., modified requirements for certain warehouses under proposed § 117.7, exemption for small or very small businesses performing only on-farm low-risk activity/food combinations under proposed § 117.5(g) and (h), exemption for facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing under proposed § 117.5(j)).

By removing the term “distribution” from current § 110.19(a), FDA proposes to exclude packing of RACs that does not fall within the farm definition from the revised exemption, i.e., to subject packing of RACs to the requirements of subpart B. As discussed in section II.A.1 of this document, the CGMP working group recommended that the agency consider removing the RAC exclusion entirely, and recommended that the agency request further comments on the appropriate application of CGMP controls to raw agricultural product harvesting, packing, storage and distribution (Ref. 1). These concerns were based on investigations of outbreaks linked to fresh produce that had “identified contamination during production and harvest, initial processing and packing, distribution, and final processing as the likely source of product contamination.” (Ref. 1). Since issuance of the CGMP working group report, FDA has continued to investigate foodborne illness outbreaks and contamination events associated with fresh produce and other RACs, and continues to be concerned about sanitation practices at establishments that pack RACs. Packing of RACs has been implicated as a likely source of

contamination in multi-state foodborne illness outbreaks associated with RACs (Ref. 134) (Ref. 135) (Ref. 136).

Accordingly, FDA tentatively concludes that packing of RACs should be subject to the CGMP requirements in proposed subpart B, but that the other activities discussed above for RACs are sufficiently addressed, or will be addressed, by FDA in other ways. We seek comment on this proposal. Growing/raising and harvesting of RACs, and all activities within the farm definition, such as on-farm packing and holding of a farm's own RACs, will continue to be addressed through the statutory adulteration provisions in the FD&C Act, the requirements of part 118 for egg producers (as applicable), and the proposed rule to establish produce safety standards (as applicable) under section 419 of the FD&C Act. FDA tentatively concludes that it is appropriate to address food safety on farms in this fashion, rather than by requiring farms to comply with subpart B. Manufacturing/processing steps conducted on RACs are already subject to the current CGMP regulation and will continue to be subject to the requirements of subpart B, which applies to manufacturing/processing, including when such activities are performed on RACs. This includes manufacturing/processing steps that may occur at establishments that are commonly known as "packinghouses," such as washing and treating fruits and vegetables. "Distribution" is a term that might include activities such as transportation and packing (including re-packing). For clarity, we now discuss those two steps separately. Transportation of non-RACs is subject to the CGMP requirements in current § 110.93, and FDA further expects to address transportation of food in more detail in rulemaking to implement the Sanitary Food Transportation Act of 2005 (Pub. L. 109-59) and section 416 of the FD&C Act (75 FR 22713, April 30, 2010). Section 416(b) of the FD&C Act requires FDA to promulgate regulations to "require shippers, carriers by motor vehicle or rail vehicle, receivers, and other persons engaged

in the transportation of food to use sanitary transportation practices prescribed by the Secretary to ensure that food is not transported under conditions that may render the food adulterated.” In addition, FDA is not currently aware of foodborne illness outbreaks related to RACs that were likely to have been caused by insanitary conditions during transportation conditions. This leaves only packing as a step of concern that is not being sufficiently addressed, either through application of the CGMP requirements or in another way. Therefore, FDA tentatively concludes that packing of RACs that does not fall within the farm definition should be subject to the requirements in proposed subpart B. We request comment on this conclusion and on whether there any aspects of proposed subpart B that should not apply to the packing of RACs.

Because the current exemption in § 110.19(a) is limited to “establishments engaged solely in” the listed activities, it does not exempt establishments that conduct any activities relating to food for human consumption other than the specifically identified activities for RACs. FDA tentatively concludes that it would be reasonable to revise the exemption so that it would exempt the specifically identified activities when performed on RACs, regardless of whether the establishment that conducts those activities also conducts other activities that do not qualify for the exemption. This is because, as in the section 418(j)(1) exemptions discussed in sections X.C.2 and X.C.3 of this document (for activities covered by parts 120, 123, and 113), it is more appropriate to subject these activities to controls other than those in proposed subpart B, and these activities should be regulated in the same way whether or not other activities subject to proposed subpart B take place at the same establishment. If activities subject to proposed subpart B do take place at the same establishment, compliance with proposed subpart B with respect to those activities should provide the necessary protection for food subject to those

activities regardless of whether RACs are also stored or transported by the same establishment, or if activities inside the farm definition are conducted at the same establishment.

FDA also proposes to delete “which are ordinarily cleaned, prepared, treated, or otherwise processed before being marketed to the consuming public” from the current exemption. While this phrase captured FDA’s original reasoning for providing the RAC exemption, it is confusing because many RACs are not so processed (as is often the case for fresh produce, for example) and the operative part of the exemption is that it applies to RACs, not only some RACs depending on whether they receive later manipulation.

D. Proposed § 117. 7--Applicability of Part 117 to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food That is Not Exposed to the Environment

1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(m) of the FD&C Act provides, in relevant part, that “[t]he Secretary may, by regulation, exempt or modify the requirements for compliance under [section 418 of the FD&C Act] with respect to facilities that are solely engaged in ... the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment.”

2. Petition Relevant to Section 418(m) of the FD&C Act

In a letter dated July 22, 2011, an industry coalition of the American Bakers Association, the American Frozen Food Institute, the Grocery Manufacturers Association, the International Bottled Water Association, the International Dairy Foods Association, the International Warehouse Logistics Association, the Peanut and Tree Nut Processors Association, and the Snack Food Association (the section 418(m) petitioners) submitted a citizen petition (Docket No. FDA-2011-P-0561). The petition requests that FDA promulgate regulations under section 418(m) of the FD&C Act “to exempt from compliance or modify the requirements for



compliance under section 418 [of the FD&C Act] for facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment, by allowing such facilities to satisfy the requirements of that section through compliance with the [CGMPs] mandated for such facilities by [current] § 110.93.” The section 418(m) petitioners assert that the food safety issues presented by facilities used only to store packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment are essentially the same, regardless of the type of food. As such, trade associations representing a variety of product sectors are signatories to the petition and are supportive of the request to exempt such facilities from the provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act. In the remainder of this document, we refer to packaged food not exposed to the environment as “unexposed packaged food.” We consider “not exposed to the environment” and “unexposed” to mean that the food is in a form that prevents any direct human contact with the food.

The section 418(m) petitioners state that most of the potential hazards and preventive controls noted in section 418 of the FD&C Act are not relevant to facilities solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged foods and that the foods handled in these facilities would have already been subjected to hazard analyses and preventive controls (including CGMPs) throughout the process of their manufacture and packaging for delivery to retailers and end-users. They further state that most of the preventive control activities carried out in food production settings (such as sanitation of food-contact surfaces and utensils) offer no benefit for a facility storing unexposed packaged foods and that controls such as supplier verification and recall plans would be addressed by the manufacturing facility from which the foods originated.

The section 418(m) petitioners state that the “few hazards” that may arise in facilities solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged foods, “including those relating to environmental, climate, and pest controls, are already addressed under FDA’s existing CGMPs

governing warehousing and distribution [in current § 110.93].” They state that storage facilities themselves pose “a very limited, if any, food-safety risk” and that they are not aware of any significant foodborne illness outbreaks attributable to storage at such facilities.

The section 418(m) petitioners note that many packaged food warehouses contain a variety of foods that can come from many different manufacturing facilities or even different companies. According to the petitioners, warehouse operators work closely with the food manufacturers to understand the conditions and controls that need to be utilized to ensure the quality of the foods they store and distribute and, in many cases, those conditions and controls are formalized in written contracts.

The section 418(m) petitioners assert that the warehouse operators themselves do not have access to product formulations and other relevant information that would be necessary for them to conduct a hazard analysis, develop preventive controls, and monitor them. They state that the food manufacturer, on the other hand, does understand the products it produces and factors in the storage and distribution parameters and considerations into the hazard analysis and appropriately instructs the warehouses to ensure unexposed packaged foods are being properly stored. The section 418(m) petitioners thus assert that responsibility for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls under section 418 of the FD&C Act is properly and best shouldered by the food manufacturer.

The section 418(m) petitioners propose that FDA use the following language as part of its regulations implementing section 418 of the FD&C Act: “A facility that is engaged solely in the storage, holding, warehousing, or distribution of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment shall be exempt from the requirements of section 418 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act if the facility complies with the requirements set forth at 21 C.F.R. § 110.93.”

FDA notes that petitioners also make arguments for their position relevant to “hazards that may be intentionally introduced, including by acts of terrorism,” as described in § 418(b)(2). As discussed in sections II.B.2.f and XII.B.1, those hazards will be addressed in a future rulemaking so FDA is not addressing that aspect of the petition in this proposal.

### 3. FDA’s Tentative Response to the Petition

We tentatively agree in part, and disagree in part, with the section 418(m) petitioners. As discussed more fully below, we agree it is appropriate for facilities solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food to be exempt from the requirements that would be established in proposed subpart C, provided that the food does not require time/temperature control for safety. For unexposed packaged food that requires time/temperature control for safety, we disagree that such an exemption is warranted, but tentatively conclude that unexposed packaged food that requires time/temperature control for safety could be subject to modified requirements rather than to the full requirements that would be established in proposed subpart C.

We disagree that warehouse operators do not have access to information relevant to conducting a hazard analysis and establishing risk-based preventive controls. The principal hazard that would be identified in any hazard analysis for unexposed packaged food is the potential for the growth of, or toxin formation by, microorganisms of public health significance when an unexposed refrigerated packaged food requires time/temperature control for safety. Information about this hazard and appropriate preventive controls for this hazard is widely available (Ref. 137) (Ref. 138) (Ref. 139) (Ref. 140). For example, the 2009 Edition of FDA’s Food Code defines “Potentially Hazardous Food (Time/Temperature Control for Safety Food)” as a food that requires time/temperature control for safety to limit pathogenic microorganism growth or toxin formation (Ref. 137). Earlier editions (e.g., the 2001 Food Code) included a

similar definition for “potentially hazardous food”; since 2005, the definition jointly refers to “potentially hazardous food” and “time/temperature control for safety food” (commonly referred to as TCS food) to emphasize the importance of temperature control in keeping food safe.

Although we disagree that warehouse operators do not have access to information relevant to conducting a hazard analysis and establishing risk-based preventive controls, we agree that it is not necessary for each facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food to conduct its own hazard analysis to identify this hazard for unexposed refrigerated packaged food as reasonably likely to occur and for each such facility to determine that time/temperature control is the appropriate preventive control.

We also disagree that current § 110.93 alone is adequate for addressing environmental problems such as a flood in the facility and pest control problems, even though the food in question is not exposed to the environment and pest control problems with the container would likely be visible to the warehouse operator. However, we tentatively conclude that proposed § 117.93, along with other applicable provisions of proposed part 117, subpart B, such as pest control in proposed § 117.35, do adequately address most safety-related issues that may arise in facilities solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food. We disagree that current § 110.93 or other provisions in proposed part 117, subpart B justifies the exemption from all preventive control requirements sought by the petitioners in the specific case of unexposed refrigerated packaged food that requires time/temperature control for safety (hereinafter unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food). As discussed more fully in section XIII.B of this document, such food requires the implementation of an appropriate preventive control (temperature), monitoring that control, taking corrective actions when there is a problem with that control, verifying that the control is consistently implemented, and establishing and

maintaining records documenting the monitoring, corrective actions, and verification. FDA tentatively concludes that it is appropriate for our response to the petition to distinguish between packaged food that requires such time/temperature control and packaged food that does not.

We also disagree that an exemption provided under section 418(m) of the FD&C Act should be established in a manner that has the potential to be interpreted more broadly than section 418(m) provides. The section 418(m) petitioners request that we establish a provision that “A facility that is engaged solely in the storage, holding, warehousing, or distribution of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment shall be exempt from the requirements of section 418 [of the FD&C Act]”, whereas section 418(m) provides discretion for an exemption “with respect to facilities that are solely engaged in ... the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment.” Under proposed § 117.3, “holding” would mean storage of food and holding facilities would include, relevant to unexposed packaged food, warehouses and cold storage facilities. To the extent that a facility that is engaged solely in “warehousing” or “distribution” of unexposed packaged food is merely “storing” or “holding” the food, an exemption established using the language provided by section 418(m) would apply to that facility. However, to the extent that a facility that is engaged solely in “warehousing” or “distribution” of unexposed packaged food is not merely “storing” or “holding” the food, an exemption established using the language provided by section 418(m) would not apply to that facility.

In response to the petition, FDA is proposing to establish an exemption from subpart C for facilities solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food (proposed § 117.7). FDA also is proposing to establish modified requirements at such facilities to require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such a facility comply with modified requirements for any

unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food (proposed § 117.206). See the discussion of proposed § 117.7 in the next section of this document and the discussion of proposed § 117.206 in section XIII.B of this document.

#### 4. Proposed § 117.7--Applicability of Part 117 to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food that is Not Exposed to the Environment

Proposed § 117.7(a) would provide that subpart C does not apply to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment. Proposed § 117.7(b) would establish that unexposed packaged food at such facilities is subject to modified requirements that would be established in proposed § 117.206. As discussed more fully in section XIII.B of this document, the modified requirements would mandate that such a facility establish and implement appropriate temperature controls, monitor the temperature controls, take corrective actions, verify that the temperature controls are consistently implemented, and establish and maintain records documenting the monitoring, corrective actions, and verification activities for unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. These modified requirements would be a subset of the proposed requirements that would be established in subpart C.

There are limited routes of contamination for unexposed packaged food in a facility that solely stores unexposed packaged food (e.g., packaged food in containers in a warehouse). Contamination can occur, for example, if rodents gnaw through packages or if human waste from an improperly maintained toilet facility spills and seeps into paper-based packaging. However, with one exception, the CGMP requirements in proposed part 117, subpart B (e.g., proposed §§ 117.20, 117.35, 117.37, and 117.93) would apply to the storage of unexposed packaged food and be adequate to prevent such contamination so that it would not be necessary for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to address these routes of contamination by applying the

hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls that would be established in proposed subpart C. The exception would be for the rare circumstance in which RACs are packaged in a manner in which the RACs are not exposed to the environment. Under current § 110.19(a), an establishment solely engaged in storing RACs is exempt from CGMPs in current part 110; under proposed § 117.5(k), such an establishment would continue to be exempt from CGMPs. Such an establishment is now, and would continue to be, subject to section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act. An establishment that is solely engaged in the storage of packaged RACs that are not exposed to the environment may find the provisions of proposed subpart B helpful in ensuring compliance with section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act.

Many of the requirements that would be established in proposed subpart C would be directed to manufacturing, processing, and packing food and would not apply to the storage of unexposed packaged food that does not require time/temperature control for safety. This is the case for:

- Process controls (proposed § 117.135(d)(1));
- Food allergen controls (proposed § 117.135(d)(2));
- Sanitation controls (proposed § 117.135(d)(3));
- Monitoring of process controls, food allergen controls, and sanitation controls (proposed § 117.140);
- Corrective actions (proposed § 117.145);
- Verification (including initial validation) of process controls (proposed § 117.150); and
- A recall plan (proposed § 117.137) (recalls generally are initiated by the manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food).

FDA tentatively concludes that the outcome of a hazard analysis for storage of unexposed packaged food that does not require time/temperature control for safety is that there are no hazards reasonably likely to occur. We also tentatively conclude that there would be little public health benefit to requiring the owner, operator, or agent in charge of each facility solely engaged in the storage of such food to conduct its own hazard analysis and document that outcome in its own food safety plan. Likewise, we tentatively conclude that there would be no need for the facility to establish and implement preventive controls, with corresponding monitoring, corrective actions, or verification (including validation), because there would be no hazards reasonably likely to occur to trigger such activities. We also tentatively conclude that there would be no need for a qualified individual to conduct activities such as preparing the food safety plan (proposed § 117.126(c)); developing the hazard analysis (proposed § 117.130(a)(3)); validating the preventive controls (proposed § 117.150(a)(1)); reviewing records for implementation and effectiveness of preventive controls and appropriateness of corrective actions (proposed § 117.150(d)(2)); or performing reanalysis of the food safety plan (proposed § 117.150(e)(1)(iv)), because the facility would not need to conduct these activities. Thus, with the exception of the unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food, we tentatively conclude that the food safety system that would be established in proposed subpart C is not needed to significantly minimize or prevent the occurrence of hazards that could affect unexposed packaged food at a facility solely engaged in the storage of such food.

The purpose of proposed § 117.7(b) is to make clear that although a facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food is exempt from subpart C, such a facility is subject to modified requirements that would be established in proposed § 117.206. These



requirements would apply to the storage of unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. We explain the basis for those proposed requirements in section XIII.B of this document.

XI. Proposed Revisions to Current Good Manufacturing Practice Requirements of Part 110

(Proposed Part 117, Subpart B)

A. Proposed Deletion of Guidance from Current Part 110

As discussed in section IX.F of this document, FDA is proposing a number of revisions to delete some guidance currently established in part 110 (e.g., provisions using “should” or “compliance may be achieved by”). Table 8 identifies each of the proposed deletions and either explains the deletion or, for deletions with longer explanations, refers to the section of the preamble where the deletion is explained.

Table 8. Proposed Deletion of Guidance Currently Established in Part 110

<b>Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance</b>	<b>Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
§ 110.10(b)(5) (Cleanliness)	Gloves should be of an impermeable material.	We considered the diversity of food that is manufactured, processed, packed or held and would be subject to the requirements of proposed part 117. The use of an impermeable material may be important for handling a ready-to-eat food but may not be required for handling a food that will receive a validated heat treatment. Thus, we tentatively conclude that it would not be appropriate to require that gloves used for the handling of all foods be made of an impermeable material and that a discussion of gloves would be more appropriate in a guidance document, which could describe factors to consider in selecting and using gloves in the production of food.
§ 110.35(b)(2) (Substances used in cleaning and sanitizing)	Follow all relevant regulations promulgated by other Federal, State, and local government agencies for the application, use, or holding of toxic cleaning compounds, sanitizing agents, and pesticide chemicals.	Although such a recommendation may be helpful and could be included in future guidance, FDA tentatively concludes that it is more properly addressed by the applicable Federal, State, and local government agencies and is outside the scope of proposed part 117.

<b>Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance</b>	<b>Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
§ 110.37(d) (Toilet facilities)	Compliance with the requirements for toilet facilities may be accomplished by four specified mechanisms.	See explanation in section XI.H.2 of this document
§ 110.37(e) (Hand-washing facilities)	Compliance with the requirements for hand-washing facilities may be accomplished by six specified mechanisms.	See explanation in section XI.H.3 of this document
§ 110.40(e) (Equipment and utensils)	Each freezer and cold storage compartment used to store and hold food capable of supporting growth of microorganisms should be fitted with an automatic control for regulating temperature or with an automatic alarm system to indicate a significant temperature change in a manual operation.	It is now very common for freezer and cold storage compartments to be fitted with an automatic control for regulating temperature. Thus, we tentatively conclude that it is not necessary to revise current § 110.40(e) to require, rather than recommend, use of an automatic control for regulating temperature or an automatic alarm system, because the design of modern freezer and cold storage compartments has established this approach without the need for a Federal requirement.
§ 110.80(a)(2) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	Compliance with the requirements for the safety of raw materials and ingredients may be achieved by purchasing raw materials and ingredients under a supplier's guarantee or certification.	We tentatively conclude that there are more mechanisms for achieving compliance than the single mechanism identified in current § 110.80(a)(2) – e.g., in some cases, compliance could be achieved by testing raw materials and ingredients. Rather than propose to require a subset of mechanisms to achieve compliance, FDA tentatively concludes that these recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.
§ 110.80(a)(3) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	Compliance with action levels for poisonous or deleterious substances before these materials or ingredients are incorporated into finished food.	See explanation in section XI.J.2 of this document.

Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance	Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete	Explanation
§ 110.80(a)(3) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	Compliance with the requirement for raw materials and other ingredients susceptible to contamination with aflatoxin or other natural toxins to comply with current FDA regulations for poisonous or deleterious substances before these materials or ingredients are incorporated into finished food may be accomplished by purchasing raw materials and other ingredients under a supplier's guarantee or certification, or may be verified by analyzing these materials and ingredients for aflatoxins and other natural toxins.	We tentatively conclude that there may be more mechanisms for achieving compliance than those mechanisms identified in current § 110.80(a)(3). Rather than propose to require a subset of mechanisms to achieve compliance, FDA tentatively concludes that these recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.
§ 110.80(a)(4) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	Raw materials, other ingredients, and rework susceptible to contamination with pests, undesirable microorganisms, or extraneous material must comply with applicable FDA defect action levels for natural or unavoidable defects if a manufacturer wishes to use the materials in manufacturing food.	See explanation in section XI.J.2 of this document.
§ 110.80(a)(4) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	The requirement for raw materials, other ingredients, and rework susceptible to contamination with pests, undesirable microorganisms, or extraneous material to comply with applicable FDA regulations for natural or unavoidable defects if a manufacturer wishes to use the materials in manufacturing food may be verified by any effective means, including purchasing the materials under a supplier's guarantee or certification, or examination of these materials for contamination.	We tentatively conclude that there may be more mechanisms for achieving compliance than those mechanisms identified in current § 110.80(a)(4). Rather than propose to require a subset of mechanisms to achieve compliance, FDA tentatively concludes that these recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.

Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance	Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete	Explanation
§ 110.80(b)(2) (Manufacturing operations)	One way to comply with the requirement for all food manufacturing, including packaging and storage, to be conducted under such conditions and controls as are necessary to minimize the potential for the growth of microorganisms, or for the contamination of food is careful monitoring of physical factors such as time, temperature, humidity, water activity, pH, pressure, flow rate, and manufacturing operations such as freezing, dehydration, heat processing, acidification, and refrigeration to ensure that mechanical breakdowns, time delays, temperature fluctuations, and other factors do not contribute to the decomposition or contamination of food.	We considered the diversity of food that is manufactured, processed, packed or held and would be subject to the requirements of proposed part 117 and the physical factors and manufacturing operations that could be monitored to minimize the growth of microorganisms. FDA tentatively concludes that this diversity does not make it appropriate to propose establishing these specific recommendations as requirements and that these recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.
§ 110.80(b)(3) (Manufacturing operations)	Compliance with the requirement for food that can support the rapid growth of undesirable microorganisms to be held in a manner that prevents the food from becoming adulterated within the meaning of the FD&C Act may be accomplished by any effective means, including maintaining refrigerated foods at 45°F (7.2°C) or below as appropriate for the particular food involved, maintaining frozen foods in a frozen state, maintaining hot foods at 140°F (60°C) or above, and heat treating acid or acidified foods.	We considered the diversity of food that is manufactured, processed, packed or held and would be subject to the requirements of proposed part 117, as well as the temperatures that are needed for the safe holding of foods. FDA tentatively concludes that this diversity does not make it appropriate to propose to establish these specific recommendations as requirements and that these recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document. In addition, we note that current § 110.80(b)(3)(iv) provides for heat treating acid or acidified foods to destroy mesophilic microorganisms when those foods are to be held in hermetically sealed containers at ambient temperatures. However, current § 110.80(b)(4) addresses measures, including heat treating, taken to destroy or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms. We tentatively conclude that proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(3)(iv) would create a redundancy with current § 110.80(b)(4).

Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance	Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete	Explanation
§ 110.80(b)(8) (Manufacturing operations)	Compliance with the requirement for effective measures to be taken to protect against the inclusion of metal or other extraneous material in food be accomplished by using sieves, traps, magnets, electronic metal detectors, or other suitable effective means.	We considered the diversity of food that is manufactured, processed, packed or held and would be subject to the requirements of proposed part 117 and the methods that could be used to protect against the inclusion of metal or other extraneous material in food. FDA tentatively concludes that it would not be appropriate to establish such specific recommendations as requirements and that such recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.
§ 110.80(b)(10) (Manufacturing operations)	Protection may be provided during manufacturing steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming by adequate cleaning and sanitizing of all food-contact surfaces.	We considered that the cleaning and sanitizing of food-contact surfaces would already be addressed in proposed § 117.35(d), which would require that all food-contact surfaces, including utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment, be cleaned as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food, and in proposed § 117.80(c)(1), which would require, in relevant part, that equipment and utensils be maintained in an acceptable condition through appropriate cleaning and sanitizing, as necessary.
§ 110.80(b)(10) (Manufacturing operations)	Protection may be provided during manufacturing steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming by using time and temperature controls at and between each manufacturing step.	We considered the diversity of food that is manufactured, processed, packed or held and would be subject to the requirements of proposed part 117 and that use of time and temperature controls at and between each manufacturing step may not be required for all foods. For example, the use of time and temperature controls would not be necessary for shelf-stable foods used as ingredients in another product. FDA tentatively concludes that this recommendation would be more appropriate in a guidance document.

Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance	Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete	Explanation
§ 110.80(b)(12) (Manufacturing operations)	Recommendations for how to comply with requirements for batters, breading, sauces, gravies, dressings, and other similar preparations to be treated or maintained in such a manner that they are protected against contamination.	Recommendations to comply by using ingredients free of contamination, employing adequate heat processes where applicable, and providing adequate physical protection of components from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into them, would already be addressed in proposed §§ 117.80(b)(2), 117.80(c)(2), 117.80(c)(4) and 117.80(c)(10), respectively. As discussed regarding our proposed revisions to current § 110.80(b)(10) earlier in this section, FDA tentatively concludes that establishing requirements for time and temperature controls is not appropriate in light of the diversity of food operations. The remaining recommendations regarding cooling batters to an adequate temperature and disposing of batters at appropriate intervals are better addressed in guidance. Therefore, FDA is proposing to provide flexibility to industry by retaining the performance standard in current § 110.80(b)(12) (i.e., protection against contamination) but deleting the examples of mechanisms to achieve compliance rather than proposing to establish these recommendations as requirements.
§ 110.80(b)(13) (Manufacturing operations)	Compliance with the requirement for filling, assembling, packaging, and other operations to be performed in such a way that the food is protected against contamination may be accomplished by any effective means, including (i) use of a quality control operation in which the critical control points are identified and controlled during manufacturing; (ii) adequate cleaning and sanitizing of all food-contact surfaces and food containers; (iii) using materials for food containers and food-packaging materials that are safe and suitable, as defined in § 130.3(d); (iv) providing physical protection from contamination, particularly airborne contamination; and (v) using sanitary handling procedures.	FDA is proposing to provide flexibility to industry by retaining the performance standard in current § 110.80(b)(12) (i.e., protection against contamination) but deleting the examples of mechanisms to achieve compliance. FDA tentatively concludes that such examples would be more appropriate in a guidance document.

Current Designation of Provision That Includes Guidance	Guidance that FDA is Proposing to Delete	Explanation
§ 110.80(b)(14) (Manufacturing operations)	<b>Mechanisms for compliance with the requirement for food (such as dry mixes, nuts, intermediate moisture food, and dehydrated food) that relies on the control of water activity for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms to be processed to and maintained at a safe moisture level.</b>	<b>We considered that the listed mechanisms are not the only possible mechanisms for achieving compliance. FDA tentatively concludes that it would not be appropriate to establish these recommendations as requirements and that such recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.</b>
§ 110.80(b)(15) (Manufacturing operations)	Compliance with the requirement for food (such as acid and acidified food) that relies principally on the control of pH for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms to be monitored and maintained at a pH of 4.6 or below may be accomplished by any effective means, including employment of one or more of the following practices: (i) monitoring the pH of raw materials, food in process, and finished food and (ii) controlling the amount of acid or acidified food added to low-acid food.	We considered that the listed mechanisms are not the only possible mechanisms for achieving compliance. FDA tentatively concludes that it would not be appropriate to establish these recommendations as requirements and that such recommendations would be more appropriate in a guidance document.
§ 110.80(b)(17) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Food-manufacturing areas and equipment used for manufacturing human food should not be used to manufacture nonhuman food-grade animal feed or inedible products, unless there is no reasonable possibility for the contamination of the human food.	FDA tentatively concludes that this recommendation would be more appropriate in a guidance document, which could include examples of situations where there is no reasonable possibility for the contamination of the human food.
§ 110.110(e)	Information that a compilation of the current defect action levels for natural or unavoidable defects in food for human use that present no health hazard may be obtained upon request from the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (HFS-565), Food and Drug Administration, 5100 Paint Branch Pkwy., College Park, MD 20740.	The organizational entity identified in current § 110.110(e) (i.e., HFS-565) no longer exists and FDA no longer has printed copies of the compilation of defect action levels. An electronic compilation of such current defect action levels is available on the internet (Ref. 141)

B. Other Potential Revisions to Current Guidance

As discussed in sections IX.F and XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing a number of revisions to delete some guidance currently established in part 110 (e.g., provisions using “should” or “compliance may be achieved by”). In section XI.M of this document, FDA requests comment on whether to revise other non-binding provisions to establish new requirements in proposed part 117 or retain them as useful recommended provisions of a comprehensive CGMP provision.

C. Proposed Revisions for Consistency of Terms

As discussed in section IX.C of this document, FDA is proposing revisions to use terms consistently throughout proposed part 117. Table 9 identifies and explains each of these proposed revisions. Because other revisions also may be proposed for certain sections included in Table 9 (e.g., if FDA also is proposing a revision to address cross-contact), Table 9 does not state the proposed requirement and instead refers to the section of this document containing the complete proposed requirement, including all proposed revisions

Table 9. Proposed Revisions for Consistency of Terms

Current Designation	Proposed Revision and Explanation
§ 110.20(b) (Plant Construction and Design)	(1) Replace the phrase “food-manufacturing purposes” with the phrase “food-production purposes (i.e., manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding) to consistently use the same group of terms in proposed part 117. (2) Replace the phrase “plant and facilities” with the single term “plant” as would be defined in proposed § 117.3. The requirement would be clear using the single term “plant” and, thus, the term “facilities” is unnecessary. In addition, under proposed § 117.3 (Definitions) the term “facilities” would be based on the definition in section 418(o)(2) of the FD&C Act, which is not how the term is used in current § 110.20(b). See section XI.F for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.20(b)(4) (Plant Construction and Design)	(3) Add “food-packaging materials” to the requirement that aisles or working spaces be provided between equipment and walls and be adequately unobstructed and of adequate width to permit employees to perform their duties and to protect against contaminating food or food-contact surfaces with clothing or personal contact. Contamination of food-packaging materials could lead to contamination of the food. See section XI.F for the proposed requirement.



Current Designation	Proposed Revision and Explanation
§ 110.35(c) (Pest control)	Replace the phrase “processing area” with the phrase “manufacturing, processing, packing and holding areas” to consistently use the same group of terms in proposed part 117 and to provide for internal consistency between the requirements in current § 110.35(c) to not allow pests in “any area of a food plant” and to take effective measures to exclude pests from the plant. Pests do not belong in any areas where manufacturing, processing, packing or holding of food occurs. See section XI.G.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d)(1) (Food-contact surfaces)	Replace the term “manufacturing” with “manufacturing/processing” in light of our proposed definition of manufacturing/processing (see discussion of the definition of manufacturing/processing in section X.B of this document). See section XI.G.4 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d)(3) (Non-food-contact surfaces)	Add “food-packaging materials” to the recommendation that non-food-contact surfaces of equipment used in the operation of food plants be cleaned as frequently as necessary to protect against contamination of food. Contamination of food-packaging materials could lead to contamination of the food. See section XI.G.5 for the proposed provision.
§ 110.35(d)(4) (Food-contact surfaces)	Add “food-packaging materials” to the requirement that single-service articles be handled, dispensed, used, and disposed of in a manner that protects against contamination of food or food-contact surfaces. Contamination of food-packaging materials could lead to contamination of the food. See section XI.G.4 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.37(a) (Water supply)	Add “food-packaging materials” to the requirement that any water that contacts food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials be safe and of adequate sanitary quality. Contamination of food-packaging materials could lead to contamination of the food. See section XI.H.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.37(f) (Rubbish and offal disposal)	Add “food-packaging materials” to the requirement that rubbish and any offal be so conveyed, stored, and disposed of as to protect against contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, water supplies, and ground surfaces. Contamination of food-packaging materials could lead to contamination of the food. See section XI.H.4 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(7) (Manufacturing operations)	(1) Replace the term “storage” with the term “holding” for consistency with use of the term “holding” throughout proposed part 117. (2) Add “processing” and “packing” as activities where protection is needed against contamination (and against cross-contact) because contamination and cross-contact can occur during any activities subject to proposed part 117. (3) Inserting an “and,” rather than an “or,” between the cited activities to make clear that the requirements for protection against cross-contact and contamination apply to all activities at a plant. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.110(c) (Defect action levels)	Change the designated persons who must “observe good manufacturing practices” and “at all times utilize quality control operations that reduce natural or unavoidable defects to the lowest level currently feasible” from the currently identified persons, (i.e., manufacturers, distributors and holders of food) to manufacturers, processors, packers and holders of food for consistency with terminology used throughout proposed part 117. See section XI.L for the proposed requirement.

\* New designation relative to current designation.

#### D. Proposed Revisions to Address Cross-Contact

As discussed in section IX.D of this document, FDA is proposing a number of revisions to address cross-contact. Some of these proposed revisions would clarify that an existing provision that requires protection against contamination also requires protection against cross-

contact. Table 10 identifies and explains each of these proposed revisions addressing cross-contact. Table 10 does not state the proposed requirement and instead refers to the section of this document containing the complete proposed requirement, including all proposed revisions.

Table 10. Proposed Revisions Regarding Cross-Contact

Current Designation	Nature of Proposed Change and Explanation
§ 110.10(b) (Cleanliness)	Clarification. Poor hygiene may result in the transfer of food allergens from persons working in direct contact with food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials to food. See section XI.E.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.10(b)(1) (Cleanliness)	Clarification. Appropriate use of outer garments protects against the transfer of food allergens from food to person to food. See section XI.E.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.10(b)(9) (Cleanliness)	Clarification. Poor hygiene may result in the transfer of food allergens from persons working in direct contact with food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials to food. See section XI.E.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.20(b)(2) (Plant construction and design)	Clarification. Inadequate construction and design of a plant can result in the transfer of food allergens to food. Separation of operations is a key means of preventing cross-contact. See section XI.F for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.20(b)(6) (Plant construction and design)	Clarification. Inadequate construction and design of a plant can result in the transfer of food allergens to food. Proper ventilation, e.g., over powder dumping operations, and proper operation of fans and other air-blowing equipment are essential to prevent the transfer of allergens via dust in air currents. See section XI.F for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(a) (General maintenance)	Clarification. Improper cleaning and sanitizing that leaves food residues on utensils or equipment may result in the transfer of food allergens from utensils or equipment to food, food-contact surfaces, or food packaging materials that come in contact with the improperly cleaned and sanitized surfaces. See section XI.G.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d) (Sanitation of food-contact surfaces)	Clarification. Inadequate sanitation of food-contact surfaces may leave residues of food containing allergens on the surfaces and result in the transfer of food allergens from food-contact surfaces to food. See section XI.G.4 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d)(2) (Sanitation of food-contact surfaces)	Clarification. Inadequate sanitation of food-contact surfaces may leave residues of food containing allergens on the surfaces and result in the transfer of food allergens from food-contact surfaces to food. See section XI.G.4 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d)(3) (Sanitation of non-food-contact surfaces)	Clarification. Inadequate sanitation of non-food contact surfaces may leave residues of food containing allergens on the surfaces and result in the transfer of food allergens from such surfaces to food-contact surfaces or food. See section XI.G.5 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.35(d)(4) (Sanitation of food-contact surfaces)	Clarification. Failure to properly store single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) could lead to cross-contact. See section XI.G.4 for the proposed requirement.

Current Designation	Nature of Proposed Change and Explanation
§ 110.35(e) (Storage and handling of cleaned portable equipment and utensils)	Clarification. Failure to properly store and handle cleaned portable equipment and utensils could lead to cross-contact of the equipment and utensils and then to cross-contact of food if the equipment and utensils come in contact with food. See section XI.G.6 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.40(a) (Equipment and utensils)	Clarification. Equipment and utensils that are improperly designed, cleaned and maintained may result in the transfer of food allergens from equipment and utensils to food. See section XI.I for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.40(b) (Equipment and utensils)	Clarification. Equipment and utensils that are improperly designed, cleaned and maintained may result in the transfer of food allergens from equipment and utensils to food. See section XI.I for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80 (Processes and controls)	Clarification. Inadequate processes and controls practices may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80 (Processes and controls - General)	Clarification. Inadequate processes and controls practices may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.1 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(a)(1) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients.)	Clarification. Raw materials and ingredients subject to cross-contact due to improper segregation prior to receipt or during storage may result in undeclared allergens in food. See section XI.J.2 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(a)(5) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients.)	Clarification. Improper handling of raw materials and ingredients may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.2 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(a)(7) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients.)	Clarification. Improper handling of raw materials and ingredients may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.2 for the proposed requirement.
N/A	Cross-contact may be associated with improper identification and holding of raw materials and ingredients that are food allergens, and rework that contains food allergens. Improper identification of an allergen-containing raw material, such as a seasoning mix that is not identified as containing soy protein, can result in the unintended incorporation of an allergen into a food (i.e., cross-contact). Improper holding, e.g., storing open-containers of raw materials or ingredients, including those containing allergens, in the same location can result in cross-contact. See section XI.J.2 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(5) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(6) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. Allergens may be transferred from one food to another when raw materials or ingredients are unprotected and allergens in unprotected refuse could contaminate food. Cross-contact can occur when food is conveyed unprotected. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.

Current Designation	Nature of Proposed Change and Explanation
§ 110.80(b)(7) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(10) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(12) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.80(b)(13) (Processes and controls - manufacturing operations)	Clarification. Manufacturing operations may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.J.3 for the proposed requirement.
§ 110.93 (Warehousing and distribution)	Clarification. Inadequate storage and transportation conditions may result in the transfer of food allergens to food. See section XI.K for the proposed requirement.

We seek comment on these proposed changes.

E. Proposed and Potential Revisions to Current § 110.10--Personnel (Proposed § 117.10)

1. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.10(b)--Cleanliness

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.10(b) (Cleanliness), (b)(1) and (b)(9) to make clear that certain provisions involving hygienic practices protect against cross-contact. Proposed § 117.10(b) would require that all persons working in direct contact with food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials conform to hygienic practices while on duty to the extent necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.10(b)(1) would require that the methods for maintaining cleanliness include wearing outer garments suitable to the operation in a manner that protects against the contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials, and to protect against the cross-contact of food (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.10(b)(9) would require taking any other necessary precautions to protect against

the contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with microorganisms or foreign substances (including perspiration, hair, cosmetics, tobacco, chemicals, and medicines applied to the skin) and to protect against the cross-contact of food (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.10(b)(5) to remove the recommendation that gloves be of an impermeable material. Proposed § 117.10(b)(5) would require that the methods for maintaining cleanliness include maintaining gloves, if they are used in food handling, in an intact, clean, and sanitary condition.

## 2. Potential Revisions to Current § 110.10(c)--Education and Training

Current § 110.10(c) provides guidance that personnel responsible for identifying sanitation failures or food contamination should have a background of education or experience, or a combination thereof, to provide a level of competency necessary for production of clean and safe food. Current § 110.10(c) further recommends that food handlers and supervisors receive appropriate training in proper food handling techniques and food-protection principles and should be informed of the danger of poor personal hygiene and insanitary practices.

As discussed in section II.A.1 of this document, the CGMP Working Group Report identified specific areas that presented an opportunity to modernize the regulation. One recommendation was to “require appropriate training for supervisors and workers to ensure that they have the necessary knowledge and expertise in food hygiene, food protection, employee health and personal hygiene to produce safe food products. This training must be delivered in a manner that can be easily understood by the worker. Food processors must maintain a record of this training for each worker” (Ref. 1). Our analysis of recalls also indicates that ineffective employee training was a root cause of 32 percent of CGMP-related recalls in the 1999-2003

analysis (Ref. 58); deficiencies in training were identified as a contributing factor in 24 percent of CGMP-related primary recalls in the 2008-2009 analysis (Ref. 59). In addition, as discussed with respect to the proposed definition of preventive controls (see section X.C.4 of this document), section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act recognizes the importance of both training and CGMPs in preventing hazards from occurring in foods in its definition of preventive controls, which identifies supervisor, manager, and employee hygiene training (§ 418(o)(3)(B)) and CGMPs under part 110 (§ 418(o)(3)(F)) as some of the procedures, practices, and processes that may be included as preventive controls.

FDA is proposing to re-establish current § 110.10(c) as proposed § 117.10(c). In addition, as discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA is requesting comment on how best to revise current § 110.10(c) to implement section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act and the recommendations of the CGMP Working Group with respect to training.

### 3. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.10(d)--Supervision

Current § 110.10(d) requires that responsibility for “assuring” compliance by all personnel with all requirements of part 110 be clearly assigned to competent supervisory personnel. FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.10(d) to replace the term “assuring” with “ensuring” to clarify FDA’s expectation that supervisory personnel make certain that all personnel comply with the CGMP requirements of proposed subpart B. As a grammatical matter, the word “ensure” more accurately communicates this expectation than the word “assure.” FDA also is proposing to narrow the requirement for supervisory personnel to ensure compliance with proposed part 117, subpart B rather than with all of proposed part 117. Current § 110.10(d) is directed at the requirements already established in part 110 and does not apply to the proposed requirements that would be established in proposed part 117, subpart C. Proposed

§ 117.10(d) would now state that responsibility for ensuring compliance by all personnel with all requirements of this subpart must be clearly assigned to competent supervisory personnel (emphasis added).

F. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.20--Plant and Grounds (Proposed § 117.20)

As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.20(b) (Plant Construction and Design) to make two changes for consistency with terms used throughout proposed part 117. Proposed § 117.20(b) would require that the plant buildings and structures be suitable in size, construction, and design to facilitate maintenance and sanitary operations for food-production purposes (i.e., manufacturing, processing packing, and holding) and would require that specific construction and design requirements apply to the “plant” rather than the “plant and facilities” (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to revise current §§ 110.20(b)(2) and (b)(6) to clarify that plants must be constructed and designed to protect against cross-contact in addition to protecting against the contamination of food. Proposed § 117.20(b)(2) would require that the plant take proper precautions to reduce the potential for contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with microorganisms, chemicals, filth, and other extraneous material, and to reduce the potential for cross-contact (emphasis added). The potential for cross-contact and contamination must be reduced by adequate food safety controls and operating practices or effective design, including the separation of operations in which cross-contact and contamination are likely to occur, by one or more of the following means: location, time, partition, air flow, enclosed systems, or other effective means (emphasis added). Separation of operations is a key means of preventing cross-contact. Proposed § 117.20(b)(6) would require that a plant provide adequate ventilation or

control equipment to minimize odors and vapors (including steam and noxious fumes) in areas where they may contaminate food; and locate and operate fans and other air-blowing equipment in a manner that minimizes the potential for contaminating food, food-packaging materials, and food-contact surfaces and for cross-contact (emphasis added). Proper ventilation, e.g., over powder dumping operations, and proper operation of fans and other air-blowing equipment are essential to prevent the transfer of allergens via dust in air currents.

In addition, FDA is proposing to broaden current § 110.20(b)(3) by removing the term “fermentation” so that the construction and design requirements to permit the taking of proper precautions to protect food would apply to all outdoor bulk vessels (e.g., fermentation vessels, silos, vessels, and bins) rather than be limited to outdoor bulk fermentation vessels. Outdoor bulk vessels containing food lack the basic protection from environmental factors provided by a building, irrespective of whether the purpose of the outdoor bulk vessel is fermentation or storage. Proposed § 117.20(b)(3) would require that the construction and design of a plant permit the taking of proper precautions to protect food in outdoor bulk vessels by any effective means. A conforming editorial change to current § 110.20(b)(3)(iv) would revise “skimming the fermentation vessels” (emphasis added) to “skimming fermentation vessels” to make clear that fermentation vessels would now be only one kind of vessel subject to proposed § 117.20(b)(3).

In addition, as discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.20(b)(4) so that it is directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. Proposed § 117.20(b)(4) would require that the plant be constructed in such a manner that floors, walls, and ceilings may be adequately cleaned and kept clean and kept in good repair; that drip or condensate from fixtures, ducts and pipes does not contaminate food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials; and that



aisles or working spaces are provided between equipment and walls and are adequately unobstructed and of adequate width to permit employees to perform their duties and to protect against contaminating food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with clothing or personal contact (emphasis added).

#### G. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35--Sanitary Operations (Proposed § 117.35)

##### 1. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(a)--General Maintenance

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(a) (General maintenance) to clarify that cleaning and sanitizing of utensils and equipment must be conducted in a manner that protects against cross-contact of food, food-contact surfaces, or food packaging materials in addition to protecting these items against contamination.

Proposed § 117.35(a) would require that cleaning and sanitizing of utensils and equipment be conducted in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials (emphasis added).

##### 2. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(b)--Substances Used in Cleaning and Sanitizing; Storage of Toxic Materials

FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(b)(1) to emphasize that mechanisms to comply with provisions related to cleaning compounds and sanitizing agents must be safe and effective rather than to emphasize that there are multiple ways to achieve such compliance. With this shift in emphasis, proposed § 117.35(b)(1) would require that cleaning compounds and sanitizing agents used in cleaning and sanitizing procedures must be free from undesirable microorganisms and must be safe and adequate under the conditions of use. Compliance with this requirement must be verified by any effective means, including purchase of these substances under a supplier's guarantee or certification or examination of these substances for contamination

(emphasis added). FDA considered whether to delete the examples of mechanisms to achieve compliance as nonbinding recommendations, but tentatively concludes that the examples provide useful information that is suitable in the context in which it remains in the provision.

As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(b)(2) to remove the recommendation for following all relevant regulations promulgated by other Federal, State, and local government agencies for the application, use, or holding of toxic cleaning compounds, sanitizing agents, and pesticide chemicals. FDA tentatively concludes that although such a recommendation may be helpful and could be included in future guidance, it is more properly addressed by the applicable Federal, State, and local government agencies and is outside the scope of proposed part 117.

### 3. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(c)--Pest Control

FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(c) (Pest control) to make a change for internal consistency and clarity as well as to harmonize with terminology used in section 418 of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.35(c) would require “Pests must not be allowed in any area of a food plant. Guard or guide dogs may be allowed in some areas of a plant if the presence of the dogs is unlikely to result in contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials. Effective measures must be taken to exclude pests from the manufacturing, processing, packing and holding areas and to protect against the contamination of food on the premises by pests. The use of insecticides or rodenticides is permitted only under precautions and restrictions that will protect against the contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials” (emphasis added).

#### 4. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(d)--Sanitation of Food-Contact Surfaces

FDA is proposing several revisions to current § 110.35(d) (Sanitation of food-contact surfaces). First, FDA is proposing to redesignate current § 110.35(d)(3) as proposed § 117.35(e) (Sanitation of non-food-contact surfaces). Current § 110.35(d)(3) addresses sanitation of non-food-contact surfaces and, thus, does not belong in current § 110.35(d), which addresses sanitation of food-contact surfaces. As a conforming editorial change, current § 110.35(e) would become proposed § 117.35(f).

Second, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(d)(1) to be more explicit that food-contact surfaces used for manufacturing/processing or holding low-moisture food must be in a clean condition at the time of use. Current § 110.35(d)(1) requires that food-contact surfaces used for manufacturing or holding low-moisture food be in a dry, sanitary condition at the time of use; to be sanitary, a food-contact surface must be clean. As discussed in section XI.C of this document, the proposed revision would apply to “manufacturing/processing” rather than only to “manufacturing.” Proposed § 117.35(d)(1) would require that food-contact surfaces used for manufacturing/processing or holding low-moisture food be in a clean, dry, sanitary condition at the time of use (emphasis added).

Third, as discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current §§ 110.35(d) and (d)(2) to address cross-contact and clarify that sanitation of food-contact surfaces must protect against cross-contact of food. Proposed § 117.35(d) would require that all food-contact surfaces, including utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment, be cleaned as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.35(d)(2) would require in wet processing, when cleaning is necessary to protect against cross-contact and the introduction of microorganisms into food, all food-contact

surfaces be cleaned and sanitized before use and after any interruption during which the food-contact surfaces may have become contaminated (emphasis added).

Fourth, as discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA also is proposing to revise current § 110.35(d)(4) (proposed § 117.35(d)(3)) so that it is directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to revise current § 110.35(d)(4) (proposed § 117.35(d)(3)) to address cross-contact and clarify that single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) must be handled, dispensed, used, and disposed of in a manner that protects against cross-contact of food. In addition, in section XI.M of this document, we are requesting comment on whether to require, rather than recommend, that single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) be stored in appropriate containers to prevent contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials. Proposed § 117.35(d)(3) would provide that single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) should be stored in appropriate containers and must be handled, dispensed, used, and disposed of in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials (emphasis added).

Fifth, FDA is proposing to delete current § 110.35(d)(5), which requires that sanitizing agents be adequate and safe under conditions of use and recommends that cleaning agents be adequate and safe under conditions of use. Current § 110.35(d)(5) is redundant with proposed § 117.35(b)(1), which requires that both cleaning compounds and sanitizing agents be safe and adequate under the conditions of use.

## 5. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(d)(3)--Sanitation of Non-Food-Contact Surfaces

As discussed in sections XI.C and XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(d)(3) (proposed § 117.35(e); sanitation of non-food-contact surfaces) to recommend that such cleaning of non-food contact surfaces protect against cross-contact as well as against contamination and to recommend that such cleaning protect against contamination of food-packaging materials as well as protect against contamination of food and food-contact surfaces. Proposed § 117.35(e) would recommend that non-food-contact surfaces of equipment used in the operation of a food plant be cleaned in a manner and as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials (emphasis added). In addition, as discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA also is requesting comment on whether to revise current § 110.35(d)(3) (proposed § 117.35(e)) to require, rather than recommend, that non-food-contact surfaces of equipment used in the operation of a food plant be cleaned in a manner and as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials.

## 6. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.35(e)--Storage and Handling of Cleaned Portable Equipment and Utensils

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.35(e) (proposed § 117.35(f); storage and handling of cleaned portable equipment and utensils) to address cross-contact and to recommend storing cleaned and sanitized portable equipment with food-contact surfaces and utensils in a location and manner that protects food-contact surfaces from cross-contact as well as from contamination. Proposed § 117.35(f) would recommend that cleaned and sanitized portable equipment with food-contact surfaces and

utensils be stored in a location and manner that protects food-contact surfaces from cross-contact and contamination (emphasis added). In addition, as discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA also is requesting comment on whether to revise current § 110.35(e) (proposed § 117.35(f)) to require, rather than recommend, that cleaned and sanitized portable equipment with food-contact surfaces and utensils be stored in a location and manner that protects food-contact surfaces from cross-contact and contamination.

#### H. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37--Sanitary Facilities and Controls (Proposed § 117.37)

##### 1. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37(a)--Water Supply

As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.37(a) so that it is directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. Proposed § 117.37(a) would require that the water supply be sufficient for the operations intended and be derived from an adequate source. Any water that contacts food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials must be safe and of adequate sanitary quality (emphasis added). Running water at a suitable temperature, and under pressure as needed, must be provided in all areas where required for the processing of food, for the cleaning of equipment, utensils, and food-packaging materials, or for employee sanitary facilities.

##### 2. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37(d)--Toilet Facilities

Current § 110.37(d) requires that each plant provide its employees with adequate, readily accessible toilet facilities and provides recommendations for how compliance with the requirements may be accomplished. These recommendations address issues such as the sanitary and overall physical condition of the toilet facilities, as well as the type and location of toilet facilities' doors.

We considered whether to revise current § 110.37(d) to require, rather than recommend, specific provisions for achieving compliance with the requirements for toilet facilities. In doing so, we considered comments received in response to proposed bathroom requirements contained in the proposed rule to establish CGMP requirements for dietary supplements (the dietary supplement proposed rule; 68 FR 12158 at 12254). The dietary supplement proposed rule would have established - as requirements - provisions similar to the recommendations in current § 110.37(d). Comments on these proposed bathroom requirements stated that firms should be given flexibility in designing their bathrooms (72 FR 34752 at 34817). FDA agreed that it is unnecessary to require specific bathroom features because firms may be able to achieve compliance through means better suited to their operations. The final rule replaced requirements for specific bathroom features with more general requirements for providing employees with adequate, readily accessible bathrooms, and for bathrooms to be kept clean and not be a potential source of contamination to components, dietary supplements, or contact surfaces (§ 111.15(h)).

We tentatively conclude that revising current § 110.37(d) to establish a performance standard for toilet facilities similar to the one found in § 111.15(h) is a better approach than mandating the recommendations in current § 110.37(d). Consistent with the discussion in section XI.C of this document, the proposed performance standard would be directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. Proposed § 117.37(d) would maintain the current requirement that each plant provide its employees with adequate, readily accessible toilet facilities. In addition, proposed § 117.37(d) would require that toilet facilities be kept clean and not be a potential source of contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

### 3. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37(e)--Hand-washing Facilities

Current § 110.37(e) requires that hand-washing facilities be adequate and convenient and be furnished with running water at a suitable temperature and provides recommendations for how compliance with the requirements may be accomplished. These recommendations address issues such as providing hand-washing and hand-sanitizing facilities, hand-cleaning and sanitizing preparations, towel service or suitable drying devices, water control valves, appropriate signs and refuse receptacles that are properly constructed and maintained.

We considered whether to revise current § 110.37(e) to require, rather than recommend, mechanisms for achieving compliance with the requirements for hand-washing facilities. In doing so, we considered comments received in response to proposed hand-washing facility requirements contained in the dietary supplement proposed rule (68 FR 12158 at 12254). The dietary supplement proposed rule would have established - as requirements - provisions similar to the recommendations in current § 110.37(e). Comments on these proposed hand-washing facility requirements stated that firms should be given flexibility to design their hand-washing facilities and that an overall sanitation requirement should be sufficient (72 FR 34752 at 34818). FDA agreed that it is unnecessary to require specific hand-washing mechanisms because firms may be able to achieve compliance through other means better suited for their operations; however, we disagreed that an overall sanitation requirement would be sufficient because such a requirement would not clearly state the purpose of the requirement, which is to ensure that an employee's hands are not a source of contamination. The final rule replaced requirements for specific hand-washing facility features with more general requirements for providing hand-washing facilities designed to ensure that an employee's hands are not a source of contamination



of components, dietary supplements, or any contact surface, by providing facilities that are adequate, convenient, and furnish running water at a suitable temperature (§ 111.15(i)).

We tentatively conclude that establishing a performance standard for hand-washing facilities similar to the one found in § 111.15(i) is a better approach than mandating the current recommendations in § 110.37(e). Consistent with the discussion in section XI.C of this document, the proposed performance standard would be directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. Proposed § 117.37(e) would require that each plant provide hand-washing facilities designed to ensure that an employee's hands are not a source of contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials by providing facilities that are adequate, convenient, and furnish running water at a suitable temperature.

#### 4. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.37(f)-- Rubbish and Offal Disposal.

As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.37(f) so that it is directed to preventing contamination of food-packaging materials as well as food and food-contact substances. Proposed § 117.37(f) would require that rubbish and any offal be so conveyed, stored, and disposed of as to minimize the development of odor, minimize the potential for the waste becoming an attractant and harborage or breeding place for pests, and protect against contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, food-packaging materials, water supplies, and ground surfaces (emphasis added).

##### I. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.40--Equipment and Utensils (Proposed § 117.40)

FDA is proposing to reorganize the provisions found in current § 110.40(a) by creating paragraph designations (1) through (6) with associated editorial changes. This is a non-substantive revision to make it easier to see the distinct requirements. As discussed in section

XI.M of this document, FDA also is requesting comment on whether to revise current § 110.40(a) to require, rather than recommend, that all equipment be so installed and maintained as to facilitate the cleaning of the equipment and of all adjacent spaces (proposed § 117.40(a)(3)).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to (1) revise current § 110.40(a) (in proposed § 117.40(a)(5)) to clarify that all plant equipment and utensils must protect against cross-contact in addition to the contamination of food and (2) revise current § 110.40(b) to clarify that seams on food-contact surfaces must be smoothly bonded or maintained so as to minimize the opportunity for cross-contact. Proposed § 117.40(a)(5) would require that food-contact surfaces be maintained to protect food from cross-contact and from being contaminated by any source, including unlawful indirect food additives (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.40(b) would require that seams on food-contact surfaces be smoothly bonded or maintained so as to minimize accumulation of food particles, dirt, and organic matter and thus minimize the opportunity for growth of microorganisms and cross-contact (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete the recommendation in current § 110.40(e) that each freezer and cold storage compartment used to store and hold food capable of supporting growth of microorganisms be fitted with an automatic control for regulating temperature or with an automatic alarm system to indicate a significant temperature change in a manual operation. Proposed § 117.40(e) would require that each freezer and cold storage compartment used to store and hold food capable of supporting growth of microorganisms be fitted with an indicating thermometer, temperature-measuring device, or temperature-recording device so installed as to show the temperature accurately within the compartment.

FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.40(f) to require that instruments and controls used for measuring, regulating, or recording temperatures, pH, acidity, water activity, or other conditions that control or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in food be precise as well as accurate. By using the word “precise” we mean that individual measurements must be close to each other when made under the same conditions so that the variation in measurements is not statistically significant. An instrument that gives widely varying readings from one use to the next cannot be consistently accurate and therefore cannot ensure product safety over time. The proposed requirement for such instruments and controls to be precise as well as accurate would be consistent with the requirements in the dietary supplement GMPs (§ 111.27(a)(6)(i)), which were established after the requirements in current § 110.40(f). Proposed § 117.40(f) would require that instruments and controls used for measuring, regulating, or recording temperatures, pH, acidity, water activity, or other conditions that control or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in food be accurate and precise and adequately maintained, and adequate in number for their designated uses (emphasis added).

#### J. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.80--Processes and Controls (Proposed § 117.80)

##### 1. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.80

FDA is proposing to reorganize the provisions found in six sentences that precede current § 110.80(a) by creating paragraph designations (a)(1) through (6) with associated editorial changes, including the title “General” for new paragraph (a) of proposed § 117.80. This is a non-substantive revision to make it easier to see the distinct requirements and to clearly identify each requirement with a paragraph citation. As corresponding changes, current § 110.80(a) would become proposed § 117.80(b) and current § 110.80(b) would become proposed § 117.80(c).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise two provisions to current § 110.80 to clarify that certain practices involving processes and controls must protect against cross-contact. Proposed § 117.80(a)(4), in relevant part, would require that reasonable precautions be taken to ensure that production procedures do not contribute to cross-contact and contamination from any source (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.80(a)(5) would require that chemical, microbial, or extraneous-material testing procedures be used where necessary to identify sanitation failures or possible cross-contact and food contamination (emphasis added).

## 2. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.80(a)--Raw Materials and Other Ingredients

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing a number of revisions to current § 110.80(a) (i.e., to current §§ 110.80(a)(1), (a)(5), and (a)(7)) to clarify that certain practices involving raw materials and ingredients must protect against cross-contact. As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to clarify that three of the five separate statements within current § 110.80(a)(1) address cross-contact as well as contamination. Proposed § 117.80(b)(1) would require, in relevant part, that raw materials and ingredients must be inspected and segregated or otherwise handled as necessary to ascertain that they are clean and suitable for processing into food and be stored under conditions that will protect against cross-contact and contamination, and minimize deterioration (emphasis added). Water may be reused for washing, rinsing, or conveying food if it does not increase the level of contamination of the food or cause cross-contact (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.80(b)(1) would continue to recommend that containers and carriers of raw materials should be inspected on receipt to ensure that their condition has not contributed to cross-contact, contamination, or deterioration of food (emphasis added). As discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA also is requesting

comment on whether to revise current § 110.80(a)(1) to require, rather than recommend, that containers and carriers of raw materials be inspected on receipt to ensure that their condition has not contributed to the cross-contact, contamination or deterioration of food.

Current § 110.80(a)(2) requires that raw materials and other ingredients either not contain levels of microorganisms that may produce food poisoning or other disease in humans, or they be pasteurized or otherwise treated during manufacturing operations so that they no longer contain levels that would cause the product to be adulterated within the meaning of the act. FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(a)(2) by replacing the phrase “may produce food poisoning or other disease in humans” with “may render the food injurious to the health of humans.” The proposed revision would align the provision with the adulteration provision in section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA also is proposing to delete guidance regarding how to comply with the requirements of current § 110.80(a)(2). Proposed § 117.80(b)(2) would require that raw materials and ingredients either not contain levels of microorganisms that may render the food injurious to the health of humans, or they be pasteurized or otherwise treated during manufacturing operations so that they no longer contain levels that would cause the product to be adulterated (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(a)(3) requires that raw materials and other ingredients susceptible to contamination with aflatoxin or other natural toxins comply with current FDA regulations and action levels for poisonous or deleterious substances before these materials or ingredients are incorporated into finished food. An action level for an added poisonous or deleterious substance may be established to define a level of contamination at which a food may be regarded as adulterated (§ 109.4) (21 CFR 109.4). In 1990, we issued a final rule to revise part 109 to clarify that action levels constitute prosecutorial guidance rather than substantive rules (55 FR 20782,

May 21, 1990). Because action levels themselves constitute guidance, revising current § 110.80(a)(3) to reflect that action levels are nonbinding would be duplicative and unnecessary and FDA is proposing to delete the current requirement for compliance with action levels from current § 110.80(a)(3). Importantly, the proposed deletion merely reflects an administrative practice to limit the number of recommendations we include in our regulations; we continue to regard action levels as an important approach to food safety. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA also is proposing to delete guidance regarding how to comply with the requirements of current § 110.80(a)(3). Proposed § 117.80(b)(3) would require that raw materials and ingredients susceptible to contamination with aflatoxin or other natural toxins comply with current Food and Drug Administration regulations for poisonous or deleterious substances before these materials or ingredients are incorporated into finished food (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(a)(4) requires that raw materials, other ingredients, and rework susceptible to contamination with pests, undesirable microorganisms, or extraneous material comply with applicable FDA regulations and defect action levels for natural or unavoidable defects if a manufacturer wishes to use the materials in manufacturing food. Defect action levels are guidance for natural or unavoidable defects in food for human use that present no health hazard (Ref. 141). FDA establishes maximum levels for these defects in foods produced under current good manufacturing practice and uses these levels in deciding whether to recommend regulatory action (Ref. 141). As discussed above in this section, in 1990, we issued a final rule to revise part 109 to clarify that action levels are prosecutorial guidance rather than substantive rules (55 FR 20782). Because defect action levels themselves constitute guidance, revising current § 110.80(a)(4) to reflect that action levels are nonbinding would be duplicative and

unnecessary. Therefore, FDA is proposing to delete the current requirement for compliance with defect action levels in current § 110.80(a)(4). As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA also is proposing to delete guidance regarding how to comply with the requirements of current § 110.80(a)(4). Proposed § 117.80(b)(4) would require raw materials, ingredients, and rework susceptible to contamination with pests, undesirable microorganisms, or extraneous material comply with applicable Food and Drug Administration regulations for natural or unavoidable defects if a manufacturer wishes to use the materials in manufacturing food.

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(a)(5) to clarify that raw materials, ingredients, and rework be held in bulk, or in containers designed and constructed so as to protect against cross-contact as well as against contamination. Proposed § 117.80(b)(5) would require that raw materials, ingredients, and rework be held in bulk, or in containers designed and constructed so as to protect against cross-contact and contamination and must be held at such temperature and relative humidity and in such a manner as to prevent the food from becoming adulterated. Material scheduled for rework must be identified as such. (Emphasis added.)

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(a)(7) to clarify that liquid or dry raw materials and ingredients received and stored in bulk form must be held in a manner that protects against cross-contact as well as contamination. Proposed § 117.80(b)(7) would require that liquid or dry raw materials and ingredients received and stored in bulk form be held in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to establish a new requirement in current § 110.80(a) regarding cross-contact. Proposed § 117.80(b)(8) would

require that raw materials and ingredients that are food allergens, and rework that contains food allergens, be identified and held in a manner that prevents cross-contact. We seek comment on this proposal.

### 3. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.80(b)--Manufacturing Operations

As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(2) by replacing the phrase “manufacturing, including packaging and storage” with “manufacturing, processing, packing and holding.” As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA also is proposing to delete guidance regarding how to comply with the requirements of current § 110.80(b)(2). Proposed § 117.80(c)(2) would require that all food manufacturing, processing, packing and holding, be conducted under such conditions and controls as are necessary to minimize the potential for the growth of microorganisms or for the contamination of food (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(3) requires that food that can support the rapid growth of undesirable microorganisms, particularly those of public health significance, be held in a manner that prevents the food from becoming adulterated within the meaning of the FD&C Act and provides recommendations for complying with this requirement. FDA is proposing a series of revisions to current § 110.80(b)(3). Specifically, FDA is proposing to:

- Replace the phrase “in a manner” with “at temperatures” to identify a specific manner in which food that supports the rapid growth of microorganisms must be held – i.e., through temperature control. Temperature control is generally recognized as essential to food safety for foods that can support the rapid growth of microorganisms (Ref. 137) (Ref. 138) (Ref. 139) (Ref. 140).



- Include the phrase “during manufacturing, processing, packing and holding” to emphasize that temperature controls do not end with the manufacturing/processing phase, but extend through packing and holding.
- Delete the recommendations in current § 110.80(b)(3)(i) through (iv). (See the discussion of the proposed deletion in section XI.A of this document.)

With these changes, proposed § 117.80(c)(3) would require that food that can support the rapid growth of undesirable microorganisms be held at temperatures that will prevent the food from becoming adulterated, during manufacturing, processing, packing and holding (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(4) requires that measures such as sterilizing, irradiating, pasteurizing, freezing, refrigerating, controlling pH or controlling  $a_w$  that are taken to destroy or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms, particularly those of public health significance, shall be adequate under the conditions of manufacture, handling, and distribution to prevent food from being adulterated within the meaning of the act. FDA is proposing to include “cooking” as an additional such measure. Cooking, if done adequately, is well accepted as a mechanism of destroying microorganisms (Ref. 142). FDA also is proposing to delete the phrase “particularly those of public health significance” because it is redundant with the proposed definition for the term “microorganisms” (proposed § 117.3), which identifies microorganisms of public health significance as a type of undesirable microorganism, and therefore is unnecessary. Proposed § 117.80(c)(4) would require measures such as sterilizing, irradiating, pasteurizing, cooking, freezing, refrigerating, controlling pH or controlling  $a_w$  that are taken to destroy or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms be adequate under the conditions of

manufacture, handling, and distribution to prevent food from being adulterated (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(5) requires that work-in-process be handled in a manner that protects against contamination. FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(5) to require handling in a manner to protect against the growth of undesirable microorganisms. The growth of any undesirable microorganisms already present in a food, such as pathogenic sporeformers, must be controlled, as well as protecting the food against the introduction of contaminants. As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to clarify that work-in-process must be handled in a manner to protect against cross-contact. In addition we are proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(5) to broaden the provision to include “rework.” The term “rework” would be defined in proposed § 117.3 to mean clean, unadulterated food that has been removed from processing for reasons other than insanitary conditions or that has been successfully reconditioned by reprocessing and that is suitable for use as food. As with work-in-process, improper handling of rework could result in cross-contact, contamination, or growth of undesirable microorganisms. Proposed § 117.80(c)(5) would require that work-in-process and rework be handled in a manner that protects against cross-contact, contamination, and growth of undesirable microorganisms (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to clarify that three provisions in current § 110.80(b)(6) require that effective measures be taken to protect finished food from cross-contact as well as from contamination. Proposed § 117.80(c)(6) would require that effective measures be taken to protect finished food from cross-contact and contamination by raw materials, ingredients, or refuse (emphasis added). When raw materials, ingredients, or refuse are unprotected, they must not be handled simultaneously in a receiving, loading, or

shipping area if that handling could result in cross-contact or contaminated food (emphasis added). Food transported by conveyor must be protected against cross-contact and contamination as necessary (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA is proposing to clarify that current § 110.80(b)(7) requires that equipment, containers, and utensils used to convey, hold, or store raw materials, work-in-process, rework, or food be constructed, handled, and maintained during manufacturing or storage in a manner that protects against cross-contact as well as against contamination. As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA also is proposing to replace the term “storage” with the term “holding” for consistency with use of the term “holding” throughout proposed part 117 and to add processing and packing as activities where protection is needed against contamination and cross-contact. Proposed § 117.80(c)(7) would require that equipment, containers, and utensils used to convey, hold, or store raw materials, work-in-process, rework, or food be constructed, handled, and maintained during manufacturing, processing, packing and holding in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete guidance regarding how to comply with the requirements of current § 110.80(b)(8). Proposed § 117.80(c)(8) would require that effective measures be taken to protect against the inclusion of metal or other extraneous material in food.

Current § 110.80(b)(9) requires that food, raw materials, and other ingredients that are adulterated must be disposed of in a manner that protects against the contamination of other food. It further requires that if the adulterated food is capable of being reconditioned, it be reconditioned using a method that has been proven to be effective or it be reexamined and found

not to be adulterated within the meaning of the act before being incorporated into other food. FDA is proposing to delete the option for reexamination so that adulterated food can only be disposed of or reconditioned if the food is capable of being reconditioned. FDA is proposing this deletion because a food may test positive for a contaminant in one test and negative in one or more additional tests although the food continues to be contaminated. For example, the distribution of a pathogen in a food may not be homogeneous. Therefore, a food found to be adulterated must be reconditioned before it is reexamined. FDA also is proposing to combine the two sentences in current § 110.80(b)(9) with an “or” to make clear that reconditioning, rather than disposal, is an option. Proposed § 117.80(c)(9) would require food, raw materials, and ingredients that are adulterated be disposed of in a manner that protects against the contamination of other food or, if the adulterated food is capable of being reconditioned, it be reconditioned using a method that has been proven to be effective (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(10) requires that mechanical manufacturing steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming shall be performed so as to protect food against contamination. FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(10) to replace the phrase “mechanical manufacturing steps” with the single term “steps” because “mechanical manufacturing” does not accurately describe all steps listed in the current provision. Current § 110.80(b)(10) also includes three recommendations. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete two of these recommendations (regarding adequate cleaning and sanitizing of all food-contact surfaces and regarding the use of time and temperature controls). As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to clarify that steps identified in current § 110.80(b)(10) require protection against cross-contact.

Proposed § 117.80(c)(10) would require that steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming be performed so as to protect food against cross-contact and contamination and would continue to recommend that food should be protected from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into the food (emphasis added). As discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA is requesting comment on whether to establish the third recommendation (regarding physical protection of food from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into the food) as a requirement.

Current § 110.80(b)(11) requires, in relevant part, that where a blanched food is washed prior to filling, water used be safe and of adequate sanitary quality. FDA is proposing to delete this requirement because water quality would already be addressed in proposed § 117.37(a) and would be redundant in proposed § 117.80(c)(11). Current § 110.80(b)(11) also recommends that heat blanching, when required in the preparation of food, be effected by heating the food to the required temperature, holding it at this temperature for the required time, and then either rapidly cooling the food or passing it to subsequent manufacturing without delay. As discussed in section XI.M, of this document, FDA is requesting comment on whether to establish this recommendation as a requirement. Current § 110.80(b)(11) also recommends that thermophilic growth and contamination in blanchers be minimized by the use of adequate operating temperatures and by periodic cleaning. As discussed in section XI.M of this document, FDA is requesting comment on whether to establish this recommendation as a requirement. Proposed § 117.80(c)(11) would continue to recommend that heat blanching, when required in the preparation of food, should be effected by heating the food to the required temperature, holding it at this temperature for the required time, and then either rapidly cooling the food or passing it

to subsequent manufacturing without delay (emphasis added). Proposed § 117.80(c)(11) also would continue to recommend that thermophilic growth and contamination in blanchers should be minimized by use of adequate operating temperatures and by periodic cleaning (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(12) requires that batters, breading, sauces, gravies, dressings, and other similar preparations be treated or maintained in such a manner that they are protected against contamination and provides several recommendations for how to comply with this requirement. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete these recommendations. As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to clarify that steps identified in current § 110.80(b)(12) require protection against cross-contact. Proposed § 117.80(c)(12) would require that batters, breading, sauces, gravies, dressings, and other similar preparations be treated or maintained in such a manner that they are protected against cross-contact and contamination (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(13) requires that filling, assembling, packaging, and other operations be performed in such a way that the food is protected against contamination. FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.80(b)(13) to require that filling, assembling, packaging, and other operations be performed in such a way that the food is protected against the growth of undesirable microorganisms as well as against contamination. The growth of any undesirable microorganisms already present in a food must be controlled, in addition to the introduction of contaminants. Current § 110.80(b)(13) also includes several recommendations for achieving compliance. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete these recommendations. As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to require protection against cross-contact. Proposed § 117.80(c)(13) would require that filling,

assembling, packaging, and other operations be performed in such a way that the food is protected against cross-contact, contamination, and growth of undesirable microorganisms (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(14) requires that food, such as, but not limited to, dry mixes, nuts, intermediate moisture food, and dehydrated food, that relies on the control of  $a_w$  for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms be processed to and maintained at a safe moisture level. Current § 110.80(b)(14) also provides recommendations for accomplishing compliance with this requirement. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete these recommendations. Proposed § 117.80(c)(14) would require that food, including dry mixes, nuts, intermediate moisture food, and dehydrated food, that relies on the control of  $a_w$  for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms be processed to and maintained at a safe moisture level (emphasis added).

Current § 110.80(b)(15) requires that food such as, but not limited to, acid and acidified food, that relies principally on the control of pH for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms be monitored and maintained at a pH of 4.6 or below and includes two recommendations for how to comply with the requirement. As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete these recommendations. Proposed § 117.80(c)(15) would require food, including acid and acidified food, that relies principally on the control of pH for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms be monitored and maintained at a pH of 4.6 or below.

#### K. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.93--Warehousing and Distribution (Proposed § 117.93)

Current § 110.93 requires that storage and transportation of finished food be under conditions that will protect food against physical, chemical, and microbial contamination as well

as against deterioration of the food and the container. FDA is proposing a series of revisions to current § 110.93.

FDA is proposing to delete the term “finished” before “food” because the requirements in this provision must apply to all food being held for distribution regardless of whether it is a raw material or ingredient or in its finished state. To ensure food safety throughout the food chain, food, whether a raw material or finished product, must be protected against contamination.

As discussed in section XI.D of this document, FDA also is proposing to revise § 110.93 to clarify that storage and transportation of food must be under conditions that will protect against cross-contact of food in addition to protecting against contamination of food.

FDA also is proposing to add radiological hazards as an additional category of contaminants to the list of contaminants which may be encountered in warehousing and distribution because food may be subject to contamination with radiological hazards. As discussed in section XII.B, FDA now recognizes four types of hazards: biological, chemical, physical and radiological. Our CGMP regulation for bottled water in part 129 requires plants to analyze product samples for bacteriological, chemical, physical and radiological purposes (§ 129.80(g)). Therefore, the proposed addition of radiological contaminants to the list of contaminants would be consistent with part 129. FDA tentatively concludes that there is no basis for requiring a facility to protect against some types of hazards but not others, and thus is proposing to include radiological hazards among those from which food must be protected.

FDA also is proposing to require protection against “biological,” rather than “microbial” contamination of food so that, when a provision specifies all four types of hazards that must be addressed, the list is presented consistently throughout proposed part 117. In section XII.B.3 of this document, we discuss a requirement, which would be established in proposed § 117.130(b),



for a hazard analysis to address biological, chemical, radiological, and physical hazards. FDA also is proposing to present the list of types of hazards in the same order as the list would be presented in proposed § 117.130(b).

Proposed § 117.93 would require that storage and transportation of food be under conditions that will protect against cross-contact and biological, chemical, physical, and radiological contamination of food as well as against deterioration of the food and the container (emphasis added).

#### L. Proposed Revisions to Current § 110.110--Natural or Unavoidable Defects in Food for Human

##### Use That Present No Health Hazard (Proposed § 117.110)

As discussed in section XI.C of this document, FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.110(c) to change the designated persons who must “observe good manufacturing practices” and “at all times utilize quality control operations that reduce natural or unavoidable defects to the lowest level currently feasible” from the currently identified persons (i.e., manufacturers, distributors and holders of food) to manufacturers, processors, packers and holders of food. FDA also is proposing to update the reference in current § 110.110(c) to section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act to make it more complete by specifying that the insanitary conditions are those whereby food may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby food may have been rendered injurious to health. Proposed § 117.110(c) would specify that compliance with defect action levels does not excuse violation of the requirement in section 402(a)(4) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act that food not be prepared, packed, or held under unsanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health, or the requirements in part 117 that food manufacturers, processors, packers, and holders must observe current good manufacturing practice (emphasis

added). Evidence indicating that such a violation exists causes the food to be adulterated, even though the amounts of natural or unavoidable defects are lower than the currently established defect action levels. The manufacturer, processor, packer and holder of food must at all times utilize quality control operations that reduce natural or unavoidable defects to the lowest level currently feasible.

FDA is proposing to revise current § 110.110(d) to replace the clause “The mixing of a food containing defects above the current defect action level...” with “The mixing of a food containing defects at levels that render the food adulterated...” We are proposing this change to clarify that food containing defects above the current defect action level is not automatically adulterated under the FD&C Act. A defect action level is nonbinding and is directed to a natural or unavoidable defect in food that presents no health hazards for humans (Ref. 141). Whether food containing defects above the current defect action levels adulterate the food is a case-by-case determination that depends on the circumstances. Proposed § 117.110(d) would specify that the mixing of a food containing defects at levels that render that food adulterated with another lot of food is not permitted and renders the final food adulterated, regardless of the defect level of the final food (emphasis added).

As discussed in section XI.A of this document, FDA is proposing to delete current § 110.110(e), which provides that a compilation of the current defect action levels for natural or unavoidable defects in food for human use that present no health hazard may be obtained upon request.

## M. Potential Revisions to Establish Requirements in Place of Current Guidance

### 1. Overview

In sections IX.F and XI.A of this document, we discuss our intent to delete some non-binding provisions of current part 110 (e.g., provisions using “should” or “compliance may be achieved by”). In this section of this document, we request comment on whether to revise other non-binding provisions to establish new requirements in proposed part 117 or retain them as useful recommendations of a comprehensive CGMP provision. We discuss each of these immediately below.

We believe that these CGMP provisions are science-based and an important part of a modern food safety system. Because these non-binding provisions have been in place for decades, they are widely used and commonly accepted in many sectors of the food industry. In addition, under section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act, the procedures, practices, and processes described in the definition of preventive controls may include sanitation procedures for food contact surfaces of utensils and equipment; supervisor, manager, and employee hygiene training; and CGMPs under part 110 of title 21 (or any successor regulations).

The vast majority of the costs related to a revised mandatory sanitary operations, process and controls program would be for the time that workers are in training for the alternative requirements rather than in production. We estimate that this alternative, when implemented as part of a preventive approach, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$560 – \$28,000 per facility based on size (number of employees) to facilities that do not already comply with this alternative. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$16 million for domestic facilities and an estimated aggregate cost of \$17,400,000 for foreign facilities. This estimate assumes that about half of the qualified facilities would need to review their operations and

perform the training. Most non-qualified facilities would have met the requirements by following the requirements for sanitation controls in subpart C but for those that do not have hazards that are reasonably likely to occur or for those with sanitation controls that do not fully address the requirements of the sanitary operations, they would need to review their operations and perform the training. Further details are provided in the “Consideration of Other Provisions” section of the RIA.

## 2. Summary of Potential Revisions to Establish Requirements in Place of Current Guidance

Table 11 identifies each of the potential revisions to establish new requirements and either explains the reason for establishing the requirement or, for such revisions with longer explanations, refers to the section of this document where the potential requirement is explained.

Table 11. Potential Revisions to Establish Requirements in Place of Current Guidance

Designation of Proposed Provision	Potential Additional Revision to Establish a Requirement in Place of a Recommendation (Emphasis Added)	Basis for Potential Revision
§ 117.10(c)	Personnel responsible for identifying sanitation failures or food contamination <u>must</u> have a background of education or experience, or a combination thereof, to provide a level of competency necessary for production of clean and safe food. Food handlers and supervisors <u>must</u> receive appropriate training in proper food handling techniques and food-protection principles and should be informed of the danger of poor personal hygiene and insanitary practices.	See explanation and questions about whether more detail would be appropriate in section XI.M.3 of this document.
§ 117.35(d)(3) (Sanitation of food-contact substances)	Single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) <u>must</u> be stored in appropriate containers and must be handled, dispensed, used, and disposed of in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.	Failure to properly store such articles could lead to contamination of the articles and then to contamination of food if the articles come in contact with food.

Designation of Proposed Provision	Potential Additional Revision to Establish a Requirement in Place of a Recommendation (Emphasis Added)	Basis for Potential Revision
§ 117.35(e) (Sanitation of non-food-contact substances)	Non-food-contact surfaces of equipment used in the operation of a food plant <u>must</u> be cleaned in a manner and as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food and food-contact surfaces.	Failure to clean non-food-contact surfaces could lead to contamination of food-contact surfaces of the equipment and utensils and then to contamination of food if the contaminated equipment and utensils come in contact with food. For example, cleaning non-food-contact surfaces is essential to prevent contamination of food from environmental pathogens such as <u>L. monocytogenes</u> and <u>Salmonella</u> spp.
§ 117.35(f) (Storage and handling of cleaned portable equipment and utensils)	Cleaned and sanitized portable equipment with food-contact surfaces and utensils <u>must</u> be stored in a location and manner that protects food-contact surfaces from contamination.	Failure to properly store and handle such equipment and utensils could lead to contamination of the equipment and utensils and then to contamination of food if the equipment and utensils come in contact with food.
§ 117.40(a)(1) (Equipment and utensils)	All equipment must be so installed and maintained as to facilitate the cleaning of the equipment and of all adjacent spaces.	Failure to properly clean equipment and adjacent spaces due to improper installation and maintenance could lead to contamination of the equipment and then contamination of food if the equipment comes in contact with the food.
§ 117.80(b)(1) (Processes and controls - raw materials and ingredients)	Containers and carriers of raw materials <u>must</u> be inspected on receipt to ensure that their condition has not contributed to the contamination or deterioration of food.	Containers and carriers of raw materials not properly maintained can lead to contamination or deterioration of food.
§ 117.80(c)(10) (Manufacturing operations)	... Food <u>must</u> be protected from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into the food during manufacturing steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming.	There are no circumstances where it would not be necessary to provide adequate physical protection of food from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into food.
§ 117.80(c)(11) (Manufacturing operations)	Heat blanching, when required in the preparation of food, <u>must</u> be effected by heating the food to the required temperature, holding it at this temperature for the required time, and then either rapidly cooling the food or passing it to subsequent manufacturing without delay.	Properly heating and cooling food during blanching is necessary to protect food from contamination and would apply in all cases for food when heat blanching is required in the preparation.
§ 117.80(c)(11) (Manufacturing operations)	Thermophilic growth and contamination in blanchers <u>must</u> be minimized by the use of adequate operating temperatures and by periodic cleaning.	Adequate operating temperatures and proper cleaning are necessary for controlling growth of thermophilic bacteria and contamination and would apply in all cases for food when heat blanching is required in the preparation.

### 3. Potential Revisions to Establish Requirements in Place of Current Guidance for Education and Training

Current § 110.10(c) provides guidance that personnel responsible for identifying sanitation failures or food contamination should have a background of education or experience, or a combination thereof, to provide a level of competency necessary for production of clean and safe food. Current § 110.10(c) further recommends that food handlers and supervisors receive appropriate training in proper food handling techniques and food-protection principles and should be informed of the danger of poor personal hygiene and insanitary practices.

As discussed in section II.A.1 of this document, the CGMP Working Group Report identified specific areas that presented an opportunity to modernize the regulation. One recommendation was to “require appropriate training for supervisors and workers to ensure that they have the necessary knowledge and expertise in food hygiene, food protection, employee health and personal hygiene to produce safe food products. This training must be delivered in a manner that can be easily understood by the worker. Food processors must maintain a record of this training for each worker” (Ref. 1). Our analysis of recalls also indicates that ineffective employee training was a root cause of 32 percent of CGMP-related recalls in the 1999-2003 analysis (Ref. 58); deficiencies in training were identified as a contributing factor in 24 percent of CGMP-related primary recalls in the 2008-2009 analysis (Ref. 59). In addition, as discussed with respect to the proposed definition of preventive controls (see section X.C.4 of this document), section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act recognizes the importance of both training and CGMPs in preventing hazards from occurring in foods in its definition of preventive controls, which identifies supervisor, manager, and employee hygiene training (§ 418(o)(3)(B)) and

CGMPs under part 110 (§ 418(o)(3)(F)) as some of the procedures, practices, and processes that may be included as preventive controls.

The vast majority of costs related to a mandatory education and training program would be for the time that workers would be training rather than in production. We estimate that a requirement for education and training, when implemented as part of a preventive approach, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$1,000 – \$25,000 per facility based on size (number of employees) to facilities that do not already conduct training. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$93 million for domestic facilities and an estimated aggregate cost of \$101,300,000 for foreign facilities. This estimate assumes that both qualified and nonqualified facilities would be required to perform the training. Further details are provided in the “Consideration of Other Provisions” section of the RIA.

We request comment on how best to revise current § 110.10(c) in light of section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act and the recommendations of the CGMP Working Group with respect to training. Should we replace the current recommendations for personnel education and experience with requirements? Doing so would be consistent with the emphasis in section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act on the importance of both training and CGMPs in preventing hazards from occurring in foods in its definition of preventive controls and with the recommendation in the CGMP Working Group Report. If so, what is the appropriate level of specificity? For example, should we simply replace the “shoulds” in current § 110.10(c) with “musts”? This would provide flexibility for each establishment to determine the type and frequency of education and training appropriate for its personnel.

FDA also requests comment on whether more detail would be appropriate, by, for example:

- Specifying that each person engaged in food manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding (including temporary and seasonal personnel and supervisors) receive training as appropriate to the person's duties;
- Specifying the frequency of training (e.g., upon hiring and periodically thereafter);
- Specifying that training include the principles of food hygiene and food safety, including the importance of employee health and personal hygiene, as applied at the facility; and
- Specifying that records document required training of personnel and, if so, specifying minimum requirements for the documentation (e.g., the date of the training, the type of training, and the person(s) trained).

We also request comment on whether to establish some or all of the potential requirements for education and training in subpart B, subpart C, or both. If we establish a requirement for education and training in subpart B, that requirement would apply to all persons who manufacture, process, pack or hold food, with the exceptions of persons who would be exempt from subpart B (i.e., under proposed § 117.5(k), a requirement in subpart B would not apply to "farms", activities of "farm mixed-type facilities" that fall within the definition of "farm," or the holding or transportation of one or more RACs). On the other hand, if we establish a requirement for education and training in subpart C, that requirement would not apply to persons who would be exempt from the requirements of proposed subpart C (e.g., qualified facilities and persons conducting activities subject to HACCP regulations for juice or seafood).

#### N. Request for Comment on Additional CGMP Requirements

We request comment on any additional proposed revisions or clarifications to our CGMP regulations that should be included in subpart B, including whether to further implement the



“opportunities” for CGMP modernization identified by the CGMP Working Group or to enhance the CGMP regulations in some other way. For example, we request comment on whether a final rule based on this proposed rule should include CGMP requirements for environmental monitoring for L. monocytogenes, and whether such requirements should include other environmental pathogens such as Salmonella spp. If so, we also request comment on what such requirements should be. For additional information on environmental monitoring for L. monocytogenes and Salmonella spp., see sections I.D and I.E of the Appendix to this document.

## XII. Proposed New Requirements for Hazard Analysis and Risk-based Preventive Controls

### (Proposed Part 117, Subpart C)

#### A. Proposed § 117.126--Requirement for a Food Safety Plan

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act, including analyzing the hazards under section 418(b) of the FD&C Act and identifying the preventive controls adopted under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act to address those hazards. Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act also requires that such written plan, together with the documentation described in section 418(g) of the FD&C Act, shall be made promptly available to a duly authorized representative of the Secretary upon oral or written request.

##### 2. Proposed § 117.126(a)--Requirement for a Food Safety Plan

Proposed § 117.126(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility prepare, or have prepared, and implement a written food safety plan. We use the term “written food safety plan” in proposed § 117.126(a) to mean the “written plan” referred to in

section 418(h) of the FD&C Act. To make clear that the written plan is related to food safety rather than to other plans a facility may have (such as quality control plans or food defense plans), we have designated the “written plan” to be a “food safety plan.”

Proposed § 117.126(a) would require that the plan be written as is expressly required by section 418(h). A written food safety plan is essential for the facility to implement the plan consistently, train its employees, and periodically reanalyze and update the plan. It is also essential to a facility’s food safety team, to auditors, and to inspectors. Proposed § 117.126(a) would implement section 418(h) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The recordkeeping provisions of the NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that the HACCP plan include a list of the HACCP team and assigned responsibilities; a description of the food, its distribution, intended use, and consumer; a verified flow diagram; a HACCP Plan Summary Table that includes information for steps in the process that are CCPs, the hazard(s) of concern, critical limits, monitoring, corrective actions, verification procedures and schedule, and record-keeping procedures (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex recommends that HACCP procedures be documented, including the hazard analysis, and determinations of CCPs and critical limits (Ref. 35). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry require a written plan (§§ 123.6(b)) and 120.8(a) and 9 CFR 417.2(b), respectively).

Proposed § 117.126(a) would provide flexibility for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility to either prepare the written food safety plan or have that plan prepared, in whole or in part, on its behalf. This flexibility is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), which advise that a HACCP team may need assistance from outside experts

who are knowledgeable in the hazards associated with the product and the process. This flexibility also is consistent with the Codex HACCP Annex, which acknowledges that small and/or less developed businesses do not always have the resources and the necessary expertise on site for the development and implementation of an effective HACCP plan and recommends that expert advice be obtained when necessary from other sources, such as trade and industry associations, independent experts and regulatory authorities. In addition, proposed § 117.126 would provide flexibility for facilities in the development of their food safety plans by allowing facilities to group food types or production method types if the hazards, control measures, parameters, and required procedures such as monitoring are essentially identical.

Proposed § 117.126(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility implement the written food safety plan. Although section 418(h) of the FD&C Act is silent with respect to implementation of the required written plan, other provisions of section 418 address implementation. For example, section 418(c) of the FD&C Act requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility both establish and implement preventive controls (emphasis added). In addition, other provisions of section 418 (e.g., section 418(d) regarding monitoring, section 418(e) regarding corrective actions, and section 418(f) regarding verification) all establish requirements related to the preventive controls required under section 418(c). As discussed immediately below, the written food safety plan would include the hazard analysis required under section 418(b) of the FD&C Act, the preventive controls required under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act, the monitoring procedures required under section 418(d) of the FD&C Act, the corrective action procedures required under section 418(e) of the FD&C Act, the verification procedures required under section 418(f) of the FD&C Act, and the recall plan as

authorized by section 418(o)(3)(E) of the FD&C Act. Specific provisions for implementing these sections of the statute would be established throughout proposed subpart C.

### 3. Proposed § 117.126(b)--Contents of a Food Safety Plan

Proposed § 117.126(b)(1) through (6) would require that the contents of a food safety plan include:

- The written hazard analysis as required by proposed § 117.130(a)(2);
- The written preventive controls as required by proposed § 117.135(b);
- The written procedures, and the frequency with which they are to be performed,

for monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls as required by proposed § 117.140(a);

- The written corrective action procedures as required by proposed § 117.145(a)(1);
- The written verification procedures as required by proposed § 117.150(e); and
- The written recall plan as required by § 117.137(a).

Section 418(h) requires that the written plan document and describe the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418, “including analyzing the hazards under [section 418(b) of the FD&C Act] and identifying the preventive controls adopted under [section 418(c) of the FD&C Act] to address those hazards” (emphasis added). Although section 418(h) of the FD&C Act explicitly references sections 418(b) and (c), the term “including,” indicates that the contents of a food safety plan need not be limited to the provisions of sections 418(b) and (c) of the FD&C Act.

FDA interprets the requirement in section 418(h) of the FD&C Act that the written plan document and describe the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act to mean that the written food safety plan would include all

procedures required under section 418 of the FD&C Act. As discussed in sections XII.E.6.a, XII.F.2, XII.G.6, and XII.D.2 of this document, the proposed rule would require written procedures for monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls (proposed § 117.140(a)); written corrective action procedures (proposed § 117.145(a)(1)); written procedures for some verification activities (proposed § 117.150(e)); and a written recall plan (proposed § 117.137(a)).

FDA interprets the requirement in section 418(h) that the written plan describe the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418, including analyzing the hazards and identifying the preventive controls adopted to address those hazards, to mean that the contents of the food safety plan must include the hazard analysis conducted by the facility and the preventive controls that a facility must establish for hazards that its hazard analysis identifies as reasonably likely to occur, rather than procedures for analyzing the hazards and procedures for identifying the preventive controls. The general requirement in section 418(a) of the act is directed, in relevant part, to evaluating the hazards that could affect food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by a facility, and identifying and implementing preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent the occurrence of such hazards and provide assurances that such food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. Review of the evaluation of hazards in the hazard analysis is sufficient to determine the adequacy of the hazard analysis. Written procedures for conducting the hazard analysis are not necessary. Similarly, the preventive controls identified by the facility can be reviewed fully for adequacy without having a separate procedures document.

Under our interpretation of section 418(h) of the FD&C Act, proposed § 117.126(b)(1) and (2) are consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that a HACCP plan include the hazards of concern (which are the end product of the hazard analysis), the CCPs (which are the steps at which control can be applied and which are essential to prevent or eliminate a food safety hazard or reduce it to an acceptable level), and critical limits (which are the maximum or minimum values established at a CCP to control a hazard) (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35) recommends that the HACCP plan include documentation of the hazard analysis and determinations of CCPs and critical limits. Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry all require that the HACCP plan list the food [safety] hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (§§ 123.6(c)(1) and 120.8(b)(1) and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(1), respectively), the CCPs (§§ 123.6(c)(2) and 120.8(b)(2) and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(2), respectively), and critical limits (§§ 123.6(c)(3) and 120.8(b)(3) and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(3), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry further requires that the written hazard analysis be maintained as part of the documentation for the establishment's HACCP plan (9 CFR 417.5(a)(1)). None of these documents recommends or requires that the HACCP plan include the procedures for analyzing the hazards or procedures for identifying the CCPs and critical limits. Rather, these documents are clear that it is the outcomes rather than the procedures for conducting the hazard analysis and identifying the preventive controls that are part of the plan.

#### 4. Proposed § 117.126(c)--Preparation of the Food Safety Plan by a Qualified Individual

Proposed § 117.126(c) would require that the food safety plan be prepared by (or its preparation overseen by) a qualified individual. (See the discussion in section XII.H of this

document regarding the qualifications of a qualified individual as would be established in proposed § 117.155(b)). Section 418 of the FD&C Act requires that firms identify and implement preventive controls and that facilities monitor and verify the effectiveness of the preventive controls. A qualified individual must develop the food safety plan in order to ensure the preventive controls are effective. The plan must be designed to identify and to significantly minimize or prevent hazards in order to prevent illness or injury. Designing a plan requires an individual who is knowledgeable in the concepts of preventive controls, the hazards associated with a product and process, the appropriate preventive controls, with associated monitoring and corrective actions for those hazards, and appropriate verification activities for the applicable preventive controls. Such knowledge requires scientific and technical expertise developed through training, experience, or both.

Section 418 of the FD&C Act does not address the qualifications of the individual who would prepare the food safety plan. However, proposed § 117.126(c) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that, because of the technical nature required for the hazard analysis, experts who are knowledgeable in the food process either participate in or verify the hazard analysis and the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that the individual developing the HACCP plan complete training in the application of HACCP principles to juice or seafood processing under a standardized curriculum or be qualified through job experience that provides knowledge at least equivalent to that provided through the standardized curriculum (§§ 123.10 and 120.13, respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that the individual

developing the HACCP plan complete training in the application of HACCP principles to meat or poultry product processing (9 CFR 417.7).

One way to comply with proposed § 117.126(c) could be for a team of individuals (for example, a “HACCP team” or a “food safety team”) to develop the food safety plan under the oversight of a qualified individual. Each member of a HACCP or food safety team generally brings specific expertise important in developing the plan. For example, a microbiologist could provide knowledge of microbial hazards, an engineer could establish the critical parameters for delivery of heat treatments, and a maintenance supervisor could identify sources of metal contamination. Proposed § 117.126 would not require that all such members of a food safety team satisfy the requirements in proposed § 117.126(c) for a qualified individual. However, under proposed § 117.126(c), a qualified individual must be responsible for ensuring that all components the food safety plan have been developed, including reviewing all information contained in the food safety plan, thereby verifying the hazard analysis and food safety plan developed by the food safety team.

##### 5. Facility-Based Nature of the Written Food Safety Plan

The overall framework of section 418 of the FD&C Act is directed to a facility rather than, for example, a corporate entity that may have multiple facilities. For example, under section 418(b) of the FD&C Act the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility (emphasis added). Thus, proposed § 117.126 establishes a requirement for every facility to have its own written food safety plan. The facility-based nature of the written food safety plan that would be required by proposed § 117.126 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and



meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines emphasize that it is essential that the unique conditions within each facility be considered during the development of all components of the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex states that HACCP should be applied to each specific operation separately (Ref. 35). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry require that HACCP plans be specific to each location where the product is processed (§§ 123.6(b)(1) and 120.8(a)(1) for seafood and juice, respectively) or to “every official establishment” (9 CFR 417.2(a)) for meat and poultry).

Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry allow the HACCP plan to group food types or production method types if the hazards, critical control points, critical limits and required procedures such as monitoring are essentially identical, provided that any required features of the plan that are unique to a specific product or production method are clearly delineated in the plan and are observed in practice (§§ 123.6(b)(2) and 120.8(a)(2) and 9 CFR 417.2(b)(2) for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, respectively). This type of grouping would be allowed under proposed § 117.126 and, thus, would provide flexibility for facilities in the development of their HACCP plans.

#### B. Proposed § 117.130--Hazard Analysis

##### 1. Requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act specifies, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility, including (A) biological, chemical, physical, and radiological hazards, natural toxins, pesticides, drug residues, decomposition, parasites, allergens, and unapproved food and color additives; and (B) hazards that occur naturally, or may be unintentionally introduced. Section 418(b)(3) of the FD&C Act specifies, in relevant part,

that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall develop a written analysis of the hazards.

As discussed in section II.B.2.f of this document, this rulemaking is not intended to address “hazards that may be intentionally introduced, including by acts of terrorism.” Therefore, we are not implementing section 418(b)(2) of the FD&C Act in this proposed rule.

Section 418(c)(1) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act will be significantly minimized or prevented. Section 418(c)(3) of the FD&C Act specifies that the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

Sections 418(c)(1) and (c)(3) of the FD&C Act, which we will address more fully in section XII.C.1 of this document, are relevant to our discussion of proposed § 117.130(a) regarding the purpose of the hazard analysis required by section 418(b) of the FD&C Act.

## 2. Proposed § 117.130(a) –Hazard Analysis

a. Proposed § 117.130(a)(1)–Requirement to identify and evaluate hazards. Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards, for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. As discussed more fully in the remainder of this section, proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would implement section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act.

Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines describe a two-stage process for conducting a hazard analysis (Ref. 34), i.e., hazard identification and hazard evaluation. Hazard identification has been described as a brainstorming session designed to facilitate the development of a list of potential hazards, including those known to be associated with a type of food or process and those known to have occurred in a particular facility, for consideration during the hazard evaluation step (Ref. 143). Hazard evaluation is conducted after development of the list of potential hazards associated with each step in the product's process. The Codex HACCP Annex recommends that the HACCP team list all of the hazards that may be reasonably expected to occur at each step from primary production, processing, manufacture, and distribution until the point of consumption and then conduct a hazard analysis to identify which hazards are of such a nature that their elimination or reduction to acceptable levels is essential to the production of a safe food (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for juice requires that a hazard analysis both identify hazards and evaluate whether they are reasonably likely to occur (§§ 120.7(a)(1) and (2)). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood and meat and poultry require that a processor or establishment conduct, or have conducted for it, a hazard analysis to determine whether there are food safety hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (§ 123.6(a) and 9 CFR 417.2(a)).

In considering the proposed requirement for a hazard analysis, we considered the language of section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act describing the hazards that a facility would identify and evaluate – i.e., “known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility.” We consider that the “known or reasonably foreseeable hazards” in section 418(b) of the FD&C Act are analogous to the “potential hazards” discussed in the NACMCF

HACCP guidelines, and the hazards that are required to be identified to determine if they are “hazards that may be reasonably expected to occur at each step” in the Codex HACCP Annex, or “reasonably likely to occur” in Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry.

Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would establish the requirement to identify and evaluate hazards by conducting a hazard analysis; we propose specific requirements for the hazard identification in proposed § 117.130(b) (see section XII.B.3 of this document) and specific requirements for the hazard evaluation in proposed § 117.130(c) (see section XII.B.4 of this document).

Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would require that the identification and evaluation of hazards be done “for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility.” In considering the proposed requirement for a hazard analysis, we considered the language of section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act. The purpose of sections 418(b)(1) appears clear – i.e., that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the food produced by the facility. The known or reasonably foreseeable hazards associated with the facility’s food may differ based on the type of food and, thus, the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry all apply a hazard analysis to each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility. Proposed § 117.130(a) would do likewise.

The NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34) and Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35) describe several preliminary tasks that need to be accomplished before application of the HACCP principles to a specific product and process, including describing the food and its

distribution, describing the intended use and consumers of the food, and developing a flow diagram for the process. Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that the hazard analysis be conducted for each kind of fish or fishery product (or for each type of juice product) processed by the processor (§§ 123.6(a) and 120.7(a)) but do not mandate any particular process for the hazard analysis. The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that a flow chart be prepared describing the steps for each process and product flow in the establishment (9 CFR § 417.2(a)(2)) and also requires a HACCP plan for each product produced by the establishment whenever the hazard analysis reveals one or more hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (9 CFR § 417.2(b)(1)).

The process of identifying and evaluating the hazards that may occur for specific types of food handled in a facility provides an efficient means for keeping track of multiple hazards that may occur in a facility that handles several types of foods. Such a process also provides an efficient means for ensuring that preventive controls are applied to specific foods when required. Thus, a facility may need to conduct multiple hazard analyses. For example, a facility that produces tea-based beverages may package its products in both glass and plastic bottles at the same facility. Although these two products might contain similar ingredients, we would consider them to be different types of food under proposed § 117.130(a)(1) because the two types of packaging entail significant differences in the handling of these products during processing. The hazard of glass particles resulting from glass container breakage during plant operations is a known hazard associated with glass-packaged products and, thus, should be identified and evaluated for the product packaged in glass but not for the product packaged in plastic.

Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would identify the purpose of the hazard analysis - i.e., to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. Although section

418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act does not explicitly identify the purpose of the hazard analysis, we interpret the combined requirements of sections 418(b), (c)(1) and (c)(3) of the FD&C Act to reflect a purpose, i.e., to enable the facility to identify and, where necessary, implement preventive controls to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis will be significantly minimized or prevented and that the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by the facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. If, for example, the facility concludes during the hazard analysis that one or more (or even all) known or reasonably foreseeable hazards are not reasonably likely to occur in the facility for a certain type of food, the facility could conclude that there is no need to identify and implement preventive controls for those hazards. The purpose of the hazard analysis identified in proposed § 117.130(a)(1) is consistent with the purpose identified in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines identify the purpose of the hazard analysis as the development of a list of hazards that are of such significance that they are reasonably likely to cause illness or injury if not effectively controlled (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex recommends that the HACCP team identify for the HACCP plan hazards that are of such a nature that their elimination or reduction to acceptable levels is essential to the production of a safe food (Ref. 35). The stated purpose of the hazard analysis in Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice and meat and poultry is, in relevant part, to determine whether there are food safety hazards that are reasonably likely to occur for each kind of product (§§ 123.6(a) and 120.7(a), respectively, for seafood and juice) or in the production process for meat and poultry (9 CFR § 417.2(a)).

b. Proposed § 117.130(a)(2)--Requirement for the hazard analysis to be written.

Proposed § 117.130(a)(2) would require that the hazard analysis be written, as required by section 418(b)(3) of the FD&C Act. A written hazard analysis can help the facility organize the scientific basis for the hazard analysis and would be essential to the facility's food safety team, to auditors, and to inspectors. The facility's food safety team needs to fully understand the nature of the hazards in order to produce a safe food. For example, although the facility's food safety plan would include corrective action procedures that address problems that can be anticipated, the food safety team will need to make decisions as to appropriate corrective actions when there is an unanticipated problem (see, e.g., the discussion of a proposed requirement (proposed § 117.145(b)) for corrective actions when there is an unanticipated problem in section XII.F.3 of this document). The written hazard analysis would be useful at these times. Having a written hazard analysis available for auditors and for inspectors is essential for them to assess the adequacy of the hazard analysis. A written hazard analysis also would be essential during reanalysis and updates of the hazard analysis, as would be required by proposed § 117.150(f) so that the person doing the reanalysis or update has a baseline from which to start. A written hazard analysis also would be useful for training purposes as a tool to make employees aware of food safety hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

The written hazard analysis includes the justification for whatever conclusion the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility reaches, including a conclusion that no hazards are reasonably likely to occur. Thus, proposed § 117.130(a)(2) would not limit the requirement for a written hazard analysis to those circumstances where the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identifies one or more hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. Under proposed §

117.130(a)(2), a written hazard analysis would be required even if the conclusion of the analysis is that there are no hazards reasonably likely to occur.

Proposed § 117.130(a)(2) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for juice, seafood, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex each specify that the hazard analysis be documented in the HACCP plan (Ref. 34) (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for juice requires a written hazard analysis (§ 120.7(a)). Our HACCP regulation for seafood requires that the list of food safety hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, identified in the hazard analysis, be included in the written HACCP plan (§ 123.6(c)). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires a written hazard analysis, including all supporting documentation (9 CFR § 417.5(a)(1)).

### 3. Proposed § 117.130(b)--Hazard Identification

Proposed § 117.130(b) would require that the hazard analysis consider hazards that may occur naturally or may be unintentionally introduced, including:

- Biological hazards, including microbiological hazards such as parasites, environmental pathogens, and other microorganisms of public health significance (proposed § 117.130(b)(1));
- Chemical hazards, including substances such as pesticide and drug residues, natural toxins, decomposition, unapproved food or color additives, and food allergens (proposed § 117.130(b)(2));
- Physical hazards (proposed § 117.130(b)(3)); and
- Radiological hazards (proposed § 117.130(b)(4)).



Proposed § 117.130(b) would implement section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act and would establish four groups of hazards (i.e., biological, chemical, physical, and radiological). Three of the proposed groups of hazards (i.e., biological, chemical, and physical) are the same as the groups of hazards in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for juice, seafood, and meat and poultry; the proposed group “radiological hazards” would be in addition to the groups of hazards in those HACCP systems. The additional group of “radiological hazards” is required by section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines and Codex HACCP Annex identify biological, chemical, and physical hazards as types of hazards in the definition of hazard (Ref. 34) (Ref. 35). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice and meat and poultry identify biological, chemical, and physical hazards as types of hazards in the definition of “food safety hazard” (§ 123.3(f) and 9 CFR § 417.1 for seafood and meat and poultry, respectively) or food hazard (§ 120.3(g) for juice). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry identify as hazards microbiological contamination, parasites, chemical contamination, unlawful pesticide residues, decomposition, natural toxins, unapproved use of food or color additives and physical hazards (§§123.6(c)(1), 120.7(c), and 9 CFR 417.2(a)(3), respectively). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood and meat and poultry also identify as hazards drug residues (§ 123.6(c)(1)(v) and 9 CFR 417.2(a)(3)(v) for seafood and meat and poultry, respectively) and undeclared ingredients that may be allergens (§ 120.7(c)(8) for juice). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry also identifies zoonotic diseases as a hazard (9 CFR 417.2(a)(3)).

#### Microbiological hazards.

Proposed § 117.130(b)(1) would include microbiological hazards within the category of biological hazards. Examples of microbiological hazards include:

- Parasites (which are required to be considered by section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act). A parasite is an organism that lives on or in an organism of another species (often called the host organism) and feeds off that other species. Cryptosporidium spp., Giardia intestinalis, and Toxoplasma gondii are examples of parasites.

- Environmental pathogens (e.g., Listeria monocytogenes and Salmonella spp.); and
- Other microorganisms of public health significance, including bacteria (e.g., Campylobacter spp., Clostridium perfringens, Shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli (STEC) O157, STEC non-O157, Shigella spp., Staphylococcus aureus, Vibrio spp., and Yersinia enterocolitica) and viruses (e.g., hepatitis A virus and norovirus).

As discussed in section II.D.1 of this document, CDC has estimated that the total burden of foodborne illness is 48 million cases, 128,000 hospitalizations, and 3,000 deaths due to illnesses from both major pathogens and from unspecified agents (Ref. 45) (Ref. 46). Focusing only on the foodborne illnesses attributable to particular pathogens, a recent report estimated that 31 major pathogens (for which data for preparing national estimates are available, including those listed above) cause 9.4 million episodes of foodborne illness, 55,961 hospitalizations and 1351 deaths in the United States each year (Ref. 45). In addition to contaminating raw materials, some of these pathogens (e.g., Listeria monocytogenes and Salmonella spp.) are common pathogens of concern with respect to contamination from the processing environment for specific types of facilities (Ref. 144) (Ref. 145). (See sections I.D and I.E of the Appendix to this document for a discussion of testing programs for environmental pathogens). Contamination of food with some pathogens (e.g., Staphylococcus aureus and norovirus) is often due to poor employee hygiene or practices.

#### Chemical hazards.

Proposed § 117.130(b)(2) would include substances such as pesticide and drug residues, natural toxins, decomposition, unapproved food or color additives, and food allergens (all of which are required to be considered by section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act) within the category of chemical hazards. As discussed in section II.D.2.b of this document, pesticide residues may be present in food in the absence of or in excess of a tolerance established by EPA. Residues of drugs (e.g., antibiotics administered to dairy cows) may be present in food derived from the animal (such as milk) in the absence of or in excess of a tolerance or safe levels established and enforced by FDA (Ref. 146). Natural toxins such as aflatoxin and patulin are well recognized as hazards in foods such as peanuts and apple juice products, respectively (Ref. 82) (Ref. 85). Decomposition products such as histamine, produced from the amino acid histidine when certain bacteria grow, can pose a risk to health. An undeclared food allergen (such as a peanut) can cause a life-threatening reaction (such as anaphylactic shock) in susceptible individuals (Ref. 147). Heavy metals (such as lead) can lead to impaired cognitive development in children (Ref. 88).

#### Physical hazards.

Proposed § 117.130(b)(3) would require that the hazard analysis consider physical hazards, which are required to be considered by section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act. Examples of physical hazards include stones, glass, or metal fragments that could inadvertently be introduced into food. Physical hazards may be associated with raw materials, especially RACs. The facility and equipment can also be a source of physical hazards, e.g., container glass and metal fragments such as nuts and bolts.

#### Radiological hazards.

Proposed § 117.130(b)(4) would require that the hazard analysis consider radiological hazards. As discussed in section II.D.2.e of this document, examples of radiological hazards include radionuclides such as radium-226, radium-228, uranium-235, uranium-238, strontium-90, iodine-131, and cesium-137. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry do not identify radiological hazards as a type of hazard to be considered in the hazard analysis. However, section 418(b)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act requires that radiological hazards be considered, and food may be subject to contamination with radiological hazards – e.g., if water used to manufacture a food contains a radionuclide. For additional information on how radiological hazards may contaminate food, see section III.D.2.e of this document and references discussed therein (Ref. 107) (Ref. 108) (Ref. 109).

#### 4. Proposed § 117.130(c)--Hazard Evaluation

a. Proposed § 117.130(c)(1)--Evaluation of whether a hazard is reasonably likely to occur, including an assessment of the severity of the illness or injury if the hazard were to occur.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would require that the hazard analysis include an evaluation of the hazards identified in § 117.130(b) to determine whether the hazards are reasonably likely to occur, including an assessment of the severity of the illness or injury if the hazard were to occur.

As discussed in more detail later in this section, proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would implement sections 418(b)(1) and (c)(3) of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define severity as the seriousness of the effects of a hazard. The severity of the illness or injury includes the magnitude and duration of the illness and impact of any sequelae (chronic conditions resulting

from an illness, such as reactive arthritis following a Salmonella infection). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines also recommend considering the likelihood of an illness or injury (usually based upon a combination of experience, epidemiological data, and information in the technical literature) and the potential effects associated with both short-term and long-term exposure (Ref. 34). Likewise, the Codex HACCP Annex recommends that the hazard analysis consider the severity of the adverse health effects associated with the hazards (Ref. 35). Our juice HACCP regulation requires that the hazard evaluation include an assessment of the severity of the illness or injury if the hazard occurs (§ 120.7(a)(2)). The requirement for a hazard analysis in our seafood HACCP regulation does not specifically require an assessment of severity but addresses the potential for illness or injury in its definition of a food safety hazard, which refers to biological, chemical or physical properties that may cause a food to be unsafe for human consumption (§ 123.3(f)) and in the description of a food safety hazard that is reasonably likely to occur, which includes illness data as a basis for establishing controls (§ 123.6(a)). Similarly, the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry does not specifically require an assessment of severity in the hazard analysis (9 CFR § 417.2(a)), but its definition of a food safety hazard refers to biological, chemical or physical properties that may cause a food to be unsafe for human consumption (9 CFR 417.1(c)). In the final rule to establish our juice HACCP regulation, we agreed with the NACMCF approach to conducting the hazard analysis - i.e., that the process of evaluating food hazards to determine which potential hazards need to be addressed in the HACCP plan (i.e., those that are reasonably likely to occur) takes into account both the consequences of exposure (i.e., severity) and the probability of occurrence (i.e., frequency) of the health impact of the potential hazards in question (66 FR 6138 at 6155).

As discussed in section II.D.2.a of this document, contamination of food with biological hazards often leads to immediate or near-term onset of illness or injury (e.g., gastrointestinal illness). Exposure to some biological hazards may have long-term consequences as well (e.g., infections with Salmonella spp. may result in reactive arthritis). The effects of exposure to some biological hazards are severe (e.g., Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome (HUS) in individuals exposed to E. coli O157:H7 (63 FR 20450 at 20450) or invasive listeriosis in susceptible individuals exposed to L. monocytogenes in ready-to-eat foods (Ref. 55). Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would require that such biological hazards be considered to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur even if the biological hazard occurs infrequently.

As discussed in sections II.D.2.b and II.D.2.c of this document, contamination of food with chemical hazards may lead to immediate or near-term onset of illness – e.g., an allergic reaction to an undeclared peanut or to a residue in a milk product of penicillin used to treat the cow. In other instances the focus of the evaluation for chemical hazards is directed to their long term effects, such as impaired cognitive development in children exposed to lead in contaminated candy (Ref. 88) and liver cancer as the result of chronic exposure to the mycotoxin aflatoxin (Ref. 89) (Ref. 90). Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would require that such chemical hazards be considered to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur even if the chemical hazard occurs infrequently.

We discuss the regulatory framework under the FD&C Act (including premarket approval or registration by FDA or EPA) of food additives, color additives, new animal drugs, and pesticides in section II.D.2.b of this document. An additive, drug, or pesticide that has been approved for use in some foods, but not other foods, is deemed by the FD&C Act to be unsafe for use with those other foods. Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would require that chemical hazards

such as unapproved food additives, unapproved color additives, new animal drugs, and pesticides be considered to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur.

We provide information about natural toxins (such as aflatoxin and patulin), decomposition products (such as histamine and other biogenic amines), and heavy metals (such as lead) in section II.D.2.b of this document and references contained therein (Ref. 82) (Ref. 83) (Ref. 84) (Ref. 85) (Ref. 86) (Ref. 87) (Ref. 88) (Ref. 90). Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would require that such chemical hazards be considered to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur even if the chemical hazard occurs infrequently.

Physical hazards such as hard and sharp foreign objects that may be present in food can pose a health risk (Ref. 148). Hard or sharp foreign objects in food may cause traumatic injury, including laceration and perforation of tissues of the mouth, tongue, throat, stomach and intestine as well as damage to the teeth and gums (Ref. 148) (Ref. 149). Thus, even if physical hazards occur infrequently, under proposed § 117.130(c)(1) the potential for severe consequences would require consideration of these physical hazards to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur. Factors relevant to an evaluation of the severity of a physical hazard include the potential size of the object, the nature of the food (e.g., RTE or required to undergo further processing), and whether intended consumers of the food include special risk groups (Ref. 148).

Contamination of food with radiological hazards generally is evaluated for long-term effects such as the potential for cancer (Ref. 150). A significant radiation dose could be received as a result of consumption of food contaminated as a result of an accident at a nuclear power plant or other types of accidents (Ref. 150; see also (63 FR 43402, August 13, 1998)). Foods may contain unsafe levels of radionuclides (Ref. 151). Thus, although radiological hazards occur infrequently, under proposed § 117.130(c)(1) the potential for severe consequences would

require consideration of radiological hazards to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur for a particular food or facility, especially when circumstances arise that could lead to contamination of food with radiological hazards.

The purpose of sections 418(b)(1) and 418(c)(3) of the FD&C Act seems clear – i.e., that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for the purpose of identifying and implementing preventive controls to provide assurances that identified hazards will be significantly minimized or prevented and that the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by the facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. The process of evaluating food hazards to determine which potential hazards require preventive controls must take into account the consequences of exposure (i.e., severity) as well as the probability of occurrence (i.e., frequency) to provide assurances that the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by the facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.130(c)(1) would implement this statutory direction.

b. Proposed § 117.130(c)(2)--Requirement to evaluate environmental pathogens.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(2) would require that the hazard analysis include an evaluation of whether environmental pathogens are reasonably likely to occur whenever an RTE food is exposed to the environment prior to packaging. As noted in section II.D.2.a of this document, environmental pathogens can be a source of contamination of food. Examples of environmental pathogens that have contaminated foods (and, in particular, RTE foods) include Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes. Proposed § 117.130(b)(1) would include environmental pathogens as one of the biological hazards that must be considered in identifying hazards for evaluation.



Under proposed § 117.130(c)(2), a facility that produces an RTE food that is exposed to the environment would be required to identify environmental pathogens as a known or reasonably foreseeable hazard under proposed § 117.130(b) and evaluate whether contamination of RTE food with the environmental pathogen is reasonably likely to occur in the facility.

c. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)--Consideration of specific factors relevant to the hazard evaluation. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3) would require that, in conducting the hazard evaluation, consideration be given to the effect of several specific factors on the safety of the finished food for the intended consumer. We tentatively conclude that these are factors that a prudent person who manufactures, processes, packs, or holds foods would consider when evaluating identified hazards to determine whether they are reasonably likely to occur. As we indicated in proposing our HACCP regulation for juice, a prudent processor should consider factors such as these in doing a hazard analysis (63 FR 20450 at 20468).

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(i) would require that the hazard evaluation consider the formulation of the food. The addition of certain ingredients such as acids and preservatives may be critical to the safety of the food, since they may inhibit growth of, or even kill, microorganisms of public health significance. This could impact the evaluation at steps during production and storage with respect to the hazard of “pathogen growth.” A multi-component food may have individual ingredients that do not support growth of undesirable microorganisms (e.g., because of pH or  $a_w$ ), but when put together there may be an interface where the pH and  $a_w$  changes (e.g., pies, layered breads). Under proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(i), the interaction of the individual ingredients must be evaluated as part of the formulation of the food. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(i) also would require that the hazard evaluation consider whether or not the

formulation contains an ingredient (such as a flavoring, coloring, or incidental additive) that may contain an allergen.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ii) would require that the hazard evaluation consider the condition, function, and design of the facility and equipment. The condition, function, or design of a facility or its equipment could potentially result in the introduction of hazards into foods. For example, older equipment (e.g., older slicing, rolling and conveying equipment) may be more difficult to clean (e.g., with close fitting components or hollow parts) and, thus, provide more opportunities for pathogens to become established in a niche environment than modern equipment designed to address the problem of pathogen harborage in niche environments. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ii) would require that facilities with such equipment consider the impact of the equipment on the potential for pathogens to be a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur; if so, a preventive control such as enhanced sanitation controls may be appropriate, particularly if the equipment is used in production of RTE food. Equipment designed such that there is metal-to-metal contact may generate metal fragments. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ii) would require that facilities with such equipment consider the impact of the equipment on the potential for generation of such metal fragments to be a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur; if so, a preventive control such as metal detectors may be appropriate. A facility that manufactures, processes, or packs soft, fresh cheese (such as queso fresco, which is consumed without cooking to adequately reduce pathogens) may have cold, moist conditions that are conducive to the development of a niche where the pathogen L. monocytogenes can become established and contaminate food-contact surfaces and, eventually, foods. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ii) would require that facilities with such conditions consider the impact of the conditions on the potential for whether development of a niche where the pathogen L.

monocytogenes can become established is a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur; if so, enhanced sanitation controls may be appropriate. A facility design that has closely spaced equipment would provide more opportunities for cross-contact (such as from allergens in powdered milk or soy) from one line to another (e.g., through dust) than a facility that has more spacing between equipment. Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ii) would require that facilities with such closely spaced equipment consider the impact of the close spacing on the potential for cross-contact to be a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur; if so, targeted food allergen controls may be appropriate.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(iii) would require that the hazard evaluation consider raw materials and ingredients. Current § 110.3 defines “food” to mean food as defined in section 201(f) of the FD&C Act and includes raw materials and ingredients, and that definition would be retained (with no proposed revisions) in this proposed rule. As discussed in section IX.E of this document, there is an overlap between raw materials and ingredients; not all raw materials are ingredients. A food can become contaminated through the use of contaminated food ingredients. For example, in the past several years thousands of foods have been recalled as a result of contamination of food ingredients with pathogens such as Salmonella spp. and E. coli O157:H7. The ingredients included peanut-derived ingredients (Ref. 19) (Ref. 20), pistachio-derived ingredients (Ref. 152), hydrolyzed vegetable protein (Ref. 23) (Ref. 24) (Ref. 153)), instant nonfat dried milk, whey protein, and fruit stabilizers (Ref. 21) (Ref. 22), and bagged spinach (Ref. 154). In some cases, the contamination was discovered only after the ingredient was associated with an outbreak of foodborne illness (Ref. 19). In other cases, the contamination was discovered in a food and associated with a particular ingredient without any known incidence of foodborne illness (Ref. 152) (Ref. 155) (Ref. 22) (Ref. 154). Following some of these recalls, we

issued guidance recommending that manufacturers of foods containing a particular type of ingredient either obtain the ingredients from suppliers with validated processes in place to adequately reduce the presence of the applicable pathogen, or ensure that their own manufacturing process would adequately reduce the presence of that pathogen (Ref. 6) (Ref. 156). Specific pathogens would be considered to be a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur for raw materials and ingredients that have been documented to be contaminated with such pathogens, as well as for ingredients with similar characteristics (because such contamination might be expected in ingredients that are produced in a similar manner).

A food also may become contaminated through the use of contaminated raw materials that are not food ingredients. In the example of the manufacture of the food additive sucrose fatty acid esters (see discussion in section IX.E of this document), § 172.859 establishes specifications for sucrose fatty acid esters, such as specifications that arsenic is not more than 3 parts per million, total heavy metal content (as lead) is not more than 50 parts per million, and lead is not more than 10 parts per million (§ 172.859(b)(6), (7), and (8)). The use of raw materials that are contaminated with arsenic, lead, or other heavy metals that would not be removed as part of the manufacturing process for sucrose fatty acid esters could lead to sucrose fatty acid esters that are contaminated with arsenic, lead, or other heavy metals such that they do not satisfy the specifications of the regulation.

As noted for formulation in the discussion of proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(i), ingredients must be evaluated for “hidden” allergens such as may be present in flavorings, colorings, or incidental additives. Production and harvesting practices may impact whether raw materials and ingredients contain hazards. For example, machinery-harvested produce is more likely to be

contaminated with physical hazards than hand-picked produce, because the machinery often picks up foreign material from the field.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(iv) would require that the hazard evaluation consider transportation practices. A food may become unsafe as a result of poor transportation practices for incoming raw materials and ingredients or for outgoing finished product. For example, failure to adequately control temperature during transportation could make a food unsafe if the product requires time and temperature controls to ensure safety. Distributing a food in bulk without adequate protective packaging makes the product susceptible to contamination during transportation – e.g., from pathogens or chemicals present in an inadequately cleaned vehicle or from other inadequately protected foods that are being co-transported and are potential sources of contamination (Ref. 157). (For additional examples of food safety problems that could occur during transportation, see 75 FR 22713, April 30, 2010).

The Sanitary Food Transportation Act of 2005 (SFTA) gives FDA authority to require shippers, carriers by motor vehicle or rail vehicle, receivers, and other persons engaged in the transportation of food to use sanitary transportation practices to ensure that food is not transported under conditions that may render the food adulterated. In 2010, we published an Advance Notice of Proposed Rulemaking to request data and information on the food transportation industry and its practices and we expect to issue a separate proposed rule to implement the SFTA (75 FR 22713, April 30, 2010). We do not expect a future rulemaking implementing the SFTA to eliminate the need for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to consider transportation practices when determining whether a hazard is reasonably likely to occur.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(v) would require that the hazard evaluation consider manufacturing/processing procedures. For example, hazards may arise from manufacturing/processing processes such as cooling or holding of certain foods due to the potential for germination of pathogenic sporeforming bacteria such as Clostridium perfringens and Bacillus cereus (which may be present in food ingredients) as a cooked product is cooled and reaches a temperature that will allow germination of the spores and outgrowth. Hazards also may arise from manufacturing/processing processes such as acidification due to the potential for germination of spores of C. botulinum, with subsequent production of botulinum toxin, if the acidification is not done correctly. Toxins can be produced by the bacteria Staphylococcus aureus or Bacillus cereus in a product that has been heated and held at room temperature during the manufacturing process if the product formulation supports growth and toxin formation by the bacteria and S. aureus or B. cereus is present in the ingredients of the product or is introduced by poor employee hygiene (e.g., S. aureus). Physical hazards may occur from metal fragments generated during the manufacture of food on equipment in which metal (e.g., wires, saw blades or knives) is used to cut products during manufacturing.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(vi) would require that the hazard evaluation consider packaging activities and labeling activities. For example, as discussed earlier in this section XII.4.c the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur would be different depending on whether a product is packaged in glass bottles or in plastic bottles. A label on a food may direct consumers to cook a product to a certain temperature; the likelihood of consumers following those cooking instructions may vary depending on the type of food. For example, it is well known that consumers will eat raw cookie dough, even though the cookie dough is clearly intended to be cooked, and an outbreak of foodborne illness has been associated with the consumption of

uncooked cookie dough (Ref. 77) (Ref. 76) (Ref. 78). Thus, although label information is a factor to consider, a hazard may be reasonably likely to occur even with label information such as cooking instructions.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(vii) would require that the hazard evaluation consider storage and distribution. For example, biological hazards are more likely to be a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur during storage and distribution in foods that require refrigerated storage to maintain safety than in shelf-stable foods. Shelf-stable foods are designed such that biological hazards are controlled.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(viii) would require that the hazard evaluation consider intended or reasonably foreseeable use. An example of intended or reasonably foreseeable use is whether the food would be cooked by the consumer. In some cases, the intended use of a product may include uses where it would be cooked by the consumer, as well uses where it would not be cooked. For example, soup is generally cooked, but a dried soup mix is often used in RTE form as a component of a dip. For another example, see the discussion of consumption of raw cookie dough earlier in this section. When it is known or reasonably foreseeable that a food would be consumed in RTE form, hazards such as Salmonella spp., L. monocytogenes, and E. coli O157:H7 would need to be considered to determine if they are hazards reasonably likely to occur.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(ix) would require that the hazard evaluation consider sanitation, including employee hygiene. Sanitation measures and practices can impact the likelihood of a hazard being introduced into a food. For example, the frequency with which a production line is shut down for a complete cleaning can impact the potential for food residues to transfer pathogens from equipment to foods (e.g., pathogens present on raw produce that could

carry over into the next production cycle on a line). Practices directed at worker health and hygiene can reduce the potential for transfer of pathogens such as Salmonella spp., hepatitis A and norovirus.

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3)(x) would require that the hazard evaluation consider any other relevant factors that might potentially affect the safety of the finished food for the intended consumer. For example, an unexpected natural disaster could flood some or all of a facility, creating insanitary conditions and potentially contaminating the facility with harmful microorganisms or chemical residues. Following a natural disaster, environmental contaminants that could be brought into the facility could be a hazard reasonably likely to occur. As another example, when local water authorities advise the public to boil tap water for drinking, a facility should consider whether bacterial, viral or parasitic (e.g., Cryptosporidium and Giardia) contamination presents a hazard reasonably likely to occur as a result of the events that triggered the advisory (Ref. 158).

Proposed § 117.130(c)(3) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Hazards and Controls Guides we have issued regarding our HACCP regulations for juice and seafood, and the Hazards and Controls Guide FSIS has issued regarding the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines note that hazards identified in one operation or facility may not be significant in another operation producing the same or a similar product – e.g., due to differences in equipment and/or maintenance programs (Ref. 34). Appendix C of the NACMCF HACCP guidelines provides examples of questions to be considered when conducting a hazard analysis and identifies factors to consider such as ingredients, formulation, processing procedures, design of facility, design and use of equipment, packaging, sanitation, worker health and hygiene, storage, intended use, and intended consumer.



Our Hazards and Controls Guide for juice provides recommendations related to factors such as shelf life of the product, location of the processing, and type of processing, e.g., thermal or non-thermal processing (Ref. 4). Our Hazards and Controls Guide for seafood provides recommendations related to factors such as storage conditions (time and temperature), the role of manufacturing conditions in minimizing the potential for formation of C. botulinum toxin, manufacturing procedures (cooking and pasteurization) to control pathogenic bacteria, manufacturing procedures (such as high hydrostatic pressure processing, individual quick freezing with extended frozen storage, mild heat processing, and irradiation) designed to retain raw product characteristics, and the introduction of pathogenic bacteria after pasteurization and specialized cooking processes. The FSIS Hazards and Controls Guide for meat and poultry provides recommendations related to factors such as receiving, thawing, formulation, manufacturing procedures, packaging, storage and shipping (Ref. 159).

### C. Proposed § 117.135--Preventive Controls for Hazards That Are Reasonably Likely to Occur

#### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(c)(1) of the FD&C Act, in relevant part, specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act will be significantly minimized or prevented. Section 418(c)(1)(3) of the FD&C Act, in relevant part, specifies that the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

As discussed in section X.B.4 of this document, section 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act defines preventive controls and proposed § 117.3 would include the statutory definition in

proposed part 117. Under section 418(o)(3), the procedures, practices, and processes described in the definition of preventive controls may include the following:

- Sanitation procedures for food-contact surfaces and utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment (section 418(o)(3)(A) of the FD&C Act);
- Supervisor, manager, and employee hygiene training (section 418(o)(3)(B) of the FD&C Act);
- An environmental monitoring program to verify the effectiveness of pathogen controls in processes where a food is exposed to a potential contaminant in the environment (section 418(o)(3)(C) of the FD&C Act);
- A food allergen control program (section 418(o)(3)(D) of the FD&C Act);
- A recall plan (section 418(o)(3)(E) of the FD&C Act);
- CGMPs under part 110 or any successor regulations (section 418(o)(3)(F) of the FD&C Act); and
- Supplier verification activities that relate to the safety of food (section 418(o)(3)(G) of the FD&C Act).

## 2. Proposed § 117.135(a)--Requirement to Identify and Implement Preventive Controls for Hazards that are Reasonably Likely to Occur

Proposed § 117.135(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and implement preventive controls, including at CCPs, if any, to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur will be significantly minimized or prevented and the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

As discussed in section XII.B.2.a of this document, proposed § 117.130(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility conduct a hazard analysis to identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine whether there are hazards that are “reasonably likely to occur.” Under proposed § 117.135(a), a facility that determines through its hazard analysis that there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur would then be required to identify and implement preventive controls for those hazards. Preventive controls would be required when applicable hazards are identified as reasonably likely to occur. As discussed in sections XII.B.2 through XII.C.10 of this document, the types of preventive controls implemented would depend on the facility and the food it produces. Most hazards would be addressed through process controls, food allergen controls, and sanitation controls. For any type of preventive control, a facility would have the flexibility to identify and implement preventive controls from among all procedures, practices, and processes available to it that would provide the assurances that would be required by proposed § 117.135(a).

Proposed § 117.135(a) would implement section 418(c) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for juice, seafood, and meat and poultry, although there are some differences between HACCP systems and the preventive control system established by section 418 of the FD&C Act. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35), and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry (§§ 123.6 and § 120.7 and 9 CFR § 417.2, respectively) direct a processor to address potential hazards that are reasonably likely to cause illness or injury in the absence of their control by determining CCPs and establishing critical limits for those CCPs. As discussed in section II.C.2 of this document,

although this proposed rule aligns well with HACCP, it differs in part in that preventive controls may be required at points other than at critical control points and critical limits would not be required for all preventive controls. Under proposed § 117.135(a), a processor could address hazards that are reasonably likely to occur through preventive controls that would be applied at CCPs, but doing so would not be the only option available to the facility in all circumstances. In some cases adequate assurances could be achieved via preventive controls implemented through other procedures and practices of a facility, such as its food allergen control program, which may not have specific CCPs. (For discussion of the food allergen control program that would be required by proposed § 117.135(d)(2), see section XII.C.6 of this document.)

Whatever types of preventive controls a facility chooses to apply in its operations, the requirement in proposed § 117.135(a) would be risk based. Establishing risk-based preventive controls involves consideration of the available scientific data and information related to food safety risks. Typically, the hazard evaluation will enable the facility to determine appropriate risk-based preventive controls for the hazard based on the severity of the hazard and the likelihood of its occurrence.

For example, as discussed in section I.D.6 of the Appendix to this document, L. monocytogenes is an environmental pathogen that can establish a harborage in the environment such as on a production line used in wet manufacturing. Once established, L. monocytogenes can intermittently contaminate products on the production line. When a hazard analysis identifies L. monocytogenes as a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur in a food, the facility would establish sanitation controls to prevent L. monocytogenes from establishing itself in a harborage site. In addition to such sanitation controls, a facility may consider applying a listericidal process step (i.e., a process control applied to adequately reduce levels of L.

monocytogenes in RTE foods). As discussed in section II.D.2.a of this document, some RTE foods (like soft cheese) support the growth of L. monocytogenes, while others (like hard cheese) do not. The FAO/WHO Listeria risk assessment demonstrated that the risk of serious illness from consumption of RTE products contaminated with L. monocytogenes increases with the number of L. monocytogenes in an RTE food (Ref. 160). Thus, as a risk-based approach to the control of the biological hazard L. monocytogenes, the facility may elect to apply a listericidal process step to those RTE foods that support growth of L. monocytogenes in addition to its sanitation controls, but not apply such a process to those RTE foods that do not support growth of L. monocytogenes.

### 3. Proposed § 117.135(b)--Requirement for Written Preventive Controls

Proposed § 117.135(b) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur be written. Proposed § 117.135(b) would implement section 418(h) of the FD&C Act which, as discussed in section XII.A.2 of this document, requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility prepare a written food safety plan that, among other things, identifies the preventive controls within the plan. Written preventive controls are essential for the facility to implement the preventive controls consistently and essential for the facility's food safety team, auditors, and inspectors. Written preventive controls also would be essential for training purposes and during reanalysis and updates of the preventive controls. Proposed § 117.135(b) is consistent with our HACCP regulation for juice, which requires that the written hazard analysis identify control measures that the processor can apply to control the food hazards identified as reasonably likely to occur (§ 120.7(a)).

#### 4. Proposed § 117.135(c)--Requirement for Parameters Associated with the Control of Hazards That Are Reasonably Likely to Occur

Proposed § 117.135(c)(1) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur include, as appropriate to the facility and the food, parameters associated with the control of the hazard, such as parameters associated with heat processing, acidifying, irradiating, dehydrating, and refrigerating foods. Proposed § 117.135(c)(1) would include examples of several measures identified in current § 110.80(b)(4) (Manufacturing Operations) (proposed § 117.80(c)(4)) that if used as a preventive control must be adequate when used to prevent adulteration, but would not establish an exhaustive list of such processes, just as current § 110.80(b)(4) (proposed § 117.80(c)(4)) does not establish an exhaustive list of measures that must be adequate. Examples of other processes that would require the identification of parameters if used as a preventive control are brining, chilling, high pressure processing, treating with ultraviolet light, and washing with antimicrobial agents. The parameters are those factors that must be controlled to ensure the hazard will be significantly minimized or prevented. The specific parameters required, and how they would be controlled, would depend on the facility and the food. For example, for a heat process, parameters such as temperature and time must be controlled. Temperature may be controlled through controls on product temperature (as when treating a fluid product in a heat exchanger) or through controls on oven temperature (as when heating product in an oven). Foods such as beverages lend themselves to a heat exchanger; foods such as baked goods lend themselves to an oven. Heating time may be controlled automatically by a pump setting that controls flow of the fluid through the heat exchanger and hold tube or manually by an operator recording the time a product is put in the oven and the time it is removed. Heating time may also be controlled by the belt speed for

the conveyor on a continuous oven. A facility would have flexibility to establish controls on heating time through these or other mechanisms.

Some preventive controls may not have specific parameters associated with them. For example, preventive controls for metal may include an equipment preventive maintenance program and a metal detector on the packaging line. These programs may not have specific factors that must be controlled to prevent metal contamination. Sanitation procedures may include scrubbing certain pieces of equipment by hand; this may not require the identification of specific parameters. Similarly, label controls for food allergens do not involve identification of specific parameters.

Proposed § 117.135(c)(2) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur include, as appropriate to the facility and the food, the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any biological, chemical, radiological, or physical parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur. Some of the preventive controls a facility may implement may be based upon scientific studies or other information that demonstrate the effectiveness of the control measure at specific values of a physical, biological, radiological or chemical parameter, e.g., the application of heat to food at a specific time/temperature combination to adequately reduce pathogens. Proposed § 117.135(c)(2) would require that a facility that establishes such a preventive control specify values of the essential parameters to be applied in implementing the control. Specifying these values would enable the facility to implement them consistently, would facilitate validation of the preventive controls as would be required by proposed § 117.150(a), and would facilitate audits and inspection.

Proposed § 117.135(c)(1) and (2) would implement section 418(c) of the FD&C Act and are consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, although there are some differences related to the differences between HACCP systems and the preventive control system established by section 418 of the FD&C Act. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 34) (Ref. 35) each specify that the critical limits be documented in the HACCP plan. Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry each require that HACCP plan list the critical limits that must be met at each of the CCPs (§§ 123.6(c)(3) and 120.8(b)(3), and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(3), respectively). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define “critical limit” to mean a maximum and/or minimum value to which a biological, chemical, or physical parameter must be controlled at a CCP to prevent, eliminate, or reduce to an acceptable level the occurrence of a food safety hazard. The definition of “critical limit” in Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry are, for practical purposes, identical to the definition in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (§§ 123.3(c) and 120.3(e) and 9 CFR 417.1(b), respectively). The Codex HACCP Annex defines “critical limit” to mean a criterion which separates acceptability from unacceptability (Ref. 35).

FSMA does not use the term “critical limit.” As discussed in section II.C.2 of this document, although this proposed rule aligns well with HACCP, it differs in part in that preventive controls may be required at points other than at critical control points and critical limits would not be required for all preventive controls. Critical limits may not be appropriate for preventive controls that are not applied at CCPs. Thus, proposed § 117.135(c)(1) and (2) use a broader term – i.e., parameter – to encompass preventive controls that may or may not apply at CCPs. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and



Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, proposed § 117.135(c)(2) would require the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any physical, biological, radiological, or chemical parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur. This is similar to requiring critical limits at CCPs but would apply to values set for parameters that apply to preventive controls, whether these apply at a CCP or not.

#### 5. Proposed § 117.135(d)(1)--Process Controls

Proposed § 117.135(d)(1) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur include process controls that include those procedures, practices, and processes performed on a food during manufacturing/processing that are employed to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. Process controls do not include those procedures, practices, and processes that are not applied to the food itself, e.g., controls of personnel or the environment that may be used to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur but are not applied to the food itself. Specifying that process controls are employed during manufacturing/processing to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur would distinguish those controls applied in manufacturing/processing that significantly minimize or prevent hazards (e.g., cooking, cooling, irradiating, refrigerating, and reducing water activity) from other types of controls that may be applied in manufacturing/processing to provide the desired product (e.g., controls for product size and shape). Many process controls, such as the application of heat to a food to adequately reduce pathogens, are applied in the same manner and for the same purpose as control measures established within HACCP plans and applied at CCPs as recommended by the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34) and the Codex HACCP Annex

(Ref. 35) and as required by Federal regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry (§§ 123.6(c)(3) and 120.8(b)(3)) and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(3), respectively).

As discussed in section XII.C.4 of this document, proposed § 117.135(c)(2) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur include, when applicable, the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any physical, biological, radiological, or chemical parameter must be controlled. For process controls in particular, the term “parameter” used in proposed § 117.135(c)(1), and the value associated with the parameter in proposed § 117.135(c)(2), are associated with the term “critical limit” used in HACCP systems. We described the use of the term “critical limit” in other contexts in the previous section of this document. Collectively, proposed §§ 117.135(b), (c) and (d)(1) would require that a facility include in its written process controls information equivalent to that provided when listing critical limits that must be met at each of the CCPs, such as is required in our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice (§§ 123.6(c)(3) and 120.8((b)(3), respectively). However, the process controls may or may not apply at CCPs.

For example, a facility that holds in-shell pistachios in bulk storage units for an extended time period until they are shelled and packaged may identify the potential for growth of aflatoxin-producing molds on the nuts as a hazard reasonably likely to occur. As a process control to prevent such molds from growing on the nuts during storage, the facility may elect to dry (dehydrate) the nuts to a specific moisture content (e.g., no more than seven percent) prior to placing them in storage. The process control would be “drying” and the associated parameter would be moisture level, with its maximum value, or limit, being seven percent.

As another example, a facility that manufactures refrigerated deli salads may identify the potential for growth of L. monocytogenes in the salads as a hazard reasonably likely to occur.

As a process control to prevent such growth, the facility may elect to add an acidifying agent during its process to ensure that the pH of the product does not exceed 4.4. The process control would be “acidifying” and the associated parameter would be pH, with its maximum value, or limit, being 4.4.

A facility that manufactures a deli salad product may establish refrigeration as a process control to prevent growth of pathogenic sporeformers such as B. cereus, if it determines this organism is a hazard reasonably likely to occur in the deli salads being produced. (A facility may conclude that refrigeration is not necessary to prevent the growth of pathogenic sporeformers if, for example, it controls this potential hazard through product formulation, such as pH.) The facility may also establish process controls addressing the amount of time that in-process materials are held above 4 °C (40 °F) during manufacturing and addressing their temperatures during this time period. If so, the process control would be “manufacturing time” and the associated parameters would be time and temperature, with the maximum time that in-process materials are held above 4 °C (40 °F) being specified.

#### 6. Proposed § 117.135(d)(2)--Food Allergen Controls

Proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(i) would require that food allergen controls include those procedures, processes, and practices employed for ensuring protection of food from cross-contact, including during storage and use. Examples of such controls include procedures for separating ingredients and finished products that contain allergens from those that do not contain allergens, and procedures for separating foods that contain different allergens. Such controls are essential to prevent the inadvertent incorporation of an allergen into a product for which it is not an ingredient. Examples of such procedures for controlling food allergens include procedures that:

- Provide physical barriers;
- Eliminate or minimize the formation of dust, aerosols, or splashes;
- Conduct manufacturing/processing of foods in different parts of a facility;
- Emphasize separation in time, such as by production sequencing or by cleaning equipment between production runs;
- Emphasize storage and handling appropriate to reduce the potential for cross-contact; and
- Control the movement of tools and personnel that might carry allergens when the same production lines are used for both foods that contain allergens and foods that do not, or when the same production lines are used for foods that contain different allergens.

Proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(ii) would require that food allergen controls include those procedures, practices, and processes employed for labeling the finished food, including ensuring that the finished food is not misbranded under section 403(w) of the act. Such controls can prevent application of the wrong label to a food, use of the wrong packaging, and use of packaging with an incorrect allergen declaration. Examples of such procedures for controlling food allergens include procedures that:

- Ensure that the food label correctly declares all of the food allergens present (including those contained in flavorings, colorings, and incidental additives);
- Ensure that the correct food label is applied to a food;
- Ensure that the correct food is in the correct package (e.g., by checking that the correct packaging is used for each food); and
- Review formulations and compare them to the labels (especially when new batches of labels are received).

Proposed § 117.135(d)(2) would implement sections 418(c)(1) and (3) of the FD&C Act and 418(o)(3) of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.135(d)(2) is consistent with our HACCP regulation for juice, which requires processors to consider whether the presence of undeclared ingredients that may be allergens is a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur (§ 120.7(c)(8)). Proposed § 117.135(d)(2) also is consistent with the recommendations in the CGMP Working Group Report (Ref. 1) that food processing establishments that produce foods containing a major food allergen be required to have a food allergen control plan that addresses segregation of food allergens during storage and handling, prevention of cross-contact during processing, product label review, and label usage and control.

#### 7. Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)--Sanitation Controls

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) and (B) would establish two requirements for sanitation controls where necessary to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, (including any environmental pathogen that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging, any microorganism of public health significance that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food due to employee handling, and any food allergen hazard). Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) would require that sanitation controls include procedures for the cleanliness of food-contact surfaces, including food-contact surfaces of utensils and equipment. Such hazards would include any environmental pathogen that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging and any food allergen hazard. (We would generally not expect that microorganisms of public health significance contaminating an RTE food due to employee handling would be a hazard relevant to procedures for cleaning food-contact surfaces.) Examples of sanitation controls related to the cleanliness of food-contact surfaces include

cleaning and sanitizing procedures (including appropriate frequencies for these procedures, concentrations of cleaning and sanitizing compounds, method of application, and contact time). Such controls can prevent contamination of food with microorganisms of public health significance, including environmental pathogens, that result from inadequate cleaning of food-contact surfaces. Such controls also can prevent cross-contact that results from inadequate cleaning of food-contact surfaces or surfaces that transfer material to food-contact surfaces.

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(B) would require that sanitation controls include procedures for the prevention of cross-contact and cross-contamination from insanitary objects and from personnel to food, food packaging material, and other food-contact surfaces and from raw product to processed product. Such hazards would include any environmental pathogen that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging, any microorganism of public health significance that is reasonably likely to contaminate food if employees are handling RTE food, and any food allergen hazard. Examples of sanitation controls to prevent cross-contact include procedures for ensuring that production utensils and maintenance tools do not transfer an allergen from one product to another (e.g., by proper cleaning of utensils and maintenance tools between uses if it is not practical to dedicate utensils and tools to specific processing lines); procedures for ensuring that personnel practices do not result in transfer of allergens from one production line to another (e.g., by ensuring employees do not handle food containing an allergen and one that does not without washing hands and changing outer garments); and procedures for minimizing the transfer of dust containing allergens (e.g., by cleaning powder spills around dumping stations as they occur).

Examples of sanitation controls to prevent cross-contamination include procedures for ensuring that personnel do not touch insanitary objects (e.g., waste, trash cans, the floor, and rest

room fixtures or surfaces) and then food, food-contact surfaces, or food packaging material without first washing and sanitizing their hands; procedures for protecting food packaging material from environmental contamination; procedures for protecting exposed food products from contamination from the environment; and procedures for controlling traffic (including traffic of people and traffic of equipment such as forklifts) between the raw and finished sides of the operation.

To make clear that sanitation controls are required when an environmental pathogen is a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur in an RTE food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i) includes this circumstance as an example where sanitation controls would be required. Recent outbreaks of foodborne illness caused by environmental pathogens (e.g., Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes), as well as the scientific literature, emphasize the critical need for sanitation controls to minimize the potential for food, particularly RTE food, to become contaminated with environmental pathogens. (See sections I.D and I.E of the Appendix to this document for a discussion of the importance of controlling environmental pathogens.) Any time a food is exposed to the environment during a manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activity, there is the potential for the food to be contaminated. Appropriate sanitation controls can minimize the presence and transfer of contaminants, including environmental pathogens, to food. The need for sanitation controls related to food workers has long been recognized; however, appreciation of the importance of sanitation controls in preventing contamination due to environmental pathogens is more recent. We request comment on whether proposed § 117.135(d)(3) should be more explicit about the two most common environmental pathogens (i.e., Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes) - e.g., by including these two environmental pathogens as examples.

To make clear that sanitation controls are required when a microorganism of public health significance is a hazard reasonably likely to occur in an RTE food due to employee handling, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i) includes this circumstance as an example where sanitation controls would be required. Sanitation controls have long been used to prevent cross-contamination with pathogens (such as Staphylococcus aureus or enteric pathogens such as Salmonella spp.) that may be introduced by workers. People are common carriers of S. aureus – at any time up to 50 percent of humans will be carriers of this organism (e.g., in the nose and on the skin) (Ref. 161). People are also a source of enteric pathogens, including both symptomatic and asymptomatic infected workers (Ref. 162). Workers can contaminate RTE foods during handling, which can result in foodborne illness, in particular if the food is then held at temperatures that support growth and, in the case of S. aureus, production of enterotoxin (Ref. 161) (Ref. 163). Appropriate sanitation controls can minimize the transfer of microorganisms of public health significance from workers to food.

To make clear that sanitation controls are required when a food allergen hazard is reasonably likely to occur, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i) includes this circumstance as an example where sanitation controls would be required. As discussed in section IX.D of this document, cross-contact can occur in a facility that manufactures, processes, packs or holds a food that contains a major food allergen and other food that does not contain that allergen. Appropriate sanitation controls can minimize the transfer of food allergens that result in cross-contact.

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) and (B) would implement section 418(c) of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) also is consistent with the recommendation of the Food CGMP Working Group that food processors be required to develop and maintain, at a minimum, written sanitation procedures for all food-contact equipment and food-contact surfaces (Ref. 1).



Under proposed § 117.135(b), the preventive controls for sanitation required by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) and (B) would have to be written.

HACCP plans, as described in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35), and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry (§ 123.6, § 120.7, and 9 CFR 417, respectively) require that control measures be established at CCPs to address hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. Because sanitation covers the entire processing environment, not just at CCPs, and is not limited to hazards reasonably likely to occur, sanitation controls have been difficult to fit into HACCP plans and are often addressed using prerequisite programs (e.g., SSOPs). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34) and the Codex HACCP Annex (Ref. 35) address sanitation measures as prerequisite programs and are silent on their inclusion in HACCP plans to address identified hazards. FSIS addresses sanitation controls for meat and poultry products in a separate sanitation regulation (9 CFR 416), which is similar to our CGMPs in current part 110 except that it includes SSOP requirements that, unlike our SSOPs, require written sanitation procedures.

In our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, FDA provides processors with an option to include sanitation controls in their HACCP plans (§§ 123.6(f) and 120.8(c), respectively). Our HACCP regulations require monitoring for eight specified sanitary conditions and practices (referred to as SSOPs) regardless of whether these conditions and practices are related to hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (§ 123.11(b) and 120.6(a) and (b), respectively). The eight conditions and practices are:

- Safety of the water that comes into contact with food or food-contact surfaces or that is used in the manufacture of ice;

- Condition and cleanliness of food-contact surfaces, including utensils, gloves, and outer garments;
- Prevention of cross contamination from insanitary objects to food, food packaging material, and other food-contact surfaces, including utensils, gloves, and outer garments, and from raw product to processed product;
- Maintenance of hand washing, hand sanitizing, and toilet facilities;
- Protection of food, food packaging material, and food-contact surfaces from adulteration with lubricants, fuel, pesticides, cleaning compounds, sanitizing agents, condensate, and other chemical, physical, and biological contaminants;
- Proper labeling, storage, and use of toxic compounds;
- Control of employee health conditions that could result in the microbiological contamination of food, food packaging materials, and food-contact surfaces; and
- Exclusion of pests from the food plant.

The PMO HACCP Appendix essentially includes the same requirements as described in the HACCP regulation for juice (part 120) with respect to the eight conditions and practices. However, in the PMO HACCP Appendix these conditions and practices are referred to as “required prerequisite programs (PPs)” rather than SSOPs.

The eight areas for which sanitation monitoring is required in our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice are those elements of sanitation in current part 110 that we identified as the most likely to have an impact on the safety of food. FDA’s HACCP regulations impose mandatory monitoring, corrective action and recordkeeping for these activities to provide a framework to help ensure that the provisions of current part 110 that relate to the eight specific

elements of sanitation are addressed in a systematic way, resulting in greater compliance with those provisions.

The HACCP regulation for seafood recommends but does not require that processors develop written SSOPs for the eight areas of sanitation (§ 123.11(a)). The HACCP regulation for juice requires that an SSOP be developed for these areas but does not require that it be written (§ 120.6(a)). In contrast, proposed § 117.135(d) would require written procedures for identified areas of sanitation and, in addition to monitoring and corrective actions as required in seafood and juice HACCP for the eight areas of sanitation, proposed § 117.135(d) would require monitoring procedures and verification activities.

In considering the application of preventive controls to the eight sanitation controls and practices, we considered the different framework for sanitation controls under this regulation (e.g., the additional requirements) as compared to the juice and seafood HACCP regulations, the traditional role of SSOPs as part of prerequisite programs, and the broad diversity of the food industry covered by this regulation. We tentatively conclude that it is necessary to require that the two areas included in proposed § 117.135(d)(3) be addressed as preventive controls under subpart C and therefore be subject to requirements such as mandatory written procedures. Further, we tentatively conclude that for each of the other six areas, the current CGMPs are sufficient to address any hazards and further requirements in subpart C are not necessary. For these six areas, the value of mandating written procedures and other additional requirements (e.g., written monitoring procedures and verification) would not be significant because the relevant CGMP provisions in essence serve as the written procedures to which the facility must adhere. Some facilities may find value in adding more detail to the material contained in subpart

B, but FDA has tentatively concluded that that would not be necessary in order to ensure that the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur are significantly minimized or prevented.

For example, one of the six areas of sanitation is the safety of water used in food operations. In many facilities, the water is supplied by a municipal water authority that monitors the water and alerts its customers of any safety problems. Where facilities use well water, monitoring usually consists of an annual collection and analysis of the water for microbiological (and sometimes also chemical and radiological) safety. Another of the six areas contains provisions that ill workers must be excluded from operations where their presence could lead to contamination of food. A requirement in this regulation to develop written procedures for ensuring that this condition is met does not appear to be necessary, given the rather straightforward and universal nature of the controls (i.e., observe employees for signs of illness and redirect their activities accordingly). Similarly, procedures for ensuring the cleanliness of rest rooms or checking for the presence of pests appear to be unnecessary, given the rather straightforward and universal nature of the controls.

On the other hand, equipment cleaning procedures, as would be required by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) are very specific to the construction of the equipment, the nature of the food, the physical characteristics of the water used, the concentration of cleaning and sanitizing chemicals, the method of application, and the cleaning and sanitizing interval, among other things. For this reason, the procedures must be clearly stated to ensure that they are consistently followed. Often these procedures are performed by contract staff, often during night shifts where management is less likely to be present. In these circumstances, explicit cleaning procedures are essential.

Procedures to prevent cross-contact and cross-contamination, as required by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(B) are similarly complex and very situational. Identifying product and traffic flow within the facility, employee hand washing and sanitizing, and employee garbing requirements is critical to ensure that employees are trained on the correct procedures to ensure product safety.

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility take action to correct, in a timely manner, conditions and practices that are not consistent with the procedures that would be established in proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) or (B). Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which each require that the processor correct, in a timely manner, those sanitation conditions and practices that are not met (§§ 123.11(b) and 120.6(b), respectively). Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) also is consistent with 9 CFR 416, which requires, in general, that each establishment take appropriate corrective action(s) when the establishment's SSOPs or the implementation or maintenance of the SSOPs, may have failed to prevent direct contamination or adulteration of product(s); corrective actions must include procedures to ensure appropriate disposition of product(s) that may be contaminated, restore sanitary conditions, and prevent the recurrence of direct contamination or adulteration of product(s), including appropriate reevaluation and modification of the SSOPs or appropriate improvements in the execution of the SSOPs (9 CFR 416.15).

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(iii) would provide that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility is not required to follow the corrective actions that would be established in proposed § 117.145(a) and (b) when the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility takes action, in accordance with proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii), to correct conditions and practices that are not

consistent with the procedures in proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i) (A) or (B). As discussed in sections XII.F.2 and XII.F.3 of this document, proposed § 117.145(a) would require that the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written corrective action procedures that must be taken if preventive controls are not properly implemented, and outlines specific components that must be included. Proposed § 117.145(b) would require specific actions in the event of an unanticipated problem when a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action procedure has not been established or a preventive control is found to be ineffective. For sanitation controls, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) would require that the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility take action to correct, in a timely manner, conditions and practices that are not consistent with the established sanitation control practices.

There are many different ways in which conditions and practices for sanitation can deviate from the established procedures. In many instances the actions taken will be the same, regardless of the deviation. The corrective actions will generally involve re-establishing sanitary conditions (e.g., re-cleaning a piece of equipment) and/or retraining personnel to carry out the procedures correctly. In many instances the procedural deviations are not reasonably likely to impact product (e.g., insanitary food-contact surfaces are usually detected by a pre-production inspection of the equipment by plant personnel; deviations in cleaning solution strength rarely result in the production of unsafe product if other cleaning and sanitizing procedures were properly carried out). Thus, there is rarely a need to evaluate the impact of the sanitation failure on food and to prevent food from entering commerce, as would be required by proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(ii) and (iii). Because the corrective actions that will need to be taken for most sanitation controls are so general, we see little benefit in requiring a facility to develop written

corrective action procedures for the many sanitation deviations that could occur. We do expect the facility to take action to correct conditions and practices as appropriate to the situation as would be required by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii). The requirement in proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) to take action to correct, in a timely manner, sanitation conditions and practices that are not in accordance with procedures is consistent with proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(i), which would require that appropriate action be taken to identify and correct a problem with implementation of a preventive control to reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur.

Proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(iv) would require that all corrective actions taken in accordance with proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii) be documented in records that would be subject to verification in accordance with proposed § 117.150(c) and records review in accordance with proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i). The records that document corrective actions would be used to verify that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made and appropriate corrective actions are being taken.

#### 8. Proposed § 117.135(d)(4)--Recall Plan

Proposed § 117.135(d)(4) would require that preventive controls include, as appropriate, a recall plan as would be required by proposed § 117.137. Proposed § 117.135(d)(4) would incorporate the statutory definition of “preventive controls” from section 418(o)(3)(E) of the FD&C Act, which establishes that preventive controls may include a recall plan. We include the details of the recall plan in proposed § 117.137 and discuss it in section XII.D of this document.

#### 9. Proposed § 117.135(d)(5)--Other Controls

Proposed § 117.135(d)(5) would require that preventive controls for hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur include any other controls necessary to satisfy the requirements of proposed § 117.135(a) – i.e., to significantly minimize or prevent hazards

identified in the hazard analysis and to provide assurance that the food manufactured, processed, packed or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. For example, if a facility produces a refrigerated product that could support the growth of pathogens if proper temperature is not maintained during transportation, the facility must consider the need to implement preventive controls to minimize or prevent the potential for pathogen growth due to failure to control the temperature of the product during transportation. Most instances of failing to control temperature result primarily in quality issues such as product degradation or shortened shelf life, rendering the product unpalatable and thus precluding consumption. However, it is not common that products reach high enough temperatures for sufficient time to become hazardous due to growth of pathogens that may be present. For products that present a risk that pathogens would grow and present a health hazard, preventive controls could include temperature monitoring during transportation or other procedures that would ensure that product was not exposed to temperature/time intervals during transportation that would result in increased product temperatures for sufficient time to result in a potential safety issue. Often such procedures involve the shipper ensuring that product temperature is controlled during loading of the transportation vehicle, use of temperature recording devices that record the temperature of the transportation compartment during transportation, and the receiver verifying the temperature of product during transit as displayed by the temperature device.

FDA notes that some of the controls listed in section 418(o) of the FD&C Act are not explicitly identified in proposed § 117.135. In section XII.J of this document, we request comment on an environmental monitoring program (which section 418(o)(3)(C) of the FD&C Act indicates is one of the procedures, practices, and processes that preventive controls may



include, and which section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act identifies as a verification activity). In section XII.J of this document, we also request comment on a supplier approval and verification program as one of the procedures, practices, and processes that preventive controls may include (section 418(o)(3)(G)). In section XI.M, of this document, we request comment on supervisor, manager, and employee hygiene training. We discuss CGMPs in section XI of this document. Further, as discussed in section XII.C.7 of this document, training and CGMP controls are traditionally considered to be part of prerequisite programs, essential to effective preventive controls but often not part of them. FDA expects that compliance with those requirements in proposed part 117, subpart B will be sufficient. However, a facility may determine that in some circumstances it would be appropriate to include certain Current Good Manufacturing Practice provisions among their preventive controls (i.e., as “other controls” in proposed § 117.135(d)(6)).

#### 10. Proposed § 117.135(e)--Applicability of Monitoring, Corrective Actions, and Verification

Proposed § 117.135(e)(1)(i) through (iii) would specify that, except as provided by proposed § 117.135(e)(2), the preventive controls required under this section would be subject to monitoring as would be required by proposed § 117.140; corrective actions as would be required by proposed § 117.145; and verification as would be required by proposed § 117.150. Proposed § 117.135(e)(1)(i) through (iii) would restate the requirements of proposed §§ 117.140, 117.145, and 117.150 to clearly communicate the applicability of proposed §§ 117.140, 117.145, and 117.150 to the preventive controls that would be required under proposed § 117.135 and would establish no new requirements.

Proposed § 117.135(e)(2) would provide that the recall plan that would be established in proposed § 117.137 would not be subject to the requirements of proposed § 117.135(e)(1). A

recall plan would address food that had left the facility, whereas the proposed requirements for monitoring, corrective actions, and verification would all be directed at food while it remains at the facility. Thus, as proposed, the requirements for monitoring, corrective actions, and verification have limited applicability to a recall plan. However, a “mock recall” (i.e., a simulated recall situation) is a verification activity that could identify problems with a recall plan, enable a facility to correct the problems, and provide reasonable assurance that the recall plan would be effective in removing products from commerce. FDA requests comments on whether to include a requirement for a mock recall as verification activity in the final rule.

#### D. Proposed § 117.137--Recall Plan for Food With a Hazard That is Reasonably Likely to Occur

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(c) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that:

- Hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act] will be significantly minimized or prevented (section 418(c)(1) of the FD&C Act); and
- The food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act (section 418(c)(3) of the FD&C Act).

Under section 418(o)(3)(D), the procedures, practices, and processes described in the definition of preventive controls may include, in relevant part, a recall plan.

## 2. Proposed § 117.137--Recall Plan for Food With a Hazard That is Reasonably Likely to Occur

Proposed § 117.137(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish a written recall plan for food in which there is a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur. Although a recall is different from other preventive controls in that it is carried out after a product is distributed, it shares the purpose of significantly minimizing or preventing hazards, which is accomplished by limiting consumption of the affected food. Time is critical during a recall. A written recall plan is essential to minimizing the time needed to accomplish a recall; additional time during which the food is on the market can result in additional consumer exposure. Following an existing plan that addresses all necessary elements of a recall helps minimize delay created by uncertainty as to the appropriate actions to take and helps ensure critical actions are not overlooked.

Proposed § 117.137(a) would implement sections 418(c)(1) and (3) of the FD&C Act and 418(o)(3)(E) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex GPFH. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that a recall system be in place (Ref. 34). The GPFH recommends that managers ensure effective procedures are in place to enable the complete, rapid recall of any implicated lot of the finished food from the market (Ref. 44). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice do not include any requirements for a recall plan; recommendations for addressing a recall for food can be found in our general guidance on policy, procedures, and industry responsibilities regarding recalls in subpart C of part 7 (§§ 7.40 through 7.59). The guidance advises firms to prepare and maintain a current written contingency plan for use in initiating and effecting a recall (§ 7.59). Likewise, the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry does not require a recall plan; FSIS addresses recalls through guidance to industry.

Proposed § 117.137(b) would require that the recall plan include procedures that describe the steps to be taken, and assign responsibility for taking those steps, to perform the following actions:

- Directly notify the direct consignees of the product being recalled and how to return or dispose of the affected food (proposed § 117.137(b)(1));
- Notify the public about any hazard presented by the food when appropriate to protect public health (proposed § 117.137(b)(2));
- Conduct effectiveness checks to verify that the recall is carried out (proposed § 117.137(b)(3)); and
- Appropriately dispose of recalled food – e.g., through reprocessing, reworking, diverting to a use that does not present a safety concern, or destroying the food (proposed § 117.137(b)(4)).

Procedures that describe the steps to be taken would enable a facility to act promptly by following its plan when the facility determines that a recall is warranted rather than developing a plan of action after the need for a recall is identified. Procedures that assign responsibility for taking those steps would save the time needed to make such determinations during a recall and enable the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to clearly communicate such responsibilities to applicable managers or staff so that such managers or staff can take action as soon as the decision to conduct a recall is made.

Directly notifying direct consignees about the recall (proposed § 117.137(b)(1)) is the most effective mechanism to ensure direct consignees know that the product is being recalled and is consistent with our general guidance on recall communications in § 7.49(a). Further, instructing direct consignees how to return or dispose of an affected product minimizes the

chance the affected product will be disposed of improperly and allows direct consignees to act quickly. Further, it is consistent with our guidance on the content of recall communications in § 7.49(c)(4). We have provided guidance to industry on model recall letters (Ref. 164) (Ref. 165). This guidance may be useful in developing procedures for directly notifying direct consignees about the recall and on how to return or dispose of an affected product.

Notification procedures could identify a variety of communication means, including email, telephone, fax, text messaging, and urgent mail delivery. Notification procedures that would establish only a general notification to the public (e.g., through a press release or through information posted on a facility's Web site), without procedures for concurrent contact directly with direct consignees about how to access the general notification, would not satisfy proposed § 117.137(b)(1); a general notification to the public would rely on the chance that the direct consignees would see the information and may not be effective.

Notifying the public about any hazard presented by the food when appropriate to protect public health is a common practice (e.g., see FDA's Web site that provides information gathered from press releases and other public notices about recalls of food (Ref. 166)). Notifying the public in such circumstances is consistent with our guidance on a recall strategy that the purpose of a public warning is to alert the public that a product being recalled presents a hazard to health (§ 7.42(b)). Notifying the public, in addition to direct consignees, may not be necessary to protect the public if, for example, the food being recalled was all distributed to food service operations (who were notified as a direct consignee) and not distributed for retail sale.

Procedures in the recall plan for notifying the public could include model press releases and procedures for disseminating information to the public through press releases or other means, such as by information posted on the facility's Web site or provided to consumers using social

media. We have provided guidance to industry with examples of model press releases for the presence in food of undeclared food allergens and several foodborne pathogens, including Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes (Ref. 164) (Ref. 165) (Ref. 167) (Ref. 168) (Ref. 169).

An effectiveness check is a procedure designed to verify that all notified consignees have received notification about the recall and have taken appropriate action; procedures to conduct effectiveness checks would be consistent with our guidance on a recall strategy in § 7.42(c)(3). Procedures to conduct an effectiveness check could expand on the procedures used to directly contact consignees about the recall –e.g., to include forms for consignees to provide information about the amount of recalled product on hand, to include information on follow up contacts via phone or email, or to include personal visits to consignees by sales representatives. We have provided guidance to industry on conducting effectiveness checks (Ref. 164); this guidance includes a model effectiveness check letter (Ref. 170), a model effectiveness check response form that could be sent to a consignee (Ref. 171), and a model questionnaire to be used during effectiveness checks conducted by telephone or by personal visit (Ref. 172).

A facility that receives recalled product from their customers must appropriately dispose of the product – e.g., through reprocessing, reworking, diverting to a use that does not present a safety concern, or destroying the product. These types of disposition actions are similar to the disposition actions that a facility would consider as a corrective action as a result of a problem that is discovered before the product leaves the facility (see, e.g., the discussion of corrective actions in the final rule to establish our HACCP regulation for seafood; 60 FR 65096 at 65127). Procedures for disposition of a product can help the facility ensure that disposition of recalled product will be appropriate and will not present a risk to consumers. Implementation of such procedures is part of determining whether a recall can be considered terminated. Thus, having

procedures in place can result in more efficient completion of a recall. Under § 7.55, appropriate disposition of recalled product is a consideration in determining whether a recall is terminated.

We request comment on whether the procedures to be included in the recall plan (i.e., to directly notify consignees, to notify the public, to conduct effectiveness checks and to appropriately dispose of recalled product) are appropriate for all types of facilities or if they should be modified for certain facilities.

We request comment on whether we should require a recall plan to include procedures and assignments of responsibility for notifying FDA of recalls subject to the plan. Notifying FDA could enhance the effectiveness of a recall by allowing FDA to take appropriate steps to minimize the risk of illness or injury related to recalled products. As discussed in section II.A.6 of this document, notifying FDA of a reportable food is required by section 417 of the FD&C Act. Reportable food reports include information about whether a reportable food is being recalled. Thus, in some cases, reporting a recall to FDA could be accomplished by submitting a reportable food report required under section 417. In other cases, facilities could notify the local FDA district office of the recall.

#### E. Proposed § 117.140--Monitoring

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(a) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall monitor the performance of the preventive controls. Section 418(d) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall monitor the effectiveness of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act to provide assurances that the outcomes described in section 418(c)] shall be achieved. The outcomes relevant to this proposal are those that provide assurances that hazards identified in the

hazard analysis will be significantly minimized or prevented and that food manufactured, processed, packed or held by a facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

Section 418(g) of the FD&C Act requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility maintain records documenting the monitoring of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act.

Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

## 2. Monitoring in HACCP Systems

Proposed § 117.3 would define “monitor” to mean “to conduct a planned sequence of observations or measurements to assess whether a process, point, or procedure is under control and to produce an accurate record for use in verification.” We discussed this definition, and how it is used in HACCP systems, including in guidelines developed by NACMCF and Codex, in section X.B.4 of this document. Examples of monitoring activities include: visual observation and measurement of temperature, time, pH, and moisture level (Ref. 34). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines identify three purposes of monitoring (Ref. 34). First, monitoring is essential to managing food safety because it facilitates tracking of the operation (i.e., the “process, point or procedure” that is being controlled). This provides ongoing information about whether the process, point or procedure is under control (i.e., operating according to plan), and can provide information about shifts away from control. If monitoring indicates that there is a trend towards loss of control, a facility can take action to bring the process back into control before a deviation from a critical limit occurs. For example, if the temperature needed to ensure safety of roasted



nuts is 290°F, and the procedure for roasting the nuts in an oil roaster calls for an operating temperature of 350°F, monitoring would detect that the temperature in the oil roaster was dropping and enable the facility to identify and fix the problem with temperature before the temperature drops to 290°F. Second, monitoring is used to determine when a deviation occurs at a critical control point (i.e., exceeding or not meeting a critical limit), indicating there is loss of control. In the previous example, there would be loss of control if the temperature drops to 289°F. When a deviation occurs, an appropriate corrective action must be taken – e.g., stop the roasting process until the temperature in the oil roaster can be maintained above 290°F and reprocess nuts that were not roasted at the appropriate temperature. Third, monitoring provides written documentation for use in verification. For example, if the facility monitors the temperature of the oil roaster continuously, using a temperature recording device, the output of the temperature recording device is available during the verification activity of review of records. Under this approach, monitoring is directed to evaluating implementation of the preventive controls, and the written documentation of the monitoring is then used in verification.

### 3. Verification in HACCP Systems

Proposed § 117.3 would define “verification” to mean “those activities, other than monitoring, that establish the validity of the food safety plan and that the system is operating according to the plan.” We discussed this definition, and how it is used in HACCP systems, in section X.B.4 of this document. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines identify several aspects of verification (Ref. 34). One aspect of verification is the initial validation of the HACCP plan to determine that the plan is scientifically and technically sound, that all hazards have been identified and that if the HACCP plan is properly implemented these hazards will be effectively controlled. Another aspect of verification is evaluating whether the facility's HACCP system is

functioning according to the HACCP plan. Both of these aspects are directed at the effectiveness of a preventive control; they establish that the preventive control is scientifically valid for controlling the hazard and verify that the preventive control is accomplishing its intended purpose. The Codex HACCP Annex addresses verification as determining compliance with the HACCP plan and confirming that the HACCP system is working effectively (Ref. 35).

Examples of verification activities include review of monitoring records and review of records for deviations and corrective actions. We discuss verification activities in more detail during our discussion of proposed § 117.150 (Verification) in section XII.G of this document.

#### 4. Relationship Between Monitoring and Verification

Monitoring and verification are closely related; both address the performance of preventive controls, and verification relies in part on monitoring records to establish that preventive controls developed to significantly minimize or prevent hazards are being implemented according to plan. Three provisions of section 418(f) of the FD&C Act (Verification) are particularly relevant when considering the role of monitoring. First, section 418(f)(1) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that “the preventive controls implemented . . . are adequate to control the hazards identified. . . .” Second, section 418(f)(2) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that “the owner, operator, or agent is conducting monitoring. . . .” Third, section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that “the preventive controls implemented . . . are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards. . . .”

## 5. Monitoring the Performance of Preventive Controls

Section 418(a) requires monitoring the “performance” of preventive controls whereas section 418(d) requires monitoring their “effectiveness.” We tentatively conclude that the language of section 418 regarding monitoring is ambiguous and that it would be appropriate to require monitoring of the performance of preventive controls. “Performance” means “the execution or accomplishment of an action, operation, or process undertaken or ordered” (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, Fifth Ed. (2002), p. 2157) and is consistent with use of the term “monitoring” in traditional HACCP. Monitoring the performance of preventive controls would be undertaken to determine whether a facility is implementing its preventive controls and would generate records that would be used to verify implementation of the controls. For example, monitoring performance could include visual observations and measurements of temperature, time pH, and moisture level. In contrast, “effectiveness” refers to the quality of “having an effect or result” (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary, Fifth Ed. (2002), p. 794) and is not consistent with use of the term “monitoring” in traditional HACCP. The term “verification,” not “monitoring” is used to refer to effectiveness in traditional HACCP systems. Monitoring the effectiveness of preventive controls would evaluate whether the preventive controls were working.

Requiring monitoring of the effectiveness of the preventive controls would be redundant with required verification activities. Section 418(f) requires verification that the preventive controls “are effectively and significantly minimizing the occurrence of the identified hazards. . . .” The activities necessary for such verification are the same as would be required for monitoring the effectiveness of the preventive controls. For example, because effectiveness addresses whether the hazard is controlled, monitoring the effectiveness could include testing for the presence of the hazard, such as testing for the presence of staphylococcal enterotoxin that can

occur during cheese making if the pH does not drop to a low enough level in a short enough time. Further, requiring monitoring of effectiveness rather than performance of the preventive controls would create a significant gap in the preventive controls system if the factors that are critical to control of the hazard, e.g., pH of the cheese curd and time, are not monitored to ensure the process is implemented correctly. In contrast, monitoring the performance of preventive controls would provide evidence that the preventive controls established to control the identified hazards are implemented appropriately (e.g., pH of the cheese curd drops below 5.6 within 8 hours) and thereby are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards (e.g., staphylococcal enterotoxin).

As discussed more fully in the next section of this document, this interpretation also is grounded in our existing HACCP regulations and guidance. Section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act directs the Secretary, in promulgating these regulations, to review hazard analysis and preventive control programs in existence to ensure that this regulation is consistent to the extent practicable with applicable domestic and internationally-recognized standards in existence. Requiring monitoring of the performance of preventive controls is consistent with applicable domestic and internationally recognized standards.

Therefore, we tentatively conclude that this interpretation is reasonable, and we propose to adopt it in the proposed requirements implementing section 418(d) of the FD&C Act. We request comment on this interpretation.

#### 6. Proposed § 117.140--Monitoring

a. Proposed § 117.140(a)--Requirement for written procedures for monitoring. Proposed § 117.140(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written procedures, including the frequency with which they are to be performed, for

monitoring the preventive controls. Proposed § 117.140(a) would implement sections 418(d) and (h) of the FD&C Act.

Proposed § 117.140(a) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. We discuss the purposes that the NACMCF HACCP guidelines identify for monitoring under a HACCP system in section II.C.4.d of this document. Each of these purposes applies to preventive controls as well, and we tentatively conclude that these purposes would be achieved by proposed § 117.140(a). Proposed § 117.140(a) would facilitate tracking the implementation of the preventive controls to provide assurance that they are consistently performed; if monitoring indicates that there is a trend towards loss of control, a facility can take action to bring the process back into control before a preventive control is not properly implemented and potentially unsafe product is produced. Further, if monitoring is conducted with sufficient frequency to ensure preventive controls are consistently performed, it will detect if a preventive control is not properly implemented (e.g., if the temperature of an oven falls below the temperature needed to ensure safety), indicating loss of control and signaling the need for an appropriate corrective action. Finally, the proposed monitoring requirement would result in written documentation for use in verification.

The Codex HACCP Annex advises that monitoring procedures must be able to detect loss of control at the CCP and ideally should provide this information in time to make adjustments to ensure control of the process to prevent violating the critical limits. The Codex HACCP Annex also recommends that, where possible, process adjustments be made when monitoring results indicate a trend towards loss of control at a CCP, before a deviation occurs (Ref. 35). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry require in the written HACCP plan

monitoring of control measures to determine whether physical, chemical, or biological parameters are being met (i.e., monitoring of critical control points to ensure compliance with the critical limits) (§ 123.6(b) and (c)(4)), § 120.8(a) and (b)(4), and 9 CFR 417.2(b)(1) and (c)(4), respectively). Like the Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, the requirements for monitoring in proposed § 117.140(a) focus on evaluating performance of the preventive controls.

Proposed § 117.140(a) would require that the monitoring procedures be written. Under section 418(d) of the FD&C Act, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must monitor the effectiveness of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act, and under section 418(h) of the FD&C Act the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act must be included in the written plan. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines note under record-keeping and documentation procedures that the procedures for monitoring should be provided (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex includes “monitoring procedures” in its example of a HACCP worksheet (Ref. 35). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice and meat and poultry require that the HACCP plan be written (§§ 123.6(b), 120.8(a), and 9 CFR 417.2(b)(1), respectively) and that procedures for monitoring be included in the written HACCP plan (§§ 123.6(c)(4), 120.8(b)(4), and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(4), respectively).

Proposed § 117.140(a) would require that the monitoring procedures include the frequency with which they are to be performed. We discuss the frequency of monitoring in the next section of this document. Briefly, the frequency of monitoring must be sufficient to ensure that the preventive control is consistently performed in order to help ensure that the preventive control is effective. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines note that the frequency of monitoring

should be provided in the HACCP Plan Summary Table (Ref. 34). Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice and meat and poultry require that the written HACCP plan include the procedures, and frequency thereof, that will be used for monitoring (§§ 123.6(c)(4), 120.8(b)(4), and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(4), respectively).

b. Proposed § 117.140(b)--Frequency of monitoring. Proposed § 117.140(b) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility monitor the preventive controls with sufficient frequency to provide assurance that they are consistently performed. Proposed § 117.140(b) does not specify a single monitoring frequency applicable to all facilities and processes. Rather, it requires monitoring with “sufficient frequency” to assure that the preventive controls are consistently performed. Proposed § 117.140(b) would implement section 418(d) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex.

The NACMCF guidelines recommend continuous monitoring where possible (Ref. 34). Continuous monitoring is possible with many types of physical and chemical parameters. For example, the temperature and time for many thermal processes can be recorded continuously on temperature recording charts. If the temperature falls below the scheduled temperature or the time is insufficient, as recorded on the chart, the affected product can be retained and evaluated to determine the appropriate disposition. Examples of other parameters that can be monitored continuously include pressure, flow rate and pH.

However, the NACMCF guidelines acknowledge that continuous monitoring may not be possible, or even necessary, in all cases. For example, it may not be practical to continuously monitor the size of particles in a food to ensure they do not exceed the maximum dimensions that are required to ensure a process such as cooking, cooling, or acidification can be properly

implemented. NACMCF states that if monitoring is not continuous it may be difficult to ensure that the preventive controls are consistently implemented and a problem has not occurred. Thus, according to NACMCF, the frequency of non-continuous monitoring must be sufficient to ensure that a critical control point (or, in the case of this proposed rule, a preventive control) is under control (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex also notes that, if monitoring is not continuous, then the amount or frequency of monitoring must be sufficient to guarantee the CCP is in control (Ref. 35). The frequency of non-continuous monitoring would depend on factors such as the proximity of operating conditions to the conditions needed to ensure safety and the variability of the process. For example, if the temperature needed to ensure safety of roasted nuts is 290°F, non-continuous monitoring would need to be more frequent when an oil roaster for nuts is operated at 300°F than when the oil roaster is operated at 350°F. As another example, if temperatures vary by 10-15°F during processing, monitoring would need to be more frequent than if the variation is only 1-2 degrees.

As discussed in the previous section of this document, Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry require that the written HACCP plan include the procedures, and frequency thereof, that will be used for monitoring (§§ 123.6(c)(4), 120.8(b)(4), and 9 CFR 417.2(c)(4), respectively). Our Fish and Fishery Products Hazards and Controls Guidance discusses the frequency of monitoring and notes that the frequency of monitoring depends upon the circumstances, with continuous monitoring being desirable; in some cases, continuous monitoring may be necessary, while in other cases, it may not be necessary or practical (Ref. 173). Our Juice HACCP Hazards and Controls Guidance provides examples of “Summary HACCP Plans,” which show how the frequency of monitoring would depend on the circumstances (Ref. 4).



c. Proposed § 117.140(c)--Requirement for records. Proposed § 117.140(c) would require that all monitoring of preventive controls in accordance with proposed § 117.140 be documented in records that are subject to verification in accordance with § 117.150(b) and records review in accordance with proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i). Proposed § 117.140(c) would implement section 418(g) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that the records maintained for the HACCP system include records that are generated during the operation of the plan (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex gives records of CCP monitoring activities as an example of records (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that the HACCP plan provide for a recordkeeping system that documents the monitoring of the critical control points (§§ 123.6(c)(7) and 120.8(b)(7), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires records documenting the monitoring of CCPs and their critical limits, including the recording of actual times, temperatures, or other quantifiable values.

The monitoring records would be used to verify that the preventive controls are adequate, as would be required by proposed § 117.150(a), and to verify that the preventive controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, as would be required by proposed § 117.150(d). This is further discussed in section XII.G.5.b of this document. Together, proposed §§ 117.140(a), (b), and (c) and 117.150(a), (b), and (d) would establish a system that would provide assurance that hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act will be significantly minimized or prevented and that food manufactured, processed, packed or held by such facility

will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

#### F. Proposed § 117.145--Corrective Actions

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act, in relevant part, specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act.

Section 418(e) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall establish procedures to ensure that, if the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act are not properly implemented or are found to be ineffective:

- Appropriate action is taken to reduce the likelihood of recurrence of the implementation failure (section 418(e)(1) of the FD&C Act);
- All affected food is evaluated for safety (section 418(e)(2) of the FD&C Act); and
- All affected food is prevented from entering into commerce if the owner, operator or agent in charge of such facility cannot ensure that the affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act (section 418(e)(3) of the FD&C Act).

Section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards.

## 2. Proposed § 117.145(a)--Corrective Action Procedures

Proposed § 117.145(a)(1) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written corrective action procedures that must be taken if preventive controls are not properly implemented. Having written procedures in place would enable facilities to act quickly and appropriately when preventive controls are not properly implemented – e.g., when a parameter associated with heat processing exceeds a maximum value or falls below a minimum value. Proposed § 117.145(a)(1) would implement section 418(e) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry.

The NACMCF HACCP guidelines define a corrective action as procedures followed when a deviation occurs at a CCP and recommend that specific corrective actions be developed in advance for each CCP and included in the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex advises that specific corrective actions be developed for each CCP in the HACCP system (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that processors take corrective action whenever a deviation from a critical limit occurs, either by following specific corrective action procedures specified in the regulation, or by following procedures in written corrective action plans that the processor develops (§§ 123.7 and 120.10, respectively). If the processor of a seafood or juice product covered by the applicable HACCP regulation develops such plans, they must be included in the written HACCP plan (§§ 123.6(c)(5) and 123.7(b) and 120.8(b)(5), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that the written HACCP plan identify the corrective action to be followed in response to a deviation from a critical limit (9 CFR 417.3(a)).

As discussed in section XII.C.4 of this document, the proposed rule would establish requirements for preventive controls (which may be at critical control points), and proposed § 117.135(c)(2) would require that the preventive controls include, as appropriate to the facility and the food, the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any physical, biological, radiological, or chemical parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur (which reflects the NACMCF definition of a critical limit). As already noted earlier in this section, if a parameter associated with heat processing falls below a minimum value, corrective action would be triggered. Thus, the concept in the proposed rule of taking corrective action when a preventive control is not properly implemented is similar to the concept in HACCP systems of taking corrective action for a deviation from a critical limit at a critical control point.

The benefits from identifying corrective action procedures in advance of the need to actually take corrective action largely derive from having the procedures in written form. Written corrective action procedures would be essential to the facility's food safety team, to auditors, and to inspectors. The facility's food safety team will be responsible for ensuring that appropriate corrective actions are taken if preventive controls are not properly implemented. Having access to appropriate, written corrective action procedures determined in advance of the need for such action can ensure that correct and complete actions are taken in a timely fashion without the need for the team to meet and decide on the appropriate action. Having written corrective action procedures available for auditors and for inspectors is essential for them to assess the adequacy of the food safety plan; the procedures a facility will use to address implementation failures are essential to the production of safe food, and without them a complete assessment cannot be made. Written corrective action procedures also would be useful for

training purposes, so that employees who would need to implement the corrective action procedures will be prepared for what they would need to do.

Proposed § 117.145(a)(2) would implement section 418(e) of the FD&C Act (i.e., that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish corrective action procedures) and section 418(h) of the FD&C Act (i.e., that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must prepare a written plan). Proposed § 117.145(a)(2) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and with Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, and juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that specific corrective actions be included in the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). In its discussion of corrective actions, the Codex HACCP Annex advises that deviation and product disposition procedures be documented in the HACCP record keeping (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice both require that the written HACCP plan include any corrective action plans that have been developed by the processor (§§ 123.6(c)(5) and 123.7(b) and 120.8(b)(5)). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that the written HACCP plan identify the corrective action to be followed in response to a deviation from a critical limit (9 CFR 417.3(a)).

Proposed § 117.145(a)(2) would require that corrective action procedures describe the steps to be taken to ensure that:

- Appropriate action is taken to identify and correct a problem with implementation of a preventive control to reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur (proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(i));
- All affected food is evaluated for safety (proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(ii)); and
- All affected food is prevented from entering into commerce, if the owner, operator or agent in charge of such facility cannot ensure that the affected food is not adulterated

under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act (proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(iii)).

The hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls in this proposed rule are designed to identify hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, and to significantly minimize or prevent the occurrence of such hazards and provide assurances that such food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. However, a preventive controls system, similar to a HACCP system (Ref. 34), accounts for the possibility of implementation and effectiveness problems and includes procedures for addressing those problems and any affected food.

Proposed § 117.145(a)(2) would implement sections 418(e)(1)-(3) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that corrective actions include elements to determine and correct the cause of non-compliance and to determine the disposition of non-compliant product (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex advises that the specific corrective actions must ensure that the CCP has been brought under control and that actions taken must also include proper disposition of the affected product (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice establish that a corrective action plan that is appropriate for a particular deviation is one that describes the steps to be taken and assigns responsibility for taking those steps, to ensure that no product enters commerce that is either injurious to health or is otherwise adulterated as a result of the deviation, and the cause of the deviation is corrected (§§ 123.7(b) and 120.10(a), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that the HACCP plan describe the corrective action to be taken, and assign responsibility for taking corrective action, to ensure: (1) the cause of the

deviation is identified and eliminated; (2) the CCP will be under control after the corrective action is taken; (3) measures to prevent recurrence are established; and (4) no product that is injurious to health or otherwise adulterated as a result of the deviation enters commerce (9 CFR 417.3(a)).

Section 418(e)(1) of the FD&C Act and proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(i) explicitly require that action be taken to reduce the likelihood of recurrence of the implementation failure. Although not prescribed by proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(i), reducing the likelihood of recurrence of an implementation failure is best accomplished by identifying the root cause of failure and then taking action to address that root cause. If the root cause is not identified and corrected, it is more likely that the failure will recur. For example, if the temperature of a heat process cannot be maintained, a corrective action to raise the temperature using the controller may correct the problem short-term. However, if the root cause is a lack of boiler capacity to run multiple heating units at the same time, corrective action should address replacing the boiler to increase capacity. Similarly, if a facility cannot cool a food rapidly enough in a refrigerator to meet the cooling times and temperatures in its HACCP plan, the initial corrective action may be to move product into a freezer for cooling. If the root cause is determined to be that the product was filled too high in the cooling tray, the corrective action may be to include procedures to measure the depth of product in the tray. If the root cause is determined to be insufficient cooling capacity to remove heat from the amount of product being cooled, the corrective action may involve using a cooling unit with greater cooling capacity or changing the method of cooling, e.g., to a blast freezer.

Proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(ii) and (iii), would require that corrective action procedures include an evaluation of all food affected by a problem and procedures for ensuring that affected

food is prevented from entering into commerce if the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility cannot ensure that the affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. Such an evaluation is implicit in our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice (§§ 123.7(b) and 120.10(a)) in that these sections do not explicitly require that food affected by the problem be evaluated, but do require that steps be taken to ensure that product that is injurious to health or otherwise adulterated does not enter commerce. Although our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice do not specify the steps that must be described in a corrective action plan, the regulations require that specific steps be taken when a deviation from a critical limit occurs and the processor does not have a corrective action plan that is appropriate for that deviation (§§ 123.7(c) and 120.10(b), respectively). Under these regulations, required steps include segregating and holding effected product, performing or obtaining a review to determine the acceptability of the affected product for distribution and taking corrective action, when necessary, to ensure that no product enters commerce that is either injurious to health or is otherwise adulterated as a result of the deviation. FDA notes that the corrective action procedures in the HACCP regulations do not reference misbranding under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. Section 403(w) of the FD&C Act was added to the FD&C Act by the Food Allergen Labeling and Consumer Protection Act of 2004 (Public Law 108-282, Title II), which was enacted after issuance of both the seafood and juice HACCP regulations. However, our HACCP regulation for juice includes the presence of undeclared ingredients that may be allergens as a potential hazard that must be considered in the hazard analysis (§ 120.7(c)(8)), and our Fish and Fishery Products Hazards and Controls Guidance (Fourth Edition) (Ref. 173) and Juice HACCP Hazards and Controls Guidance (Ref. 4) both include recommendations directed to hazards from undeclared food allergens.



### 3. Proposed § 117.145(b)--Corrective Action in the Event of an Unanticipated Problem

Proposed § 117.145(b)(1) would require that if a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action has not been established, or a preventive control is found to be ineffective, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility take corrective action to identify and correct the problem, evaluate all affected food for safety, and, as necessary, prevent affected food from entering commerce as would be done following a corrective action procedure under proposed § 117.145(a)(2)(i)-(iii). However, a facility might not anticipate all of the problems that may occur, and a facility may experience an implementation failure for which a corrective action procedure has not been established. Regardless of whether a problem was anticipated and a corrective action procedure was developed in advance, corrective actions to accomplish the steps that would have been included in a corrective action procedure are necessary. Likewise, a facility might determine (e.g., as a verification activity in accordance with proposed § 117.150(d), discussed in section XII.G.5 of this document), that a preventive control is ineffective. For example, detecting a pathogen in an RTE food may signal that preventive controls for that pathogen are ineffective. As in the case of an unanticipated implementation failure of a preventive control, corrective actions would be necessary if a preventive control is found to be ineffective.

Proposed § 117.145(b)(1) is consistent with Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that, when a deviation from a critical limit occurs and the processor does not have a corrective action plan that is appropriate for that deviation, the processor segregate and hold the affected product; perform or obtain a review to determine the acceptability of the affected product for distribution; take corrective action, when necessary, with respect to the affected product to ensure that no product

enters commerce that is either injurious to health or is otherwise adulterated as a result of the deviation; and take corrective action, when necessary, to correct the cause of the deviation (§§ 123.7(c)(1)-(4) and 120.10(b)(1)-(4), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry (9 CFR 417.3(b)) requires, in relevant part, that if a deviation not covered by a specified corrective action occurs, or if another unforeseen hazard arises, the establishment must: (1) segregate and hold the affected product, at least until the requirements of 9 CFR 417.3(b)(2) and (3) are met; (2) perform a review to determine the acceptability of the affected product for distribution; and (3) take action, when necessary, with respect to the affected product to ensure that no product that is injurious to health or otherwise adulterated, as a result of the deviation, enters commerce. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex are silent on the specific issue of taking corrective actions when a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action has not been established or when a preventive control has been found to be ineffective. However, proposed § 117.145(b)(1) is consistent with HACCP principles, discussed earlier in this section, recommended in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and Codex HACCP Annex regarding the importance of corrective actions whenever there is a deviation from a critical limit. In each of the situations described (following an established corrective action, taking corrective action in the absence of a plan, or taking corrective action when the preventive control is found to be ineffective) the intent of taking corrective action is to restore control and to ensure that hazardous foods do not reach the consumer.

Proposed § 117.145(b)(2) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility reanalyze the food safety plan in accordance with proposed § 117.150(f) to determine whether modification of the food safety plan is required if a preventive control is not properly

implemented and a specific corrective action has not been established, or if a preventive control is found to be ineffective. (We use the term “reanalyze” when we refer to a reassessment of the validity of a preventive control or the food safety plan to control a hazard.) Under proposed § 117.150(a), the verification required by section 418(f) of the FD&C Act would include validation of the food safety plan, referring to whether it is effectively controlling the hazards or “working correctly.” See section XII.G of this document for a discussion of proposed requirements for verification (including validation and reanalysis) under section 418(f) of the FD&C Act. Proposed § 117.145(b)(2) would apply to unanticipated food safety problems, and the unanticipated nature of the problems is relevant to the reanalysis of the food safety plan. If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility has assessed its procedures, practices, and processes and has not identified a specific failure as a foreseeable occurrence, the owner, operator, or agent in charge must assess whether the problem is simply an implementation failure that could be expected to occur in the normal course of manufacturing, processing, packing or holding the food, or the result of a system-wide problem that is not being properly addressed by the plan (e.g., ineffective preventive controls). If the problem is simply an implementation failure, and such a failure is now a foreseeable circumstance, reanalysis of the food safety plan would be necessary to determine whether a corrective action procedure should be established for that foreseeable failure. Likewise, if the problem is the result of a system-wide problem that is not being properly addressed by the plan (or is otherwise a result of ineffective preventive controls), reanalysis of the food safety plan would be necessary to identify effective preventive controls. Either way, reanalyzing the food safety plan and modifying it as necessary would be necessary to reduce the risk of recurrence of the problem.

Proposed § 117.145(b)(2) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines, in relevant part, recommend that validations (i.e., an assessment of the validity of the HACCP plan) be conducted when there is an unexplained system failure (e.g., an implementation failure or ineffective preventive controls) (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex, in relevant part, advises that verification procedures be used to determine if the HACCP system is working correctly (Ref. 35); such verification procedures would also be used if an unexpected implementation failure of a preventive control suggests that the system is not working correctly. Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, in relevant part, require that, when a deviation from a critical limit occurs and the processor does not have a corrective action plan that is appropriate for that deviation, the processor must perform or obtain timely reassessment or verification by a trained individual to determine whether modification of the HACCP plan is required to reduce the risk of recurrence of the deviation and to modify the HACCP plan as necessary (§§ 123.7(c)(5) and 120.10(b)(5), respectively). The FSIS regulation for meat and poultry requires, in relevant part, that if a deviation not covered by a specified corrective action occurs, or if another unforeseen hazard arises, the establishment must perform or obtain reassessment to determine whether the newly identified deviation or other unforeseen hazard should be incorporated into the HACCP plan (9 CFR 417.3(b)(4)). (The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry uses the term “reassessment” much as this proposed rule would use the term “reanalysis.”)

#### 4. Proposed § 117.145(c)--Documentation.

Proposed § 117.145(c) would require that all corrective actions taken in accordance with this section be documented in records that are subject to verification in accordance with §

117.150(c) and records review in accordance with § 117.150(d)(2)(i). The records that document corrective actions would be used to verify that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made and appropriate corrective actions are being taken.

#### G. Proposed § 117.150--Verification

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(f) of the FD&C Act requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that:

- The preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act are adequate to control the hazards identified under [section 418(b) of the FD&C Act (section 418(f)(1) of the FD&C Act);
- The owner, operator, or agent is conducting monitoring in accordance with section 418(d) of the FD&C Act (section 418(f)(2) of the FD&C Act);
- The owner, operator, or agent is making appropriate decisions about corrective actions taken under section 418(e) of the FD&C Act (section 418(f)(3) of the FD&C Act);
- The preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards, including through the use of environmental and product testing programs and other appropriate means (section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act); and
- There is documented, periodic reanalysis of the plan under section 418(i) of the FD&C Act to ensure that the plan is still relevant to the raw materials, conditions and processes in the facility, and new and emerging threats (section 418(f)(5) of the FD&C Act).

In addition, section 418(g) of the FD&C Act specifies, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall maintain, for not less than 2 years, records

documenting the monitoring of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act, instances of nonconformance material to food safety, the results of testing and other appropriate means of verification under section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act, instances when corrective actions were implemented, and the efficacy of preventive controls and corrective actions.

Further, section 418(i) of the FD&C Act specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall conduct a reanalysis under section 418(b) of the FD&C Act (the requirement to identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards) whenever a significant change is made in the activities conducted at a facility operated by such owner, operator, or agent if the change creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard or not less frequently than once every 3 years, whichever is earlier. Such reanalysis shall be completed and additional preventive controls needed to address the hazard identified, if any, shall be implemented before the change in activities at the facility is operative. The owner, operator, or agent shall revise the written plan required under section 418(h) of the FD&C Act if such a significant change is made or document the basis for the conclusion that no additional or revised preventive controls are needed. The Secretary may require a reanalysis under section 418(i) of the FD&C Act to respond to new hazards and developments in scientific understanding, including, as appropriate, results from the Department of Homeland Security biological, chemical, radiological, or other terrorism risk assessment.

## 2. Proposed Requirements for Validation

a. Proposed § 117.150(a)--Validation that preventive controls are adequate to control the hazard. Proposed § 117.150(a) (Validation) would require that, except as provided by paragraph

(a)(3), the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility validate that the preventive controls identified and implemented in accordance with § 117.135 to control the hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur are adequate to do so. Proposed § 117.150(a) would implement section 418(f)(1) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP guidelines, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines describe verification as activities that, in relevant part, determine the validity of the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). The NACMCF guidelines advise that an important aspect of verification is the initial validation of the HACCP plan to determine that the plan is scientifically and technically sound, that all hazards have been identified and that, if the HACCP plan is properly implemented, these hazards will be effectively controlled (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP guidelines recommend that, where possible, validation activities include actions to confirm the efficacy of all elements of the HACCP system (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulation for seafood does not specifically use the term “validation,” but it reflects the concept in requiring that every processor verify that the HACCP plan is adequate to control the hazards (§ 123.8(a)). Our HACCP regulation for juice addresses both validation of the HACCP plan (§ 120.11(b)) and the hazard analysis (§ 120.11(c)). The regulation requires each processor to validate that the HACCP plan is adequate to control food hazards that are reasonably likely to occur at least once within 12 months after implementation and at least annually thereafter. (This annual validation is the same as reanalysis proposed in § 117.150(f) and discussed in section XII.G.7 of this document. The requirement for validation of the hazard analysis in § 120.11(c) aligns more with a requirement for reanalysis and is discussed in section XII.G.2.a of this document). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry (9 CFR 417.4(a)) requires that every establishment validate the HACCP plan’s adequacy

in controlling the food safety hazards identified during the hazard analysis. The regulations and guidelines described above reflect the widespread recognition of the importance of ensuring that preventive controls, if properly implemented, will adequately control the hazards.

b. Proposed § 117.150(a)(1)--Validation by a qualified individual prior to implementation and on reanalysis. Proposed § 117.150(a)(1) would require that the validation of the preventive controls be performed by (or overseen by) a qualified individual. The preventive controls must be adequate to control the hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur. Determining whether specific preventive controls are adequate requires an individual who is knowledgeable in the hazards associated with a product and process and the appropriate preventive controls for those hazards. Such knowledge requires scientific and technical expertise developed through training, experience or both.

Proposed § 117.150(a)(1)(i) would require that validation occur prior to implementation of the food safety plan or, when necessary, during the first six weeks of production. The validation of preventive controls includes collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information (or, when such information is not available or is insufficient, conducting studies), as discussed in the next section of this document. The collected data or information, or the studies, would establish a scientific and technical basis for the preventive controls used, in particular those that involve critical control points. This scientific and technical basis largely must be established prior to producing a product to ensure that the food produced using those preventive controls will be safe. However, as a practical matter, the scientific and technical basis for some aspects of a preventive control may require production conditions and, thus, would be established by the collection of data or information during, rather than before, producing a product. For example, ensuring that limits for control parameters can be met during production



would be done under production conditions. FDA tentatively concludes that preventive controls that require the collection of data or information, or studies, during production conditions are part of validation, and, thus proposed § 117.150(a)(1)(i) would require that the validation of preventive controls be performed, when necessary, during the first six weeks of production. We selected six weeks as a time interval that would be adequate to allow facilities to methodically collect data and information during production, yet would be close to implementation of a preventive control.

The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that initial validation be conducted prior to and during initial implementation of the plan (Ref. 34). A Codex document entitled “Guidelines for the Validation of Food Safety Control Measures” (hereinafter the Codex validation guidelines) recommends that validation of control measures be performed, whenever possible, before their full implementation (Ref. 127). Codex also includes as a validation measure the collection of data, e.g., product and/or environmental sampling and testing, during operating conditions in the food operation for a specified period (e.g., 3-6 weeks) (Ref. 127). The HACCP regulation for juice requires that validation of HACCP plans be conducted once during the year after implementation and at least annually thereafter (§ 120.11(b)). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry (9 CFR 417.4(a)) requires that initial validation be conducted upon completion of the hazard analysis and development of the HACCP plan to determine that the HACCP plan is functioning as intended (9 CFR 417.4(a)(1)). During the HACCP plan validation period, the meat or poultry establishment must repeatedly test the adequacy of the CCPs, critical limits, monitoring and recordkeeping procedures, and corrective actions set forth in the HACCP plan (9 CFR 417.4(a)(1)).

FDA requests comment on whether the proposed time frame for validation should be shorter or longer. Comments should provide the basis for an alternative time frame.

Proposed § 117.150(a)(1)(ii) would require that the validation of the preventive controls be performed whenever a reanalysis of the food safety plan reveals the need to do so. The circumstances under which a reanalysis would be required are addressed in proposed § 117.150(f). Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(ii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility complete such reanalysis and implement any additional preventive controls needed to address the hazard identified, if any, before the change in activities at the facility is operative, or, when necessary, during the first six weeks of production. All preventive controls established to address a hazard identified as reasonably likely to occur must have a scientific and technical basis; establishing that scientific and technical basis is a validation activity regardless of whether the preventive control is established in the facility's initial food safety plan or as a result of reanalysis of the food safety plan.

c. Proposed § 117.150(a)(2)--Validation based on scientific and technical information.

Proposed § 117.150(a)(2) would require that, except as provided by paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the validation of preventive controls include collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information or, when such information is not available or is insufficient, conducting studies to determine whether the preventive controls, when properly implemented, will effectively control the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines note that information needed to validate the HACCP plan often includes (1) expert advice and scientific studies and (2) in-plant observations, measurements and evaluations (Ref. 34). The Codex validation guidelines address several approaches for validating control measures, including (1) reference to scientific or technical literature, previous validation studies

or historical knowledge, (2) scientifically valid experimental data, (3) collection of data during operating conditions, (4) mathematical modeling, and (5) surveys, and note that these may be used individually or in combination (Ref. 127).

The scientific and technical information that would be evaluated to determine whether preventive controls effectively control the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur may include scientific publications, government documents, predictive mathematical models and other risk-based models, and technical information from equipment manufacturers, trade associations, and other sources. If the qualified individual conducting the validation relies on sources such as scientific publications, the qualified individual would need to ensure during validation that the conditions used by the facility are consistent with those described in the publication that is being used to support the adequacy of the preventive control measure to control the hazard. For example, if a study demonstrates adequate inactivation of Salmonella spp. in peanuts using a roasting process, conditions such as roaster temperature, heating time, bed depth and humidity that were critical to achieving inactivation in the study must be the same when the facility roasts peanuts (or any change in the critical parameters must be such that the same or greater lethality is achieved). Documents published by FDA, such as the Food Code (Ref. 174), the Pasteurized Milk Ordinance (Ref. 37), and the Fish and Fisheries Products Hazards and Controls Guidance (Ref. 173) may provide scientific and technical information useful in establishing the validity of a preventive control measure, such as times and temperatures for cooling foods in which bacterial pathogen growth may occur or minimum water activities, minimum pH values, and minimum and maximum temperatures for growth of a variety of pathogens.

Predictive mathematical models that describe the growth, survival, or inactivation of microorganisms in foods may provide scientific and technical information useful in determining whether a process would be adequate to reduce microorganisms of public health concern (Ref. 34) (Ref. 127). Other risk-based models may examine the impact of a control measure on a hazard and may be useful if appropriately validated for a specific food. If the model is for a different food, it may still provide useful validation information that could be supplemented by additional data. For example, there are many mathematical models for thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. If a model for the thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. is developed for the same type of food as the food being produced, and the food being produced has the same critical parameters such as pH and  $a_w$  that were used in developing the thermal resistance model, then heat processes based on the model would generally be considered validated. For example, if a model for the thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. is developed in tomatoes with a pH of 4.3, the model would be considered valid for tomatoes with a pH of 4.3 or below, but not for tomatoes with a higher pH. If, however, the model is for thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. in a type of food that is only similar to the food being produced, or has different critical parameters than were used in developing the thermal resistance model, it would be necessary to conduct additional thermal resistance studies in the food being produced to provide the data needed to show that a heat process adequately reduces Salmonella spp. in that food and to establish the critical parameters for the process. For example, a model for thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. on almonds may not apply to hazelnuts, even though the foods are similar in that both are tree nuts. The extent of such studies would, however, be less than the extent of such studies if there were no data on the heat resistance of Salmonella spp. in a similar food. For example, if the thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. in initial studies with hazelnuts is similar to

that for almonds, then a thermal resistance study used to develop data for hazelnuts could investigate fewer times and temperatures, or use fewer replicates, than would be the case in the absence of the information about the thermal resistance of Salmonella spp. in almonds.

A process validation study would establish the relationship between parameters such as process times and temperatures and other factors and the rate at which pathogens are reduced, and a prevalence study would determine the levels at which pathogens may occur in the raw material, ingredient, or food product to establish the cumulative amount of pathogen reduction that would be required to adequately reduce the risk of illness from that pathogen. Such studies are typically published or otherwise broadly disseminated within the scientific community and, when properly designed and carried out, are generally regarded by experts as scientifically definitive with respect to the matters addressed by the study. However, if scientific and technical information is not available or is insufficient to support the adequacy of a preventive control measure to control the hazard, the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility would need to conduct controlled scientific studies to establish that a preventive control measure is adequate to control the hazard. As an example, a facility that wants to use propylene oxide (PPO) to inactivate enteric pathogens such as E. coli O157:H7 on shelled hazelnuts would need to conduct studies to establish that PPO could significantly minimize the hazard because no such studies currently exist in the public domain. Such studies would also establish the critical parameters and limits (e.g., critical limits at a CCP) that the facility would need to use to effectively control the hazard. For the hazelnut example, the critical factors might include amount of PPO, temperature of the nuts to be treated, treatment time, chamber temperature, PPO vaporizer temperature, chamber vacuum, and post-treatment hold time and temperature. Studies on inactivation of Salmonella spp. on almonds could provide information about appropriate

parameters to investigate for the inactivation of E. coli O157:H7 on shelled hazelnuts, but additional studies would be needed to establish the specific values for those parameters in the inactivation of E. coli O157:H7 on shelled hazelnuts.

Information is available in the literature that can assist in the design of studies to support the adequacy of preventive control measures. For example, NACMCF has published information on “Parameters for Determining Inoculated Pack/Challenge Study Protocols” (Ref. 175) and “Requisite Scientific Parameters for Establishing the Equivalence of Alternative Methods of Pasteurization” (Ref. 176). Studies to validate preventive control measures must be conducted by persons with experience and expertise relevant to the product, process and hazard to be controlled. Under proposed § 117.150(a)(1)), any studies needed to provide the scientific and technical information to establish the validity of the plan would either be conducted by a qualified individual (as would be defined in proposed § 117.3) or would be overseen by a qualified individual. In other words, the qualified individual need not have the experience and expertise to conduct validation studies, but must have sufficient expertise in risk-based preventive controls to understand the studies and how they support the validity of the preventive controls with respect to the hazard of concern.

d. Proposed § 117.150(a)(3)--Preventive controls for which validation is not required

Proposed § 117.150(a)(3)(i) through (iii) would provide that validation need not address:

- The food allergen controls that would be established in proposed § 117.135(d)(2);
- The sanitation controls that would be established in proposed § 117.135(d)(3);

and

- The recall plan that would be established in proposed § 117.137.

According to NACMCF, verification involves activities to determine the validity of the HACCP plan and that the system is operating according to the plan (Ref. 34). Thus, validation is a verification activity. The purpose of validation is to provide the scientific and technical basis for ensuring that the preventive controls implemented are adequate to control the hazards identified as reasonably likely to occur. FDA tentatively concludes that validation, i.e., the evaluation of scientific and technical information, is either not an essential activity, is not practical or is not relevant, for the controls identified in proposed § 117.150(a)(3).

Food allergen controls.

As discussed in section XII.C.6 of this document, proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(i) would require that food allergen controls include those procedures, practices, and processes employed for ensuring protection of food from cross-contact, including during storage and use. Examples of such procedures, practices, and processes include providing physical barriers between sections of a facility, conducting manufacturing/processing of foods in different parts of a facility, and controlling the movement of tools and personnel that might carry allergens when the same production lines are used for both foods that contain allergens and foods those that do not, or when the same production lines are used for foods that contain different allergens. These types of controls generally are not evaluated through scientific studies or by the collection of technical information as would be required under proposed § 117.150(a)(2). Instead, monitoring (e.g., by visual observation) that these activities do not result in cross-contact provides sufficient assurance that the controls are functioning as intended to prevent the hazard of undeclared allergens in the food due to cross-contact. Examples of such visual observations include observations that bags of allergenic foods (such as soy flour) are stored in sealed containers, that spills of allergen powders are promptly cleaned, and that equipment is cleaned between

manufacturing/processing of different foods. Thus, FDA tentatively concludes that this proposed rule should not propose to require validation of the adequacy of the food allergen cross-contact controls that would be established in proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(i). We request comment on this approach.

As discussed in section XII.C.6 of this document, proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(ii) would require that food allergen controls include those procedures, practices, and processes employed for labeling the finished food, including, including ensuring that foods are not misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. Examples of such procedures, processes, and practices include ensuring that the food label correctly declares all of the food allergens present (including those contained in flavorings, colorings, and incidental additives), ensuring that the correct food label is applied to a food, and ensuring that the correct food is in the correct package (e.g., by checking that the correct packaging is used for each food). These types of controls generally are not evaluated through scientific studies or by the collection of technical information as would be required under proposed § 117.150(a)(2). Instead, verifying that labels contain appropriate information and monitoring that the correct label is being applied to the product provide sufficient assurance that the controls are functioning as intended to prevent the hazard of undeclared allergens in the food due to incorrect labels. Thus, FDA tentatively concludes that this proposed rule should not propose to require validation of the adequacy of the food allergen labeling controls that would be required by proposed § 117.135(d)(2)(ii). We request comment on this approach.

#### Sanitation controls.

As discussed in section XII.C.7 of this document, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) would require that, where relevant to hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, sanitation controls



include procedures for the cleanliness of food-contact surfaces, including food-contact surfaces of utensils and equipment. Traditionally, sanitarians employed by the facility or experts employed by companies that supply cleaning and sanitizing compounds will establish critical parameters and associated limits for cleaning and sanitation, including the choice and strength of the cleaning and sanitizing chemicals, contact time, and temperature requirements, based on studies conducted by the manufacturers of the products. Antimicrobial solutions applied to food processing equipment and utensils to sanitize such objects after they have been washed are included in the definition of "pesticide chemical" and therefore, are subject to regulation by EPA under section 408 of the FD&C Act (Ref. 118). Chapter 4 (Additional Considerations for Antimicrobial Products) of EPA's "Pesticide Registration Manual" (Ref. 177) outlines EPA's requirements and recommendations for registration of antimicrobial substances, including testing against a validated protocol to be granted EPA-registered claims for pathogen reduction. Thus, FDA tentatively concludes that this proposed rule should not propose to require validation of the adequacy of the sanitation controls that would be required by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A). Monitoring activities to ensure the procedures are followed will provide assurance that the controls are functioning as intended to prevent hazards from insanitary food-contact surfaces. We request comment on this approach.

As discussed in section XII.C.7 of this document, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(B) would require that, where relevant to hazards that are reasonably likely to occur, sanitation controls include procedures for the prevention of cross-contact and cross-contamination from insanitary objects and from employees to food, food packaging material, and other food-contact surfaces and from raw product to processed product. As already discussed with respect to proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A), sanitation controls to prevent cross-contamination can be established by

sanitarians or by companies that supply cleaning and sanitizing compounds without the need for validation by the facility. Cleaning procedures established by sanitation experts should also be adequate to remove allergens from equipment and the environment in facilities where raw materials or ingredients containing allergens are used. Although it is prudent to validate the efficacy of cleaning with respect to allergens, appropriate allergen test methods may not be available at present for this purpose in all situations (Ref. 124). For example, when the same equipment is used to make milk-based and soy-based beverages, the availability of analytical methods that can detect milk protein and soy protein may make it practical to clean the equipment and then test a water rinse of the system to determine whether milk or soy proteins can be detected in the rinse water. However, this may not be the case when equipment used to make breaded shrimp is subsequently used to make breaded fish. We tentatively conclude that validation by the facility to demonstrate that sanitation controls adequately protect against cross-contact is not feasible for all situations at this time.

Regardless of whether this proposed rule would require the specific verification activity of validation to demonstrate that sanitation controls adequately protect against cross-contact, proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(i)(A) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish appropriate allergen sanitation procedures to ensure that products do not contain undeclared allergens from other products. Cleaning procedures established to remove food residues and verification that food residues have been removed (e.g., by visual inspection) should significantly minimize or prevent the presence of undeclared food allergens. When appropriate tests are available, we recommend that facilities use testing as well as visual inspection to verify that procedures have been done adequately. We request comment on this approach. We also request comment on whether we should require validation of sanitation controls to protect

against cross-contact in those situations where appropriate analytical methods for use in validation studies are currently available, even if such methods are not available for all major food allergens.

Recall plan.

As discussed in section XII.C.8 of this document, a recall plan can significantly minimize or prevent hazards by limiting consumption of affected food during a recall. Following an existing plan that addresses all necessary elements of a recall helps minimize delay created by uncertainty as to the appropriate actions to take and helps ensure critical actions are not overlooked. The proposed requirement to validate a preventive control by collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information or by conducting studies simply does not apply to such a plan. Thus, FDA tentatively concludes that this proposed rule should not propose to require validation of the recall plan that would be required by proposed § 117.137.

3. Proposed § 117.150(b)--Verification of Monitoring

Proposed § 117.150(b) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that monitoring is being conducted, as would be required by proposed § 117.140. One example of verification that monitoring is being conducted is a periodic observation of the monitoring activity, e.g., by a supervisor. Another example of such a verification activity is an independent test made by a person other than the person doing the monitoring. For example, if the line operator is verifying the operation of a metal detector by running test pieces through the metal detector every two hours to verify it rejects them, a quality assurance technician could periodically run a similar test - e.g., once per shift. Proposed § 117.150(b) does not address the review of monitoring records, which would be required under proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i) (see the discussion in section XII.G.5.b of this document).

Proposed § 117.150(b) would implement section 418(f)(2) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, which requires direct observations of monitoring activities as an ongoing verification activity (9 CFR 417.4(a)(2)(ii)). Proposed § 117.150(b) would differ from the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), the Codex HACCP guidelines (Ref. 35), and FDA's HACCP regulations for seafood and juice (§§ 123.8(a)(3)(i) and 120.11(a)(1)(iv)(A), respectively), which address verification of monitoring through the review of records (which would be required by proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i)) but do not otherwise address verification activities for monitoring.

Proposed § 117.150(b) would not specify the verification activities that must be conducted for monitoring. We request comment on whether proposed § 117.150(b) should do so, and if so, what verification activities should be required.

#### 4. Proposed § 117.150(c)--Verification of Corrective Actions

Proposed § 117.150(c) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made, as would be required by proposed § 117.145 and by proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(ii). An example of verification that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made is observation of the corrective actions being taken, e.g., by a supervisor. Proposed § 117.150(c) would implement section 418(f)(3) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, which includes direct observations of corrective actions as an ongoing verification activity (9 CFR 417.4(2)(ii)). Proposed § 117.150(c) would differ from the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 34), the Codex HACCP guidelines (Ref. 35), and FDA's HACCP regulations for seafood and juice (§§ 123.8(a)(3)(ii) and 120.11(a)(1)(iv)(B), respectively), which address verification of corrective actions through the review of records (which would be required by

proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i)) but do not otherwise address verification activities for corrective actions.

Proposed § 117.150(c) would not specify the verification activities that must be conducted for corrective actions. We request comment on whether proposed § 117.150(c) should do so, and if so, what verification activities should be required.

#### 5. Proposed § 117.150(d)--Implementation and Effectiveness

Proposed § 117.150(d) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility verify the preventive controls are consistently implemented and are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. This must include the requirements in proposed § 117.150(d)(1) and (2), as appropriate to the facility and the food. Proposed § 117.150(d) would implement section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act, which requires in relevant part verification by “appropriate means” that the preventive controls “are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards.”

a. Proposed § 117.150(d)(1)--Calibration. Proposed § 117.150(d)(1) would require calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments. As discussed in section II.D.3 of this document, the combination of monitoring (proposed § 117.140(a)), recordkeeping (proposed § 117.175), and verification (proposed § 117.150(a) and (d)) would establish a system that would provide assurance that hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act would be significantly minimized or prevented and that food manufactured, processed, packed or held by such facility would not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. In many instances, monitoring and verification activities rely on instruments (such as a pH meter or a thermometer) that must be calibrated. Calibration provides assurance that an

instrument is measuring accurately. If these instruments are not properly calibrated, the values they provide may not provide the necessary assurance that hazards will be significantly minimized or prevented. If an instrument is calibrated against a known reference, the reference standard may also need periodic calibration (e.g., the standard reference thermometer used to calibrate a thermometer used in processing equipment will itself also need to be calibrated periodically).

Instrument calibration is performed on a regular or periodic basis based upon the type of instrument being used and its sensitivity to factors such as the operating environment and the wear and tear of ongoing use. The type of instruments used in a particular facility and the manner of their use will largely determine the need for, and the frequency of, calibration, and the frequency of calibration is often prescribed by the instrument manufacturer. Therefore, proposed § 117.150(d)(1) would not specify a frequency for calibration.

b. Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)--Records review. Proposed § 117.150(d)(2) would require a review of specific records related to monitoring, corrective actions and certain verification activities within specified time frames, by (or under the oversight of) a qualified individual, to ensure that the records are complete, the activities reflected in the records occurred in accordance with the food safety plan, the preventive controls are effective, and appropriate decisions were made about corrective actions. Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i) would require review of the monitoring and corrective action records within a week after the records are made. Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(ii) would require review of the records related to calibration within a reasonable time after the records are made. (As discussed in section XII.I.2 of this document, proposed § 117.175 would list the records that facilities must establish and maintain, including records that

document the monitoring of preventive controls as required by § 117.140(c), corrective actions as required by § 117.140(d), and verification activities as required by § 117.150(g)).

Proposed § 117.150(d)(2) would implement section 418(f) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP guidelines, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines provide examples of verification activities, including review of the HACCP plan for completeness, review of monitoring records, and review of records for deviations and corrective actions (Ref. 34). The examples of verification activities in the Codex HACCP Annex include a review of the HACCP plan and its records (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood (§ 123.8(a)(3)(i) through (iii)) and juice (§ 120.11(a)(1)(iv)(A) through (C)) require a review of the records that document the monitoring of critical control points, the taking of corrective actions, the calibrating of any process control instruments used at critical control points, and the performing of any periodic end-product or in-process testing that is part of the processor's verification activities. The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires a review of all required records (9 CFR 417(a)(2)(iii)).

Proposed § 117.150(d)(2) would establish that the purpose of the review of records would be to ensure that the records are complete, the activities reflected in the records occurred in accordance with the food safety plan, the preventive controls are effective, and appropriate decision were made about corrective actions. We tentatively conclude that review of the records required by proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i) and (ii) would accomplish these purposes. Reviewing monitoring records can reveal whether they contain information on all the parameters that were to be monitored to determine whether a process is delivered in accordance with the food safety plan. For example, if both the size of food particles to be acidified and the pH of the food after

acidification are critical to the safety of the food, review of the monitoring records would demonstrate whether both particle size and pH were monitored and whether the values were within specified parameter values. Reviewing monitoring records can reveal whether a process followed the procedures specified in the facility's food safety plan (e.g., if the monitoring records show the pH of every other batch of an acidified food when the plan specified the measurement of every batch). Review of monitoring records also can reveal whether any information is missing – e.g., a designated lot number – so that the missing information can be quickly identified and added to the record if necessary. We seek comment on this proposal.

If the review of the records reveals that the records do not contain all information specified by the food safety plan, or that the procedure in the food safety plan was not followed, the facility will not be able to conclude that its preventive controls were implemented in accordance with its food safety plan for those activities. Because the food safety plan establishes the procedures needed to ensure preventive controls are effective, if the records review indicates that the plan is not being followed, e.g., the records are missing critical information or the activities were not performed as specified in the plan, the facility will not be able to conclude its preventive controls were effective. For example, if the records show that food particle size is not being determined or that the particles are too large, acidification of all parts of the particle may not occur rapidly enough to ensure control of pathogens such as C. botulinum. If the plan requires determination of the pH of each batch of product but the records do not show that the pH was measured on all batches, the facility cannot be sure that the pH of those batches is correct, again posing a potential risk from C. botulinum. As a result, the facility would not be able to verify that its preventive controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards as required by Section 418(f) of the FD&C Act.



Review of records can also reveal whether appropriate decisions were made about corrective actions. The review should determine whether all the corrective action procedures required by proposed § 117.145(a)(3) have been followed, e.g., that actions are taken to prevent recurrence of the problem, that affected food has been evaluated for safety, and that affected food is prevented from entering commerce unless it can be determined that the food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act. For example, a food safety plan may require that each package of product pass through a properly functioning metal detector and that the operator determine every two hours whether metal test pieces of a specified type and size are rejected when passed through the metal detector. If one of the test pieces was not rejected but production continued until a supervisor doing a verification check noted the problem, then corrective actions should have been taken and a corrective action record produced. A review of the corrective action records should reveal that all packages of product that passed through the metal detector since the last test showing the metal detector was functioning appropriately were held and passed through a functioning metal detector before being released into commerce. The records should also show that the metal detector was adjusted to reject the metal test pieces before it was used again to check product during production.

Proposed § 117.150(d)(2) would require that the review of records be performed by (or under the oversight of) a qualified individual (see the discussion in section XII.H of this document regarding the activities that must be performed (or overseen) by a qualified individual as would be established in proposed § 117.155). The review of records is critical to assessing the facility's application of the preventive controls system and, thus, is fundamental to ensuring its successful operation. Our HACCP regulations for seafood (§ 123.8(a)(3)) and juice (§

120.11(a)(1)(iv)) require that the review of records be conducted by an individual who has successfully completed training in the application of HACCP principles to the processing of the applicable food product at least equivalent to that received under standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by FDA, or who is otherwise qualified through job experience to perform this function. The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that records be reviewed, “preferably” by an individual trained by successfully completing a course of instruction in the application of the HACCP principles to meat or poultry product processing (9 CFR 417.5(c) and 417.7(b)). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines stress the role of qualified experts in the development and evaluation of a HACCP plan, and recommend periodic comprehensive verification of the HACCP system by an unbiased, independent authority, internal or external to the food operation, including review of appropriate records from operation of the plan (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex does not specifically address the need for a qualified individual to review the records other than to recommend that where certain verification activities cannot be performed in-house, verification be performed on behalf of the business by external experts or qualified third parties (Ref. 35).

Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i) would require review of the monitoring and corrective action records within a week after the records are made. Although proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(i) would establish a more frequent review of these records than recommended in the NACMCF guidelines (which recommend monthly verification of monitoring records and corrective action records), it is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood (§ 123.8(a)(3)(i) and (ii)) and juice (§ 120.11(a)(1)(iv)(A) and (B)), which require that the review of monitoring records and corrective action records occur within one week of the day that the records are made. Even for shelf-stable foods (e.g., low-acid canned foods and acidified foods) our experience has demonstrated that

review of these kinds of records is a critical verification tool (60 FR 65096 at 65133). We seek comment on the proposed one week timeline. The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires records to be reviewed prior to shipping product (9 CFR 417.5(c)). As discussed in the seafood HACCP final rule (60 FR 65096 at 65132), review of records needs to occur with sufficient frequency so as to ensure that any problems in the design and implementation of the HACCP plan are uncovered promptly and to facilitate prompt modifications. The concept is roughly that of a “feedback loop,” with information coming out of the record review process in such a timely manner that it can have impact on the production of subsequent lots of the product. If a problem with product is discovered during a review of records, all product since the last review could be affected. Although verification prior to shipment provides a valuable added assurance, FDA explained in the preamble to the seafood HACCP final rule (60 FR 65096 at 65132) that with highly perishable products this is not always possible and that a weekly review of monitoring and corrective action records would provide for timely feedback of information and limit the amount of product impacted by any problems identified during the review of the records.

Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(ii) would require review of the records related to calibration within a reasonable time after the records are made. The review of calibration records will depend in part on the frequency with which calibrations occur, which will be established in the food safety plan. If calibrations occur daily, it would be reasonable to review these records weekly. Where several instruments are calibrated each month, a monthly review of all the calibrations would be reasonable. Consequently, FDA tentatively concludes that setting a specific frequency for review of these records is not warranted. Proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(ii) is, in relevant part, consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood (§ 123.8(a)(3)(iii)) and juice

(§ 120.11(a)(1)(iv)(C)), which require that the review of records of calibrating of any process control instruments used at critical control points occur within a reasonable time after the records are made.

As noted previously, proposed § 117.150(d)(2) would require a review of records in part to determine whether the preventive controls are effective. A review should determine whether monitoring and corrective actions have been done in accordance with the food safety plan and whether the instruments used in monitoring and verification were properly calibrated. If food safety activities appropriate to the facility have been conducted in accordance with the plan and this is reflected in the records, the facility thus verifies the preventive controls are effective, i.e., that its preventive controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards as required by Section 418(f) of the FD&C Act.

#### 6. Proposed § 117.150(e)--Written Procedures for Verification Activities

Proposed § 117.150(e) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written procedures for the frequency of calibrating process monitoring instruments and verification instruments. We are proposing to require written procedures for the frequency of calibration because the frequency of calibration will vary depending on the instrument and the process or verification activity that it pertains to.

We are not proposing to require that written procedures be developed for all verification procedures. In some instances the records of verification activities provide the information needed to understand how the verification activity has been carried out and to assess whether the verification activity is adequately demonstrating that the preventive controls are effective in significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards reasonably likely to occur. For example, we are not proposing to require written procedures for validation, verification of monitoring and

corrective actions, or calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments (other than for the frequency of calibration). Validation involves a variety of procedures, including evaluation of scientific and technical information and conducting laboratory and in-plant studies that generally do not follow a standardized protocol or approach. Records of monitoring and corrective actions provide the information needed to understand how the verification activity was carried out. In many instances the calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments will be done by contract with other entities and the facility would not have access to the procedures used; having instruments calibrated and documenting the calibration provides the necessary assurance that such instruments will be accurate. However, the frequency of calibration must be specified to ensure that the instruments are calibrated on a schedule appropriate to the instrument and the process it controls.

Section 418(f) of the FD&C Act establishes certain requirements for verification, and section 418(h) of the FD&C Act requires that the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 be included in the written plan. Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice both require that the HACCP plan be written (§§ 123.6(b) and 120.8(a), respectively) and that procedures for verification be included in the written HACCP plan (§§ 123.6(c)(6) and 120.8(b)(6), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that the establishment maintain a record of the written HACCP plan, including, in relevant part, documents supporting the verification procedures selected and the frequency of those procedures (9 CFR 417.5(a)(2)). Thus, requiring verification procedures to be written implements the requirements in section 418 of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the requirements in HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat/poultry.

## 7. Proposed § 117.150(f)--Reanalysis

a. Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)--Reanalysis on the initiative of the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility. Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility conduct a reanalysis of the food safety plan:

- At least once every 3 years (proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(A));
- Whenever a significant change is made in the activities conducted at a facility operated by such owner, operator, or agent in charge if the change creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard (proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(B));
- Whenever such owner, operator or agent in charge becomes aware of new information about potential hazards associated with the food (proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(C));
- Whenever a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action procedure has not been established (proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(D)); and
- Whenever a preventive control is found to be ineffective (proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(E)).

For example, if a facility that bottles beverages develops a food safety plan for its products packaged in plastic bottles and subsequently introduces a glass bottling line, the facility would be required to reanalyze its food safety plan because the glass bottling line creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard, i.e., glass particles. Similarly, if a facility that conducts dry roasting operations for nuts makes design changes to its roasters to increase product throughput, the facility would be required to reanalyze its food safety plan because a design change to equipment that is used to control a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur would be a significant change in the activities conducted at the facility.

The owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility may become aware of a problem due to the finding of a hazard in a food as the result of testing by a regulatory agency (Federal, State, tribal, or foreign government) that would require an analysis of the food safety plan to ensure the hazard is significantly minimized or prevented by appropriate preventive controls. In addition, new hazards can emerge – e.g., as identified through the investigation of outbreaks of foodborne illness by CDC or other public health agencies. For example, L. monocytogenes was not recognized as a food safety hazard until a series of outbreaks of foodborne illness associated with the consumption of foods such as coleslaw and fresh soft cheese in the early 1980s (Ref. 178). As another example, in 2006-2007 there was an outbreak of salmonellosis due to contamination of peanut butter with Salmonella Tennessee (Ref. 63). This was the first outbreak of foodborne illness caused by peanut butter consumption in the U.S. and it demonstrated the need for manufacturers to address the hazard of Salmonella spp. in this product. Information about outbreaks and ensuing product recalls is widely disseminated, including on FDA's Web site, and modern communication tools make it possible for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to receive such information automatically. For additional discussion related to the proposed requirement that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility conduct a reanalysis whenever such owner, operator or agent becomes aware of new information about potential hazards associated with the food, see the discussion in section XII.G.7 of this document of proposed § 117.150(f)(3), which would provide that FDA may require a reanalysis of the food safety plan to respond to new hazards and developments in scientific understanding.

As noted in section XII.F.3, proposed § 117.145(b)(2) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility reanalyze the food safety plan in accordance with proposed § 117.150(f) to determine whether modification of the food safety plan is required if a

preventive control is not properly implemented or is found to be ineffective, and a specific corrective action has not been established. If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility has not identified a specific failure as a foreseeable occurrence, the deviation may be the result of a system-wide problem that is not being properly addressed by the food safety plan (e.g., ineffective preventive controls). Thus, an unforeseen failure for which a corrective action was not identified may indicate an ineffective preventive control, and a reanalysis of the food safety plan is warranted. Similarly, when information arises indicating that the preventive control has not been effective in significantly minimizing or preventing a hazard from occurring, a reanalysis must be conducted to determine if the food safety plan should be modified to ensure that the preventive controls implemented are adequate to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard identified as reasonably likely to occur.

Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i) would implement sections 418(f)(5) and 418(i) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP guidelines, the Codex validation guidelines, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. FDA notes that the terminology used in relation to the concept of “reanalysis” varies in the regulations and guidelines (e.g., “subsequent validation,” “re-validation,” “reassessment of the hazard analysis,” and “validation” of the HACCP plan). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines include validation of a HACCP plan to ensure that the plan is scientifically and technically sound and that all hazards have been identified as an important verification activity, and advise a subsequent validation under circumstances such as an unexplained system failure; a significant product, process or packaging change; or the recognition of new hazards (Ref. 34). The NACMCF HACCP guidelines also discuss the need for a periodic comprehensive verification of the HACCP system, including a technical evaluation of the hazard analysis and each element of



the HACCP plan, independent of other verification procedures to ensure that the HACCP plan is resulting in control of the hazards. If the results of the comprehensive verification identify deficiencies, the HACCP team modifies the HACCP plan as necessary (Ref. 34). Likewise, the Codex HACCP Annex recommends that the HACCP application be reviewed and necessary changes made when any modification is made in the product, process, or any step (Ref. 35). The Codex validation guidelines provide examples of situations that could lead to the need to re-validate a control measure or combination of control measures, e.g., system failure, process changes, and new scientific or regulatory information (Ref. 127).

Our HACCP regulation for seafood requires a reassessment of the adequacy of the HACCP plan whenever any changes occur that could affect the hazard analysis or alter the HACCP plan in any way, or at least annually (§ 123.8(a)(1)). Our HACCP regulation for juice requires an initial validation within 12 months after implementation and at least annually or whenever any changes in the process occur that could affect the hazard analysis or alter the HACCP plan in any way (§ 120.11(b)). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires that every establishment reassess the adequacy of the HACCP plan at least annually and whenever any changes occur that could affect the hazard analysis or alter the HACCP plan (9 CFR 417.4(a)(3)).

In addition, Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry require a reassessment of the hazard analysis when a processor does not have a HACCP plan (because the hazard analysis revealed no hazards reasonably likely to occur) and there are changes that could affect whether a food safety hazard now exists (§§ 123.8(c) and 120.11(c), and 9 CFR 417.4(a)(4) for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, respectively). Each of these HACCP regulations provides examples of changes that may be considered to reasonably affect whether a

food safety hazard now exists and, thus, require reassessment of the adequacy of the hazard analysis (§§ 123.8(a)(1) and 120.11(b) and 9 CFR 417.4(a)(4)). Such changes include changes in raw materials or the source of raw materials; product formulation; processing methods or systems, including computers and their software; packaging; finished product distribution systems; the intended use or consumers of the finished product; and slaughter or processing methods or systems for meat or poultry.

The requirement in proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(i)(A) that the periodic reanalysis of the food safety plan occur at least once every 3 years would be different from the current requirement in our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice and in the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry for reassessment (validation) of the adequacy of the HACCP plan to be done “at least annually” (§§ 123.8(a)(1) and 120.11(b) and 9 CFR 417.4(a)(3), respectively). The 3-year minimum frequency for the periodic reanalysis of the food safety plan is explicitly required by section 418(i) of the FD&C Act. We tentatively conclude that, as a practical matter, the proposed requirement for reanalysis whenever a significant change is made in the activities conducted at a facility if the change creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard makes it likely that reanalysis would occur more frequently than every 3 years because such changes are likely to occur more frequently than every 3 years.

Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(ii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility complete the required reanalysis and implement any additional preventive controls needed to address the hazard identified, if any, before the change in activities at the facility is operative or, when necessary, during the first 6 weeks of production. The purpose of the reanalysis is to identify the need for, and implement, preventive controls in light of a reasonable

potential for a new hazard, or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard, that is reasonably likely to occur. It follows that the preventive controls must be in place before making the change that creates the potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard. As with initial validation in proposed § 117.150(a)(1)(i), we are proposing to provide the first six weeks of production, when necessary, to implement any additional preventive controls to allow facilities to methodically collect data and information during production to ensure the needed change can be implemented in the facility. We seek comment on this timeframe. Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(ii) would implement section 418(i) of the FD&C Act. Although proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(ii) has no explicit counterpart in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP guidelines, or Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry, it is consistent with the importance placed on reanalysis of the HACCP plans in those guidelines and regulations and with requirements to modify the HACCP plan immediately whenever validation reveals the need to do so, as discussed immediately below.

Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(iii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility revise the written plan if a significant change is made or document the basis for the conclusion that no additional or revised preventive controls are needed. Proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(iii) would implement section 418(i) of the FD&C Act, which requires that the written plan be revised “if ... a significant change is made or document the basis for the conclusion that no additional or revised preventive controls are needed.” As discussed in section XII.B.2.b of this document, the written hazard analysis is required even if the conclusion of the analysis is that there are no hazards reasonably likely to occur. It is also important to document that a reanalysis has been conducted even if no change has been made, as required by section 418(i) of the FD&C Act. Such documentation demonstrates that a facility has considered all

relevant information on the safety of the products being produced, including new information that has become available since the last analysis, and determined that current procedures for implementing preventive controls are adequate to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. Our HACCP regulations for juice and seafood, and the FSIS regulation for meat and poultry, require that the HACCP plan be modified immediately whenever a validation/reassessment reveals that the plan is no longer adequate to fully meet the requirements of the HACCP regulations (§§ 120.11(b) and 123.8(a)(1) and 9 CFR 417.4(a)(3) for juice, seafood, and meat/poultry, respectively), although they do not explicitly require documentation of the basis for the conclusion that no additional or revised preventive controls are needed. Although proposed § 117.150(f)(1)(iii) has no explicit counterpart in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines or the Codex HACCP guidelines, it is consistent with the importance placed on reanalysis of the HACCP plans in those guidelines and regulations, and with the written nature of the HACCP plan. The Codex validation guidelines indicate that if a system failure for which a process deviation cause cannot be identified occurs, re-validation may be needed (i.e., reanalysis is needed whenever a preventive control is found to be ineffective) (Ref. 127).

b. Proposed § 117.150(f)(2)--Requirement for a qualified individual. Proposed § 117.150(f)(2) would require that the reanalysis be performed or overseen by a qualified individual. Proposed § 117.150(f)(2) is consistent with proposed §§ 117.126(c) which would require that the food safety plan be developed or overseen by a qualified individual. We tentatively conclude that the same qualifications are needed whether initially conducting a hazard analysis and establishing a food safety plan, or reanalyzing a hazard analysis and plan.

c. Proposed § 117.150(f)(3)--Reanalysis on the initiative of FDA. Proposed § 117.150(f)(3) establishes that FDA may require a reanalysis of the food safety plan to respond

to new hazards and developments in scientific understanding. This authority will be delegated to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs. Proposed § 117.150(f)(2) would implement section 418(i) of the FD&C Act, which provides in relevant part that “[t]he Secretary may require a reanalysis . . . to respond to new hazards and developments in scientific understanding . . . .” As discussed in section XII.G.7.a of this document, new hazards can emerge – e.g., as identified through the investigation of outbreaks of foodborne illness by CDC or other public health agencies. In addition, new developments can occur in the scientific understanding of existing or potential hazards – e.g., if scientists and food safety regulatory agencies develop a better understanding of the causes of these events. For example, the outbreak from Salmonella Tennessee in peanut butter resulted in a greater understanding of the risks posed by environmental contamination and the importance of control of water in facilities producing low-moisture foods (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179). Information submitted to the RFR – which is a relatively recent addition to the regulatory framework for food safety – has the potential to identify new hazards or routes of contamination even before outbreaks occur. For example, the January 2011 RFR Annual Report (Ref. 60) identified a high number of primary reports involving Salmonella spp. in spices and seasonings, and we have requested comments and scientific data and information to assist us in our plans to conduct a risk profile for pathogens and filth in spices (75 FR 20615, April 20, 2010). The purpose of the risk profile is to ascertain the current state of knowledge about spices contaminated with microbiological pathogens and/or filth, and the effectiveness of current and potential new interventions to reduce or prevent illnesses from contaminated spices.

## 8. Proposed § 117.150(g)--Requirement for Records for Verification

Proposed § 117.150(g) would require that all verification activities taken in accordance with this section be documented in records. Proposed § 117.150(g) would implement section 418(g) of the FD&C Act and is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that the records maintained for the HACCP system include records that are generated during the operation of the plan and includes verification records as an example of HACCP records in an appendix (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex gives records of verification procedures performed as an example of records (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that recordkeeping include the calibration of process-monitoring instruments (§§123.8(d) and 120.11(a)(2), respectively). The FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry requires records documenting the calibration of process-monitoring instruments, as well as verification procedures and results.

### H. Proposed § 117.155--Requirements Applicable to a Qualified Individual

Proposed § 117.155(a) would require that one or more qualified individuals prepare the food safety plan (proposed § 117.126(c)), validate the preventive controls (proposed § 117.150(a)(1)), review records for implementation and effectiveness of preventive controls (proposed § 117.150(d)(2)), and perform reanalysis of the food safety plan (proposed § 117.150(f)(2)). We have discussed the basis for requiring that a trained individual perform or oversee these functions in our discussion of each applicable proposed provision. We are listing the functions that must be performed by a trained individual in § 117.155(a) for simplicity and are not imposing any additional requirement through this list. A single individual with

appropriate qualifications could perform all of the listed functions, but there would be no requirement for the same individual to perform all the listed functions.

Proposed § 117.155(b) would establish the qualification requirements applicable to a qualified individual. To be qualified, an individual must have successfully completed training in the development and application of risk-based preventive controls at least equivalent to that received under a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by the FDA, or be otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system. Training or job experience is essential to the effective development and implementation of a hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls. Only a trained individual or individual qualified by job experience is capable of effectively executing certain activities, such as identifying hazards that are reasonably likely to occur; identifying preventive controls that will address those hazards; evaluating scientific and technical information to determine whether the food safety plan, when properly implemented, will effectively control the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur; determining the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any biological, chemical, physical, or radiological parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur; determining whether monitoring procedures and corrective action procedures are appropriate; and determining whether specific corrective actions have been appropriate and effective. In addition, the products produced by the food industry are diverse, and the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur in a particular facility depend on a range of factors that vary from one facility to the next. We seek comment on the scope of the qualifications identified.

Proposed § 117.155 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, and USDA's HACCP regulations for meat and poultry. The

NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that experts who are knowledgeable in the food process either participate in or verify the completeness of the HACCP plan (Ref. 34). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice both require that only a trained individual be responsible for developing the hazard analysis (juice only), developing the HACCP plan, verifying and modifying the HACCP plan, and performing the record review (§§ 123.10(a)-(c) and 120.13(a)(1)-(4), respectively). These regulations also provide that job experience will qualify an individual to perform these functions if it has provided knowledge at least equivalent to that provided through the standardized curriculum. USDA's HACCP regulations for meat and poultry require that only an individual who has completed a training course can conduct certain activities, such as development and modification of the HACCP plan (9 CFR § 417.7).

FDA did not conduct HACCP training for persons subject to our HACCP regulations for seafood or juice. However, when implementing those regulations, FDA worked with an alliance of representatives from Federal and State agencies, industry and academia, to create a uniform, core training program that serves as the standardized curriculum against which other course materials can be judged. FDA will be working with an alliance to develop such a standardized curriculum for any final rule establishing requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls. Having a standardized curriculum on which facilities, as well as private organizations and academia that conduct training, can base their materials and training would provide a framework to ensure minimum training requirements are met.

Proposed § 117.155(b) also would provide that the qualified individual may be, but is not required to be, an employee of the facility. FDA expects that some facilities may rely on assistance from qualified individuals that are not employees of the facility, such as individuals associated with universities, trade associations, and consulting companies. Proposed §



117.155(b) is consistent with HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which have virtually identical requirements (§§ 123.10 and 120.13(b), respectively). The option in proposed § 117.155(b) would provide flexibility to facilities subject to the rule. Such flexibility may be particularly important for those facilities that have limited technical expertise.

Proposed § 117.155(c) would require that all applicable training be documented in records, including the date of the training, the type of training, and the person(s) trained. Such records would be a simple mechanism to demonstrate that a person has successfully completed training in the development and application of risk-based preventive controls at least equivalent to that received under a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by the FDA, as would be required under proposed § 117.155(b) should the qualified individual not be otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system.

#### I. Proposed § 117.175--Records Required for Subpart C

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(g) of the FD&C Act, in relevant part, specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall maintain, for not less than 2 years, records documenting the monitoring of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act, instances of nonconformance material to food safety, the results of testing and other appropriate means of verification under section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act, instances when corrective actions were implemented, and the efficacy of preventive controls and corrective actions.

Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act, in relevant part, specifies that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act, including analyzing the hazards under section 418(b) of the FD&C Act and identifying the

preventive controls adopted under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act to address those hazards.

Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act also specifies that the written plan, together with the documentation described in Section 418(g) of the FD&C Act, shall be made promptly available to a duly authorized representative of the Secretary upon oral or written request.

## 2. Proposed § 117.175--Records Required for Subpart C

Proposed § 117.175(a)(1) through (5) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and maintain the following records:

- The written food safety plan, including the written hazard analysis, preventive controls, monitoring procedures, corrective action procedures, verification procedures, and recall plan;
- Records that document the monitoring of preventive controls;
- Records that document corrective actions;
- Records that document verification, including, as applicable, those related to validation; monitoring; corrective actions; calibration of process monitoring and verification instruments; records review; and reanalysis; and
- Records that document applicable training for the qualified individual.

Proposed § 117.175(a) would not establish any new requirements but merely make it obvious at a glance what records are required under proposed part 117, subpart C.

Proposed § 117.175(b) would provide that the records that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and maintain are subject to the requirements of part 117, subpart F. As discussed in section XV of this document, proposed subpart F would provide the general requirements that apply to all records required to be established and maintained by part

117, including provisions for retention of records and for making records available for official review.

J. Request for Comment on Additional Preventive Controls and Verification Procedures Not  
Being Proposed

1. Overview

As discussed in section II.B.2 of this document, section 418(n) requires FDA to establish science-based minimum standards for, among other things, implementing preventive controls. In addition, section 418(f) requires certain verification of those preventive controls. In this section of the preamble, we discuss several preventive controls (i.e., supplier controls) and verification measures (i.e., environmental and product testing programs) that FDA is not including as provisions in proposed part 117, subpart C.

As we have already discussed (see section XII.C.1 of this document), section 418(c) requires the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to identify and implement preventive controls. Section 418(o)(3) defines “preventive controls” to mean “those risk-based, reasonably appropriate procedures, practices and processes that a person knowledgeable about the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food would employ to significantly minimize or prevent [identified hazards] and that are consistent with current scientific understanding of safe food manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding....” Section 418(o)(3) indicates that those procedures, practices and processes may include environmental monitoring, supplier verification activities, certain sanitation controls, and allergen controls. In addition, environmental and product testing programs are set out in section 418(f)(4): section 418(f)(4) requires that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility “verify that ... the preventive controls ... are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of

identified hazards, including through the use of environmental and product testing programs and other appropriate means.”

We believe that the preventive controls and verification measures discussed in this section are an important part of a modern food safety system. We believe that the preventive controls discussed in this section (i.e., a supplier approval and verification program), when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, are “risk-based, reasonably appropriate procedures, practices and processes that a person knowledgeable about the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food would employ to significantly minimize or prevent [identified hazards] and that are consistent with current scientific understanding of safe food manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding ...” The verification procedures discussed in this section (i.e., environmental and product testing programs), when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, could be used to verify that the preventive controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards. The use of and need for these preventive controls and verification measures, which are science-based, are widespread and commonly accepted in many sectors of the food industry. We request comment on these conclusions.

As discussed (see section I of this document), food safety is best assured if each facility understands the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur in its particular product and operation and puts in place scientifically sound preventive controls to significantly minimize or eliminate those hazards. From a regulatory perspective, specifying the circumstances and manner in which these controls and practices are to be applied must take into account the wide array of factors, including the diversity among food products, the wide variety of manufacturing and processing methods used to produce the food, the variety of sources for raw materials and ingredients,

variations in the nature and types of hazards associated with manufacturing, processing, packing and holding human food, and the possibility that different mitigation methods may achieve the same end. Further, regulatory requirements should make clear when one of these preventive controls or verification measures is necessary yet also be sufficiently flexible to account for a vast number of food and facility combinations and circumstances.

Although we are not including provisions for environmental and product testing programs or a supplier approval and verification program in this proposed rule, we recognize that these preventive controls and verification measures, when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, can play important roles in effective food safety programs. The role and need for these measures varies depending on the type of products and activities of the facility. To facilitate comment and share our current thinking, we discuss the topics of environmental and product testing programs and a supplier approval and verification program immediately below. See the Appendix to this document for additional background information relevant to these topics.

## 2. Product Testing

As discussed in section XII.G.1 of this document, section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act states that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall verify that “the preventive controls implemented under [section 418(c) of the FD&C Act] are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards, including through the use of environmental and product testing programs and other appropriate means” The statute does not indicate the specific circumstances where product testing would be required or the specific manner in which such testing should be performed. FDA believes that the role and need for these measures varies depending on the type of products and activities of a facility. FDA further

believes that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility could consider a number of factors to establish a product testing program.

Although finished product testing is rarely considered a preventive control, it plays a very important role as a verification measure in ensuring the safety of food, when implemented appropriately in particular facilities. Similarly, testing of raw materials or ingredients by a facility that is receiving the product often plays an important role in verification of hazard control that is performed by their supplier. Thus, an important purpose of testing is to verify that preventive controls, including those related to suppliers and those related to environmental monitoring, are controlling the hazard (Ref. 111) (Ref. 112). Testing is used in conjunction with other verification measures in the food safety system, such as audits of suppliers, observations of whether activities are being conducted according to the food safety plan, and reviewing records to determine whether process controls are meeting specified limits for parameters established in the food safety plan.

Finished product testing is more important and useful when there is a reasonable probability that exposure to an identified hazard will result in serious adverse health consequences or death to humans or animals. FDA believes that there are certain situations in which finished product testing is particularly useful as a verification measure, including the following circumstances:

- The outcome of the hazard analysis conducted under proposed § 117.130 is that a biological hazard is reasonably likely to occur in an ingredient and the preventive controls established and implemented under proposed § 117.135 do not include a process control that will significantly minimize the hazard. Examples include cut raw vegetables (such as celery, onions, leafy greens and tomatoes) that may contain Salmonella spp. or L. monocytogenes and that are

intended to be used in RTE foods; nutrition bars in which dry ingredients (such as fruits, nuts, dried milk, soy proteins and chocolate) that may contain Salmonella spp. are formed into a bar without a lethal step; and mixtures of shelled nuts in which the nuts may be contaminated with Salmonella spp.

- The outcome of the hazard analysis conducted under proposed § 117.130 is that a biological hazard is reasonably likely to occur in an ingredient that is added during manufacturing after the stage that applies a process control to significantly minimize biological hazards. Examples include food (such as chips, nuts and cereals) in which untreated seasonings that may contain Salmonella spp. are applied after a heat treatment and food (such as ice cream) to which nuts or other ingredients are added to an ice cream mix that has been pasteurized.

- The outcome of the hazard analysis conducted under proposed § 117.130 is that a biological hazard is reasonably likely to occur as a result of handling of a product or exposure of a product to the environment after a process control that significantly minimizes a hazard such that a hazard could be introduced or re-introduced into the product. Examples include the manufacture of nut butters from roasted nuts (where contamination with Salmonella spp. from the environment is a concern); the mixing of dried, treated spices and herbs (where contamination with Salmonella spp. from the environment is a concern); the addition of herbs or vegetables to products such as cream cheese or cottage cheese (where contamination with L. monocytogenes from the environment is a concern); and the manual assembly of sandwiches (where contamination with S. aureus, L. monocytogenes, and enteric pathogens such as Salmonella spp. is a concern).

In addition, the frequency of testing and the number of samples tested must be determined and needs to take into account a variety of hazard/commodity/facility considerations.

FDA believes that factors to consider include whether ingredients that may contain a hazard have been tested, the extent of any environmental monitoring program, and whether other programs established by the facility provide added assurance that the potential for hazards has been minimized. The frequency of testing and the number of samples tested should have a scientific basis. Sampling plans and their performance have been described in the literature (Ref. 180) (Ref. 181) (Ref. 182) and are included in several Codex documents (Ref. 52) (Ref. 183). We discuss likely considerations that could impact finished product verification testing in more detail in section I.F of the Appendix to this document.

Although we are not including a testing provision in this proposed rule, we estimate that a requirement for a finished product testing program, when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$14,000 – \$813,000 per facility based on size (number of employees) that adopts a testing and holding regime. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$23,500,000 for domestic facilities based on an average of a range of \$12,000,000 - \$35,000,000 (assuming between 25 and 75 percent of relevant facilities conducting testing) and an estimated aggregate cost of \$25,600,000 for foreign facilities. (As described in the PRIA, foreign costs are estimated by multiplying the domestic per facility cost by the total number of foreign facilities. See section XIX of this document for a discussion of the PRIA.) These costs assume that facilities will take 5 finished product samples per product line on a monthly basis. The facilities that would adopt a testing and holding regime are facilities producing products for which finished product testing would be particularly useful as a verification measure, e.g., the production process does not have a step that will eliminate or reduce hazards to an acceptable level. This estimate excludes facilities that would be exempt under this proposed rule (using a definition of \$250,000 for a very small business) and facilities



that are already conducting finished product testing. Further details are provided in the “Consideration of Other Provisions” section of the PRIA.

FDA requests comment on when and how product testing programs are an appropriate means of implementing the statutory directives set out above. Although we have not included these provisions in the proposed rule, we request comment on their inclusion in a final rule. Should a product testing program be limited to finished product testing or include raw material testing? What is the appropriate level of specificity for a product testing program? For example, should we simply require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge conduct, as appropriate to the facility and the food, finished product testing, when appropriate based on risk, to assess whether the preventive controls significantly minimize or prevent the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur? This would provide flexibility to account for the wide diversity of food and food manufacturing, processing, packing and holding systems subject to this rule and be consistent with the discussions within this proposed rule.

FDA also requests comment on whether more detail would be appropriate, by, for example:

- Specifying particular hazards, situations or product types for which finished product testing would be required;
- Specifying the frequency of testing and, if so, whether this frequency should depend on the type of product;
- Identifying appropriate sampling plans for finished product testing;
- Requiring periodic testing for trend analysis and statistical process control; and

- Requiring written procedures for conducting finished product testing and, if so, also require that procedures for finished product testing be scientifically valid and include the procedures for sampling and the sampling frequency.

FDA also requests comment on the impact of product testing requirements on small businesses and on whether any product testing verification requirements should differ based on the size of the operation.

### 3. Environmental Monitoring

As discussed in section XII.G.1 of this document, section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act states that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall verify that “the preventive controls implemented under [section 418(c) of the FD&C Act] are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards, including through the use of environmental and product testing programs and other appropriate means”. In addition, section 418(o)(3) indicates that preventive controls may include environmental monitoring to verify the effectiveness of pathogen controls is an example of preventive controls. The statute does not indicate the specific circumstances where environmental testing would be required or the specific manner in which such testing should be performed. Nevertheless, FDA believes that this testing can form an important component of a modern food safety system. FDA believes that the role and need for these measures varies depending on the type of products and activities of a facility. FDA further believes that the performance of environmental monitoring, for an appropriate microorganism of public health significance or for an appropriate indicator organism, is particularly useful as a verification measure for preventive controls (i.e., sanitation controls) when contamination of food with an environmental pathogen is a hazard reasonably likely to occur.

As discussed in sections XII.B.3 and XII.B.4.b of this document, proposed § 117.130(b) would require a hazard identification that must consider hazards that may occur naturally or may be unintentionally introduced; proposed § 117.130(c)(2) would require that the hazard evaluation include an evaluation of whether environmental pathogens are reasonably likely to occur whenever a RTE food is exposed to the environment prior to packaging. The data from recalls and the RFR support a conclusion that Salmonella spp. is a hazard in low-moisture RTE food products (such as spices and seasonings, nuts and nut products, and seed products). When RTE foods such as these are exposed to the environment, FDA believes that most facilities producing such foods would identify Salmonella spp. as a known or reasonably foreseeable hazard under proposed § 117.130(b) and evaluate whether Salmonella spp. contamination from the environment is reasonably likely to occur in the facility under proposed § 117.130(c)(2). A robust environmental monitoring program for Salmonella spp. can verify the effectiveness of sanitation controls designed to prevent Salmonella spp. from contaminating food-contact surfaces and food (Ref. 184).

Likewise, the data from recalls and the RFR support a conclusion that L. monocytogenes is a hazard in refrigerated or frozen RTE food products (such as dairy products, fresh-cut produce, prepared foods such as sandwiches, and frozen foods). When RTE foods such as these are exposed to the environment, FDA believes that most facilities producing such foods would identify L. monocytogenes as a potential hazard under proposed § 117.130(b) and evaluate whether L. monocytogenes is reasonably likely to occur in the facility under proposed § 117.130(c)(2). A robust environmental monitoring program for L. monocytogenes can verify the effectiveness of sanitation controls designed to prevent L. monocytogenes from contaminating food-contact surfaces and food (Ref. 52) (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185) (Ref. 186).

As discussed in section A.5.c of the Appendix to this document, FDA's current thinking is that Listeria spp. may be an appropriate indicator organism for L. monocytogenes, because tests for Listeria spp. will detect multiple species of Listeria, including L. monocytogenes. However, FDA's current thinking is that there are no currently available indicator organisms for Salmonella spp. We request comment on these findings and conclusions.

Although we are not including an environmental testing provision in this proposed rule, we estimate that an environmental monitoring program for Salmonella spp., when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$3,000 – \$6,000 per facility. These costs assume that facilities will take 5-15 environmental samples per month, based on facility size, and send the samples to an outside laboratory for testing. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$4,000,000 for domestic facilities based on an average of a range of \$3,000,000 - \$5,000,000 (assuming between 50 and 75 percent of relevant facilities conducting testing) and an estimated aggregate cost of \$4,400,000 for foreign facilities.

Similarly, we estimate that a requirement for an environmental monitoring program for Listeria, when implemented appropriately in particular facilities, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$3,000 – \$6,000 per facility. These costs assume that facilities will take 5-15 environmental samples per month, based on facility size, and send the samples to an outside laboratory for testing. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$5,000,000 for domestic facilities based on an average of a range of \$4,000,000 - \$6,000,000 (assuming between 50 and 75 percent of relevant facilities conducting testing) and an estimated aggregate cost of \$5,400,000 for foreign facilities. (As described in the PRIA, foreign costs are estimated by multiplying the domestic per facility cost by the total number of foreign facilities. See section XIX of this document for a discussion of the PRIA.)

The facilities that could adopt environmental monitoring programs are facilities producing ready-to-eat products exposed to the environment whereby they may become contaminated and for which such testing would be particularly useful as a verification measure for sanitation controls. These estimates exclude facilities that would be exempt under this proposed rule (using a definition of \$250,000 for a very small business) and facilities that are already conducting finished product testing. Further details are provided in the “Consideration of Other Provisions” section of the PRIA.

FDA requests comment on when and how environmental testing is an appropriate means of implementing the statutory directives set out above. Although we have not included these provisions in the proposed rule, we request comment on their inclusion in a final rule. If they are included, what is the appropriate level of specificity? For example, should we simply require the performance of environmental monitoring, for an appropriate microorganism of public health significance or for an appropriate indicator organism, if contamination of food with an environmental pathogen is a hazard reasonably likely to occur? FDA also requests comment on whether more detail would be appropriate, by, for example:

- Specifying the environmental pathogen or the indicator organism for which the samples must be tested;
- Specifying the corrective actions that should be taken if environmental testing identifies the presence of an environmental pathogen, such as;
- Conducting microbial sampling and testing of surrounding surfaces and areas to determine the extent of the contamination and the potential source of the contamination;
- Cleaning and sanitizing the contaminated surfaces and surrounding areas to eliminate the test organism;

- Conducting additional microbial sampling and testing to determine whether the contamination has been eliminated; and
- Conducting finished product testing.
- Specifying the locations within the facility at which samples must be collected;
- Specifying the frequency of collection of environmental samples (e.g., weekly or monthly depending on risk). For example, should the frequency of collection:
  - Be greatest for foods that are likely to be consumed as RTE or consumed after a minimal treatment that may not adequately reduce the environmental pathogen?
  - Be greater for an environmental pathogen that is frequently introduced into a facility (e.g., L. monocytogenes which is ubiquitous in the environment and can be continually introduced into a facility from many routes, including ingredients, people and objects (Ref. 144) than for an environmental pathogen that is less frequently introduced?
  - Be greater for refrigerated or frozen RTE food products that support growth of L. monocytogenes than for those that do not?
  - Be greater if there is greater risk of a negative impact on public health (e.g., the product is specifically intended for a sensitive population such as infants) than if there is a lesser risk of a negative impact on public health?
  - Be greater for products that undergo significant handling and exposure to the environment than for products that undergo limited or no handling or have little exposure to the environment?
  - Increase as a result of finding the environmental pathogen or an indicator of the environmental pathogen or as a result of situations that pose an increased risk of contamination, e.g., construction? (Ref. 52) (Ref. 185) (Ref. 184) (Ref. 187).

- Requiring written procedures for conducting environmental testing and, if so, also requiring that procedures for environmental testing be scientifically valid and include the procedures for sampling and the sampling frequency;
- Requiring data analysis to detect trends.

In addition, with respect to environmental testing for L. monocytogenes, FDA requests comment on whether it would be appropriate to distinguish between environmental testing for RTE foods depending on whether the food supports the growth of L. monocytogenes. We also request comment on whether there are appropriate indicator organisms for any environmental pathogen other than L. monocytogenes. We further request comment on whether there is benefit in conducting routine environmental monitoring for other organisms in addition to, or instead of, the environmental pathogen of concern.

#### 4. Supplier Approval and Verification Program

Section 418(c) of the FD&C Act specifies, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility shall identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that:

- Hazards identified in the hazard analysis conducted under section 418(b)(1) of the FD&C Act will be significantly minimized or prevented; and
- The food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the FD&C Act.

Section 418(o)(3)(G) of the FD&C Act indicates that the procedures, practices, and processes described in the definition of preventive controls may include supplier verification activities that relate to the safety of food. While FSMA refers only to supplier verification

activities, supplier approval, together with supplier verification, is widely accepted in the domestic and international food safety community. The development of a supplier approval and verification program can be part of a preventive approach. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines describe supplier controls as one of the common prerequisite programs for the safe production of food products and recommend that each facility assure that its suppliers have in place effective CGMP and food safety programs (Ref. 34). Likewise, Codex addresses the safety of ingredients in the GPFH and recommends that, where appropriate, specifications for raw materials be identified and applied and laboratory tests be conducted to establish fitness for use (Ref. 44).

Because many facilities acting as suppliers procure their raw materials and ingredients from other suppliers, there is often a chain of suppliers before a raw material or other ingredient reaches the manufacturer/processor. Using a preventive approach, a facility receiving raw materials or ingredients from a supplier can help ensure that the supplier (or a supplier to the supplier) has implemented preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur in that raw material or other ingredient unless the receiving facility will itself control the identified hazard.

A supplier approval and verification program can help ensure that raw materials and ingredients are procured from those suppliers that can meet company specifications and have appropriate programs in place to address the safety of the raw materials and ingredients. A supplier approval program can ensure a methodical approach to identifying such suppliers. A supplier verification program can help provide initial and ongoing assurance that suppliers are complying with practices to achieve adequate control of hazards in raw materials or ingredients.

The statute does not indicate the specific circumstances where supplier verification would be required or the specific manner in which supplier verification should be performed, and FDA



is not including provisions for such verification in this proposed rule. FDA believes that the role and need for these measures varies depending on the type of products and activities of a facility. FDA further believes that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility could consider a number of factors to determine the specific circumstances and manner where it would be appropriate to perform supplier verification. FDA believes that factors to consider include:

- The nature of the adverse consequences associated with the hazard, such as whether consumption of food containing the hazard may result in serious adverse health consequences or death; and
- The establishment that would be controlling the hazard associated with the raw material or ingredient (e.g., the facility that receives the raw material or ingredient, the supplier of that raw material or ingredient, or even a supplier to the supplier of the raw material or ingredient).

The vast majority of costs related to a supplier approval and verification program are due to verification activities such as audits and testing of raw materials and ingredients, which would likely be selected based on the hazard associated with the raw material or ingredient and where the hazard is controlled. Although we are not including a provision for such a program in this proposed rule, we estimate that a requirement for a supplier approval and verification program, if implemented as part of a preventive approach, could impose an incremental annual cost of \$0 – \$5,000 per supplier facility based on size (number of employees) that undergoes an annual audit. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$11,000,000 for domestic facilities and an estimated aggregate cost of \$12,000,000 for foreign facilities. (As described in the PRIA, foreign costs are estimated by multiplying the domestic per facility cost by the total number of foreign facilities. See section XIX of this document for a discussion of the PRIA.). We estimate

that a requirement for a supplier approval and verification program could impose an incremental annual cost of \$7,000 – \$90,000 per facility based on size (number of employees) for testing of raw materials and ingredients. This would result in an estimated aggregate cost of \$5,000,000 for domestic facilities and an estimated aggregate cost of \$5,400,000 for foreign facilities. This estimate excludes facilities that would be exempt under this proposed rule (using a definition of \$250,000 for a very small business) and facilities that are already doing such supplier verification activities. Further details are provided in the “Consideration of Other Provisions” section of the PRIA.

FDA requests comment on when and how supplier approval and verification is an appropriate means of implementing the statutory directives set out above. Although we have not included these provisions in the proposed rule, we request comment on their inclusion in a final rule. If they are included, what is the appropriate level of specificity? Should the requirement be very general, for example, requiring a supplier approval and verification program as appropriate to the facility and the food, when appropriate based on risk? FDA also requests comment on who a supplier approval and verification program should apply to - e.g., should it apply to all facilities that manufacture, process, pack or hold food, or be limited (such as to facilities that manufacture or process food)?

FDA also requests comment on whether more detail would be appropriate, by, for example:

- Requiring that the supplier approval and verification program include a written list of approved suppliers;
- Requiring that, in determining appropriate verification activities, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility consider relevant regulatory information regarding the

supplier, including whether the raw material or ingredient is the subject of an FDA warning letter or import alert relating to the safety of the food.

- Specifying circumstances when a supplier approval and verification program would not be required - e.g., when the preventive controls at the receiving facility are adequate to significantly minimize or prevent each of the hazards the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur; or when the receiving facility obtains from its customer written assurance that the customer has established and is following procedures that will significantly minimize or prevent the hazard.

- Specifying that the type of verification activity be linked to the seriousness of the hazard - e.g., whether to:

- Require an onsite audit when there is a reasonable probability that exposure to the hazard will result in serious adverse health consequences or death to humans;

- Provide more flexibility with respect to hazards for which there is not a reasonable probability that exposure to the hazard will result in serious adverse health consequences or death to humans - e.g., periodic onsite audits, periodic or lot-by-lot sampling and testing of the raw material or ingredient, and periodic review of the supplier's food safety records;

- Specifying requirements for audits - e.g., the qualifications (including training, experience, and conflict of interest) for persons who conduct audits; content of an audit (such as compliance with applicable food safety regulations and, when applicable, compliance with a facility's food safety plan);

- Specifying the frequency of verification activities (e.g., initially, annually, or periodically);

- Specifying whether, for some hazards, it will be necessary to conduct more than one verification activity to provide adequate assurances that the hazard is significantly minimized or prevented;
- Providing for alternative requirements if a supplier is a qualified facility - e.g., documenting that the supplier is a qualified facility and obtaining written assurance that the supplier is producing the raw material or ingredient in compliance with sections 402 and 403(w) of the FD&C Act;
- Specifying those records that would be appropriate for a supplier approval and verification program.
- Providing for substitution of a regulatory inspection (e.g., by FDA or a comparable State regulatory agency or foreign food safety authority), for an onsite audit; and
- Specifying that a receiving facility take appropriate action (e.g., discontinuing use of a supplier) if the facility determines that the supplier is not controlling hazards that the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur.

FDA is aware that many firms that could be affected by supplier verification may be importing their ingredients. We believe that these firms are interested in how a supplier verification component of preventive controls will interface with the regulations FDA is required to issue to implement foreign supplier verification under new section 805 of the FD&C Act. Section 805 requires FDA to issue regulations to require importers to implement foreign supplier verification programs (FSVPs) that are adequate to provide assurances that the importer's foreign suppliers produce food in compliance with processes and procedures, including risk-based preventive controls, that provide the same level of public health protection as those required under sections 418 (concerning hazard analysis and preventive controls) and 419 (concerning

produce safety) of the FD&C Act, and in compliance with sections 402 (concerning adulteration) and 403(w) (concerning misbranding regarding allergen labeling) of the FD&C Act.

FDA intends to issue proposed regulations implementing section 805 in the near future. FDA intends to align regulations implementing supplier verification under section 418 and regulations implementing FSVP under section 805 to the fullest extent so we do not impose duplicative or unjustified requirements under those two regulations. For example, if a facility imports ingredients, we would not want to subject it to duplicative requirements under a supplier verification provision and an FSVP regulation.

Likewise, FDA is aware that there is great interest from our trading partners on, among other things, the potential overlap between the supplier verification requirements in preventive controls and in FSVP. FDA believes that the approach to harmonization between supplier verification and FSVP described above would adequately address this and comports with our obligations under the World Trade Organization (WTO) trade agreements, including adherence to the principles of the Sanitary and Phytosanitary (SPS) Agreement.

FDA is committed to meeting the requirements of the SPS Agreement and to complying with our obligations under that Agreement as we implement FSMA. In enacting FSMA, Congress explicitly recognized the importance of compliance with international agreements by providing in section 404 of FSMA that “[n]othing in [FSMA] shall be construed in a manner inconsistent with the agreement establishing the World Trade Organization or any other treaty or international agreement to which the United States is a party.” While the statutory provisions in FSMA governing supplier verification by domestic facilities and foreign supplier verification by importers differ in some respects, they are based on common risk-based principles. Implementation of these risk-based principles will assure a general consistency of approach with

respect to foreign and domestic facilities regarding, for example, when on-site audits are required. Implementation of FSMA's risk-based principles will also ensure that measures applicable to imports are not more trade-restrictive than required to achieve the appropriate level of sanitary or phytosanitary protection of the United States, taking into account technical and economic feasibility, as required by paragraph 6 of Article 5 of the SPS Agreement.

FDA intends to publish in the very near future a proposed rule to implement FSMA's foreign supplier verification program requirement. FDA will align the comment periods on that proposed rule and the preventive controls rule addressed in this document so that interested parties in the United States and other countries will be able to assess how they will work together in practice. We invite comments to assist FDA in issuing final rules that protect public health and satisfy both FSMA and our international obligations.

#### K. Request for Comment on Other Potential Provisions Not Explicitly Included in Section 418 of the FD&C Act

##### 1. Overview

This section discusses two measures (review of consumer, customer, and other complaints, and submission of a food safety profile) that FDA is not proposing as specific provisions in proposed part 117, subpart C. Although these measures are not explicitly included in section 418, we believe that the preventive controls and verification measures discussed in this section are an important part of a modern food safety system.

##### 2. Complaints

The role of consumer complaints in evaluating the effectiveness of a food safety plan is reflected in our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice. Our HACCP regulation for seafood (§ 123.8(a)(2)(i)) requires that verification activities include a review of any consumer

complaints that have been received by the processor to determine whether they relate to the performance of critical control points or reveal the existence of unidentified critical control points. Our HACCP regulation for juice (§ 120.11(a)(1)(i)) requires that verification activities include a review of any consumer complaints that have been received by the processor to determine whether the complaints relate to the performance of the HACCP plan or reveal the existence of unidentified critical control points. FDA notes that the role of consumer complaints is not discussed in the NACMCF guidelines or the Codex guidelines, and their review is not required by the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry. However, as we discussed in the seafood HACCP proposed rule (59 FR 4142 at 4157), no system is foolproof, and consumer complaints may be the first alert for a processor that deviations are occurring and are not being prevented or uncovered by the processor's HACCP controls.

Further, although most consumer complaints will be related to quality issues, recent experience has demonstrated the value that consumer and customer complaints can provide in bringing attention to possible problems within a facility's preventive controls activities. FDA has received a number of submissions to the Reportable Food Registry (Ref. 60) that have suggested that environmental pathogens or food allergen hazards were not adequately addressed in a supplier's food safety plan. Some of these were identified through customer verification testing and others through complaints from consumers to a facility. A facility may also receive alerts as a result of state surveillance and testing programs. (For a discussion of such programs, see section II.A.6.e of this document). Many recall notices identify the results of a state surveillance and testing program as the trigger for a recall (Ref. 188) (Ref. 189) (Ref. 190).

Although this proposed rule does not include a provision regarding a review of complaints, we estimate that a requirement that facility personnel review consumer, customer or

other complaints could impose an incremental annual cost of \$0– \$6,000 per facility based on size (number of employees). This would result in an estimated aggregate annual cost of \$11,500,000 for domestic facilities and an estimated aggregate cost of \$12,500,000 for foreign facilities.

We request comment on whether and how a facility’s review of complaints, including complaints from consumers, customers, or other parties, should be required as a component of its activities to verify that its preventive controls are effectively minimizing the occurrence of hazards.

### 3. Submission of a Facility Profile to FDA

Proposed § 117.126 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility prepare, or have prepared, a written food safety plan. The food safety plan would include the hazard analysis, preventive controls, and other records. Currently, information of this type is not reviewed by FDA investigators until they are physically present at a facility and have begun an inspection. In light of the large number of facilities that would be covered by this proposal, FDA recognizes several potential benefits to having a facility’s food safety plan in advance of an inspection, if we were to require facilities to do so. Having such plans could aid in the efficient oversight of preventive controls by allowing FDA to better target inspectional activities to facilities that produce foods that have an increased potential for contamination (particularly with biological hazards) and to improve on-site inspections by focusing attention on hazards and preventive controls for which the facility appears to have deficiencies. Facilities would benefit from our advance preparation through interaction with better-informed investigators and potentially reduced inspection time. We could also more quickly identify facilities that had not established preventive controls for specific hazards of concern to the agency and advise them to



fill such gaps to prevent a problem before it occurs. Also, FDA could use the plans in evaluating the need for guidance on specific hazards or controls and prioritizing guidance to areas where it is needed most.

FDA believes that there are significant obstacles to realizing these benefits from submission of food safety plans, however. The agency would expect to receive a very large number of plans. Further, these plans would be expected to vary significantly in content and format. Assimilating the underlying information in a way that would be useful to the agency would be an immense challenge. Moreover, not all of the information in such plans may be essential to realizing the potential benefits described above. Therefore, to most efficiently realize the potential benefits of having certain information prior to an inspection, we request comment on whether to require submission to FDA of a subset of the information that would be in a food safety plan. This information, which could be referred to as a “facility profile,” could be submitted through an electronic form using a menu selection approach. The use of an electronic form would enhance our ability to store the information in a searchable form. Ideally, a searchable electronic system could allow FDA to assess information when a problem occurs with certain types of foods or controls, so that we could target inspections to facilities that manufacture, process, or pack, foods that are at increased risk for a food safety problem; to facilities that appear to have insufficient controls to prevent a problem; or to facilities using a control we conclude is ineffective at controlling hazards. The data elements for a facility profile could include some or all of the following:

- Contact information;
- Facility type;
- Products;

- Hazards identified for each product;
- Preventive controls established for each of the identified hazards;
- Third-party audit information (have you had one and which audit firm(s));
- Preventive control employee training conducted;
- Facility size (square footage);
- Full time operation or seasonal;
- Operations schedule;

This information could be submitted at the same time as facility registration and updated biennially simultaneously with the required biennial update of the food facility registration. FDA requests comment on the utility and necessity of such an approach and on the specific types of information that would be useful in developing a facility profile. We also request comment on any additional benefits that might be obtained from using such an approach and any potential concerns with this approach.

We have previously announced an opportunity for public comment on the proposed collection of additional food facility profile information on a voluntary basis from firms that complete the FDA food facility registration process (Federal Register of May 11, 2012, 77 FR 27779). In that notice, we noted that FSMA added section 421 of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 350j), which directed FDA to allocate resources to inspect facilities according to the known safety risks of the facilities. We also noted that food facility profile information voluntarily provided to FDA will help us to determine whether a firm is high-risk or non-high-risk and that we will use the profile information to assist us in determining the frequency at which we will inspect the firm. In contrast to the voluntary submission of food facility profile information

described in that notice, in this document we are requesting comment on whether the submission of such information should be required.

### XIII. Proposed New Provisions for Modified Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart D)

FSMA provides for the establishment of modified requirements for certain facilities under certain circumstances. In this section of this document, we propose such modified requirements.

#### A. Proposed § 117.201--Modified Requirements That Apply to a Qualified Facility

##### 1. Requirements of Section 418(l) of the FD&C Act

Section 418(l) of the FD&C Act establishes modified requirements for “qualified facilities.” As discussed in section II.B.1.b of this document, section 418(l)(1) of the FD&C Act establishes the conditions for a facility to be a “qualified facility” based on either business size (section 418(l)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act) or a combination of the average monetary value of the food sold and the value of food sold to qualified end users as compared to all other purchasers (section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act), and proposed § 117.3 would establish a definition for “qualified facility” based on section 418(l)(1).

Sections 418(l)(2)(A) and (B) of the FD&C Act provide that a qualified facility is exempt from the requirements of sections 418(a) through (i) and (n) of the FD&C Act (i.e., the requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls), but must instead submit two types of documentation to the Secretary of HHS. The first type of required documentation relates to food safety practices at the facility, and section 418(l)(2)(B)(i) provides two options for satisfying this documentation requirement. Under section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(I), the qualified facility may choose to submit documentation that demonstrates that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility has identified potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is

implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective. Alternatively, under section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(II), the qualified facility may choose to submit documentation (which may include licenses, inspection reports, certificates, permits, credentials, certification by an appropriate agency (such as a State department of agriculture), or other evidence of oversight), as specified by the Secretary of HHS, that the facility is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law.

The second type of required documentation relates to whether the facility satisfies the definition of a qualified facility. Under section 418(l)(2)(B)(ii) of the FD&C Act, the facility must submit documentation, as specified by the Secretary of HHS in a guidance document, that the facility is a qualified facility under section 418(l)(1)(B) of the FD&C Act or section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act.

Section 418(l)(7)(A) of the FD&C Act requires that a qualified facility that is exempt from the requirements under sections 418 (a) through (i) and subsection (n), and that does not prepare documentation under section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(I), provide notification to consumers by one of two procedures, depending on whether a food packaging label is required on the food. With respect to a food for which a food packaging label is required by the Secretary of HHS under any other provision of the FD&C Act, section 418(l)(7)(A)(i) of the FD&C Act requires that a qualified facility include prominently and conspicuously on such label the name and business address of the facility where the food was manufactured or processed. With respect to a food for which a food packaging label is not required by the Secretary of HHS under any other provisions of the FD&C Act, section 418(l)(7)(A)(ii) of the FD&C Act requires that a qualified facility prominently and conspicuously display, at the point of purchase, the name and business address

of the facility where the food was manufactured or processed, on a label, poster, sign, placard, or documents delivered contemporaneously with the food in the normal course of business, or, in the case of Internet sales, in an electronic notice.

2. Proposed § 117.201(a)--Documentation to be Submitted

a. Proposed § 117.201(a)(1)--Documentation that the facility is a qualified facility.

Proposed § 117.201(a)(1) would require that a qualified facility submit to FDA documentation that the facility is a qualified facility. Consistent with the conditions in section 418(l)(1) of the FD&C Act for a facility to be a qualified facility, and our proposed definition (proposed § 117.3) of “qualified facility,” the documentation would be directed to either the status of the facility as a very small business (as would be defined in proposed § 117.3) or the applicability of conditions for average annual monetary value and the value of food sold to qualified end users as compared to other purchasers (as would be included in the definition of qualified facility in proposed § 117.3). As discussed further in section XIII.A.5, FDA tentatively concludes that a statement from the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility certifying that the facility is a very small business, otherwise meets the definition of a qualified facility under proposed § 117.3, or both, would be acceptable for the purposes of satisfying the requirements that would be established in proposed § 117.201(a)(1). We would not, for example, require that a facility submit financial information to FDA demonstrating its total sales or to the proportion of sales to qualified end users.

Proposed § 117.201(a)(1) also would establish that, for the purpose of determining whether a facility satisfies the definition of qualified facility, the baseline year for calculating the adjustment for inflation is 2011. The conditions related to average annual monetary value established in section 418(l)(1)(C) of the FD&C Act, and the definition of very small business in

proposed § 117.3, allow adjustment for inflation. To establish a level playing field for all facilities that may satisfy definition of a qualified facility, we are proposing to establish the baseline year for the calculation in proposed § 117.201(a)(1). We are proposing to establish 2011 as the baseline year for inflation because 2011 is the year that FSMA was enacted into law. We tentatively conclude that because Congress provided a specific dollar amount in section 418(l)(1)(C)(ii)(II) – i.e., \$500,000 – and it provided that the dollar amount should be adjusted for inflation, it is reasonable to establish the baseline year as the year that the law was enacted.

b. Proposed § 117.201(a)(2)--Documentation related to food safety practices at a facility.

Proposed § 117.201(a)(2) would provide two options for satisfying the documentation requirement in section 418(l)(2)(B)(i) of the FD&C Act related to food safety practices at the facility. Proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(i) would allow qualified facilities to submit documentation to demonstrate that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the performance of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective to satisfy this requirement.

Proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(i) would implement the provisions of section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(I) of the FD&C Act, except that proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(i) would specify monitoring the performance of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective (emphasis added). As discussed in section II.B.1.a of this document, under the overall framework of the proposed requirements that would be established in subpart C, monitoring is directed to performance of preventive controls. Thus, proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(i) is consistent with the statute and the overall framework of this proposed rule.

Proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(ii) would provide another option for satisfying the documentation requirement in section 418(l)(2)(B)(i) of the FD&C Act related to food safety practices at the facility by allowing qualified facilities to submit documentation (which may include licenses, inspection reports, certificates, permits, credentials, certification by an appropriate agency (such as a State department of agriculture), or other evidence of oversight), that the facility is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries. Proposed § 117.201(a)(2)(i) would implement the provisions of section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(II) of the FD&C Act.

As discussed further in section XIII.A.5 of this document, FDA tentatively concludes that a statement from the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility certifying that the facility (1) has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective; or (2) that the facility is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries, would be acceptable for the purposes of satisfying the requirements that would be established in proposed § 117.201(a)(2). We would not, for example, require that a facility submit documentation to FDA demonstrating the content of their hazard identification, preventive controls, or monitoring of the implementation of preventive controls; or copies of their non-Federal licenses, inspection reports, certificates, permits, credentials, or certifications.

### 3. Proposed § 117.201(b)--Procedure for Submission

Proposed § 117.201(b) would require that qualified facilities submit the documentation that would be required by proposed § 117.201(a) by one of two procedures. Proposed §

117.201(b)(1) would provide an option to submit documentation electronically at <http://www.access.fda.gov> by following the instructions to be provided on that web page.

Proposed § 117.201(b)(1) would inform facilities that this website is available from wherever the Internet is accessible, including libraries, copy centers, schools, and Internet cafes. Although electronic submission is not required, proposed § 117.201(b)(1) would encourage electronic submission, which is efficient for FDA and should also be efficient for facilities. Electronic submission generally would be available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, unless the website is experiencing technical difficulties or is undergoing maintenance.

Proposed § 117.201(b)(1) would provide an option to submit documentation by mail. A qualified facility would have the option to submit documents in a paper format or in an electronic format on a CD-ROM, by mail to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, ATTN: Qualified Facility Coordinator, 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20993. “Mail” would include the U.S. mail and businesses that can deliver documents to the address provided. We would recommend that an owner, operator or agent in charge of a qualified facility submit by mail only if the qualified facility does not have reasonable access to the Internet. It is not efficient for FDA to receive such documents by mail.

We are not proposing to provide for submission by fax. We expect that there may be technical difficulties or loss or mix-up of some submitted information if we were to allow for submission by fax.

In section XIII.A.5 of this document, we discuss the information that would be submitted.

#### 4. Proposed § 117.201(c)--Frequency of Submission

Proposed § 117.201(c)(1) would require that the documentation that would be required by section § 117.201(a) be submitted to FDA initially within 90 days of the applicable



compliance date of the rule. As discussed in section VII of this document, the compliance date for a small business would be 2 years after the date of publication of the final rule and the compliance date for a very small business would be 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule.

Proposed § 117.201(c)(2) would require that the documentation that would be required by proposed § 117.201(a) also must be resubmitted to FDA at least every 2 years, or whenever there is a material change to the information that would be described in proposed § 117.201(a). For the purposes of proposed § 117.201, a material change would be one that changes whether or not a facility is a “qualified facility.” The status of a facility as a qualified facility has the potential to change materially on an annual basis. For example, if a facility reports that it is a very small business (e.g., under one option identified in proposed § 117.3, has less than \$250,000 in total annual sales of food, adjusted for inflation), its total annual sales of food likely would change on an annual basis, and could change so as to exceed \$ 250,000. Likewise, if a facility reports that it otherwise satisfies the definition of a qualified facility, its total annual sales of food and value of food sold to qualified end users as compared to other purchasers likely would change on an annual basis, and could change so as to no longer satisfy the definition of a qualified facility.

#### 5. Information That Would Be Submitted

Consistent with section 418(l)(2)(B)(ii) of the FD&C Act, we intend to issue guidance regarding documentation that would be submitted under proposed § 117.201(a)(1) to demonstrate that a facility is a qualified facility. As discussed in sections XIII.A.2.a and XIII.A.2.b of this document, we tentatively conclude that certified statements from the owner,

operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility would be acceptable for the purposes of satisfying the requirements that would be established in proposed § 117.201(a)(1) and (2).

To inform the guidance required under section 418(l)(2)(B)(ii) of the FD&C Act and any other guidance that may be useful in addressing questions regarding submission of documentation under this subpart, in this document we request comment on an option we are considering regarding the submission of documentation. Specifically, we request comment on the efficiency and practicality of submitting the required documentation using the existing mechanism for registration of food facilities, with added features to enable a facility to identify whether or not the facility is a qualified facility. A facility that does not identify itself as a qualified facility would not be prompted to provide additional information under proposed § 117.201(a).

A facility that identifies itself as a qualified facility would be prompted to provide the following information by checking items that apply. Such items could include:

- Whether the facility satisfies the conditions for a qualified facility:
  - As a very small business as that term would be defined in proposed § 117.3;
  - As a facility that otherwise satisfies the definition of qualified facility in proposed § 117.3 based on average monetary value of sales and value of food sold to qualified end users as compared to other purchasers; or
  - Both of the above.
- Whether the facility :

- Has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective;
- Is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries; or
- Both of the above.

In essence, such a system would provide for self-certification that the facility has appropriate information demonstrating that the facility is a qualified facility and either has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective; or is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries. Such a system may include a statement reminding submitters that anyone who makes a materially false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement to the U.S. Government is subject to criminal penalties under 18 U.S.C. 1001. Using such a system, a qualified facility could update the documentation required by proposed § 117.201(a) during the biennial registration required by section 415(a)(3) of the FD&C Act.

#### 6. Proposed § 117.201(d)--Notification to Consumers

Proposed § 117.201(d) would require that a qualified facility that does not submit the type of documentation directed to food safety practices described in § 117.201(a)(2)(i) provide notification to consumers as to the name and complete business address of the facility where the food was manufactured or processed (including the street address or P.O. box, city, state, and zip code for domestic facilities, and comparable full address information for foreign facilities)

consistent with section 418(l)(7) of the FD&C Act. If a food packaging label is required, proposed § 117.201(d)(1) would require that the required notification appear prominently and conspicuously on the label of the food. If a food packaging label is not required, proposed § 117.201(d)(2) would require that the required notification appear prominently and conspicuously, at the point of purchase, on a label, poster, sign, placard, or documents delivered contemporaneously with the food in the normal course of business, or in an electronic notice, in the case of Internet sales.

Proposed § 117.201(d) would enable consumers to contact the facility where a food was manufactured or processed (e.g., if the consumer identifies or suspects a food safety problem with a product) irrespective of whether the food product bears a label. The use of the term “business address” in section 418(l)(7) of the FD&C Act contrasts with Congress’ use of a different term, “place of business,” in section 403(e) of the FD&C Act (21 U.S.C. 343(e)). Section 403(e) provides that foods in package form are misbranded unless the product label bears the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor of the food. Our regulations interpret “place of business” as requiring only the firm’s city, state, and zip code to appear on the product label, as long as the firm’s street address is listed in a current telephone directory or other city directory (21 C.F.R. 101.5(d)). We tentatively conclude that the use of the term “business address” in section 418(l)(7) demonstrates Congress’ intent to require the facility’s full address, including the street address or P.O. box, to appear on labels or other required notifications when the facility has opted to not submit documentation directed to food safety practices under section 418(l)(2)(B)(i)(I) of the FD&C Act. If Congress had considered the less complete address already required under section 403(e)(1) of the FD&C Act and the “place of business” labeling regulation (§ 101.5(d)) to be adequate for notification to consumers

for foods required to bear labels, there would have been no need to impose a new, more specific requirement in section 418(l)(7) for the facility's "business address" to appear on the food label. Requiring the complete business address for this purpose is consistent with our guidance to industry on the labeling of dietary supplements as required by the Dietary Supplement and Nonprescription Drug Consumer Protection Act (Ref. 130). When proposed § 117.201(d) would apply to a food for which a food packaging label is required under any other provision of the FD&C Act, the complete business address would substitute for the "place of business" required under section 403(e)(1) of the FD&C Act and 21 C.F.R. 101.5(d) and would not impose any requirement for a label that would be in addition to any label required under any other provision of the FD&C Act. We seek comment on this interpretation.

## 7. Records

Proposed § 117.201(e)(1) would require that a qualified facility maintain records relied upon to support the documentation that would be required by § 117.201(a). Proposed § 117.201(a) would not require that a qualified facility establish any new records, but merely retain those that the facility relied upon to support the documentation that would be required by proposed § 117.201(a). Proposed § 117.201(e)(2) would establish that the records that a qualified facility must maintain are subject to the requirements of subpart F of part 117. As discussed in section XV of this document, proposed subpart F would provide the general requirements that apply to all records required to be established and maintained by proposed part 117, including provisions for retention of records and for making records available for official review. Together, proposed § 117.201(a) and (b) would make the underlying records qualified facilities would rely on to support their self-certifications available to FDA upon request. We tentatively conclude that it is

appropriate to require that the records relied upon to support a self-certified statement be retained and made available to FDA upon request.

B. Proposed § 117.206--Modified Requirements That Apply to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food That Is Not Exposed to the Environment

1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Briefly, as relevant to proposed § 117.206, specific provisions of section 418 of the FD&C Act require, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility:

- Identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards that may be associated with the facility and develop a written analysis of the hazards (section 418(b) of the FD&C Act);
- Identify and implement preventive controls to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis will be significantly minimized or prevented and the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act (section 418(c) of the FD&C Act);
- Monitor the effectiveness of the preventive controls implemented under section 418 (c) of the FD&C Act to provide assurances that the outcomes described in section 418 (c) shall be achieved (section 418(d) of the FD&C Act);
- Establish procedures to ensure that, if the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act are not properly implemented or are found to be ineffective ... appropriate action is taken to reduce the likelihood of recurrence of the implementation failure; all affected food is evaluated for safety; and all affected food is prevented from entering into commerce if the owner, operator or agent in charge of such facility cannot ensure that the

affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act (section 418(e) of the FD&C Act);

- Verify that the preventive controls are adequate to control the hazards the owner, operator, or agent is conducting monitoring and is making appropriate decisions about corrective actions and the preventive controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the occurrence of identified hazards and there is documented, periodic reanalysis of the plan under section 418(i) of the FD&C Act to ensure that the plan is still relevant to the raw materials, conditions and processes in the facility, and new and emerging threats (section 418(f) of the FD&C Act);

- Maintain, for not less than 2 years, records documenting the monitoring of the preventive controls instances of nonconformance material to food safety and instances when corrective actions were implemented (section 418(g) of the FD&C Act);

- Prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act, including analyzing the hazards and identifying the preventive controls adopted to address those hazards (section 418(h) of the FD&C Act);

- Conduct a reanalysis under section 418 (b) of the FD&C Act whenever a significant change is made in the activities conducted at a facility operated by such owner, operator, or agent if the change creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard or not less frequently than once every 3 years, whichever is earlier (section 418(i) of the FD&C Act).

In addition to these requirements directed to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility, section 418(m) of the FD&C Act provides, in relevant part, that the Secretary may, by

regulation, exempt or modify the requirements for compliance under section 418 of the FD&C Act with respect to facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of packaged foods that are not exposed to the environment.

## 2. Approach to Modified Requirements under Section 418(m) of the FD&C Act

As discussed in section X.D.4 of this document, proposed § 117.7 would both provide that subpart C does not apply to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment (proposed § 117.7(a)) and establish that such a facility is subject to modified requirements in proposed § 117.206 (proposed § 117.7(a)). In the remainder of our discussion of these modified requirements, we refer to “packaged food that is not exposed to the environment” as “unexposed packaged food,” and we refer to “unexposed refrigerated packaged food that requires time/temperature control for safety” as “unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food.” As noted in section X.D.2 of this document, we consider “not exposed to the environment” and “unexposed” to mean that the food is in a form that prevents any direct human contact with the food. The modified requirements in proposed § 117.206 would apply to unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. In essence, proposed § 117.7 distinguishes between unexposed packaged food and unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. This distinction is based on hazards that are reasonably likely to occur during the storage of unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food, but are not reasonably likely to occur during the storage of unexposed packaged food that does not require time/temperature control for safety.

When an unexposed packaged food is a refrigerated TCS food, the principal hazard for the unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food is the potential for the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance. Information about this hazard for TCS foods in general (i.e., not limited to unexposed packaged food) is widely available (Ref.



137) (Ref. 138) (Ref. 139) (Ref. 140). In brief, the need for time/temperature control is primarily determined by (1) the potential for contamination with microorganisms of public health significance and (2) the potential for subsequent growth and/or toxin production. Refrigeration has long been used to retard deterioration of the flavor, color, and texture of foods. More importantly, refrigeration helps maintain the microbiological safety of potentially hazardous foods (62 FR 8248, February 24, 1997).

Failure to maintain foods at appropriate temperatures may result in the growth of microorganisms that may have contaminated the foods before, or at the time of, harvest or during processing, handling, or storage. The rate of growth of these microorganisms is reduced as the storage temperature is lowered. Proper refrigeration, therefore, prevents or slows the growth of human pathogens and spoilage microorganisms and reduces the likelihood of foodborne illness (62 FR 8248). A review of the factors that influence microbial growth and an analysis of microbial hazards related to time/temperature control of foods for safety can be found in a report (issued by the Institute of Food Technologists (IFT) under contract to FDA) on the Evaluation and Definition of Potentially Hazardous Foods (Ref. 140) (the IFT report). The IFT report describes properties of common food commodities and the microbiological hazards that may occur from consuming particular food commodities, emphasizing microbial concerns that would be associated with temperature abuse of the products. The IFT report discusses foods for which time/temperature control may be necessary for safety (Ref. 140). Most foods that are stored refrigerated have not been processed to eliminate pathogenic sporeformers, including Clostridium botulinum, Bacillus cereus and C. perfringens. If refrigerated foods are exposed to high enough temperatures for sufficient time, these sporeformers may begin to grow and produce toxins. Some strains of C. botulinum and B. cereus can grow at refrigeration temperatures, e.g.,

some strains of B. cereus grow at 39°F (4°C) and some strains of C. botulinum grow at 38°F (3.3°C) (Ref. 173).

Examples of refrigerated foods that are capable of supporting the growth of pathogenic sporeformers such as B. cereus, C. botulinum and C. perfringens include many prepared soups, filled pastas, and sauces. In addition, some foods may be contaminated with L. monocytogenes, which, as described in section II.D.2.a, can also grow at refrigeration temperatures. Examples of foods that support the growth of L. monocytogenes include milk and soft cheese. Producers of refrigerated foods minimize the contamination of foods with pathogens to the extent possible, particularly if the pathogen can grow under refrigeration conditions. Growth of pathogens is very slow under refrigeration, and the lower the temperature the longer the time for growth (Ref. 140). Conversely, as refrigeration temperature increases, the growth rate of strains of pathogens that grow slowly under refrigeration increases and food temperatures may get high enough that pathogens that cannot grow at normal refrigeration temperatures (generally in the range of 41-45°F (5°C-7°C)) begin to grow (Ref. 140). For example, the strains of C. botulinum that have caused most of the outbreaks in the United States do not grow and produce toxin until the temperature reaches 50°F (10°C) (Ref. 3). Additional information about the time/temperature control of food to address the potential for microorganisms of public health significance to grow or produce toxins is available in books on food microbiology that are available for purchase.

Such information is sufficiently well-known and accepted that we tentatively conclude that the outcome of each individual hazard analysis for an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food, conducted by the owner, operator, or agent in charge of each individual facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food, would be the same. That outcome would be that the potential for the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health

significance is a hazard reasonably likely to occur in any unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. Likewise, information about appropriate preventive controls for this hazard is widely available (Ref. 191) (Ref. 139). Such information is sufficiently well-known and accepted that we tentatively conclude that the appropriate preventive control selected by each individual facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food would be adequate controls on the temperature of any unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food.

In light of the general recognition of the hazard that is reasonably likely to occur in a refrigerated packaged TCS food and the appropriate preventive control for that hazard, we tentatively conclude that it is appropriate to specify the hazard and appropriate preventive control in the regulation. Under this approach, it would not be necessary for each individual facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food to conduct its own hazard analysis and reach its own conclusion about the hazard and the appropriateness of temperature control to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance. Instead, what would remain for the facility to do to comply with section 418 of the FD&C Act for the activity of storing an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food would be a subset of the requirements for hazard analysis and risk-based preventive controls that would be established in proposed subpart C to implement section 418 of the FD&C Act. None of these requirements would require a qualified individual. This subset of requirements would be to:

- Implement temperature controls (section 418(c) of the FD&C Act);
- Monitor temperature (section 418(d) of the FD&C Act);
- Take appropriate corrective actions when there is a problem with temperature control (section 418(e) of the FD&C Act);

- Conduct applicable verification activities (review of records) (section 418(f) of the FD&C Act); and

- Establish and maintain certain records (section 418(g) of the FD&C Act).

We seek comment on the proposed list of modified requirements.

We also tentatively conclude that it would not be necessary for each individual facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food to conduct the reanalysis specified in section 418(i) of the FD&C Act with respect to storing an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. As discussed in section XII.G.6 of this document, reanalysis would apply in determining whether to apply any additional preventive controls and in determining whether to update the written plan. Under our approach, it is FDA who has identified the preventive control, and it would be FDA's responsibility, through rulemaking, to require any additional preventive control. Likewise, under our approach, the facility would not be required to develop a food safety plan and, therefore, would not need to update the plan. If, for example, the facility changes its procedures for temperature control, the specific activities that the facility would be required to conduct (monitoring temperature; taking appropriate corrective actions if there is a problem with temperature control; conducting applicable verification activities; and establishing and maintaining appropriate records) would be adequate to address the change in procedure for temperature control.

### 3. Proposed § 117.206--Modified Requirements that Apply to a Facility Solely Engaged in the Storage of Packaged Food that Is Not Exposed to the Environment

Proposed § 117.206(a) would require that the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment conduct certain activities for any such refrigerated packaged food that requires time/temperature

control to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance. Briefly, those activities would encompass:

- Establishing and implementing temperature controls (proposed § 117.206(a)(1));
- Monitoring the temperature controls (proposed § 117.206(a)(2));
- If there is a problem with the temperature controls for such refrigerated packaged food, taking appropriate corrective actions (proposed § 117.206(a)(3));
- Verifying that temperature controls are consistently implemented (proposed § 117.206(a)(4)); and
- Establishing and maintaining certain records (proposed § 117.206(a)(5)).

More specifically, proposed § 117.206(a)(1) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility subject to proposed § 117.206 establish and implement temperature controls adequate to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance in an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. There are two fundamental questions that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility subject to proposed § 117.206 would need to know the answers to in order to comply with proposed § 117.206 for any given unexposed refrigerated packaged food:

- Is the food a TCS food?
- If the food is a TCS food, what is the appropriate temperature for storage of the food?

The two primary ways in which the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility subject to proposed § 117.206 can obtain the answers to these questions are: (1) through information provided by the manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food, either in documents exchanged between the parties in the course of business or by label statements placed on the food

by the manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food; and (2) through applicable scientific and technical support literature.

As discussed in section X.D.2 of this document, a citizen petition submitted to FDA (Docket No. FDA-2011-P-0561) asserted that facilities work closely with the food manufacturers to understand the conditions and controls that need to be utilized to ensure the quality of the foods they store and distribute and, in many cases, those conditions and controls are formalized in written contracts. If the conditions for storage are not formalized in written contracts or by other means (e.g., through documents of the trade that travel with a food product when it moves within the supply chain), information relevant to safe storage of the food may be provided by the manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food on the food label. For example, in 1997 FDA published guidelines for labeling food that needs refrigeration by consumers due to the potential for the food to be rendered unsafe due to the growth of infectious or toxigenic microorganisms if “temperature abused” (62 FR 8248, February 24, 1997). FDA recommended that foods requiring refrigeration by the consumer for safety be labeled “IMPORTANT Must be Kept Refrigerated to Maintain Safety” (62 FR 8248 at 8251) and that foods that are intended to be refrigerated but that do not pose a safety hazard if temperature abused be labeled more simply – e.g.; “Keep refrigerated.” Such labeling can provide facilities with the information to identify TCS foods. We tentatively conclude that it would be rare for a facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food to not have information regarding whether a refrigerated packaged food requires time/temperature control for safety and, if so, what specific temperature controls are necessary for safe storage of the food. We request comment on this tentative conclusion.

In a situation where the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility does not have information from the manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food about whether an unexposed

refrigerated packaged food requires time/temperature control for safety and, if so, what specific temperature controls are necessary for safe storage of the food, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility could either consult the scientific and technical literature to determine whether a particular food is a TCS food or assume that any unexposed refrigerated packaged food is a TCS food. Information about foods that are TCS foods, and about the appropriate temperatures to address the potential for microorganisms of public health significance to grow, or produce toxin, in food are well-established in the scientific literature. Documents prepared by or on behalf of FDA regarding appropriate time/temperature controls for safety (Ref. 173) (Ref. 140) provide numerous references to the primary scientific literature and serve as the basis for time/temperature controls for a variety of foods. The two temperatures commonly cited in these documents as maximum temperatures for safe storage of refrigerated food are 41 °F (5 °C) and 45 °F (7 °C). The cited maximum temperature depends on the food; in some cases, a maximum storage temperature is established through rulemaking in a regulation. For example:

- Our regulations for the prevention of Salmonella Enteritidis in shell eggs during production, storage, and transportation (§ 118.4(e)) and for refrigeration of shell eggs held for retail distribution (§ 115.50(b)(2)) require that eggs be held and transported at a temperature not to exceed 45°F (7°C).
- The PMO provides for pasteurized Grade “A” milk and milk products to be held at 45°F (7°C) (Ref. 37).
- The FDA Food Code, which has been widely adopted in state laws, recommends holding most potentially hazardous (TCS) food at 41°F (7°C) or lower (Ref. 191).

Storage of refrigerated food at or below one of these two temperatures (i.e., 41 °F (5 °C) or 45 °F (7 °C)) consistent with storage temperatures required by regulation or recommended in

widely adopted documents such as the PMO and the FDA Food Code would satisfy proposed § 117.206(a).

We consider frozen food to be a subset of refrigerated food. The temperature and time required for a frozen food to become unsafe would result in significant quality issues for such food. Although there have been occasional problems with frozen food being subject to temperatures that allow some thawing in storage and distribution, we are not aware of situations in which frozen foods have been associated with the food becoming unsafe. Thus, we tentatively conclude that it would be rare for an unexposed frozen packaged food to be a TCS food.

Proposed § 117.206(a)(2) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food monitor the temperature controls established for unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food with sufficient frequency to provide assurance that they are consistently performed. Monitoring can be done by use of a continuous temperature-recording device (e.g., a recording thermometer) that indicates and records the temperature accurately within the refrigeration compartment with a visual check of the recorded data at least once per day. Monitoring as would be required by proposed § 117.206(a)(2) would provide the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility with factual information with which to judge whether the temperature control is operating as intended. Proposed § 117.206(a)(2) is modified relative to the analogous monitoring requirement that would be established in proposed § 117.140(a) in subpart C in that proposed § 117.206(a)(2) would not require written procedures for monitoring. The records of monitoring (which would be required by proposed § 117.206(a)(5)(i)) would demonstrate the frequency of monitoring. We request comment on whether there would be a benefit to requiring a facility to develop written procedures for monitoring temperature.



Proposed § 117.206(a)(3) would require that, if there is a problem with the temperature controls for unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food take appropriate corrective actions to correct a problem with the control of temperature for any refrigerated packaged food and reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur (proposed § 117.206(a)(3)(i)); evaluate all affected food for safety (proposed § 117.206(a)(3)(ii)); and prevent the food from entering commerce, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility cannot ensure the affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the FD&C Act (proposed § 117.206(a)(3)(iii)). Such corrective actions would be necessary if, for example, there was a failure to maintain adequate temperature control. Proposed § 117.206(a)(3) is modified relative to the analogous proposed requirement for corrective actions that would be established in proposed § 117.145(a) in subpart C in that proposed § 117.206(a)(3) would not require written procedures for corrective actions. In essence, there is a single action to correct the problem (i.e., to restore temperature control), followed by the need to evaluate the food for safety and to prevent food from entering commerce when appropriate. The corrective actions taken, including information to document that product was not exposed to temperatures and times that would compromise the safety of the product, would be documented in records subject to agency review. It may be necessary for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility to consult with the applicable manufacturer, processor, or packer of the food to determine the appropriate disposition of the food.

Proposed § 117.206(a)(4)(i) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the storage of unexposed packaged food verify that temperature controls are consistently implemented by calibrating temperature monitoring and recording

devices. As discussed in section XII.G.5.a of this document, calibration provides assurance that an instrument is measuring accurately. If these instruments are not properly calibrated, the values they provide may not provide the necessary assurance temperatures are adequate to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance in an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. Proposed § 117.206(a)(4)(i) is analogous to proposed § 117.150(d)(2) in subpart C, which would establish a verification requirement for calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments.

Proposed § 117.206(a)(4)(ii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in storage of unexposed packaged food verify that temperature controls are consistently implemented by reviewing records of calibration within a reasonable time after the records are made. As discussed in section XII.G.5.b of this document, the purpose of the review of records would be to ensure that the records are complete and that the preventive controls are effective. If temperature monitoring and recording devices are not properly calibrated, the temperature controls may not be effective. As discussed in section XII.G.5.b of this document, the review of calibration records will depend in part on the frequency with which calibrations occur.

Proposed § 117.206(a)(4)(iii) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in storage of unexposed packaged food verify that temperature controls are consistently implemented by reviewing the records of monitoring and actions taken to correct a problem with the control of temperature within a week after the records are made. As discussed in section XII.G.5.b of this document, the purpose of the review of records would be to ensure that the records are complete, that the temperatures recorded were adequate to

significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance in an unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food, and that appropriate actions were taken to correct any problem with the control of temperature for any unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food. A weekly review of monitoring and corrective action records would provide for timely feedback of information and limit the amount of product impacted by any problems identified during the review of the records. Proposed § 117.206(a)(4)(iii) is analogous to proposed § 117.150(d)(2)(ii) in subpart C, which would establish a verification requirement for review of records of monitoring and corrective action records within a week after the records are made.

Proposed § 117.206(a)(4) is modified relative to the analogous proposed verification requirements in proposed § 117.150 in that proposed § 117.206(a)(4) would not require validation or reanalysis. There is a single control to verify, which limits the need for many of the verification procedures that might otherwise apply. As noted above, the temperatures to control growth of microbial pathogens are well documented and do not require validation that they are effective in controlling the potential for microorganisms of public health significance to grow, or produce toxin, in food. The reasons for not requiring reanalysis were discussed in section XIII.B.2. Proposed § 117.206(a)(4) also is modified relative to the analogous proposed verification requirements in proposed § 117.150 in that proposed § 117.206(a)(4) would not require that a qualified individual perform or oversee the review of records of calibration or records of monitoring and actions taken to correct a problem with the control of temperature. The nature of these records does not require the qualifications that would be required under proposed § 117.155(b).

Proposed § 117.206(a)(5) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in storage of unexposed packaged food establish and maintain records documenting the monitoring of temperature controls for any unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food (proposed § 117.206(a)(5)(i)); records of corrective actions taken when there is a problem with the control of temperature for any unexposed refrigerated packaged TCS food (proposed § 117.206(a)(5)(ii)); and records documenting verification activities (proposed § 117.206(a)(5)(iii)). The records that document monitoring would be used to verify that the temperature controls are effectively and significantly minimizing or preventing the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance. The records that document corrective actions would be used to verify that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made and appropriate corrective actions are being taken. The records that document verification activities would be used to document that this key element of a food safety plan has been implemented. These records would be necessary to demonstrate compliance with the requirements and as such would be useful to inspectors and auditors. Proposed § 117.206(a)(5) is analogous to provisions in proposed §§ 117.140(c), 117.145(d), and 117.150(f) in subpart C, which would require documentation of monitoring, corrective actions, and verification activities, respectively.

Proposed § 117.206(b) would establish that the records that a facility must establish and maintain under proposed § 117.206(a)(5) are subject to the requirements of proposed subpart F. Proposed subpart F would establish requirements that would apply to all records that would be required under proposed part 117. We describe the requirements of proposed subpart F in section XV of this document. Proposed § 117.206(b) is analogous to proposed § 117.175(b) in subpart C.

XIV. Proposed New Provisions for Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility (Proposed Part 117, Subpart E)

A. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(l)(3)(A) of the FD&C Act specifies that, in the event of an active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to a qualified facility subject to an exemption under section 418(l) of the FD&C Act, or if the Secretary determines that it is necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak based on conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility, the Secretary may withdraw the exemption provided to such facility under section 418(l) of the FD&C Act. Section 418 does not expressly prescribe the procedures for withdrawing an exemption provided to a qualified facility under section 418(l). We tentatively conclude that it is appropriate to be transparent about the process we would use to withdraw an exemption and that we should include the process in the proposed rule.

B. Proposed § 117.251--Circumstances That May Lead FDA to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

1. Proposed § 117.251(a)--Withdrawal of an Exemption in the Event of an Active Investigation of a Foodborne Illness Outbreak

Proposed § 117.251(a) would provide that FDA may withdraw the exemption that would be applicable to a qualified facility under proposed § 117.5(a) in the event of an active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to the qualified facility. Proposed § 117.251(a) would implement the statutory language of section 418(l)(3)(A) of the FD&C Act. As discussed in section II.A.6.c of this document, an outbreak of foodborne illness

is the occurrence of two or more cases of a similar illness resulting from the ingestion of a common food. Food can become contaminated at many different steps in the farm-to-table continuum: on the farm; in packing, manufacturing/processing, or distribution facilities; during storage or transit; at retail establishments; in restaurants; and in the home. When foodborne illness is associated with food, a traceback investigation may enable us to directly link the illness to the facility or facilities that manufactured, processed, packed, and/or held the food.

For example, in February 2007, CDC notified FDA of a multi-state outbreak of Salmonella Tennessee infections associated with the consumption of peanut butter (73 FR 55115 at 55118, September 24, 2008). Peanut butter is a non-perishable packaged food, sold in jars. Consumers who became ill had open jars of peanut butter available for testing. Investigators were able to test samples of peanut butter taken from the jars and confirm the presence of Salmonella Tennessee in the peanut butter. Investigators were able to identify the manufacturer through information required to be on the label of the jars (21 CFR 101.5(a)) and through a product code the manufacturer had voluntarily placed on the jars. This information made it possible for FDA to visit the manufacturing facility the day after we learned of the outbreak from CDC. Investigators were able to use the product code to look in the manufacturing facility for unopened jars of peanut butter manufactured at the same time as the jars available from consumers. Investigators took samples of peanut butter from these unopened jars and confirmed the presence of Salmonella Tennessee in those samples. Because investigators uncovered conditions at the manufacturer's facility that were likely to have caused the contamination and obtained a positive environmental sample, investigators saw no need to further trace the peanuts back to the farm where the peanuts were grown (73 FR 55115 at 55118). In circumstances such

as the 2007 peanut butter outbreak, the available data and information from the investigation directly linked the outbreak of foodborne illness to the manufacturing facility.

## 2. Proposed § 117.251(b)--Withdrawal of an Exemption Based on Conduct or Conditions Associated with a Qualified Facility

Proposed § 117.251(b) would provide that FDA may withdraw the exemption applicable to a qualified facility under proposed § 117.5(a) if FDA determines that it is necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak based on conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility. As an example, we may receive reports to the Reportable Food Registry under section 417 of the FD&C Act about contamination of a food, and the reports may lead us to investigate a qualified facility that manufactured, processed, packed or held the food. If our investigation finds conduct or conditions associated with the facility that are material to the safety of the food (for example, conduct or conditions that likely led to the contamination of the food), we would consider withdrawing the exemption applicable to the facility under proposed § 117.5(a) if doing so would be necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak. Likewise, if during a routine inspection of a qualified facility, we discover conditions and practices that are likely to lead to contamination of food with microorganisms of public health significance, we would consider withdrawing the exemption provided to the facility under proposed § 117.5(a) if doing so would be necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak.

C. Proposed § 117.254--Issuance of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a  
Qualified Facility

Proposed § 117.254(a) would provide that, if FDA determines that an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under proposed § 117.5(a) should be withdrawn, any officer or qualified employee of FDA may issue an order to withdraw the exemption. We intend to create and maintain a written record of a determination that the withdrawal of an exemption is warranted and to include the basis for the determination in the written record.

Proposed § 117.254(b) would require that an FDA District Director in whose district the qualified facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition), or an FDA official senior to such Director, must approve an order to withdraw the exemption as part of the withdrawal determination procedure before the order is issued. A Regional Food and Drug Director is an example of an FDA official senior to a District Director. The Deputy Director and Director of the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition are examples of an FDA official senior to the Director of the Office of Compliance. Requiring prior approval of a withdrawal order by a District Director or an FDA official senior to a District Director is consistent with the approval requirement for a detention order in part 1, subpart K (Administrative Detention of Food for Human or Animal Consumption). Requiring prior approval of a withdrawal order by the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition is consistent with current FDA practices when dealing with foreign firms.

Proposed § 117.254(c) would require that FDA issue an order to withdraw the exemption to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the qualified facility. The requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act are directed to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility. We



tentatively conclude that the statutory language of section 418 enables FDA to issue an exemption withdrawal order to any of these persons.

Proposed § 117.254(d) would require that FDA issue an order to withdraw the exemption in writing, signed and dated by the officer or qualified employee of FDA who is issuing the order.

D. Proposed 117.257--Contents of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

Proposed § 117.257(a) through (i) would require that an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a) include the following information:

- (a) The date of the order (proposed § 117.257(a));
- (b) The name, address and location of the qualified facility (proposed § 117.257(b));
- (c) A brief, general statement of the reasons for the order, including information relevant to:
  - (1) An active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to the facility; or
  - (2) Conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility (proposed § 117.257(c)).
- (d) A statement that the facility must comply with subpart C of this part on the date that is 60 calendar days after the date of the order (proposed § 117.257(d));
- (e) The text of section 418(l) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and of this subpart E (proposed § 117.257(e));

- (f) A statement that any informal hearing on an appeal of the order must be conducted as a regulatory hearing under part 16 of this chapter (21 CFR Part 16), with certain exceptions described in proposed § 117.270 (proposed § 117.257(f));
- (g) The mailing address, telephone number, e-mail address, and facsimile number of the FDA district office and the name of the FDA District Director in whose district the facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the same information for the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition); (proposed § 117.257(g)); and
- (h) The name and the title of the FDA representative who approved the order (proposed § 117.257(i)).

FDA tentatively concludes that the requirements that we propose in § 117.257 would provide the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility subject to a withdrawal with adequate notice of the basis for our determination to withdraw the exemption and of their opportunity to appeal our determination and to request an informal hearing. The proposed notification procedures are similar to and consistent with the notification requirements in other regulations involving administrative action, such as administrative detention of food under § 1.393 orders for diversion or destruction of shell eggs under the PHS Act under § 118.12(a)(i), and with procedures for an informal hearing in part 16.

E. Proposed § 117.260--Compliance With, or Appeal of, an Order to Withdraw an Exemption

Applicable to a Qualified Facility

Proposed § 117.260(a) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility that receives an order under § 117.251 to withdraw an exemption applicable to that facility under § 117.5(a) either comply with applicable requirements of this part within 60

calendar days of the date of the order; or appeal the order within 10 calendar days of the date of the order in accordance with the requirements of § 117.264. We tentatively conclude that either of the two circumstances that could result in our determination that an exemption should be withdrawn (as described in proposed § 117.251) warrant prompt compliance with the rule in the interest of public health. We tentatively conclude that ten calendar days for the submission of an appeal from the date of the receipt of a withdrawal order is appropriate for purposes of the efficient adjudication of the appeal of a withdrawal order and would provide reasonable due process that comes to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal.

Proposed § 117.260(b) would establish that submission of an appeal, including submission of a request for an informal hearing, will not delay or stay any administrative action, including enforcement action by FDA, unless the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, as a matter of discretion, determines that delay or a stay is in the public interest. For example, the submission of an appeal of a withdrawal order with a request for an informal hearing under proposed § 117.260(b) would not prevent FDA from simultaneously detaining food from the facility under section 304(h) of the FD&C Act, seizing food from the facility under section 304(a) of the FD&C Act, or seeking or enforcing an injunction under section 302 of the FD&C Act.

Proposed § 117.260(c) would require that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the qualified facility appeals the order, and FDA confirms the order, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility must comply with applicable requirements of this part within 60 calendar days of the date of the order. Proposed § 117.260(c) would make clear that the 60 calendar day time frame for compliance applies regardless of whether the owner, operator, or

agent in charge of a facility requests, and FDA grants, a hearing. As already discussed, FDA tentatively concludes that the circumstances that lead to a determination that an exemption should be withdrawn warrant prompt compliance in the interest of public health.

#### F. Proposed § 117.264--Procedure for Submitting an Appeal

Proposed § 117.264(a) would require that, to appeal an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a), the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility must (1) submit the appeal in writing to the FDA District Director in whose district the facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the same information for the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition), at the mailing address, e-mail address, or facsimile number identified in the order within 10 calendar days of the date of the order; and (2) respond with particularity to the facts and issues contained in the order, including any supporting documentation upon which the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility relies.

Allowing the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility to submit an appeal in person, by mail, e-mail, or fax would provide for flexibility as well as speed. For example, submitting in person would give the owner, operator, or agent in charge direct knowledge that the request for appeal had been delivered and received. E-mail and fax are instantaneous, and overnight mail delivery services are readily available to those who choose to use them; however, the ten day time frame for appeal of the order would not require the use of overnight mail delivery. For clarity, proposed § 117.264(a) would repeat the 10 calendar day time frame that would be established in proposed § 117.260(a)(2) and would not establish any new requirement. Any appeal would need to be written in order for FDA to evaluate the basis for the appeal. We are proposing that a written appeal would need to address with particularity all of the issues

raised in the withdrawal order and include all supporting documentation so that we would be able to issue a final determination as to the disposition of the appeal solely on the basis of the materials submitted as part of the written appeal.

Proposed § 117.264(b) would provide that, in a written appeal of the order withdrawing an exemption provided under § 117.5(a), the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility may include a written request for an informal hearing as provided in §117.267. Requesting an informal hearing does not mean that a hearing will be held, because we may deny the request (see discussion of proposed § 117.267(b) in the next section of this document). However, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility does not request an informal hearing at the time the written appeal is submitted, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility will not be entitled to an informal hearing. Instead, FDA will make a final decision based on the written appeal and its supporting materials.

#### G. Proposed § 117.267--Procedure for Requesting an Informal Hearing

Proposed § 117.267(a)(1) would provide that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility may request an informal hearing. Proposed § 117.267(a)(1) would restate an option that would be included in proposed § 117.264(b) to highlight the opportunity to request an informal hearing. Proposed § 117.267(a)(2) would require that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility must submit any request for an informal hearing together with its written appeal submitted in accordance with § 117.264 within 10 calendar days of the date of the order. We tentatively conclude that requiring submission of a request for an informal hearing in writing at the time that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility would be required to submit a written appeal is appropriate for purposes of the

efficient adjudication of the appeal of a withdrawal order and would provide reasonable due process that would come to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal.

Proposed § 117.267(b) would establish that a request for an informal hearing may be denied, in whole or in part, if the presiding officer determines that no genuine and substantial issue of material fact has been raised by the material submitted. Proposed § 117.267(b) would also provide that if the presiding officer determines that a hearing is not justified, written notice of the determination will be given to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility explaining the reason for the denial. Under proposed § 117.264(a), a written appeal would be required to respond with particularity to the facts and issues contained in the withdrawal order, including any supporting documentation upon which the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility relies. If the materials submitted do not directly address the facts and issues contained in the withdrawal order in a manner that suggests that there is a dispute regarding the material facts contained in the order, the presiding officer may determine that an informal hearing is not warranted. The presiding officer may include written notice of the determination that a hearing is not justified as part of the final decision on the appeal.

#### H. Proposed § 117.270--Requirements Applicable to an Informal Hearing

Proposed § 117.270(a) would establish that, if the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility requests an informal hearing, and FDA grants the request, the hearing will be held within 10 calendar days after the date the appeal is filed or, if applicable, within a time frame agreed upon in writing by the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility and FDA. We tentatively conclude that, if we grant a request for an informal hearing, holding the hearing within 10 calendar days, or within an alternative time frame as agreed upon in writing, is

appropriate for purposes of the efficient adjudication of the appeal of a withdrawal order and would provide reasonable due process that would come to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal.

Proposed 117.270(b) would establish that the presiding officer may require that a hearing conducted under this subpart E be completed within 1 calendar day, if appropriate. We tentatively conclude that, if we grant a request for an informal hearing, limiting the time for the hearing itself to be completed within 1 calendar day is appropriate for purposes of the efficient adjudication of the appeal of a withdrawal order and would provide reasonable due process that would come to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal.

Proposed § 117.270(c)(1) through (7) would establish that, if the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility requests an informal hearing, and FDA grants the request, FDA must conduct the hearing in accordance with part 16, except that:

- (1) The order withdrawing an exemption under §§ 117.254 and 117.257, rather than the notice under § 16.22(a), provides notice of opportunity for a hearing under this section and is part of the administrative record of the regulatory hearing under § 16.80(a) of this chapter.
- (2) A request for a hearing under this subpart E must be addressed to the FDA District Director (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition) as provided in the order withdrawing an exemption.
- (3) Section 117.274, rather than § 16.42(a), describes the FDA employees who preside at hearings under this subpart.

- (4) Section 16.60(e) and (f) of this chapter does not apply to a hearing under this subpart. The presiding officer must prepare a written report of the hearing. All written material presented at the hearing will be attached to the report. The presiding officer must include as part of the report of the hearing a finding on the credibility of witnesses (other than expert witnesses) whenever credibility is a material issue, and must include a proposed decision, with a statement of reasons. The hearing participant may review and comment on the presiding officer's report within 2 calendar days of issuance of the report. The presiding officer will then issue the final decision.

- (5) Section 16.80(a)(4) of this chapter does not apply to a regulatory hearing under this subpart. The presiding officer's report of the hearing and any comments on the report by the hearing participant under § 117.270(c)(4) are part of the administrative record.

- (6) No party shall have the right, under § 16.119 of this chapter to petition the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for reconsideration or a stay of the presiding officer's final decision.

- (7) If FDA grants a request for an informal hearing on an appeal of an order withdrawing an exemption, the hearing must be conducted as a regulatory hearing under a regulation in accordance with part 16, except that § 16.95(b) does not apply to a hearing under this subpart. With respect to a regulatory hearing under this subpart, the administrative record of the hearing specified in §§ 16.80(a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), and (a)(5), and 117.270(c)(5) constitutes the exclusive record for the presiding officer's final decision. For purposes of judicial review under § 10.45 of this chapter, the record of the administrative proceeding consists of the record of the hearing and the presiding officer's final decision.



Under § 16.1(b), the procedures in part 16 apply when a regulation provides a person with an opportunity for a hearing on a regulatory action under part 16. Section 418 of the FD&C Act does not expressly provide for a hearing if circumstances lead FDA to determine that an exemption provided to a qualified facility under proposed § 117.5(a) should be withdrawn. However, we tentatively conclude as a matter of agency discretion that providing an opportunity for a hearing by regulation in this subpart of the proposed rule would provide appropriate process to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility subject to withdrawal of the facility's exemption. We also tentatively conclude that the modified part 16 procedures contained in this proposed rule would provide the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility subject to a withdrawal order sufficient fairness and due process while enabling FDA to expeditiously adjudicate an appeal of a withdrawal order for which an informal hearing has been granted.

Section 16.119 provides that, after any final administrative action that is the subject of a hearing under part 16, any party may petition the Commissioner for reconsideration of any part or all of the decision or action under § 10.33 or may petition for a stay of the decision or action under § 10.35. Proposed § 117.270(c)(6) would specify that these procedures for reconsideration and stay would not apply to the process of withdrawing an exemption provided under proposed § 117.5(a). The circumstances that may lead FDA to withdraw an exemption include an active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to a qualified facility, or our determination that it is necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak based on conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility. Such circumstances require prompt action. Under § 16.120, a qualified facility that disagrees with

FDA's decision to withdraw an exemption provided under § 117.5(a) has an opportunity for judicial review in accordance with § 10.45.

I. Proposed § 117.274--Presiding Officer for an Appeal and for an Informal Hearing

Proposed § 117.274 would require that the presiding officer for an appeal, and for an informal hearing, must be an FDA Regional Food and Drug Director or another FDA official senior to an FDA District Director. Under § 16.42(b), an officer presiding over an informal hearing is to be free from bias or prejudice and may not have participated in the investigation or action that is the subject of the hearing or be subordinate to a person, other than the Commissioner, who has participated in such investigation or action. An order for the withdrawal of an exemption applicable to a qualified facility must be approved by a District Director or an official senior to a District Director. It is therefore necessary that appeals of a decision to issue a withdrawal order should be handled by persons in positions senior to the District Directors. The Regional Food and Drug Director is such a person and could be from the same region where the facility is located, provided that the Regional Food and Drug Director did not participate in the determination that an exemption should be withdrawn and is otherwise free from bias or prejudice. Alternatively, the Regional Food and Drug Director could be from a different region than the region where the facility is located, for example in the event the Regional Food and Drug Director for the region in which the facility is located is the FDA official who approved the withdrawal order. Any Office Director of FDA's Office of Regulatory Affairs could preside at a hearing, provided that the Office Director did not participate in the determination that an exemption should be withdrawn and is otherwise free from bias or prejudice.

#### J. Proposed § 117.277--Time Frame for Issuing a Decision on an Appeal

Proposed § 117.277(a) would require that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility appeals the order without requesting a hearing, the presiding officer must issue a written report that includes a final decision confirming or revoking the withdrawal by the tenth calendar day after the appeal is filed. Under proposed § 117.251, FDA would issue a withdrawal order either in the event of an active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to a qualified facility or if we determine that an exemption withdrawal is necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak based on conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food located at the facility. We tentatively conclude that we will need 10 calendar days to review the written appeal and the materials submitted with the written appeal, and that a final decision confirming or revoking a withdrawal order should be issued as quickly as possible in the interest of the public health and to provide reasonable due process that would come to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal.

Proposed § 117.277(b)(1) would require that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing and, if FDA grants the request for a hearing and the hearing is held, the presiding officer must provide a 2 calendar day opportunity for the hearing participants to review and submit comments on the report of the hearing under § 117.270(c)(4), and must issue a final decision within the 10-calendar day period after the hearing is held. We tentatively conclude that it is appropriate to grant the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility subject to a withdrawal order the opportunity to review and submit comments to the presiding officer's report because the report is part of the record of a final

agency action (see discussion of proposed § 117.284 in section XIV.L of this document) that is not subject to further reconsideration by FDA. The presiding officer would have discretion to determine whether to revise the report of the hearing in light of any comments that might be submitted by any of the hearing participants.

Proposed § 117.277(b)(2) would require that, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing and if FDA denies the request for a hearing, the presiding officer must issue a final decision on the appeal confirming or revoking the withdrawal within 10 calendar days after the date the appeal is filed. We tentatively conclude that ten calendar days for the presiding officer to issue a final decision is appropriate for purposes of the efficient adjudication of the appeal of a withdrawal order, would provide reasonable due process that would come to closure sufficiently in advance of the effective date of the order to provide an opportunity for the facility to come into compliance if we deny the appeal, and is in the interest of public health.

K. Proposed § 117.280--Revocation of an Order to Withdraw an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

Proposed § 117.280(a) through (c) would establish that an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a) is revoked if:

- (a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing, FDA grants the request for an informal hearing, and the presiding officer does not confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the hearing, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time; or
- (b) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing, FDA denies the request for an informal hearing, and FDA does not

confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the appeal is filed, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time; or

- (c) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order without requesting an informal hearing, and FDA does not confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the appeal is filed, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time.

We tentatively conclude that an order to withdraw an exemption may be revoked in one of two manners. First, we are proposing that the FDA officer responsible for adjudicating the appeal and presiding over a hearing, if one is granted, may expressly issue a written decision revoking the order within the specified 10 calendar day time frames. Second, we are proposing that the failure of the FDA officer responsible for adjudicating an appeal to issue a final decision expressly confirming the order within the specified time frames will also serve to revoke the order. We tentatively conclude that fairness would warrant the revocation of a withdrawal order if FDA is unable to meet the proposed deadlines for expressly confirming an order.

#### L. Proposed § 117.284--Final Agency Action

Proposed § 117.284 would establish that confirmation of a withdrawal order by the presiding officer is considered a final agency action for purposes of section 702 of title 5 of the United States Code (5 U.S.C. 702). A confirmation of an order withdrawing an exemption therefore would be reviewable by the courts under section 702 of title 5 and in accordance with § 10.45 (21 CFR § 10.45).

#### M. Conforming Amendment to 21 CFR Part 16

We propose to amend § 16.1(b)(2) to include part 117, subpart E, relating to the withdrawal of an exemption applicable to a qualified facility, to the list of regulatory provisions under which regulatory hearings are available.

## XV. Proposed New Recordkeeping Requirements (Proposed Part 117, Subpart F)

### A. Relevant Statutory Provisions

FDA is proposing to create a new Subpart F to establish requirements applying to records that must be established and maintained according to the requirements of this proposed rule. As discussed in section XII.I of this document, section 418 of the FD&C Act prescribes several requirements relevant to recordkeeping. The statutory provisions that are most relevant to proposed subpart F are:

- Section 418(a) of the FD&C Act, which requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility maintain records of monitoring the performance of preventive controls as a matter of routine practice;
- Section 418(b)(3) of the FD&C Act, which requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility develop a written analysis of the hazards;
- Section 418(g) of the FD&C Act, which requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility maintain certain records for not less than 2 years. The records identified in section 418(g) include records documenting the monitoring of the preventive controls implemented under section 418(c) of the FD&C Act, instances of nonconformance material to food safety, the results of testing and other appropriate means of verification under section 418(f)(4) of the FD&C Act, instances when corrective actions were implemented, and the efficacy of preventive controls and corrective actions; and
- Section 418(h) of the FD&C Act, which requires, in relevant part, that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility prepare a written plan that documents and describes the procedures used by the facility to comply with the requirements of this section and that such written plan, together with documentation described in section 418(g) of the FD&C Act, shall be

made promptly available to a duly authorized representative of the Secretary upon oral or written request;

- Section 418(n)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act, which provides, in relevant part, that FDA shall promulgate regulations to establish science-based minimum standards for documenting hazards and documenting the implementation of the preventive controls under this section;

- Section 402(a)(4) of the FD&C Act, which provides that food is adulterated if it has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health;

- Section 701(a) of the FD&C Act [21 U.S.C. 371(a)], which provides FDA with authority to promulgate regulations for the efficient enforcement of the FD&C Act; and

- Section 361(a) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. 264(a)], which provides FDA with authority to make and enforce such regulations as in FDA's judgment are necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases from foreign countries into the States or possessions, or from one State or possession into any other State or possession.

- Section 418(l)(2)(B) of the FD&C Act, which requires a qualified facility to submit documentation to the Secretary related to its qualified status and also submit either documentation of the facility's implementation and monitoring of preventive controls or documentation of its compliance with other appropriate non-Federal food safety laws.

**B. Proposed § 117.301 - Records Subject to the Requirements of this Subpart F**

Proposed § 117.301(a) would establish that, except as provided by proposed § 117.301(b) and (c), all records required by proposed part 117 would be subject to all requirements of

proposed subpart F. FDA tentatively concludes that the requirements in subpart F describing how records must be established and maintained, including the general requirements, record retention requirements, and requirements for official review and public disclosure, are applicable to all records that would be required under all subparts, because records that would be required under each of the subparts aid plants and facilities in compliance with the requirements of proposed part 117; and allow plants and facilities to show, and FDA to determine, compliance with the requirements of part 110.

Proposed § 117.301(b) would establish that the requirements of proposed § 117.310 apply only to the written food safety plan and is discussed in more detail in Part D of this section.

Proposed § 117.301(c) would provide that the requirements of § 117.305(b), (d), (e), and (f) do not apply to the records required by § 117.201(e). As discussed in section XIII.A.7 of this document, proposed § 117.201(e) would require that a qualified facility maintain records relied upon to support the self-certification that would be required by § 117.201(a). Such documentation would be directed to the financial basis (and, when applicable, percentage of sales to qualified end users) as well as to food safety practices at the qualified facility, and could range from invoices to a food safety plan to an operating license issued by a state or local authority. Such records would not be expected to satisfy the provisions of proposed § 117.305(b), (d), (e), and (f) (which we discuss in the next section of this document). To make clear that a qualified facility need not comply with provisions that do not apply to its records, we are proposing to specify that those provisions do not apply to such records.

#### C. Proposed § 117.305--General Requirements Applying to Records

Proposed § 117.305 contains general requirements that would apply to records that would be required under proposed part 117, including the format for required records, the recording of



actual values and observations obtained during monitoring, when records must be created, and information that must be included in each record.

1. Proposed § 117.305(a)

Proposed § 117.305(a) would require that the records be kept as original records, true copies (such as photocopies, pictures, scanned copies, microfilm, microfiche, or other accurate reproductions of the original records), or electronic records. True copies of records should be of sufficient quality to detect whether the original record was changed or corrected in a manner that obscured the original entry (e.g., through the use of white-out). Proposed § 117.305(a) would provide flexibility for mechanisms for keeping records while maintaining the integrity of the recordkeeping system. The proposed requirement allowing true copies is consistent with other regulations such as our Good Manufacturing Practices (GMPs) regulation for dietary supplements (§ 111.605(b)) and provides options that may be compatible with the way records are currently being kept in plants and facilities.

Proposed § 117.305(a) also would require that electronic records be kept in accordance with part 11 (21 CFR part 11). Part 11 provides criteria for acceptance by FDA, under certain circumstances, of electronic records, electronic signatures, and handwritten signatures executed to electronic records as equivalent to paper records and handwritten signatures executed on paper. The proposed requirement clarifies and acknowledges that records required by proposed part 117 may be retained electronically, provided that they comply with part 11.

FDA tentatively concludes that it is appropriate to apply the requirements of part 11 to the records that would be required to be kept under proposed part 117. However, we request comment on whether there are any circumstances that would warrant not applying part 11 to records that would be kept under proposed part 117. For example, would a requirement that

electronic records be kept according to part 11 mean that current electronic records and recordkeeping systems would have to be recreated and redesigned, which we determined to be the case in the regulation Establishment and Maintenance of Records Under the Public Health Security and Bioterrorism Preparedness and Response Act of 2002 (69 FR 71562, December 9, 2004 (the BT records regulation)) For the purposes of the records requirements in the BT records regulation, we concluded that it was not necessary for new recordkeeping systems to be established as long as current practices would satisfy the requirements of the Act and, therefore, we exempted the records from the requirements of part 11 (21 CFR § 1.329(b)). We also exempted records related to certain cattle materials prohibited from use in human food and cosmetics from part 11 (21 CFR §§ 189.5(c)(7) and 700.27(c)(7), respectively). We also seek comment on whether we should allow additional time for electronic records to be kept in accordance with part 11. Comments should provide the basis for any view that the requirements of part 11 are not warranted.

## 2. Proposed § 117.305(b)

Proposed § 117.305(b) would require that records contain the actual values and observations obtained during monitoring. It is neither possible to derive the full benefits of a preventive controls system, nor to verify the operation of the system, without recording actual values and observations to produce an accurate record. Notations that monitoring measurements, such as heat treatment temperatures, are “satisfactory” or “unsatisfactory,” without recording the actual times and temperatures, are vague and subject to varying interpretations and, thus, will not ensure that controls are working properly. In addition, it is not possible to discern a trend toward loss of control without actual measurement values. Proposed § 117.305(b) is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, specifically § 123.6(c)(7) and §120.12(b)(4),

respectively. In addition, our HACCP regulation for juice also requires that records documenting the monitoring of critical control points and their critical limits include recording of actual times, temperatures, or other measurements (§ 120.12(a)(4)(i)). We seek comment on this proposal.

### 3. Proposed § 117.305(c), (d) and (e)

Proposed § 117.305(c), (d) and (e) would require that records be accurate, indelible, and legible (proposed § 117.305(c)); be created concurrently with performance of the activity documented (proposed § 117.305(d)); and be as detailed as necessary to provide a history of work performed (proposed § 117.305(e)). Proposed § 117.305(c) and (d) would ensure that the records are useful to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a plant or facility in complying with the requirements of proposed part 117, for example, in documenting compliance with monitoring requirements and verifying compliance with the food safety plan. These proposed requirements would also ensure that the records would be useful to FDA in determining compliance with the requirements of proposed part 117. Proposed § 117.305(e) would provide flexibility to plants and facilities to tailor the amount of detail to the nature of the record. These proposed requirements are consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP guidelines, and our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice. Consistent with the definition of “monitor” in proposed § 117.3, the NACMCF guidelines assert that monitoring is a planned sequence of observations or measurements to not only assess whether a CCP is under control but to also produce an accurate record for future use in verification (Ref. 34). The Codex guidelines advise that efficient and accurate record keeping is essential to the application of a HACCP system (Ref. 35). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that processing and

other information be entered on records at the time that it is observed (§§ 123.9(a)(4) and 120.12(b)(4), respectively).

#### 4. Proposed § 117.305(f)

Proposed § 117.305(f) would require that the records include (1) the name and location of the plant or facility; (2) the date and time of the activity documented; (3) the signature or initials of the person performing the activity; and (4) where appropriate, the identity of the product and the production code, if any. The name and location of the plant or facility and the date and time would allow the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a plant or facility (and, during inspection, an FDA investigator) to assess whether the record is current, to identify when and where any deviation occurred, and to track corrective actions. The signature of the individual who made the observation would ensure responsibility and accountability. In addition, if there is a question about the record, a signature would ensure that the source of the record will be known. Linking a record to a specific product (and, when applicable, the production code) would enable the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility to isolate product that has not been processed properly when there has been a problem, thereby limiting the impact of the problem (such as the need to reprocess product or to recall product) to only those lots with the problem.

Proposed § 117.305(f) is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines recommend that all records and documents associated with CCP monitoring be dated and signed or initialed by the person doing the monitoring (Ref. 34). Our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice require that all records include the name and location of the processor; the date and time of the activity that the record reflects; the signature or initials of the person performing the operation;

and where appropriate, the identity of the product and the production code, if any (§§ 123.9(a) and 120.12 (b), respectively).

D. Proposed § 117.310--Additional Requirements Applying to the Food Safety Plan

Proposed § 117.310 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility sign and date the food safety plan upon initial completion (proposed § 117.310 (a)) and upon any modification (proposed § 117.310(b)). Such a signature would provide direct evidence of the owner, operator, or agent's acceptance of the plan and commitment to implementation of the plan. Additionally, the signature, along with the date of signing, would serve to minimize potential confusion over the authenticity of any differing versions or editions of the document that might exist. The proposed requirement for signing and dating is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which require that the HACCP plan be signed and dated, either by the most responsible individual onsite at the processing facility or by a higher level official of the processor and be dated and signed upon initial acceptance; upon any modification; and upon verification of the plan (for seafood) or upon verification and validation (for juice) (§§ 123.6(d) and 120.12 (c) for seafood and juice, respectively).

E. Proposed § 117.315--Requirements for Record Retention

Proposed § 117.315 contains requirements on the length of time records that would be required under proposed part 117 must be retained and allowances for offsite storage of records under certain circumstances.

1. Proposed § 117.315(a) and (b)

Proposed § 117.315(a) would require that all records that would be required by proposed part 117 be retained at the plant or facility for at least 2 years after the date they were prepared. Proposed § 117.315(b) would require that records that relate to the general adequacy of the

equipment or processes being used by a facility, including the results of scientific studies and evaluations, must be retained at the facility for at least 2 years after their use is discontinued (e.g., because the facility has updated the written food safety plan (§ 117.126) or records that document validation of the written food safety plan (§ 117.150(a)). Proposed § 117.315(a) and (b) implement subsection 418(g) of the FD&C Act, which requires certain records to be maintained for not less than 2 years. The 2-year timeframe for all records required by proposed part 117 is consistent with the length of time that nonperishable food products, on average, can be expected to be in commercial distribution plus a reasonable time thereafter to ensure that the records are available for verification activities. As we noted in the proposed BT records regulation (68 FR 25188 at 25198, May 9, 2003), according to information provided to FDA by the food industry, the minimum time for processed food products to clear the food production and distribution/retail system is 3 years. In addition, the average distribution time between harvesting and final retail sale of frozen fruits and vegetables is approximately 3 to 24 months (68 FR 25188 at 25198). In the final BT records regulation, we concluded that 2 years was the minimum time records related to nonperishable foods for the purpose of identifying immediate previous sources and immediate subsequent recipients should be kept (69 FR 71562 at 71602-3). The 2-year record retention requirement is also consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which both require that records be retained for at least 2 years after the date they were prepared in the case of frozen, preserved, or shelf-stable products (§§ 123.9(b)(1) and 120.12(d)(1), respectively); and with the requirement in the seafood HACCP regulation that records relating to the general adequacy of equipment or processes, including scientific studies and evaluations, be retained for at least 2 years after their applicability to the product being produced at the facility (§ 123.9(b)(2)). While FDA established shorter records retention

requirements for records related to perishable foods in the BT records, seafood HACCP, and juice HACCP regulations, in this case Congress determined and specified in section 418(g) of the FD&C Act that the minimum retention period for the majority of the records required under proposed part 117 for all foods, regardless of perishability, is 2 years. Therefore, FDA tentatively concludes that the same requirement should apply to all records required under this section, regardless of the perishability of the food to which the record relates. This would simplify plants' or facilities' duties in compliance because there would only be one 2-year retention period to apply to any record required under proposed part 117. This 2-year retention period would run either from the date the record was prepared, for day-to-day operational records; or from the date at which use of the record is discontinued, for records relating to the general adequacy or equipment or processes (e.g., the written food safety plan and records that document validation of the written food safety plan). We seek comment on this proposal.

## 2. Proposed § 117.315(c)

Proposed § 117.315(c) would provide that, except for the food safety plan, use of offsite storage for records is permitted after 6 months following the date that the record was made if such records can be retrieved and provided onsite within 24 hours of request for official review. The food safety plan would be required to remain onsite. FDA realizes that the proposed requirements for recordkeeping could require some plants or facilities to store a significant quantity of records, and that there may not be adequate storage space in the plant or facility for all of these records. Providing for offsite storage of most records after 6 months would enable a facility to comply with the proposed requirements for record retention while reducing the amount of space needed for onsite storage of the records without interfering with the purpose of record retention, because the records will be readily available.

Proposed § 117.315(c) also would provide that electronic records are considered to be onsite if they are accessible from an onsite location. Computerized systems within corporations can be networked, allowing for the sending and receiving of information in a secure fashion to all of the different food processing facilities of that corporation worldwide. This type of system can be used to provide access at multiple locations to records from multiple plants or facilities.

Proposed § 117.315(c) is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice. Our HACCP regulation for seafood provides for transfer of records if record storage capacity is limited on a processing vessel or at a remote processing site, if the records could be immediately returned for official review upon request (§ 123.9(b)(3)). Our HACCP regulation for juice permits offsite storage of processing records after 6 months following the date that the monitoring occurred, if such records can be retrieved and provided onsite within 24 hours of request for official review and considers electronic records to be onsite if they are accessible from an onsite location (§ 120.12(d)(2)).

### 3. Proposed § 117.315(d)

Proposed § 117.315(d) would provide that if the plant or facility is closed for a prolonged period, the records may be transferred to some other reasonably accessible location but must be returned to the plant or facility within 24 hours for official review upon request. Allowing for transfer of records will give practical storage relief to seasonal operations or those closed for other reasons for prolonged periods. Proposed § 117.315(d) is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which provide for transfer of records for facilities closed for prolonged periods (between seasonal packs, in the case of juice) if the records could be immediately returned for official review upon request (§ 123.9(b)(3) and 120.12(d)(3) for seafood and juice, respectively).



#### F. Proposed § 117.320--Requirements for Official Review

Proposed § 117.320 would require that all records required by proposed part 117 be made promptly available to a duly authorized representative of the Secretary of Health and Human Services upon oral or written request. Proposed § 117.320 implements subsection 418(h) of the FD&C Act and is necessary in order for FDA to determine compliance with the requirements of proposed part 117. Proposed § 117.320 is consistent with our HACCP regulations for seafood and juice, which require that all records required under those rulemakings be available for review and copying at reasonable times (§§ 123.9(c) and 120.12(e), respectively).

Proposed § 117.320 does not explicitly require a facility to send records to the agency rather than making the records available for review at a facility's place of business. FDA requests comment on whether proposed § 117.320 should be modified to explicitly address this circumstance, and if so, whether FDA should require that the records be submitted electronically. Obtaining a facility's food safety plan without going to a facility could be useful to FDA in a number of different circumstances, such as to determine whether a recently identified hazard is being addressed by affected facilities.

#### G. Proposed § 117.325--Public Disclosure

Proposed § 117.325 would establish that all records required by proposed part 117 are subject to the disclosure requirements under part 20 of this chapter. FDA's regulations in 21 CFR part 20, the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) [5 U.S.C. 552], the Trade Secrets Act [18 U.S.C. 1905], and the FD&C Act govern FDA's disclosures of information, including treatment of commercial confidential information (CCI) and trade secret information. Our general policies, procedures, and practices relating to the protection of confidential information received from third parties would apply to information received under this rule.

Proposed § 117.325 is consistent with, but framed differently than, the disclosure provisions of the HACCP regulations for seafood and juice (§§123.9(d) and 120.12(f), respectively). Proposed § 117.325 is framed similarly to the disclosure provisions for records that must be kept under part 118 (Prevention of Salmonella Enteritidis in Shell Eggs During Production) (the shell egg production rule). Under § 118.10(f), records required by part 118 are subject to the disclosure requirements under part 20.

## XVI. FSMA's Rulemaking Provisions

### A. Requirements in Section 418(n)(3) of the FD&C Act Regarding Content

#### 1. Requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(n)(3) of the FD&C Act specifies that the regulations promulgated under section 418(n)(1)(A) shall:

- “(A) provide sufficient flexibility to be practicable for all sizes and types of facilities, including small businesses such as a small food processing facility co-located on a farm;”
- “(B) comply with chapter 35 of title 44, United States Code (commonly known as the ‘Paperwork Reduction Act’), with special attention to minimizing the burden (as defined in section 3502(2) of such Act) on the facility, and collection of information (as defined in section 3502(3) of such Act), associated with such regulations;”
- “(C) acknowledge differences in risk and minimize, as appropriate, the number of separate standards that apply to separate foods; and”
- “(D) not require a facility to hire a consultant or other third party to identify, implement, certify, or audit prevent[ive] controls, except in the case of negotiated enforcement resolutions that may require such a consultant or third party.”

## 2. Section 418(n)(3)(A)

Implementing section 418 through this proposed rule would provide sufficient flexibility to be practicable for all sizes and types of facilities. As discussed in sections II.C and XII of this document, subpart C of the proposed rule (and related requirements) are consistent with HACCP principles. Like HACCP, the preventive controls system proposed in this document would provide flexibility for facilities to tailor their food safety plans to their specific foods and operating conditions. This proposal would allow facilities to establish only those preventive controls that are applicable to their circumstances, and to choose among multiple options wherever there are different ways to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur.

In addition, the specific provisions of proposed subpart C (and related requirements) have been designed to maximize their flexibility and practicability wherever it is possible to do so consistently with the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act. For example:

- As discussed in section XII.A.2 of this document, proposed § 117.126(a) would provide flexibility for the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility to either prepare the written food safety plan or have that plan prepared, in whole or in part, on its behalf.
- As discussed in section XII.A.3 of this document, proposed § 117.126 would allow facilities to group food types or production method types if the hazards, control measures, parameters, and required procedures such as monitoring are essentially identical and, thus, would provide flexibility for facilities in the development of their food safety plans.
- As discussed in section XII.C of this document, proposed § 117.135 would provide flexibility with regard to preventive controls by allowing flexibility to establish the parameters and the maximum/minimum values for the selected control.

- As discussed in section XII.C.2 of this document, for process controls, food allergen controls, sanitation controls, and other controls, a facility would have the flexibility to identify and implement preventive controls from among all procedures, practices, and processes available to it that would provide the assurances that would be required by proposed § 117.135(a).

- As discussed in section XII.H of this document, proposed § 117.155(b) would provide flexibility for the qualified individual to be either an employee of the facility or an individual not employed by the facility (such as individuals associated with universities, trade associations, and consulting companies). Proposed § 117.155(b) would also provide flexibility for the qualified individual to be qualified either through training or job experience.

- As discussed in section XV.C.1 of this document, proposed § 117.305(a) would provide flexibility for mechanisms for keeping records while maintaining the integrity of the recordkeeping system.

- As discussed in section XV.C.3 of this document, proposed § 117.305(e) would provide flexibility to facilities to tailor the amount of detail in their records to the amount necessary to provide a history of the work performed.

Section 418(m) of the FD&C act also provides us with the authority to exempt certain facilities from the requirements of section 418, or to modify those requirements. As discussed in section X.C.9 of this document, we propose to use this authority to exempt facilities that solely engage in the storage or raw agricultural commodities, other than fruits and vegetables, intended for further distribution or processing (§ 117.5(j)). As discussed in sections X.D and XII.B of this document, we also propose to establish modified requirements for facilities solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment under this authority (proposed

§§ 117.7 and 117.206). These proposed modified requirements are specifically designed to be targeted to the specific circumstances of such facilities and therefore to be practicable for such facilities.

We are also proposing to define the terms “small business” and “very small business” in proposed § 117.3. As discussed in sections VII, X.C.1, and X.C.6 of this document, the proposed rule provides flexibility for small and very small businesses in multiple ways. These special provisions based on business size enhance the flexibility of the proposed rule for businesses of all sizes. First, FDA proposes to allow small and very small businesses more time to come into compliance with Section 418 after the effective date of the rule (2 years and 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule, respectively). FDA expects that this would assist small and very small businesses in making changes that would be required for compliance.

Second, FDA is proposing two exemptions from proposed subpart C that would be available in part based on business size. The proposed exemption for qualified facilities in § 117.5(a) would be available to very small businesses, and to certain other businesses based in part on business size, as set forth in that proposed section. Qualified facilities would be subject instead to the modified requirements in proposed § 117.201, which themselves provide significant flexibility. For example, proposed § 117.201(a) would not specify the form of documentation required for a qualified facility to show that it is in fact a qualified facility, or to demonstrate its own hazard analysis and preventive control system or compliance with state, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal law. Instead, FDA is proposing to accept self-certification of compliance with these requirements, provided that facilities retain the documentation on which they rely and make such documentation available to FDA upon request (§ 117.201(e) and related requirements in proposed subpart F).

In addition, under section 103(c) of FSMA, we have conducted a qualitative risk assessment of certain on-farm activities. Based on that qualitative risk assessment, as discussed in section X.C.6 of this document, we are proposing to exempt facilities that are small or very small businesses engaged only in certain low-risk activity/food combinations from the requirements of section 418. We have identified a significant number of activity/food combinations that we would consider to be low-risk when conducted on-farm by small and very small businesses, set forth in the proposed exemption in § 117.5(g) and (h).

Finally, as discussed in section VII of this document, FDA is proposing to begin enforcement of section 418 of the FD&C Act for all facilities subject to that section only after providing a sufficient time period following publication of the final rule for facilities to come into compliance. Specifically, FDA is proposing that businesses would be required to comply with the final rule 1 year after its publication in the Federal Register. Further, FDA is proposing to allow one additional year for small businesses and two additional years for very small businesses to come into compliance with the final rule. Providing additional time for businesses to comply, with the most time given to the smallest businesses, helps to make the regulation practicable for all sizes of facilities.

### 3. Section 418(n)(3)(B)

In implementing section 418 through this proposed rule, FDA has complied with chapter 35 of title 44, United States code (commonly known as the ‘Paperwork Reduction Act’ (PRA)), with special attention to minimizing the burden (as defined in section 3502(2) of such Act (44 U.S.C. 3502(2))) on the facility, and collection of information (as defined in section 3502(3) of such Act (44 U.S.C. 3502(3))), associated with the proposed rule. Under section 3502(2) of the PRA, “burden” means “time, effort, or financial resources expended by persons to generate,

maintain, or provide information to or for a Federal agency.” Under section 3502(3) of the PRA, “collection of information” means, in relevant part, “the obtaining, causing to be obtained, soliciting, or requiring the disclosure to third parties or the public, of facts or opinions by or for an agency, regardless of form or format, calling for ... answers to identical questions posed to, or identical reporting or recordkeeping requirements imposed on, ten or more persons....”

In section XVII of this document, we discuss how this proposed rule complies with the requirements of the PRA. In addition, in implementing section 418 of the FD&C Act, we have paid special attention to minimizing burden and collection of information associated with the proposed rule.

As discussed immediately above in section XVI.A.2, we are proposing requirements that provide significant flexibility for different sizes and types of facilities. By making these requirements flexible enough to be practicable for different sizes and types of facilities, the proposed rule also avoids creating unnecessary information collection burden for facilities, because facilities should be able to tailor their recordkeeping to their specific circumstances while still complying with the requirements of the proposed rule.

In addition, the only requirements we are proposing that constitute collections of information are those that are necessary to meet the requirements of section 418 of the FD&C Act and to efficiently enforce that section. Section 418 requires facilities to establish and maintain certain records, such as the written food safety plan (sections 418(b)(3) and 418(h)), records of monitoring of preventive controls (section 418(g)), records of instances of nonconformance material to food safety (section 418(g)), records of the results of testing and other appropriate means of verification (section 418(g)), records of implementation of corrective actions (section 418(g)), and records of the efficacy of preventive controls and corrective actions

(section 418(g)). Section 418(h) also requires facilities to make those records promptly available to FDA upon request. In this proposed rule, FDA has interpreted these requirements in a manner calculated to minimize the associated burden and to minimize recordkeeping requirements beyond those explicitly provided for by the statute to those that are essential to implementation and enforcement of section 418. For example:

- As discussed in section XII.A.3 of this document, FDA is proposing to interpret section 418(h) not to require written procedures for conducting a hazard analysis or written procedures for establishing preventive controls, thereby avoiding unnecessary recordkeeping burden.
- As discussed in section XII.A.2 of this document, proposed § 117.126 would allow facilities to group food types or production method types if the hazards, control measures, parameters, and required procedures such as monitoring are essentially identical and, thus, would minimize the number of different documents that need to be included in the food safety plan and the recordkeeping burden associated with that plan.
- As discussed in section XII.C.7 of this document, FDA is proposing that written corrective action procedures would not be required for sanitation deviations when the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility takes corrective action in accordance with proposed § 117.135(d)(3)(iii), because there would be little benefit in requiring written corrective action procedures for the many sanitation deviations that could occur for which the corrective actions that would need to be taken are very general.
- As discussed in section XII.D.2 of this document, proposed § 117.137 would require facilities to establish recall plans only for foods in which there is a hazard reasonably likely to occur, not for all foods, thereby avoiding unnecessary recordkeeping burden.



- As discussed in section XII.G.6 of this document, FDA is proposing to require written verification procedures only for the frequency of calibration.

#### 4. Section 418(n)(3)(C)

In implementing section 418 through this proposed rule, FDA is proposing to acknowledge differences in risk and minimize, as appropriate, the number of separate standards that apply to separate foods.

As discussed in section XII.B.2.a of this document, proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would identify the purpose of the hazard analysis - i.e., to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. As such, there is a single standard that applies to all covered foods when determining whether preventive controls are required. Proposed § 117.130(a)(1) would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. If a food presents no hazard reasonably likely to occur, no preventive controls would need to be established. For foods that present hazards reasonably likely to occur, facilities would be required to establish preventive controls in keeping with one general set of requirements set forth in proposed § 117.135. Thus, proposed subpart C simultaneously acknowledges differences in risk among foods and applies a single standard to all foods subject to that subpart.

In addition, the proposed rule acknowledges differences in risk by establishing exemptions and modified requirements in certain cases. We discuss these proposed exemptions and modified requirements in sections X.C and X.D of this document. The proposed rule would exempt all of the following from proposed subpart C: qualified facilities; activities subject to part 123 (seafood HACCP) and in compliance with that part; activities subject to part 120 (juice

HACCP) and in compliance with that part; activities subject to part 113 (LACF) and in compliance with that part with respect to microbiological hazards addressed in that part; manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of dietary supplements in compliance with part 111 (dietary supplement CGMPs) and section 761 of the FD&C Act (serious adverse event reporting); activities subject to section 419 of the FD&C Act (standards for produce safety); on-farm low-risk activity/food combinations conducted by small or very small businesses engaging only in such activities; alcoholic beverages and limited amounts of non-alcohol prepackaged food at alcohol-related facilities; and facilities solely engaged in the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing. In addition, the proposed rule includes modified requirements for facilities solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment. The proposed exemptions and modified requirements implement specific statutory authorities allowing for those exemptions and modifications, indicating that Congress intended that there should be some differences in the requirements for certain foods, certain facilities, and certain activities, depending on risk and on other aspects of the regulatory environment. This proposed rule strikes what FDA considers to be an appropriate balance between acknowledging differences in risk and minimizing the number of separate standards applied to separate foods. We seek comments on our approach.

#### 5. Section 418(n)(3)(D)

This proposed rule would not require a facility to hire a consultant or other third party to identify, implement, certify, or audit preventive controls. As discussed in section XII.H of this document, proposed § 117.155(a) would require that a qualified individual conduct (or oversee) certain required activities, and proposed § 117.155(b) would provide that the qualified individual may be, but is not required to be, an employee of the facility. FDA expects that some facilities

may rely on assistance from qualified individuals that are not employees of the facility, such as individuals associated with universities, trade associations, and consulting companies. The option in proposed § 117.155(b) would provide flexibility to facilities subject to the rule. Providing an option to use a consultant or other third party as the qualified individual to conduct specific functions would not require using a consultant or other third party. These proposed provisions are merely permissive and FDA tentatively concludes that they are consistent with the requirements of section 418(n)(3)(D) of the FD&C Act.

B. Requirements in Section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act Regarding Review of Hazard Analysis and Preventive Controls Programs in Existence on the Date of Enactment of FSMA

1. Requirements of Section 418 of the FD&C Act

Section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act specifies that, “[i]n promulgating the regulations [required by section 418(n)(1)(A) of the FD&C Act], the Secretary shall review regulatory hazard analysis and preventive control programs in existence on the date of enactment of [FSMA], including the Grade ‘A’ Pasteurized Milk Ordinance to ensure that such regulations are consistent, to the extent practicable, with applicable domestic and internationally-recognized standards in existence on such date.”

2. Overview of FDA’s Review of Hazard Analysis and Preventive Controls Programs

FDA has conducted the review of regulatory hazard analysis and preventive control programs and internationally-recognized standards required by section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act. To do so, we reviewed the following domestically recognized standards:

- NACMCF’s “Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point Principles and Application Guidelines” (Ref. 34);

- FDA’s regulation in part 120 (Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP) Systems) for juice ;
- FDA’s regulation in part 123 (Fish and Fishery Products);
- FSIS’ regulation in 9 CFR 417 (Hazard Analysis and Critical and Control Point (HACCP) systems) for meat and poultry products; and
- The Grade “A” Pasteurized Milk Ordinance (PMO), specifically the National Conference on Interstate Milk Shipments HACCP alternative found in Appendix K (the PMO HACCP Appendix) (Ref. 37) (Ref. 192).

We also reviewed the following internationally recognized standards:

- The Codex Annex to the Recommended International Code of Practice - General Principles of Food Hygiene on the Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) System and Guidelines for its Application (Ref. 35);
- The European Parliament and Council of the European Union Regulation (EC) No 852/2004 on the Hygiene of Foodstuffs (the EU regulation) (Ref. 38);
- The requirements for food safety programs in the Australia New Zealand Food Standards Code (the FSANZ Code) (Ref. 39); and
- The Canadian Food Inspection Agency’s Food Safety Enhancement Program (the CFIA FSEP) (Ref. 40).

We compared the key features of our proposed requirements to implement section 418 of the FD&C Act (i.e., the proposed requirements that would be established in subpart C of proposed part 117) to the listed domestic and international food safety standards. The key features we compared are:

- Requirement for a food safety plan;

- Requirement for a hazard analysis;
- Requirement for preventive controls, including a requirement for control

parameters and maximum or minimum values;

- Requirement for a recall plan;
- Requirement for monitoring procedures;
- Requirement for corrective actions;
- Requirement for verification procedures;
- Requirements applicable to a qualified individual; and
- Requirement for records.

The two most widely applied guidelines are the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. As discussed in section II.C.1 of this document, the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex evolved over time, and revisions that NACMCF made to its recommendations in 1992 and 1997 were patterned after changes made in Codex HACCP documents. Thus, the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex are similar in their recommendations, although the specific wording is not always identical. In general, domestic standards are patterned after the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the international standards are patterned after the Codex HACCP Annex.

As noted in section II.C.2 of this document, throughout this document we identify the sections of FSMA applicable to specific proposed provisions and describe how the proposed provisions relate to HACCP principles as established in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. We do not elaborate throughout the document on how the proposed provisions relate to the PMO HACCP Appendix or international standards other than the Codex HACCP Annex (i.e., the EU

regulation, the FSANZ Code, and the CFIA FSEP). However, for the purpose of the review required by section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act, we discuss all of these standards. We also developed a table showing how the proposed requirements of subpart C compare to the listed domestic and international food safety standards; that table is a reference to this document (Ref. 193).

In other sections of this document, we refer to “Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry.” For the purpose of the review required by section 418(n)(5) of the FD&C Act, we refer to “domestic” regulations rather than “Federal” regulations.

### 3. Comparison of Preventive Control Programs

a. Requirement for a food safety plan. Proposed § 117.126 would require that the owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility prepare (or have prepared) and implement a written food safety plan. As discussed in section II.C.3 of this document, NACMCF describes five preliminary tasks in the development of a HACCP plan and seven HACCP principles that apply in implementing a HACCP plan (Ref. 34). The Codex HACCP Annex also describes these five preliminary tasks and seven HACCP principles, although the specific descriptions are not always identical to those in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines (Ref. 35). The domestically recognized standards and all international standards except the FSANZ Code focus on “HACCP systems” to control hazards; the FSANZ Code uses the term “food safety program.”

Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex, all domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require that food establishments as specified in the regulation or standard operate in accordance with the seven HACCP principles. All domestic regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require a written HACCP plan (which in this proposed regulation is a food safety plan) whenever the hazard analysis

identifies hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. The international standards require, in general, that food establishments as specified in the regulation or standard operate in accordance with the seven HACCP principles as described by Codex. FSANZ requires the food safety program to be written, and CFIA FSEP requires the HACCP plan to be written, but the EU regulation has no explicit requirement that HACCP plans be written.

Proposed § 117.126 would require a written “food safety plan,” the term used by FSMA in section 418(h), rather than require a “HACCP plan.” Proposed § 117.126 would specify the contents of the food safety plan, including the (1) written hazard analysis; (2) written preventive controls; (3) written monitoring procedures; (4) written corrective action procedures; (5) written verification procedures; and (6) written recall plan. The contents of a written HACCP plan in domestic HACCP regulations are similar but not identical, and include the (1) list of hazards; (2) CCPs; (3) critical limits; (4) monitoring procedures; (5) corrective action procedures; (5) verification procedures; and (6) record-keeping procedures. The PMO HACCP Appendix requires that the HACCP plan include process flow diagrams (also a requirement in the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry, but not included in the contents of the HACCP plan). FSANZ requires that the food safety program (1) identify hazards; (2) identify where hazards can be controlled and the means; (3) provide for monitoring; (4) provide for corrective actions; (5) provide for regular review for adequacy; and (6) provide for appropriate records of compliance. The CFIA FSEP requires that the HACCP plan include all relevant information needed to conduct the five preliminary steps in addition to the seven HACCP principles. The EU regulation has no explicit requirement for the contents of a HACCP plan other than requiring food business operators to put in place procedures based on the HACCP principles.

b. Requirement for a hazard analysis. Proposed § 117.130 would require that a hazard analysis be conducted to identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for each type of food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine those hazards reasonably likely to occur. As discussed in section XII.B of this document, proposed § 117.130 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex, all domestic HACCP regulations, the PMO HACCP Appendix, and international standards require that a hazard analysis be conducted. Domestic HACCP regulations specify that the outcome is to determine the hazards reasonably likely to occur for the product being produced, which is consistent with the FSANZ requirement that a food business identify the potential hazards that may be reasonably expected to occur in all food handling operations. This outcome is implied by the EU regulation, which requires identifying any hazards that must be prevented, eliminated or reduced to acceptable levels.

c. Requirement for preventive controls, including a requirement for control parameters and maximum or minimum values. Proposed § 117.135 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur will be significantly minimized or prevented. Proposed § 117.135 also would require that preventive controls include, as appropriate to the facility and the food, parameters associated with the control of the hazard and the maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any physical, biological, radiological, or chemical parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur.



As discussed in section XII.C of this document, proposed § 117.135 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, all domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require the inclusion of CCPs and critical limits in the HACCP plan to control hazards that are identified as reasonably likely to occur. Consistent with the Codex HACCP Annex, the CFIA FSEP and the EU regulation also require the inclusion of CCPs and critical limits in the HACCP plan. FSANZ requires the identification of where, in a food handling operation, each hazard can be controlled, without referring to these as CCPs, and the means of control, but does not specify the establishment of critical limits.

d. Requirement for a recall plan. Proposed § 117.137 would require that a recall plan be established for food in which there is a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur. The CFIA FSEP provides for recall plans as a prerequisite program in the HACCP system. None of the other domestic or international standards include a provision for a recall plan as part of HACCP requirements. Although not part of the Codex HACCP Annex, the Codex GPFH specify that managers should ensure effective procedures are in place to deal with any food safety hazard and to enable the complete, rapid recall of any implicated lot of the finished food from the market (Ref. 44).

e. Requirement for monitoring procedures. Proposed § 117.140 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written procedures, including the frequency with which they are to be performed, for monitoring the preventive controls. As discussed in section XII.E of this document, proposed § 117.140 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, all domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP

Appendix require monitoring procedures (and the frequency) for CCPs to ensure compliance with critical limits. Consistent with the Codex HACCP Annex, international standards require monitoring, although Codex does not specify that the monitoring system include the frequency of monitoring. The EU regulation requires establishing and implementing effective monitoring procedures at CCPs. The CFIA FSEP requires documented monitoring procedures for each CCP and these must specify any tests, measurements or observations to assess whether the control measure is functioning as intended and the critical limits are met. FSANZ requires that the food safety program provide for the systematic monitoring of controls.

f. Requirement for corrective actions. Proposed § 117.145 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish and implement written corrective action procedures that must be taken if preventive controls are not properly implemented. As discussed in section XII.F of this document, proposed § 117.145 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, all domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require establishing corrective actions (or corrective action plans) for deviations from established critical limits. Proposed § 117.145 also would require that corrective actions be taken if a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action procedure has not been established, or a preventive control is found to be ineffective. This provision of proposed § 117.145 is consistent with corresponding requirements in domestic HACCP regulations for corrective actions when there is no corrective action plan for a specific deviation.

Consistent with the Codex HACCP Annex, international standards require corrective actions. The EU regulation and the CFIA FSEP require establishing corrective actions when monitoring indicates that a critical control point is not under control. FSANZ requires that the

food safety program provide for appropriate corrective action when the hazard is found not to be under control. However, only the CFIA FSEP requires that documented deviation procedures specify any planned or appropriate corrective actions to be taken when monitoring results demonstrate that the control measure is not functioning as intended or; the critical limits are not met.

g. Requirement for verification procedures. Proposed § 117.150 would require that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility establish specific verification and validation procedures and activities. As discussed in section XII.G of this document, proposed § 117.150 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines and the Codex HACCP Annex. Consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require a list of the verification procedures (including validation in the HACCP regulation for juice and the PMO HACCP Appendix), and the frequency of performing these procedures. Consistent with the Codex HACCP Annex, international standards (except FSANZ) require the establishment of verification procedures. The EU regulation requires procedures to verify that the HACCP system is working effectively and the CFIA FSEP requires documentation of verification procedures. FSANZ does not specifically require verification procedures but requires that the food safety program provide for the regular review of the program by the food business to ensure its adequacy.

In addition to validation, proposed § 117.150 would require specific verification activities, i.e., calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments; records review; and reanalysis. Several of these requirements are found in domestic standards. All domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Annex require calibration of monitoring instruments. All domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix require record

review as a verification activity, and all provide for an annual reanalysis; both of these are specified by the NACMCF guidelines as verification activities. Other than the FSANZ requirement that the food safety program provide for the regular review of the program to ensure its adequacy, the only international standard that provides specific verification activities is the CFIA FSEP, which requires observation of monitoring and corrective actions (which is also a requirement of the FSIS HACCP regulation for meat and poultry) and records review.

h. Requirements applicable to a qualified individual. Proposed § 117.155 would establish the requirements applicable to a qualified individual. We use the term “qualified individual” to refer to an individual who is qualified by training or job experience to conduct certain food safety activities as would be specified in proposed subpart C. As discussed in section XII.H of this document, proposed § 117.155 is consistent with the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, the Codex HACCP Annex, and Federal HACCP regulations for seafood, juice, and meat and poultry. Proposed § 117.155 is also consistent with the PMO HACCP Appendix, in which only a person who has met certain qualifications (i.e., through specific training) can carry out certain requirements related to the HACCP system. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines stress the importance of ensuring that individuals have appropriate training to develop and maintain the HACCP system. Similarly, the Codex HACCP Annex emphasizes that training is essential for effective implementation of HACCP. The EU regulation requires “food business operators” to ensure that those responsible for the development and maintenance of procedures based on the HACCP principles have received adequate training in the application of the HACCP principles. The CFIA FSEP requires that the individuals responsible for monitoring, deviation and verification procedures have received adequate training.

i. Requirement for records. Proposed § 117.175 would list the records that would be required for proposed subpart C, including the food safety plan, records that document the monitoring of preventive controls, records that document corrective actions, records that document verification activities, and records that document applicable training for the qualified individual. Proposed § 117.175 is consistent with the requirements for records in the NACMCF HACCP guidelines, all domestic HACCP regulations and the PMO HACCP Appendix, which require records to include the hazard analysis, HACCP plan, and records of monitoring, corrective actions and verification activities. The Codex HACCP Annex also specifies documentation, including the hazard analysis and CCP and critical limit determination, and records for monitoring, corrective actions and verification procedures. The EU regulation requires records to demonstrate the effective application of the HACCP measures. Similarly, FSANZ requires that the food safety program provide for appropriate records to be made and kept by the food business demonstrating action taken in relation to, or in compliance with, the food safety program. The CFIA FSEP requires record keeping to demonstrate the effective application of the critical control points and to facilitate official verifications by the CFIA or other competent authority.

Proposed subpart F would establish requirements that apply to the required records, including requirements for records to be accurate and to include specific information and for record retention. These record-keeping requirements are consistent with the requirements for records in all domestic HACCP regulations, but such details are not found in international standards other than the CFIA FSEP.

## XVII. Proposed Removal of 21 CFR Part 110 - Current Good Manufacturing Practice In Manufacturing, Packing, Or Holding Human Food

Proposed part 117 would replace current part 110. Therefore, we are proposing to remove current part 110 after the compliance date for all businesses to be in compliance with the requirements of new part 117. As discussed in section VII of this document, we are proposing that businesses would be required to comply with new part 117 1, 2, or 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule establishing part 117, depending on the size of the business. Thus, we are proposing to remove part 110, 3 years after the date of publication of the final rule.

## XVIII. Proposed Conforming Amendments

Several current regulations refer to the requirements of part 110. FDA is proposing a series of amendments so that these current regulations would refer to part 117 as well as part 110. We also are proposing that when part 110 is removed, all references to part 110 be removed from our regulations. The affected regulations are:

- §§ 106.100(j) and (n) (infant formula records);
- § 114.5 (current good manufacturing practice for acidified foods);
- §§ 120.3, 120.5, and 120.6(b) (definitions, current good manufacturing practice, and sanitation standard operating procedures for juice products subject to the HACCP regulation for juice);
- §§ 123.3, 123.5(a), and 123.11(b) (definitions, current good manufacturing practice, and sanitation control procedures for fish and fishery products subject to the HACCP regulation for seafood);
- § 129.1 (current good manufacturing practice for the processing and bottling of bottled drinking water);

- § 179.25(a) (general provisions for food irradiation); and
- § 211.1(c) (scope of current good manufacturing practice for finished pharmaceuticals).

## XIX. Preliminary Regulatory Impact Analysis

### A. Overview

FDA has examined the impacts of this proposed rule under Executive Order 12866, Executive Order 13563, the Regulatory Flexibility Act (5 U.S.C. 601-612), and the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act of 1995 (Public Law 104-4). Executive Orders 12866 and 13563 direct agencies to assess all costs and benefits of available regulatory alternatives and, when regulation is necessary, to select regulatory approaches that maximize net benefits (including potential economic, environmental, public health and safety, and other advantages; distributive impacts; and equity). FDA has developed a preliminary regulatory impact analysis (PRIA) that presents the benefits and costs of this proposed rule (Ref. 194). FDA believes that the proposed rule will be a significant regulatory action as defined by Executive Order 12866. FDA requests comments on the PRIA.

The summary analysis of benefits and costs included in this document is drawn from the detailed PRIA (Ref. 194) which is available at <http://www.regulations.gov> (enter Docket No. FDA-2011-N-0920), and is also available on FDA's Web site at <http://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/ReportsManualsForms/Reports/EconomicAnalyses/default.htm>.

### B. Regulatory Flexibility Act

The Regulatory Flexibility Act requires agencies to analyze regulatory options that would minimize any significant impact of a rule on small entities. Because many small businesses will need to implement a number of new preventive controls, FDA acknowledges that the final rules

resulting from this proposed rule will have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities.

#### C. Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act of 1996

The Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act of 1996 (Public Law 104-121) defines a major rule for the purpose of congressional review as having caused or being likely to cause one or more of the following: An annual effect on the economy of \$100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices; significant adverse effects on competition, employment, productivity, or innovation; or significant adverse effects on the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in domestic or export markets. In accordance with the Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act, the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) has determined that this proposed rule is a major rule for the purpose of congressional review.

#### D. Unfunded Mandates Reform Act of 1995

Section 202(a) of the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act of 1995 requires that agencies prepare a written statement, which includes an assessment of anticipated costs and benefits, before proposing “any rule that includes any Federal mandate that may result in the expenditure by State, local, and tribal governments, in the aggregate, or by the private sector, of \$100,000,000 or more (adjusted annually for inflation) in any one year.” The current threshold after adjustment for inflation is \$136 million, using the most current (2010) Implicit Price Deflator for the Gross Domestic Product. FDA expects that the proposed rule will result in a 1-year expenditure that would exceed this amount.



### E. Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995

This proposed rule contains information collection provisions that are subject to review by OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501–3520). The collections of information in the proposed rule have been submitted to OMB for review under Section 3507(d) of the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995. FDA invites comments on: (1) Whether the proposed collection of information is necessary for the proper performance of FDA’s functions, including whether the information will have practical utility; (2) the accuracy of FDA’s estimate of the burden of the proposed collection of information, including the validity of the methodology and assumptions used; (3) ways to enhance the quality, utility, and clarity of the information to be collected; and (4) ways to minimize the burden of the collection of information on respondents, including through the use of automated collection techniques, when appropriate, and other forms of information technology.

To ensure that comments on information collection are received, OMB recommends that written comments be faxed to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, OMB, Attn: FDA Desk Officer, FAX: 202-395-7285, or emailed to [oir\\_submission@omb.eop.gov](mailto:oir_submission@omb.eop.gov). All comments should be identified with the title Current Good Manufacturing Practice And Hazard Analysis And Risk-Based Preventive Controls For Human Food.

In compliance with the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3407(d)), the Agency has submitted the information collection provisions of this proposed rule to OMB for review. These requirements will not be effective until FDA obtains OMB approval. FDA will publish a notice concerning OMB approval of these requirements in the Federal Register.

#### F. Public Access to the Analyses

The analyses that FDA has performed in order to examine the impacts of this proposed rule under Executive Order 12866, Executive Order 13563, the Regulatory Flexibility Act (5 U.S.C. 601-612), the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act of 1995 (Public Law 104-4), and the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501–3520) are available to the public in the docket for this proposed rule (Ref. 194).

#### XX. Analysis of Environmental Impact

FDA has determined under 21 CFR 25.30(j) that this action is of a type that does not individually or cumulatively have a significant effect on the human environment. Therefore, neither an environmental assessment nor an environmental impact statement is required.

#### XXI. Federalism

FDA has analyzed this proposed rule in accordance with the principles set forth in Executive Order 13132. FDA has determined that the proposed rule, if finalized, would not contain policies that would have substantial direct effects on the States, on the relationship between the National Government and the States, or on the distribution of power and responsibilities among the various levels of government. Accordingly, the agency tentatively concludes that the proposed rule does not contain policies that have federalism implications as defined in the Executive order and, consequently, a federalism summary impact statement is not required.

#### XXII. Comments

Interested persons may submit either written comments regarding this document to the Division of Dockets Management (see ADDRESSES) or electronic comments to <http://www.regulations.gov>. It is only necessary to send one set of comments. Identify

comments with the docket number found in brackets in the heading of this document. Received comments may be seen in the Division of Dockets Management between 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday, and will be posted to the docket at <http://www.regulations.gov>.

### XXIII. References

The following references have been placed on display in the Division of Dockets Management (see ADDRESSES) and may be seen by interested persons between 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday. (FDA has verified the Web site addresses, but FDA is not responsible for any subsequent changes to the Web sites after this document publishes in the Federal Register.)

1. FDA, "Food CGMP Modernization — A Focus on Food Safety," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/CurrentGoodManufacturingPracticesCGMPs/ucm207458.htm>), November 2, 2005. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.
2. Shapiro, R. L., C. Hatheway, and D. L. Swerdlow, "Botulism in the United States: A Clinical and Epidemiologic Review," Annals of Internal Medicine, 129:221-228, 1998.
3. FDA, "Fish and Fishery Products Hazards and Controls Guidance, Fourth Edition," 2011.
4. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Juice HACCP Hazards and Controls Guidance First Edition; Final Guidance," 2004.
5. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Lead in Candy Likely To Be Consumed Frequently by Small Children: Recommended Maximum Level and Enforcement Policy," 2006.
6. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Measures to Address the Risk for Contamination by Salmonella Species in Food Containing a Peanut-Derived Product as an Ingredient," 2009.

7. FDA, "Compliance Policy Guide Sec. 527.300 Dairy Products - Microbial Contaminants and Alkaline Phosphatase Activity," 2010.
8. FDA, "Compliance Policy Guide Sec. 555.300 Foods, Except Dairy Products - Adulteration with Salmonella," 1995.
9. FDA, "Establishment Inspection Report (EIR)," (<http://www.fda.gov/ICECI/Inspections/FieldManagementDirectives/ucm061430.htm>), June 7, 2007. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
10. FDA, "Regulatory Procedures Manual, Chapter 4. Advisory Actions," 2010.
11. FDA, "Regulatory Procedures Manual, Chapter 5. Administrative Actions," 2011.
12. FDA, "Regulatory Procedures Manual, Chapter 6. Judicial Actions," 2011.
13. CDC, "Foodborne Disease Outbreak Surveillance," ([http://www.cdc.gov/outbreaknet/surveillance\\_data.html](http://www.cdc.gov/outbreaknet/surveillance_data.html)), September, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 19, 2012.
14. CDC, "Frequently Asked Questions About CDC's Foodborne Outbreak Online Database," (<http://www.cdc.gov/outbreaknet/pdf/FAQsonFOOD.pdf>), December, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.
15. CDC, "FoodNet - Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network," (<http://www.cdc.gov/foodnet/>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
16. CDC, "Questions and Answers About Vital Signs: FoodNet MMWR, 2010," ([http://www.cdc.gov/foodsafety/vitalsigns\\_questions.html](http://www.cdc.gov/foodsafety/vitalsigns_questions.html)), June 8, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
17. "Food Emergency Response Network," (<http://www.fermlab.org/>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.

18. Electronic Laboratory Exchange Network, "Welcome to ELEXNET," (<https://www.elexnet.com/portal/server.pt>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
19. FDA, "Peanut Products Recall," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/Peanut/default.htm>), June 18, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
20. FDA, "Peanut Butter and Other Peanut Containing Products Recall List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/peanutbutterrecall/index.cfm>), October 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
21. FDA, "Plainview Milk Cooperative Ingredient Recall," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/Milk/default.htm>), July 23, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
22. FDA, "Plainview Milk Cooperative Ingredient Recall Product List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/Milk/>), July 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
23. FDA, "Hydrolyzed Vegetable Protein Product Recalls," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/HVP/default.htm>), December 21, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
24. FDA, "Recall: Products Containing Hydrolyzed Vegetable Protein," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/HVPCP/>), April 1, 2010. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
25. Council to Improve Foodborne Outbreak Response, "Guidelines for Foodborne Disease Outbreak Response," 2009.

26. FDA, "State Contracts," (<http://www.fda.gov/ForFederalStateandLocalOfficials/PartnershipsContracts/StateContracts/default.htm>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
27. "FoodSafety.Gov," (<http://www.foodsafety.gov/index.html>), 2011. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
28. Partnership for Food Safety Education, "Fight Bac!" (<http://www.fightbac.org/>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
29. FDA, "Consumers. Food Safety, Nutrition Information, and Campaigns," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ResourcesForYou/Consumers/default.htm>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
30. FDA, "Health Educators. Food Safety & Nutrition Education Campaigns," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ResourcesForYou/HealthEducators/default.htm>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
31. FDA Memorandum, "Consultation with USDA on Food Processing Sector Study," 2011.
32. FDA, "Food Processing Sector Study," 2011.
33. FSIS, "National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods. About NACMCF," ([http://www.fsis.usda.gov/About\\_Fsis/NACMCF\\_Background/index.asp](http://www.fsis.usda.gov/About_Fsis/NACMCF_Background/index.asp)), 2010. Accessed and printed on December 12, 2011.
34. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point Principles and Application Guidelines," Journal of Food Protection, 61:1246-1259, 1998.

35. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) System and Guidelines for Its Application. Annex to CAC/RCP 1-1969 (Rev. 4 - 2003)," 2003.
36. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point System," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 16:1-23, 1992.
37. FDA, "Grade "A" Pasteurized Milk Ordinance (2011 Revision)," 2012.
38. European Parliament and the Council of the European Union, "Regulation (EC) No 852/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council," (<http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:L:2004:139:0001:0054:en:PDF>), April 29, 2004. Accessed and printed on December 13, 2011.
39. Food Standards Australia New Zealand, "Standard 3.2.1 - Food Safety Programs," 2007.
40. Canadian Food Inspection Agency, "Food Safety Enhancement Program / Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points," (<http://www.inspection.gc.ca/food/fsep-haccp/eng/1299855874288/1299859914238>), September 10, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 31, 2012.
41. Global Food Safety Initiative, "Enhancing Food Safety Through Third Party Certification," 2011.
42. World Health Organization, "Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point System (HACCP)," 2007.
43. Food and Agriculture Organization, "Manual on the Application of the HACCP System in Mycotoxin Prevention and Control,"

(<http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/y1390e/y1390e00.htm>), 2001. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

44. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "General Principles of Food Hygiene, CAC/RCP 1-1969 (Rev. 4-2003)," 2003.

45. Scallan, E., R. M. Hoekstra, F. J. Angulo, R. V. Tauxe, M. A. Widdowson, S. L. Roy, J. L. Jones, and P. M. Griffin, "Foodborne Illness Acquired in the United States--Major Pathogens," Emerging Infectious Diseases, 17:7-15, 2011.

46. Scallan, E., P. M. Griffin, F. J. Angulo, R. V. Tauxe, and R. M. Hoekstra, "Foodborne Illness Acquired in the United States--Unspecified Agents," Emerging Infectious Diseases, 17:16-22, 2011.

47. CDC, "CDC 2011 Estimates: Method," ([http://www.cdc.gov/foodborneburden/PDFs/FACTSHEET\\_E\\_2011ESTIMATES.pdf](http://www.cdc.gov/foodborneburden/PDFs/FACTSHEET_E_2011ESTIMATES.pdf)), 2011. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

48. Scheutz, F., E. Moller Nielsen, J. Frimodt-Moller, N. Boisen, S. Morabito, R. Tozzoli, J. P. Nataro, and A. Caprioli, "Characteristics of the Enterohemorrhagic *Escherichia coli* O104:H4 Strain Causing the Outbreak of Haemolytic Uraemic Syndrome in Germany, May to June 2011," Eurosurveillance, 16:6, 2011.

49. FDA, "Bad Bug Book: Foodborne Pathogenic Microorganisms and Natural Toxins Handbook. Second Edition," 2012.

50. CDC, "Vital Signs: Incidence and Trends of Infection with Pathogens Transmitted Commonly Through Food - Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network, 10 U.S. Sites, 1996-2010," MMWR, 60:749-755, 2011.



51. CDC, "What Is Salmonellosis?" (<http://www.cdc.gov/Salmonella/general/>), April 5, 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
52. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Guidelines on the Application of General Principles of Food Hygiene to the Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Ready-to-Eat Foods, CAC/GL 61 - 2007," 2007.
53. FDA and USDA, "Quantitative Assessment of Relative Risk to Public Health from Foodborne Listeria monocytogenes Among Selected Categories of Ready-to-Eat Foods," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/cm183966.htm>), September, 2003. Accessed and printed on July 24, 2012.
54. Food and Agriculture Organization and World Health Organization, "Risk Assessment of Listeria monocytogenes in Ready-to-Eat Foods, Technical Report," 2004.
55. FDA and USDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Risk Assessment: Executive Summary," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/cm185292.htm>), 2003. Accessed and printed on December 12, 2011.
56. FDA and USDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Risk Assessment: VII. Interpretation and Conclusions," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/cm185289.htm>), September, 2003. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
57. CDC, "Norovirus: Clinical Overview," (<http://www.cdc.gov/norovirus/hcp/clinical-overview.html>), April 12, 2012. Accessed and printed on July 19, 2012.

58. FDA Memorandum, "Food GMP Modernization Working Group: Summary of Food Recalls, 1999-2003," 2004.
59. FDA Memorandum, "Analysis of Food Recalls Initiated in 2008-2009 by an FDA CGMP Working Group," 2012.
60. FDA, "FDA Foods Program, The Reportable Food Registry: A New Approach to Targeting Inspection Resources and Identifying Patterns of Adulteration. First Annual Report: September 8, 2009 - September 7, 2010," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodSafety/FoodSafetyPrograms/RFR/UCM240647.pdf>), January, 2011. Accessed and printed on August 29, 2011.
61. FDA, "FDA Foods Program, The Reportable Food Registry: A New Approach to Targeting Inspection Resources and Identifying Patterns of Adulteration. Second Annual Report: September 8, 2010 - September 7, 2011," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/FoodSafetyPrograms/RFR/ucm200958.htm>), 2012.
62. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2006-2007 Salmonella Tennessee Outbreak in Peanut Butter.," 2011. Accessed and printed on October 18, 2011.
63. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Serotype Tennessee Infections Associated with Peanut Butter - United States, 2006-2007," MMWR, 56:521-524, 2007.
64. FDA, "Establishment Inspection Report Conagra Grocery Products 02/14/2007," 2007.
65. FDA, "Establishment Inspection Report Conagra Foods 08/20/2007," 2007.

66. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Infections Associated with Peanut Butter and Peanut Butter-Containing Products - United States, 2008-2009," MMWR, 58:85-90, 2009.
67. Cavallaro, E., K. Date, C. Medus, S. Meyer, B. Miller, C. Kim, S. Nowicki, S. Cosgrove, D. Sweat, P. Quyen, J. Flint, E. R. Daly, J. Adams, E. Hyytia-Trees, P. Gerner-Smidt, R. M. Hoekstra, C. Schwensohn, A. Langer, S. V. Sodha, M. C. Rogers, F. J. Angulo, R. V. Tauxe, I. T. Williams, and C. Barton Behravesh, "Salmonella Typhimurium Infections Associated with Peanut Products," New England Journal of Medicine, 365:601-610, 2011.
68. FDA, "Amended Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Peanut Corporation of America, Blakely, GA, 02/05/2009," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM109834.pdf>), February 5, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 19, 2011.
69. FDA, "Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Peanut Corporation of America, Plainview, TX, 02/26/2009," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM114852.pdf>), February 26, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
70. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2007 Salmonella Wandsworth and Salmonella Typhimurium Outbreak in Puffed Snacks.," 2011. Accessed and printed on November 18, 2011.
71. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2008-2009 Listeria Outbreak in Mexican-Style Cheese," 2011. Accessed and printed on October 18, 2011.

72. Jackson, K. A., M. Biggerstaff, M. Tobin-D'Angelo, D. Sweat, R. Klos, J. Nosari, O. Garrison, E. Boothe, L. Saathoff-Huber, L. Hainstock, and R. P. Fagan, "Multistate Outbreak of Listeria monocytogenes Associated with Mexican-Style Cheese Made from Pasteurized Milk Among Pregnant, Hispanic Women," Journal of Food Protection, 74:949-953, 2011.
73. California Department of Public Health, "Outbreak of Salmonella Rissen Associated with Ground White Pepper," ([http://www.cdph.ca.gov/programs/DFDRS/Documents/QSS\\_Presentation\\_SRissen\\_and\\_%20white%20pepper\\_010611.pdf](http://www.cdph.ca.gov/programs/DFDRS/Documents/QSS_Presentation_SRissen_and_%20white%20pepper_010611.pdf)), 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
74. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2008 Salmonella Rissen Outbreak in Ground White Pepper," 2011. Accessed and printed on November 23, 2011.
75. FDA, "Warning Letter to U.F. Union International Food Company, 11/24/1009," (<http://www.fda.gov/ICECI/EnforcementActions/WarningLetters/ucm192435.htm>), November 24, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
76. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of E. coli O157:H7 Infections Linked to Eating Raw Refrigerated, Prepackaged Cookie Dough," (<http://www.cdc.gov/ecoli/2009/0630.html>), June 30, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
77. FDA Public Health Focus Document, "E. coli in Nestlé Toll House Cookie Dough," (<http://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/PublicHealthFocus/ucm169858.htm>), July 13, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
78. FDA, "Nestlé USA's Baking Division Initiates Voluntary Recall," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm167954.htm>), 2009. Accessed and printed on October 19, 2011.

79. FDA, "Information on the Recalled Jensen Farms Whole Cantaloupes," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/CORENetwork/ucm272372.htm>), January 9, 2012. Accessed and printed on July 19, 2012.
80. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Listeriosis Linked to Whole Cantaloupes from Jensen Farms, Colorado," (<http://www.cdc.gov/listeria/outbreaks/cantaloupes-jensen-farms/120811/index.html>), December 8, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 31, 2012.
81. FDA, "Pesticide Monitoring Program - FY 2008," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodSafety/FoodContaminantsAdulteration/Pesticides/ResidueMonitoringReports/UCM230537.pdf>), December 9, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.
82. FDA, "CPG Sec. 570.375 Aflatoxin in Peanuts and Peanut Products," 2005.
83. FDA, "CPG Sec. 570.200 Brazil Nuts - Adulteration with Aflatoxin," 2005.
84. FDA, "CPG Sec. 570.500 Pistachio Nuts - Aflatoxin Adulteration," 2005.
85. FDA, "CPG Sec.510.150 Apple Juice, Apple Juice Concentrates, and Apple Juice Products - Adulteration with Patulin," 2005.
86. Taylor, S. L. and World Health Organization (WHO), "Histamine Poisoning Associated with Fish, Cheese, and Other Foods," ([http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/1985-86/VPH\\_FOS\\_85.1.pdf](http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/1985-86/VPH_FOS_85.1.pdf)), 1985. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
87. Stratton, J. E., R. W. Hutkins, and S. L. Taylor, "Biogenic Amines in Cheese and Other Fermented Foods: A Review," *Journal of Food Protection*, 54:460-469, 1991.
88. FDA, "Supporting Document for Recommended Maximum Level for Lead in Candy Likely To Be Consumed Frequently by Small Children,"

<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/FoodContaminantsAdulteration/Metals/Lead/ucm172050.htm>), November, 2006. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

89. Williams, J. H., T. D. Phillips, P. E. Jolly, J. K. Stiles, C. M. Jolly, and D. Aggarwal, "Human Aflatoxicosis in Developing Countries: a Review of Toxicology, Exposure, Potential Health Consequences, and Interventions," American Journal of Clinical Nutrition, 80:1106-1122, 2004.

90. Shephard, G. S., "Risk Assessment of Aflatoxins in Food in Africa," Food Additives and Contaminants: Part A -- Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk Assessment, 25:1246-1256, 2008.

91. Sampson, H. A., "Update on Food Allergy," Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, 113:805-819, 2004.

92. Sampson, H. A., "Food Allergy--Accurately Identifying Clinical Reactivity," Allergy, 60 Suppl 79:19-24, 2005.

93. Sicherer, S. H. and H. A. Sampson, "Food Allergy," Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, 125:S116-S125, 2010.

94. Branum, A. M. and S. L. Lukacs, "Food Allergy Among Children in the United States," Pediatrics, 124:1549-1555, 2009.

95. Bindslev-Jensen, C., D. Briggs, and M. Osterballe, "Can We Determine a Threshold Level for Allergenic Foods by Statistical Analysis of Published Data in the Literature?" Allergy, 57:741-746, 2002.

96. Taylor, S. L., J. A. Nordlee, L. M. Niemann, and D. M. Lambrecht, "Allergen Immunoassays - Considerations for Use of Naturally Incurred Standards," Analytical and Bioanalytical Chemistry, 395:83-92, 2009.

97. Taylor, S. L., D. A. Moneret-Vautrin, R. W. R. Crevel, D. Sheffield, M. Morisset, P. Dumont, B. C. Remington, and J. L. Baumert, "Threshold Dose for Peanut: Risk Characterization Based upon Diagnostic Oral Challenge of a Series of 286 Peanut-Allergic Individuals," Food and Chemical Toxicology, 48:814-819, 2010.
98. Ross, M. P., M. Ferguson, D. Street, K. Klontz, T. Schroeder, and S. Luccioli, "Analysis of Food-Allergic and Anaphylactic Events in the National Electronic Injury Surveillance System," Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, 121:166-171, 2008.
99. Simon, M. R. and Z. D. Mulla, "A Population-Based Epidemiologic Analysis of Deaths from Anaphylaxis in Florida," Allergy, 63:1077-1083, 2008.
100. Yocum, M. W., J. H. Butterfield, J. S. Klein, G. W. Volcheck, D. R. Schroeder, and M. D. Silverstein, "Epidemiology of Anaphylaxis in Olmsted County: A Population-Based Study," Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, 104:452-456, 1999.
101. Branum, A. M. and S. L. Lukacs, "Food Allergy Among U.S. Children: Trends in Prevalence and Hospitalizations," NCHS Data Brief, 10, 2008.
102. Jackson, W. F., Food Allergy, Belgium, ILSI Press, 2003.
103. FDA, "Nationwide Milk Allergen Recall of Kroger 'Meals Made Simple Shrimp Linguini'," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm222663.htm>), August 14, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
104. FDA, "Brand Castle, LLC Issues Allergy Alert on Undeclared Egg in Icing of Licensed Rice Krispies Treats Holiday Village Kit Distributed Through Michaels Retail Stores Only," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm238089.htm>), December 23, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

105. FDA, "The Pictsweet Company Announces a Voluntary Recall of Frozen Green Peas Due to Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm229838.htm>), October 15, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
106. FDA, "Flowers Foods Issues Voluntary Recall on Certain English Muffins and One Bread Item," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm254434.htm>), May 3, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
107. Ayotte, J. D., S. M. Flanagan, and W. S. Morrow, "Occurrence of Uranium and <sup>222</sup>Radon in Glacial and Bedrock Aquifers in the Northern United States, 1993-2003. U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2007-5037," (<http://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2007/5037/>), October 17, 2007. Accessed and printed on November 14, 2011.
108. Focazio, M. J., Z. Szabo, T. F. Kraemer, A. H. Mullin, T. H. Barringer, and V. T. dePaul, "Occurrence of Selected Radionuclides in Ground Water Used for Drinking Water in the United States: A Targeted Reconnaissance Survey, 1998. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 00-4273," (<http://pubs.usgs.gov/wri/wri004273/pdf/wri004273.pdf>), 2001. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.
109. World Health Organization, "FAQs: Japan Nuclear Concerns," (<http://www.who.int/hac/crises/jpn/faqs/en/index.html>), September 20, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
110. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Principles for the Establishment and Application of Microbiological Criteria for Foods, CAC/GL 21 - 1997," 1997.



111. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Microbiological Hazards and Their Control," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 1, pp. 1-21, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.

112. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Selection and Use of Acceptance Criteria," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 4, pp. 79-97, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.

113. FDA, "Transcript: Public Meeting on the Food Safety Modernization Act: Focus on Preventive Controls for Facilities," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodSafety/FSMA/UCM253612.pdf>), April 20, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

114. FDA, "Webcast Videos: Public Meeting on the Food Safety Modernization Act: Focus on Preventive Controls for Facilities," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/FSMA/ucm250377.htm#webcast>), April 20, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

115. FDA, "Draft Qualitative Risk Assessment. Risk of Activity/Food Combinations for Activities (Outside the Farm Definition) Conducted in a Facility Co-Located on a Farm," 2012.

116. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Questions and Answers Regarding Registration of Food Facilities (Edition 4); Final Guidance," 2004.

117. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Questions and Answers Regarding Establishment and Maintenance of Records By Persons Who Manufacture, Process, Pack, Transport, Distribute, Receive, Hold, or Import Food (Edition 5)," 2012.
118. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Antimicrobial Food Additives," 1999.
119. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Codex Alimentarius Commission Procedural Manual, Twentieth Edition," 2011.
120. FDA, "FDA Allergy Warning Letter. Notice to Manufacturers Label Declaration of Allergenic Substances in Foods," 1996.
121. Deibel, K., T. Trautman, T. DeBoom, W. H. Sveum, G. Dunaif, V. N. Scott, and D. T. Bernard, "A Comprehensive Approach to Reducing the Risk of Allergens in Foods," Journal of Food Protection, 60:436-441, 1997.
122. Taylor, S. L. and J. L. Baumert, "Cross-Contamination of Foods and Implications for Food Allergic Patients," Current Allergy and Asthma Reports, 10:265-270, 2010.
123. Food Allergy Research and Resource Program, "Components of an Effective Allergen Control Plan. A Framework for Food Processors," ([http://farrp.unl.edu/c/document\\_library/get\\_file?p\\_l\\_id=4070800&folderId=2103644&name=D\\_LFE-22219.pdf](http://farrp.unl.edu/c/document_library/get_file?p_l_id=4070800&folderId=2103644&name=D_LFE-22219.pdf)), 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
124. Jackson, L. S., F. M. Al-Taher, M. Moorman, J. W. DeVries, R. Tippet, K. M. J. Swanson, F. Tong-Jen, R. Salter, G. Dunaif, S. Estes, S. Albillos, and S. M. Gendel, "Cleaning and Other Control and Validation Strategies to Prevent Allergen Cross-Contact in Food-Processing Operations," Journal of Food Protection, 71:445-458, 2008.
125. Troller, J. A., "Sanitizing," In: Sanitation in Food Processing, edited by S. Taylor, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, San Diego, Chapter 5, pp. 52-70, Academic Press, Inc., 1993.

126. FDA, "Draft Guidance for Industry: Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Refrigerated or Frozen Ready-to-Eat Foods," 2008.
127. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Guideline for the Validation of Food Safety Control Measures, CAC/GL 69-2008," 2008.
128. Anderson, J. E., R. R. Beelman, and S. Doores, "Persistence of Serological and Biological Activities of Staphylococcal Enterotoxin A in Canned Mushrooms," Journal of Food Protection, 59:1292-1299, 1996.
129. Bennett, M. R. and R. W. Berry, "Serological Reactivity and in Vivo Toxicity of Staphylococcus aureus Enterotoxins A and D in Selected Canned Foods," Journal of Food Science, 52:416-419, 1987.
130. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Questions and Answers Regarding Adverse Event Reporting and Recordkeeping for Dietary Supplements as Required by the Dietary Supplement and Nonprescription Drug Consumer Protection Act," 2009.
131. FDA and BATF, "MOU 225-88-2000 Memorandum of Understanding Between the Food and Drug Administration and the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms," (<http://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/PartnershipsCollaborations/MemorandaofUnderstandingMOUs/DomesticMOUs/ucm116370.htm>), November 20, 1987. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
132. FDA, "Guide to Produce Farm Investigations (11/05)," 2005.
133. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Guide to Minimize Microbial Food Safety Hazards for Fresh Fruits and Vegetables," 1998.
134. Tauxe, R. V., "Emerging Foodborne Diseases: an Evolving Public Health Challenge," Emerging Infectious Diseases, 3:425-434, 1997.

135. FDA, "Environmental Assessment: Factors Potentially Contributing to the Contamination of Fresh Whole Cantaloupe Implicated in a Multi-State Outbreak of Listeriosis," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/FoodborneIllness/ucm276247.htm>), October 19, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 20, 2011.
136. CDC, "Multistate Outbreaks of Salmonella Infections Associated with Raw Tomatoes Eaten in Restaurants --- United States, 2005--2006," MMWR, 56:909-911, 2007.
137. FDA, "Food Code 2009: Chapter 1 - Purpose and Definitions," 2009.
138. FDA, "Food Code 2009: Annex 3 - Public Health Reasons / Administrative Guidelines - Chapter 1, Purpose and Definitions," 2009.
139. FDA, "Food Code 2009: Annex 3 - Public Health Reasons / Administrative Guidelines - Chapter 3, Food," 2009.
140. Institute of Food Technologists, "Evaluation and Definition of Potentially Hazardous Foods," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/SafePracticesforFoodProcesses/ucm094141>), December 31, 2001. Accessed and printed on December 14, 2011.
141. FDA, "Defect Levels Handbook," 2005.
142. FDA, "Safe Food Handling. What You Need to Know," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/ResourcesForYou/Consumers/UCM257049.pdf>), June, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
143. Bernard, D. T., K. E. Stevenson, and V. N. Scott, "Hazard Analysis," In: HACCP: A Systematic Approach to Food Safety, edited by V. N. Scott and K. E. Stevenson, 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Washington, D.C., Chapter 8, pp. 57-68, The Food Products Association, 2006.

144. Tompkin, R. B., V. N. Scott, D. T. Bernard, W. H. Sveum, and K. Sullivan Gombas, "Guidelines to Prevent Post-Processing Contamination from Listeria monocytogenes," Dairy, Food and Environmental Sanitation, 19:551-562, 1999.
145. Scott, V. N., C. Yuhuan, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods I: Minimizing Entry of Salmonella into a Processing Facility," Food Protection Trends, 29:342-353, 2009.
146. National Conference on Interstate Milk Shipments, "M-I-05-5: Tolerance and/or Safe Levels of Animal Drug Residues in Milk (Replaces M-I-03-9 (June 30, 2003) and Identifies It as "INACTIVE") and also Identifies M-I-92-1 as "INACTIVE"," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/Product-SpecificInformation/MilkSafety/CodedMemoranda/MemorandaofInformation/ucm077350.htm>), September 27, 2005. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
147. FDA, "Approaches to Establish Thresholds for Major Food Allergens and for Gluten in Food," 2006.
148. FDA, "CPG Sec. 555.425 Foods, Adulteration Involving Hard or Sharp Foreign Objects," 2005.
149. Olsen, A. R., "Regulatory Action Criteria for Filth and Other Extraneous Materials. 1. Review of Hard or Sharp Foreign Objects as Physical Hazards in Foods," Regulatory Toxicology and Pharmacology, 28:181-189, 1998.
150. FDA, "Accidental Radioactive Contamination of Human Food and Animal Feeds: Recommendations for State and Local Agencies,"

<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/MedicalDevices/DeviceRegulationandGuidance/GuidanceDocuments/UCM094513.pdf>), August 13, 1998. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

151. FDA, "CPG Sec. 560.750 Radionuclides in Imported Foods - Levels of Concern," 2005.

152. FDA, "Pistachios and Other Pistachio Containing Products Recall List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/pistachiorecall/index.cfm>), June 23, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

153. FDA, "For Consumers: The HVP Recall (Updated)," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/NewsEvents/WhatsNewinFood/ucm202989.htm>), March 24, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.

154. FDA, "Pacific Coast Fruit Company Voluntarily Recalls Spinach Salad Products and Pizza Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ArchiveRecalls/2006/ucm112048.htm>), September 22, 2006. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

155. FDA, "Company Recalls Various Products Due to Potential Salmonella Contamination. FDA, USDA, CDC Investigating; No Link to Human Illnesses at This Time," (<http://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm169471.htm>), June 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

156. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Measures to Address the Risk for Contamination by Salmonella Species in Food Containing a Pistachio-Derived Product as an Ingredient," 2011. Accessed and printed on July 20, 2012.

157. Wojtala, G., "Interstate Food Transportation Assessment Project," ([http://www.michigan.gov/documents/mda/truckproj\\_224450\\_7.pdf](http://www.michigan.gov/documents/mda/truckproj_224450_7.pdf)), 2007.

158. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Use of Water by Food Manufacturers in Areas Subject to a Boil-Water Advisory," 2010. Accessed and printed on October 18, 2011.
159. FSIS, "Meat and Poultry Hazards and Controls Guide," 2005.
160. Food and Agriculture Organization and World Health Organization, "Risk Assessment of Listeria monocytogenes in Ready-to-Eat Foods, Technical Report, Part 5. Risk Characterization: Response to Codex Questions," 2004.
161. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Staphylococcus aureus," In: Microorganisms in Foods 5. Characteristics of Microbial Pathogens, edited by T. A. Roberts, A. C. Baird-Parker, and R. B. Tompkin, London, Chapter 17, pp. 299-333, Blackie Academic & Professional, 1996.
162. Greig, J. D., E. C. D. Todd, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels, "Outbreaks Where Food Workers Have Been Implicated in the Spread of Foodborne Disease. Part 1. Description of the Problem, Methods and Agents Involved," Journal of Food Protection, 70:1752-1761, 2007.
163. Todd, E. C. D., J. D. Greig, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels, "Outbreaks Where Food Workers Have Been Implicated in the Spread of Foodborne Disease. Part 3. Factors Contributing to Outbreaks and Description of Outbreak Categories," Journal of Food Protection, 70:2199-2217, 2007.
164. FDA, "Industry Guidance. Information on Recalls of FDA Regulated Products," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/default.htm>), December 14, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.

165. FDA, "Model Recall Letter (Generic, All Centers)," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/UCM214960.pdf>), March, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
166. FDA, "Recalls, Market Withdrawals, & Safety Alerts," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/default.htm>), 2012. Accessed and printed on July 31, 2012.
167. FDA, "Allergens Model Press Release," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/ucm129262.htm>), May 31, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
168. FDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Model Press Release," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/ucm129267.htm>), May 31, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
169. FDA, "Salmonella Model Press Release (All Serotypes)," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/ucm129275.htm>), May 31, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
170. FDA, "Model Effectiveness Check Letter (Industry)," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/UCM214958.pdf>), 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
171. FDA, "Model Effectiveness Check Response Format (Industry)," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/UCM214963.pdf>), 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
172. FDA, "Model Effectiveness Check Questionnaire for Telephone or Personal Visits (Industry),"



(<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Safety/Recalls/IndustryGuidance/UCM214971.pdf>), 2009.

Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

173. FDA, "Fish and Fishery Products Hazards and Controls Guidance, Fourth Edition. Appendix 4: Bacterial Pathogen Growth and Inactivation," 2011.

174. FDA, "Food Code 2009," 2009.

175. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Parameters for Determining Inoculated Pack/Challenge Study Protocols," Journal of Food Protection, 73:140-202, 2010.

176. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Requisite Scientific Parameters for Establishing the Equivalence of Alternative Methods of Pasteurization," Journal of Food Protection, 69:1190-1216, 2006.

177. EPA, "Pesticide Registration Manual: Chapter 4 - Additional Considerations for Antimicrobial Products," 2011.

178. FDA and USDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Risk Assessment: I. Introduction," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/ucm184052.htm>), September, 2003. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

179. Chen, Y., V. N. Scott, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods II: Hygiene Practices to Minimize Salmonella Contamination and Growth," Food Protection Trends, 29:435-445, 2009.

180. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Sampling Considerations and Statistical Aspects of Sampling Plans.," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8: Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J.

Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Appendix A, pp. 355-364, Springer, 2011.

181. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Selection of Cases and Attributes Plans," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 8, pp. 145-172, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.

182. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Sampling Plans," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 7, pp. 123-143, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.

183. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Codex Standard for Natural Mineral Waters, CODEX STAN 108-1981," 1981.

184. Chen, Y., V. N. Scott, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods III: Process Validation and Environmental Monitoring," Food Protection Trends, 29:493-508, 2009.

185. Tompkin, R. B., "Control of Listeria monocytogenes in the Food-Processing Environment," Journal of Food Protection, 65:709-725, 2002.

186. Scott, V. N., M. Wiedmann, D. Hicks, R. Collette, M. L. Jahncke, and K. Gall, "Guidelines for Listeria Testing of Environmental, Raw Product and Finished Product Samples in Smoked Seafood Processing Facilities," Food Protection Trends, 25:23-34, 2005.

187. Jarl, D. L. and E. A. Arnold, "Influence of Drying Plant Environment on Salmonellae Contamination of Dry Milk Products," Journal of Food Protection, 45:16, 1982.
188. FDA, "River Ranch Recalls Products Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm275854.htm>), October 13, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 26, 2011.
189. FDA, "Taylor Farms Retail Inc. Initiates a Precautionary Recall Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm276459.htm>), October 19, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 20, 2011.
190. FDA, "Del Bueno Recalls Queso Fresco Casero Cheese Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm272268.htm>), September 16, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 26, 2011.
191. FDA, "Food Code 2009: Chapter 3 - Food," 2009.
192. FDA, "Grade "A" Pasteurized Milk Ordinance (2011 Revision): Appendix K. HACCP Program," 2012.
193. FDA Memorandum, "Comparison of Proposed Subpart C (Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls) to Various Existing Domestic and International HACCP Based Standards," 2012.
194. FDA, "Preliminary Regulatory Impact Analysis," 2012.

### List of Subjects

#### 21 CFR Part 1

Cosmetics, Drugs, Exports, Food labeling, Imports, Labeling, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

21 CFR Part 16

Administrative practice and procedure.

21 CFR Part 106

Food grades and standards, Infants and children, Nutrition, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

21 CFR Part 110

Food packaging, Foods.

21 CFR Part 114

Food packaging, Foods, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

21 CFR Part 117

Food packaging, Foods.

21 CFR Part 120

Foods, Fruit juices, Imports, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements, Vegetable juices.

21 CFR Part 123

Fish, Fishery products, Imports, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements, Seafood.

21 CFR Part 129

Beverages, Bottled water, Food packaging, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

21 CFR Part 179

Food additives, Food labeling, Food packaging, Radiation protection, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements, Signs and symbols.

21 CFR Part 211

Drugs, Labeling, Laboratories, Packaging and containers, Prescription drugs, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements, Warehouses.

Therefore, under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and under authority delegated to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, it is proposed that 21 CFR chapter 1 be amended as follows:

#### PART 1--GENERAL ENFORCEMENT REGULATIONS

1. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 1 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 15 U.S.C. 1333, 1453, 1454, 1455, 4402; 19 U.S.C. 1490, 1491; 21 U.S.C. 321, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335a, 343, 350c, 350d, 352, 355, 360b, 362, 371, 374, 381, 382, 387, 387a, 387c, 393; 42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 243, 262, 264.

2. Section 1.227 is revised to read as follows:

#### § 1.227 What definitions apply to this subpart?

The definitions of terms in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 321) apply to such terms when used in this subpart. In addition, for the purposes of this subpart:

Calendar day means every day shown on the calendar.

Facility means any establishment, structure, or structures under one ownership at one general physical location, or, in the case of a mobile facility, traveling to multiple locations, that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States. Transport vehicles are not facilities if they hold food only in the usual course of business as carriers. A facility may consist of one or more contiguous structures, and a single building may house more than one distinct facility if the facilities are under separate ownership. The private residence of

an individual is not a facility. Nonbottled water drinking water collection and distribution establishments and their structures are not facilities.

(1) Domestic facility means any facility located in any State or Territory of the United States, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States.

(2) Foreign facility means a facility other than a domestic facility that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States.

Farm means a facility in one general physical location devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops, the raising of animals (including seafood), or both. The term "farm" includes:

(1) Facilities that pack or hold food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership; and

(2) Facilities that manufacture/process food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership.

Food has the meaning given in section 201(f) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 321(f)),

(1) Except for purposes of this subpart, it does not include:

(i) Food contact substances as defined in section 409(h)(6) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 348(h)(6)), or

(ii) Pesticides as defined in 7 U.S.C. 136(u).

(2) Examples of food include: Fruits, vegetables, fish, dairy products, eggs, raw agricultural commodities for use as food or as components of food, animal feed (including pet food), food and feed ingredients, food and feed additives, dietary supplements and dietary

ingredients, infant formula, beverages (including alcoholic beverages and bottled water), live food animals, bakery goods, snack foods, candy, and canned foods.

Harvesting applies to farms and farm mixed-type facilities and means activities that are traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing raw agricultural commodities from the place they were grown or raised and preparing them for use as food. Harvesting is limited to activities performed on raw agricultural commodities on the farm on which they were grown or raised, or another farm under the same ownership. Harvesting does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves of, removing stems and husks from, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling raw agricultural commodities grown on a farm or another farm under the same ownership are examples of harvesting.

Holding means storage of food. Holding facilities include warehouses, cold storage facilities, storage silos, grain elevators, and liquid storage tanks. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, holding also includes activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Manufacturing/processing means making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food, including food crops or ingredients. Examples of manufacturing/processing activities are: Cutting, peeling, trimming, washing, waxing, eviscerating, rendering, cooking, baking, freezing, cooling, pasteurizing,

homogenizing, mixing, formulating, bottling, milling, grinding, extracting juice, distilling, labeling, or packaging. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, manufacturing/processing does not include activities that are part of harvesting, packing, or holding.

Mixed-type facility means an establishment that engages in both activities that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and activities that require the establishment to be registered. An example of such a facility is a “farm mixed-type facility,” which is an establishment that grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm definition, but also conducts activities that require the establishment to be registered.

Nonprofit food establishment means a charitable entity that prepares or serves food directly to the consumer or otherwise provides food or meals for consumption by humans or animals in the United States. The term includes central food banks, soup kitchens, and nonprofit food delivery services. To be considered a nonprofit food establishment, the establishment must meet the terms of section 501(c)(3) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)).

Packaging (when used as a verb) means placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives.

Packing means placing food into a container other than packaging the food. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, packing also includes activities (which may include packaging) traditionally performed by farms to prepare raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage and transport, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the



Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Restaurant means a facility that prepares and sells food directly to consumers for immediate consumption. ``Restaurant" does not include facilities that provide food to interstate conveyances, central kitchens, and other similar facilities that do not prepare and serve food directly to consumers.

(1) Entities in which food is provided to humans, such as cafeterias, lunchrooms, cafes, bistros, fast food establishments, food stands, saloons, taverns, bars, lounges, catering facilities, hospital kitchens, day care kitchens, and nursing home kitchens are restaurants; and

(2) Pet shelters, kennels, and veterinary facilities in which food is provided to animals are restaurants.

Retail food establishment means an establishment that sells food products directly to consumers as its primary function. A retail food establishment may manufacture/process, pack, or hold food if the establishment's primary function is to sell from that establishment food, including food that it manufactures/processes, packs, or holds, directly to consumers. A retail food establishment's primary function is to sell food directly to consumers if the annual monetary value of sales of food products directly to consumers exceeds the annual monetary value of sales of food products to all other buyers. The term "consumers" does not include businesses. A "retail food establishment" includes grocery stores, convenience stores, and vending machine locations.

Trade name means the name or names under which the facility conducts business, or additional names by which the facility is known. A trade name is associated with a facility, and a brand name is associated with a product.

U.S. agent means a person (as defined in section 201(e) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 321(e))) residing or maintaining a place of business in the United States whom a foreign facility designates as its agent for purposes of this subpart. A U.S. agent cannot be in the form of a mailbox, answering machine or service, or other place where an individual acting as the foreign facility's agent is not physically present.

(1) The U.S. agent acts as a communications link between the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the foreign facility for both emergency and routine communications. The U.S. agent will be the person FDA contacts when an emergency occurs, unless the registration specifies under § 1.233(e) another emergency contact.

(2) FDA will treat representations by the U.S. agent as those of the foreign facility, and will consider information or documents provided to the U.S. agent the equivalent of providing the information or documents to the foreign facility.

(3) Having a single U.S. agent for the purposes of this subpart does not preclude facilities from having multiple agents (such as foreign suppliers) for other business purposes. A firm's commercial business in the United States need not be conducted through the U.S. agent designated for purposes of this subpart.

You or registrant means the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility that manufactures/processes, packs, or holds food for consumption in the United States.

3. Section 1.241 is amended by revising paragraph (a) to read as follows:

§ 1.241 What are the consequences of failing to register, update, or cancel your registration?

(a) Section 301 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 331) prohibits the doing of certain acts or causing such acts to be done. Under section 302 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 332), the United States can bring a civil action in Federal

court to enjoin a person who commits a prohibited act. Under section 303 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 333), the United States can bring a criminal action in Federal court to prosecute a person who is responsible for the commission of a prohibited act. Under section 306 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 335a), FDA can seek debarment of any person who has been convicted of a felony relating to importation of food into the United States. Failure of an owner, operator, or agent in charge of a domestic or foreign facility to register its facility, to update required elements of its facility's registration, or to cancel its registration in accordance with the requirements of this subpart is a prohibited act under section 301(dd) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

\* \* \* \* \*

4. Section 1.276 is amended by revising paragraph (b)(9) to read as follows:

§ 1.276 What definitions apply to this subpart?

\* \* \* \* \*

(b) \* \* \*

(9) Manufacturer means the last facility, as that word is defined in § 1.227, that manufactured/processed the food. A facility is considered the last facility even if the food undergoes further manufacturing/processing that consists of adding labeling or any similar activity of a de minimis nature. If the food undergoes further manufacturing/processing that exceeds an activity of a de minimis nature, then the subsequent facility that performed the additional manufacturing/processing is considered the manufacturer.

\* \* \* \* \*

5. Section 1.328 is amended by removing the definition for “Act” and by alphabetically adding definitions for "Harvesting", "Mixed-type facility", and “Packing”, and revising the

definitions for “Farm”, “Food”, “Holding”, “Manufacturing/processing”, and “Packaging” to read as follows:

§ 1.328 What definitions apply to this subpart?

\* \* \* \* \*

Farm means a facility in one general physical location devoted to the growing and harvesting of crops, the raising of animals (including seafood), or both. The term "farm" includes:

- (1) Facilities that pack or hold food, provided that all food used in such activities is grown, raised, or consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership; and
- (2) Facilities that manufacture/process food, provided that all food used in such activities is consumed on that farm or another farm under the same ownership.

Food has the meaning given in section 201(f) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Examples of food include, but are not limited to fruits; vegetables; fish; dairy products; eggs; raw agricultural commodities for use as food or as components of food; animal feed, including pet food; food and feed ingredients and additives, including substances that migrate into food from the finished container and other articles that contact food; dietary supplements and dietary ingredients; infant formula; beverages, including alcoholic beverages and bottled water; live food animals; bakery goods; snack foods; candy; and canned foods.

\* \* \* \* \*

Harvesting applies to farms and farm mixed-type facilities and means activities that are traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing raw agricultural commodities from the place they were grown or raised and preparing them for use as food. Harvesting is limited to activities performed on raw agricultural commodities on the farm on which they were grown or

raised, or another farm under the same ownership. Harvesting does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves of, removing stems and husks from, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling raw agricultural commodities grown on a farm or another farm under the same ownership are examples of harvesting.

Holding means storage of food. Holding facilities include: Warehouses, cold storage facilities, storage silos, grain elevators, and liquid storage tanks. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, holding also includes activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Manufacturing/processing means making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food, including food crops or ingredients. Examples of manufacturing/processing activities are: Cutting, peeling, trimming, washing, waxing, eviscerating, rendering, cooking, baking, freezing, cooling, pasteurizing, homogenizing, mixing, formulating, bottling, milling, grinding, extracting juice, distilling, labeling, or packaging. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, manufacturing/processing does not include activities that are part of harvesting, packing, or holding.

Mixed-type facility means an establishment that engages in both activities that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and activities that require the establishment to be registered. An example of such a facility is a “farm

mixed-type facility,” which is an establishment that grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm definition, but also conducts activities that require the establishment to be registered.

\* \* \* \* \*

Packaging (when used as a noun) means the outer packaging of food that bears the label and does not contact the food. Packaging does not include food contact substances as they are defined in section 409(h)(6) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 348(h)(6)).

Packaging (when used as a verb) means placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives.

Packing means placing food into a container other than packaging the food. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, packing also includes activities (which may include packaging) traditionally performed by farms to prepare raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage and transport, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

\* \* \* \* \*

6. Section 1.361 is revised to read as follows:

§ 1.361 What are the record availability requirements?

When FDA has a reasonable belief that an article of food is adulterated and presents a threat of serious adverse health consequences or death to humans or animals, any records and other information accessible to FDA under section 414 or 704(a) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 350c and 374(a)) must be made readily available for inspection and

photocopying or other means of reproduction. Such records and other information must be made available as soon as possible, not to exceed 24 hours from the time of receipt of the official request, from an officer or employee duly designated by the Secretary of Health and Human Services who presents appropriate credentials and a written notice.

7. Section 1.363 is revised to read as follows:

§ 1.363 What are the consequences of failing to establish or maintain records or make them available to FDA as required by this subpart?

(a) The failure to establish or maintain records as required by section 414(b) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and this regulation or the refusal to permit access to or verification or copying of any such required record is a prohibited act under section 301 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) The failure of a nontransporter immediate previous source or a nontransporter immediate subsequent recipient who enters an agreement under § 1.352(e) to establish, maintain, or establish and maintain, records required under § 1.352(a), (b), (c), or (d), or the refusal to permit access to or verification or copying of any such required record, is a prohibited act under section 301 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(c) The failure of any person to make records or other information available to FDA as required by section 414 or 704(a) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and this regulation is a prohibited act under section 301 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

PART 16--REGULATORY HEARING BEFORE THE FOOD AND DRUG  
ADMINISTRATION

8. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 16 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 15 U.S.C. 1451-1461; 21 U.S.C. 141-149, 321-394, 467f, 679, 821, 1034; 28 U.S.C. 2112; 42 U.S.C. 201-262, 263b, 364.

9. Section 16.1 is amended by numerically adding the following entry in paragraph (b)(2) to read as follows:

§ 16.1 Scope.

\* \* \* \* \*

(b) \* \* \*

(2) \* \* \*

§§ 117.251 through 117.284 (part 117, subpart E), relating to withdrawal of an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

\* \* \* \* \*

PART 106--INFANT FORMULA QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES

10. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 106 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 321,350a, 371.

11. Section 106.100 is amended by revising the fourth sentence of paragraph (j) and paragraph (n) to read as follows:

§ 106.100 Records.

\* \* \* \* \*

(j) \* \* \* Records of audits shall include the information and data necessary for a determination as to whether the manufacturer complies with the current good manufacturing practices and quality procedures identified in parts 106, 107, 109, 110, 113, and 117 of this chapter. \* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*



(n) Production control, product testing, testing results, complaints, and distribution records necessary to verify compliance with parts 106, 107, 109, 110, 113, and 117 of this chapter, or with other appropriate regulations, shall be retained for 1 year after the expiration of the shelf life of the infant formula or 3 years from the date of manufacture, whichever is greater.

\* \* \* \* \*

PART 110 -- [Removed and Reserved]

12. Part 110 is removed and reserved [A DATE WILL BE ADDED 3 YEARS AFTER DATE OF PUBLICATION OF THE FINAL RULE IN THE FEDERAL REGISTER].

PART 114--ACIDIFIED FOODS

13. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 114 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 342, 371,374; 42 U.S.C. 264.

14. Revise § 114.5 to read as follows:

§ 114.5 Current good manufacturing practice.

The criteria in §§ 114.10, 114.80, 114.83, 114.89, and 114.100, as well as the criteria in parts 110 and 117 of this chapter, apply in determining whether an article of acidified food is adulterated:

(1) Within the meaning of section 402(a)(3) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 342(a)(3)) in that it has been manufactured under such conditions that it is unfit for food, or

(2) Within the meaning of section 402(a)(4) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 342(a)(4)) in that it has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health.

15. Add part 117 to read as follows:

PART 117—CURRENT GOOD MANUFACTURING PRACTICE AND HAZARD  
ANALYSIS AND RISK-BASED PREVENTIVE CONTROLS FOR HUMAN FOOD

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

117.1 Applicability and status.

117.3 Definitions.

117.5 Exemptions.

117.7 Applicability of subparts C and D to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment.

Subpart B—Current Good Manufacturing Practice

117.10 Personnel.

117.20 Plant and grounds.

117.35 Sanitary operations.

117.37 Sanitary facilities and controls.

117.40 Equipment and utensils.

117.80 Processes and controls.

117.93 Warehousing and distribution.

117.110 Defect Action Levels

Subpart C—Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

117.126 Requirement for a food safety plan.

117.130 Hazard analysis.

117.135 Preventive controls for hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

117.137 Recall plan for food with a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur.

117.140 Monitoring.

117.145 Corrective actions.

117.150 Verification.

117.155 Requirements applicable to a qualified individual.

117.175 Records required for subpart C.

#### Subpart D—Modified Requirements

117.201 Modified requirements that apply to a qualified facility.

117.206 Modified requirements that apply to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment.

#### Subpart E—Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

117.251 Circumstances that may lead FDA to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

117.254 Issuance of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

117.257 Contents of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

117.260 Compliance with, or appeal of, an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

117.264 Procedure for submitting an appeal.

117.267 Procedure for requesting an informal hearing.

117.270 Requirements applicable to an informal hearing.

117.274 Presiding officer for an appeal and for an informal hearing.

117.277 Time frame for issuing a decision on an appeal.

117.280 Revocation of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

117.284 Final agency action.

Subpart F—Requirements Applying to Records That Must be Established and Maintained

117.301 Records subject to the requirements of this subpart F.

117.305 General requirements applying to records.

117.310 Additional requirements applying to the food safety plan.

117.315 Requirements for record retention.

117.320 Requirements for official review.

117.325 Public disclosure.

Subpart G—[Reserved]

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 331, 342, 343, 350d note, 350g, 350g note, 371, 374; 42 U.S.C. 243, 264, 271.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 117.1 Applicability and status.

(a) The criteria and definitions in this part apply in determining whether a food is adulterated:

(1) Within the meaning of section 402(a)(3) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act in that the food has been manufactured under such conditions that it is unfit for food; or

(2) Within the meaning of section 402(a)(4) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act in that the food has been prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health.

The criteria and definitions in this part also apply in determining whether a food is in violation of section 361 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 264).

(b) The operation of a facility that manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food for sale in the United States if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of such facility is required to comply with, and is not in compliance with, section 418 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or subparts C, D, E, or F of part 117 is a prohibited act under section 301(uu) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 331(uu)).

(c) Food covered by specific current good manufacturing practice regulations also is subject to the requirements of those regulations.

#### § 117.3 Definitions.

The definitions and interpretations of terms in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act are applicable to such terms when used in this part. The following definitions also apply:

Acid foods or acidified foods means foods that have an equilibrium pH of 4.6 or below.

Adequate means that which is needed to accomplish the intended purpose in keeping with good public health practice.

Affiliate means any facility that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with another facility.

Batter means a semifluid substance, usually composed of flour and other ingredients, into which principal components of food are dipped or with which they are coated, or which may be used directly to form bakery foods.

Blanching, except for tree nuts and peanuts, means a prepackaging heat treatment of foodstuffs for a sufficient time and at a sufficient temperature to partially or completely inactivate the naturally occurring enzymes and to effect other physical or biochemical changes in the food.

Calendar day means every day shown on the calendar.

Critical control point means a point, step, or procedure in a food process at which control can be applied and is essential to prevent or eliminate a food safety hazard or reduce such hazard to an acceptable level.

Cross-contact means the unintentional incorporation of a food allergen into a food.

Environmental pathogen means a microorganism that is of public health significance and is capable of surviving and persisting within the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding environment.

Facility means a domestic facility or a foreign facility that is required to register under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, in accordance with the requirements of 21 CFR part 1, subpart H.

Farm means farm as defined in § 1.227 of this chapter.

FDA means the Food and Drug Administration.

Food means food as defined in section 201(f) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and includes raw materials and ingredients.

Food allergen means a major food allergen as defined in section 201(qq) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Food-contact surfaces are those surfaces that contact human food and those surfaces from which drainage, or other transfer, onto the food or onto surfaces that contact the food ordinarily occurs during the normal course of operations. “Food-contact surfaces” includes utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment.

Harvesting applies to farms and farm mixed-type facilities and means activities that are traditionally performed by farms for the purpose of removing raw agricultural commodities from

the place they were grown or raised and preparing them for use as food. Harvesting is limited to activities performed on raw agricultural commodities on the farm on which they were grown or raised, or another farm under the same ownership. Harvesting does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Gathering, washing, trimming of outer leaves of, removing stems and husks from, sifting, filtering, threshing, shelling, and cooling raw agricultural commodities grown on a farm or another farm under the same ownership are examples of harvesting.

Hazard means any biological, chemical, physical, or radiological agent that is reasonably likely to cause illness or injury in the absence of its control.

Hazard reasonably likely to occur means a hazard for which a prudent person who manufactures, processes, packs, or holds food would establish controls because experience, illness data, scientific reports, or other information provides a basis to conclude that there is a reasonable possibility that the hazard will occur in the type of food being manufactured, processed, packed, or held in the absence of those controls.

Holding means storage of food. Holding facilities include warehouses, cold storage facilities, storage silos, grain elevators, and liquid storage tanks. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, holding also includes activities traditionally performed by farms for the safe or effective storage of raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Lot means the food produced during a period of time indicated by a specific code.

Manufacturing/processing means making food from one or more ingredients, or synthesizing, preparing, treating, modifying or manipulating food, including food crops or ingredients. Examples of manufacturing/processing activities are cutting, peeling, trimming, washing, waxing, eviscerating, rendering, cooking, baking, freezing, cooling, pasteurizing, homogenizing, mixing, formulating, bottling, milling, grinding, extracting juice, distilling, labeling, or packaging. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, manufacturing/processing does not include activities that are part of harvesting, packing, or holding.

Microorganisms means yeasts, molds, bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and microscopic parasites and includes species having public health significance. The term “undesirable microorganisms” includes those microorganisms that are of public health significance, that subject food to decomposition, that indicate that food is contaminated with filth, or that otherwise may cause food to be adulterated.

Mixed-type facility means an establishment that engages in both activities that are exempt from registration under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and activities that require the establishment to be registered. An example of such a facility is a “farm mixed-type facility,” which is an establishment that grows and harvests crops or raises animals and may conduct other activities within the farm definition, but also conducts activities that require the establishment to be registered.

Monitor means to conduct a planned sequence of observations or measurements to assess whether a process, point, or procedure is under control and to produce an accurate record for use in verification.

Packaging (when used as a verb) means placing food into a container that directly contacts the food and that the consumer receives.



Packing means placing food into a container other than packaging the food. For farms and farm mixed-type facilities, packing also includes activities traditionally performed by farms to prepare raw agricultural commodities grown or raised on the same farm or another farm under the same ownership for storage and transport, but does not include activities that transform a raw agricultural commodity, as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, into a processed food as defined in section 201(gg) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Pest refers to any objectionable animals or insects including birds, rodents, flies, and larvae.

Plant means the building or establishment or parts thereof, used for or in connection with the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of human food.

Preventive controls means those risk-based, reasonably appropriate procedures, practices, and processes that a person knowledgeable about the safe manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of food would employ to significantly minimize or prevent the hazards identified under the hazard analysis that are consistent with the current scientific understanding of safe food manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding at the time of the analysis.

Qualified end-user, with respect to a food, means the consumer of the food (where the term consumer does not include a business); or a restaurant or retail food establishment (as those terms are defined in § 1.227 of this chapter) that:

- (1) Is located;
  - (i) In the same State as the qualified facility that sold the food to such restaurant or establishment; or
  - (ii) Not more than 275 miles from such facility; and

(2) Is purchasing the food for sale directly to consumers at such restaurant or retail food establishment.

Qualified facility means (when including the sales by any subsidiary; affiliate; or subsidiaries or affiliates, collectively, of any entity of which the facility is a subsidiary or affiliate) a facility that is a very small business as defined in this part, or a facility to which both of the following apply:

(1) During the 3-year period preceding the applicable calendar year, the average annual monetary value of the food manufactured, processed, packed or held at such facility that is sold directly to qualified end-users (as defined in this part) during such period exceeded the average annual monetary value of the food sold by such facility to all other purchasers; and

(2) The average annual monetary value of all food sold during the 3-year period preceding the applicable calendar year was less than \$500,000, adjusted for inflation.

Qualified individual means a person who has successfully completed training in the development and application of risk-based preventive controls at least equivalent to that received under a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by FDA or is otherwise qualified through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system.

Quality control operation means a planned and systematic procedure for taking all actions necessary to prevent food from being adulterated.

Ready-to-eat food (RTE food) means any food that is normally eaten in its raw state or any other food, including processed food, for which it is reasonably foreseeable that the food would be eaten without further processing that will significantly minimize biological hazards.

Reasonably foreseeable hazard means a potential biological, chemical, physical, or radiological hazard that may be associated with the facility or the food.

Rework means clean, unadulterated food that has been removed from processing for reasons other than insanitary conditions or that has been successfully reconditioned by reprocessing and that is suitable for use as food.

Safe-moisture level is a level of moisture low enough to prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in the finished product under the intended conditions of manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding. The safe moisture level for a food is related to its water activity ( $a_w$ ). An  $a_w$  will be considered safe for a food if adequate data are available that demonstrate that the food at or below the given  $a_w$  will not support the growth of undesirable microorganisms.

Sanitize means to adequately treat cleaned food-contact surfaces by a process that is effective in destroying vegetative cells of microorganisms of public health significance, and in substantially reducing numbers of other undesirable microorganisms, but without adversely affecting the product or its safety for the consumer.

Should is used to state recommended or advisory procedures or identify recommended equipment.

Significantly minimize means to reduce to an acceptable level, including to eliminate.

Small business means, for purposes of this part 117, a business employing fewer than 500 persons.

Subsidiary means any company which is owned or controlled directly or indirectly by another company.

Validation means that element of verification focused on collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information to determine whether the food safety plan, when properly implemented, will effectively control the identified hazards.

Verification means those activities, other than monitoring, that establish the validity of the food safety plan and that the system is operating according to the plan.

**Option 1 for definition of “Very small business”**

Very small business means, for purposes of this part 117, a business that has less than \$250,000 in total annual sales of food, adjusted for inflation.

**Option 2 for definition of “Very small business”**

Very small business means, for purposes of this part 117, a business that has less than \$500,000 in total annual sales of food, adjusted for inflation.

**Option 3 for definition of “Very small business”**

Very small business means, for purposes of this part 117, a business that has less than \$1,000,000 in total annual sales of food, adjusted for inflation.

Water activity ( $a_w$ ) is a measure of the free moisture in a food and is the quotient of the water vapor pressure of the substance divided by the vapor pressure of pure water at the same temperature.

§ 117.5 Exemptions.

(a) Except as provided by subpart E of this part, subpart C of this part does not apply to a qualified facility. Qualified facilities are subject to the modified requirements in § 117.201.

(b) Subpart C of this part does not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 123 of this chapter (Fish and Fishery Products) at a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 123 of this chapter with respect to such activities.

(c) Subpart C of this part does not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 120 of this chapter (Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) Systems) at a facility

if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 120 of this chapter with respect to such activities.

(d)(1) Subpart C of this part does not apply with respect to activities that are subject to part 113 of this chapter (Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged in Hermetically Sealed Containers) at a facility if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility is required to comply with, and is in compliance with, part 113 of this chapter with respect to such activities.

(2) The exemption in paragraph (d)(1) of this section is applicable only with respect to the microbiological hazards that are regulated under part 113 of this chapter.

(e) Subpart C does not apply to any facility with regard to the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of a dietary supplement that is in compliance with the requirements of part 111 of this chapter (Current Good Manufacturing Practice in Manufacturing, Packing, Labeling, or Holding Operations for Dietary Supplements) and section 761 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (Serious Adverse Event Reporting for Dietary Supplements).

(f) Subpart C of this part does not apply to activities of a facility that are subject to section 419 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (Standards for Produce Safety).

(g) Subpart C of this part does not apply to on-farm packing or holding of food by a small or very small business if the only packing and holding activities subject to section 418 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act that the business conducts are the following low-risk packing or holding activity/food combinations on food not grown, raised, or consumed on that farm mixed-type facility or another farm or farm mixed-type facility under the same ownership-- i.e., packing or re-packing (including weighing or conveying incidental to packing or re-packing); sorting, culling, or grading incidental to packing or storing; and storing (ambient, cold and controlled atmosphere) of:

(1) Hard candy, fudge, taffy and toffee;

(2) Cocoa beans and coffee beans (raw and roasted);

(3) Cocoa products;

(4) Grains and grain products;

(5) Honey (raw and pasteurized);

(6) Intact fruits and vegetables (for purposes of paragraph (g) and paragraph (h) of this section only, “intact fruits and vegetables” refers only to fruits and vegetables other than cocoa beans, coffee beans, peanuts, sugar beets, sugarcane, and tree nuts);

(7) Jams, jellies and preserves;

(8) Maple sap for syrup and maple syrup;

(9) Peanuts and tree nuts;

(10) Soft drinks and carbonated water;

(11) Sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(h) Subpart C of this part does not apply to on-farm low-risk manufacturing/processing activities conducted by a small or very small business if the only manufacturing/processing activities subject to section 418 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act that the business conducts are the following:

(1) When conducted on a farm mixed-type facility’s own raw agricultural commodities as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (those grown or raised on that farm mixed-type facility or another farm/farm mixed-type facility under the same ownership) for distribution into commerce:

(i) Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;

(ii) Boiling/evaporation of maple sap to make maple syrup;

(iii) Chopping raw peanuts and raw tree nuts;

(iv) Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples) and coating raw peanuts and raw tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);

(v) Drying/dehydrating intact fruits and vegetables (without the addition of sulfites) where the drying creates a distinct commodity (e.g., drying fruits or herbs);

(vi) Extracting oil from grains (e.g., corn, oilseeds, soybeans);

(vii) Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal) and raw peanuts or raw tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);

(viii) Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);

(ix) Making sugar from sugar beets and sugarcane; and

(x) Salting raw peanuts and raw tree nuts.

(2) When conducted on food other than the farm mixed-type facility's own raw agricultural commodities for distribution into commerce:

(i) Artificial ripening of intact fruits and vegetables;

(ii) Chopping peanuts and tree nuts;

(iii) Coating (with coatings other than wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., caramel apples) and coating peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., adding seasonings);

(iv) Cooling intact fruits and vegetables using cold air;

(v) Drying/dehydrating (whether for storage/transport or for creating a distinct commodity) intact fruits and vegetables (without sulfiting), cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts;

- (vi) Extracting oils from grains (e.g., corn, oilseeds, and soybeans);
- (vii) Fermenting cocoa beans and coffee beans;
- (viii) Grinding/milling/cracking/crushing cocoa beans, coffee beans, grains (e.g., making grain products such as corn meal), and peanuts and tree nuts (e.g., making ground peanuts);
- (ix) Labeling (including stickering) hard candy, cocoa beans, cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans (other than milk chocolate), coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products (other than those containing wheat in a form that would not be recognized as containing wheat without a label declaration), honey, jams/jellies/preserves, maple sap, maple syrup, intact single-ingredient peanuts or tree nuts (shelled and unshelled), soft drinks and carbonated beverages, sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;
- (x) Making hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee;
- (xi) Making cocoa products from roasted cocoa beans;
- (xii) Making honey;
- (xiii) Making jams, jellies and preserves from acid foods (e.g., acid fruits);
- (xiv) Making maple syrup;
- (xv) Making soft drinks and carbonated water;
- (xvi) Making sugar from sugar beets and sugarcane;
- (xvii) Mixing cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products, honey, maple sap and maple syrup, and peanuts and tree nuts;
- (xviii) Packaging hard candy, fudge, taffy, toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and vegetables (other than modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies and preserves; maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts



(including modified atmosphere or vacuum packaging); soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(xix) Salting peanuts and tree nuts;

(xx) Shelling/hulling cocoa beans (i.e., winnowing), intact fruits and vegetables (e.g., dried beans and peas), and peanuts and tree nuts;

(xxi) Sifting grains and grain products;

(xxii) Sorting, culling, and grading (other than when incidental to packing or storage) hard candy, fudge, taffy, and toffee; cocoa beans; cocoa products; coffee beans; intact fruits and vegetables; grain and grain products; honey; jams, jellies and preserves; maple sap; maple syrup; peanuts and tree nuts; soft drinks and carbonated water; and sugar beets, sugarcane, and sugar;

(xxiii) Treating cocoa beans, coffee beans, intact fruits and vegetables, grain and grain products, and peanuts and tree nuts against pests (other than during growing) (e.g., fumigation);

(xxiv) Waxing (wax, oil, or resin used for the purpose of storage or transportation) intact fruits and vegetables.

(i)(1) Subpart C of this part does not apply with respect to alcoholic beverages at a facility that meets the following two conditions:

(i) Under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 et seq.) or chapter 51 of subtitle E of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 5001 et seq.) the facility is required to obtain a permit from, register with, or obtain approval of a notice or application from the Secretary of the Treasury as a condition of doing business in the United States, or is a foreign facility of a type that would require such a permit, registration, or approval if it were a domestic facility; and

(ii) Under section 415 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 350d) the facility is required to register as a facility because it is engaged in manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding one or more alcoholic beverages.

(2) Subpart C of this part does not apply with respect to food other than alcoholic beverages at a facility described in paragraph (i)(1) of this section, provided such food:

(i) Is in prepackaged form that prevents any direct human contact with such food; and

(ii) Constitutes not more than 5 percent of the overall sales of the facility, as determined by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(j) Subpart C of this part does not apply to facilities that are solely engaged in the storage of raw agricultural commodities (other than fruits and vegetables) intended for further distribution or processing.

(k) Subpart B of this part does not apply to “farms” (as defined in § 1.227 of this chapter), activities of “farm mixed-type facilities” (as defined in § 1.227) that fall within the definition of “farm,” or the holding or transportation of one or more “raw agricultural commodities,” as defined in section 201(r) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

§ 117.7 Applicability of subparts C and D to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment.

(a) Subpart C of this part does not apply to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment.

(b) A facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment is subject to the modified requirements in § 117.206 of subpart D of this part.

Subpart B—Current Good Manufacturing Practice

§ 117.10 Personnel.

The plant management must take all reasonable measures and precautions to ensure the following:

(a) Disease control. Any person who, by medical examination or supervisory observation, is shown to have, or appears to have, an illness, open lesion, including boils, sores, or infected wounds, or any other abnormal source of microbial contamination by which there is a reasonable possibility of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials becoming contaminated, must be excluded from any operations which may be expected to result in such contamination until the condition is corrected. Personnel must be instructed to report such health conditions to their supervisors.

(b) Cleanliness. All persons working in direct contact with food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials must conform to hygienic practices while on duty to the extent necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food. The methods for maintaining cleanliness include:

(1) Wearing outer garments suitable to the operation in a manner that protects against the contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials and to protect against the cross-contact of food.

(2) Maintaining adequate personal cleanliness.

(3) Washing hands thoroughly (and sanitizing if necessary to protect against contamination with undesirable microorganisms) in an adequate hand-washing facility before starting work, after each absence from the work station, and at any other time when the hands may have become soiled or contaminated.

(4) Removing all unsecured jewelry and other objects that might fall into food, equipment, or containers, and removing hand jewelry that cannot be adequately sanitized during

periods in which food is manipulated by hand. If such hand jewelry cannot be removed, it may be covered by material which can be maintained in an intact, clean, and sanitary condition and which effectively protects against the contamination by these objects of the food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

(5) Maintaining gloves, if they are used in food handling, in an intact, clean, and sanitary condition.

(6) Wearing, where appropriate, in an effective manner, hair nets, headbands, caps, beard covers, or other effective hair restraints.

(7) Storing clothing or other personal belongings in areas other than where food is exposed or where equipment or utensils are washed.

(8) Confining the following to areas other than where food may be exposed or where equipment or utensils are washed: eating food, drinking beverages, or using tobacco.

(9) Taking any other necessary precautions to protect against contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with microorganisms or foreign substances (including perspiration, hair, cosmetics, tobacco, chemicals, and medicines applied to the skin) and to protect against cross-contact of food.

(c) Education and training. Personnel responsible for identifying sanitation failures or food contamination should have a background of education or experience, or a combination thereof, to provide a level of competency necessary for production of clean and safe food. Food handlers and supervisors should receive appropriate training in proper food handling techniques and food-protection principles and should be informed of the danger of poor personal hygiene and insanitary practices.

(d) Supervision. Responsibility for ensuring compliance by all personnel with all requirements of this subpart must be clearly assigned to competent supervisory personnel.

§ 117.20 Plant and grounds.

(a) Grounds. The grounds about a food plant under the control of the operator must be kept in a condition that will protect against the contamination of food. The methods for adequate maintenance of grounds must include:

(1) Properly storing equipment, removing litter and waste, and cutting weeds or grass within the immediate vicinity of the plant buildings or structures that may constitute an attractant, breeding place, or harborage for pests.

(2) Maintaining roads, yards, and parking lots so that they do not constitute a source of contamination in areas where food is exposed.

(3) Adequately draining areas that may contribute contamination to food by seepage, foot-borne filth, or providing a breeding place for pests.

(4) Operating systems for waste treatment and disposal in an adequate manner so that they do not constitute a source of contamination in areas where food is exposed. If the plant grounds are bordered by grounds not under the operator's control and not maintained in the manner described in paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) of this section, care must be exercised in the plant by inspection, extermination, or other means to exclude pests, dirt, and filth that may be a source of food contamination.

(b) Plant construction and design. Plant buildings and structures must be suitable in size, construction, and design to facilitate maintenance and sanitary operations for food-production purposes (i.e., manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding). The plant must:

(1) Provide sufficient space for such placement of equipment and storage of materials as is necessary for the maintenance of sanitary operations and the production of safe food.

(2) Permit the taking of proper precautions to reduce the potential for contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with microorganisms, chemicals, filth, and other extraneous material, and to reduce the potential for cross-contact. The potential for cross-contact and contamination may be reduced by adequate food safety controls and operating practices or effective design, including the separation of operations in which cross-contact and contamination are likely to occur, by one or more of the following means: location, time, partition, air flow, enclosed systems, or other effective means.

(3) Permit the taking of proper precautions to protect food in outdoor bulk vessels by any effective means, including:

- (i) Using protective coverings.
- (ii) Controlling areas over and around the vessels to eliminate harborages for pests.
- (iii) Checking on a regular basis for pests and pest infestation.
- (iv) Skimming fermentation vessels, as necessary.

(4) Be constructed in such a manner that floors, walls, and ceilings may be adequately cleaned and kept clean and kept in good repair; that drip or condensate from fixtures, ducts and pipes does not contaminate food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials; and that aisles or working spaces are provided between equipment and walls and are adequately unobstructed and of adequate width to permit employees to perform their duties and to protect against contaminating food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials with clothing or personal contact.

(5) Provide adequate lighting in hand-washing areas, dressing and locker rooms, and toilet rooms and in all areas where food is examined, processed, or stored and where equipment or utensils are cleaned; and provide safety-type light bulbs, fixtures, skylights, or other glass suspended over exposed food in any step of preparation or otherwise protect against food contamination in case of glass breakage.

(6) Provide adequate ventilation or control equipment to minimize odors and vapors (including steam and noxious fumes) in areas where they may contaminate food; and locate and operate fans and other air-blowing equipment in a manner that minimizes the potential for contaminating food, food-packaging materials, and food-contact surfaces and for cross-contact.

(7) Provide, where necessary, adequate screening or other protection against pests.

§ 117.35 Sanitary operations.

(a) General maintenance. Buildings, fixtures, and other physical facilities of the plant must be maintained in a sanitary condition and must be kept in repair sufficient to prevent food from becoming adulterated. Cleaning and sanitizing of utensils and equipment must be conducted in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

(b) Substances used in cleaning and sanitizing; storage of toxic materials. (1) Cleaning compounds and sanitizing agents used in cleaning and sanitizing procedures must be free from undesirable microorganisms and must be safe and adequate under the conditions of use. Compliance with this requirement may be verified by any effective means, including purchase of these substances under a supplier's guarantee or certification or examination of these substances for contamination. Only the following toxic materials may be used or stored in a plant where food is processed or exposed:

- (i) Those required to maintain clean and sanitary conditions;
- (ii) Those necessary for use in laboratory testing procedures;
- (iii) Those necessary for plant and equipment maintenance and operation; and
- (iv) Those necessary for use in the plant's operations.

(2) Toxic cleaning compounds, sanitizing agents, and pesticide chemicals must be identified, held, and stored in a manner that protects against contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

(c) Pest control. Pests must not be allowed in any area of a food plant. Guard or guide dogs may be allowed in some areas of a plant if the presence of the dogs is unlikely to result in contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials. Effective measures must be taken to exclude pests from the manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding areas and to protect against the contamination of food on the premises by pests. The use of insecticides or rodenticides is permitted only under precautions and restrictions that will protect against the contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials.

(d) Sanitation of food-contact surfaces. All food-contact surfaces, including utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment, must be cleaned as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food.

(1) Food-contact surfaces used for manufacturing/processing or holding low-moisture food must be in a clean, dry, sanitary condition at the time of use. When the surfaces are wet-cleaned, they must, when necessary, be sanitized and thoroughly dried before subsequent use.

(2) In wet processing, when cleaning is necessary to protect against cross-contact and the introduction of microorganisms into food, all food-contact surfaces must be cleaned and sanitized before use and after any interruption during which the food-contact surfaces may have



become contaminated. Where equipment and utensils are used in a continuous production operation, the utensils and food-contact surfaces of the equipment must be cleaned and sanitized as necessary.

(3) Single-service articles (such as utensils intended for one-time use, paper cups, and paper towels) should be stored in appropriate containers and must be handled, dispensed, used, and disposed of in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

(e) Sanitation of non-food-contact surfaces. Non-food-contact surfaces of equipment used in the operation of a food plant should be cleaned in a manner and as frequently as necessary to protect against cross-contact and contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, and food-packaging materials.

(f) Storage and handling of cleaned portable equipment and utensils. Cleaned and sanitized portable equipment with food-contact surfaces and utensils should be stored in a location and manner that protects food-contact surfaces from cross-contact and contamination.

§ 117.37 Sanitary facilities and controls.

Each plant must be equipped with adequate sanitary facilities and accommodations including:

(a) Water supply. The water supply must be sufficient for the operations intended and must be derived from an adequate source. Any water that contacts food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials must be safe and of adequate sanitary quality. Running water at a suitable temperature, and under pressure as needed, must be provided in all areas where required for the processing of food, for the cleaning of equipment, utensils, and food-packaging materials, or for employee sanitary facilities.

(b) Plumbing. Plumbing must be of adequate size and design and adequately installed and maintained to:

(1) Carry sufficient quantities of water to required locations throughout the plant.

(2) Properly convey sewage and liquid disposable waste from the plant.

(3) Avoid constituting a source of contamination to food, water supplies, equipment, or utensils or creating an unsanitary condition.

(4) Provide adequate floor drainage in all areas where floors are subject to flooding-type cleaning or where normal operations release or discharge water or other liquid waste on the floor.

(5) Provide that there is not backflow from, or cross-connection between, piping systems that discharge waste water or sewage and piping systems that carry water for food or food manufacturing.

(c) Sewage disposal. Sewage disposal must be made into an adequate sewerage system or disposed of through other adequate means.

(d) Toilet facilities. Each plant must provide its employees with adequate, readily accessible toilet facilities. Toilet facilities must be kept clean and must not be a potential source of contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials.

(e) Hand-washing facilities. Each plant must provide hand-washing facilities designed to ensure that an employee's hands are not a source of contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, or food-packaging materials, by providing facilities that are adequate, convenient, and furnish running water at a suitable temperature.

(f) Rubbish and offal disposal. Rubbish and any offal must be so conveyed, stored, and disposed of as to minimize the development of odor, minimize the potential for the waste becoming an attractant and harborage or breeding place for pests, and protect against

contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, food-packaging materials, water supplies, and ground surfaces.

§ 117.40 Equipment and utensils.

(a)(1) All plant equipment and utensils must be so designed and of such material and workmanship as to be adequately cleanable, and must be properly maintained.

(2) The design, construction, and use of equipment and utensils must preclude the adulteration of food with lubricants, fuel, metal fragments, contaminated water, or any other contaminants.

(3) All equipment should be so installed and maintained as to facilitate the cleaning of the equipment and of all adjacent spaces.

(4) Food-contact surfaces must be corrosion-resistant when in contact with food.

(5) Food-contact surfaces must be made of nontoxic materials and designed to withstand the environment of their intended use and the action of food, and, if applicable, cleaning compounds and sanitizing agents.

(6) Food-contact surfaces must be maintained to protect food from cross-contact and from being contaminated by any source, including unlawful indirect food additives.

(b) Seams on food-contact surfaces must be smoothly bonded or maintained so as to minimize accumulation of food particles, dirt, and organic matter and thus minimize the opportunity for growth of microorganisms and cross-contact.

(c) Equipment that is in the manufacturing or food-handling area and that does not come into contact with food must be so constructed that it can be kept in a clean condition.

(d) Holding, conveying, and manufacturing systems, including gravimetric, pneumatic, closed, and automated systems, must be of a design and construction that enables them to be maintained in an appropriate sanitary condition.

(e) Each freezer and cold storage compartment used to store and hold food capable of supporting growth of microorganisms must be fitted with an indicating thermometer, temperature-measuring device, or temperature-recording device so installed as to show the temperature accurately within the compartment.

(f) Instruments and controls used for measuring, regulating, or recording temperatures, pH, acidity, water activity, or other conditions that control or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms in food must be accurate and precise and adequately maintained, and adequate in number for their designated uses.

(g) Compressed air or other gases mechanically introduced into food or used to clean food-contact surfaces or equipment must be treated in such a way that food is not contaminated with unlawful indirect food additives.

§ 117.80 Processes and controls.

(a) General. (1) All operations in the manufacturing, processing, packing and holding of food (including operations directed to receiving, inspecting, transporting, and segregating) must be conducted in accordance with adequate sanitation principles.

(2) Appropriate quality control operations must be employed to ensure that food is suitable for human consumption and that food-packaging materials are safe and suitable.

(3) Overall sanitation of the plant must be under the supervision of one or more competent individuals assigned responsibility for this function.

(4) All reasonable precautions must be taken to ensure that production procedures do not contribute to cross-contact and contamination from any source.

(5) Chemical, microbial, or extraneous-material testing procedures must be used where necessary to identify sanitation failures or possible cross-contact and food contamination.

(6) All food that has become contaminated to the extent that it is adulterated must be rejected, or if permissible, treated or processed to eliminate the contamination.

(b) Raw materials and ingredients. (1) Raw materials and ingredients must be inspected and segregated or otherwise handled as necessary to ascertain that they are clean and suitable for processing into food and must be stored under conditions that will protect against cross-contact and contamination and minimize deterioration. Raw materials must be washed or cleaned as necessary to remove soil or other contamination. Water used for washing, rinsing, or conveying food must be safe and of adequate sanitary quality. Water may be reused for washing, rinsing, or conveying food if it does not increase the level of contamination of the food or cause cross-contact. Containers and carriers of raw materials should be inspected on receipt to ensure that their condition has not contributed to cross-contact, contamination, or deterioration of food.

(2) Raw materials and ingredients must either not contain levels of microorganisms that may render the food injurious to the health of humans, or they must be pasteurized or otherwise treated during manufacturing operations so that they no longer contain levels that would cause the product to be adulterated.

(3) Raw materials and ingredients susceptible to contamination with aflatoxin or other natural toxins must comply with current FDA regulations for poisonous or deleterious substances before these materials or ingredients are incorporated into finished food.

(4) Raw materials, ingredients, and rework susceptible to contamination with pests, undesirable microorganisms, or extraneous material must comply with applicable FDA regulations for natural or unavoidable defects if a manufacturer wishes to use the materials in manufacturing food.

(5) Raw materials, ingredients, and rework must be held in bulk, or in containers designed and constructed so as to protect against cross-contact and contamination and must be held at such temperature and relative humidity and in such a manner as to prevent the food from becoming adulterated. Material scheduled for rework must be identified as such.

(6) Frozen raw materials and ingredients must be kept frozen. If thawing is required prior to use, it must be done in a manner that prevents the raw materials and ingredients from becoming adulterated.

(7) Liquid or dry raw materials and ingredients received and stored in bulk form must be held in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination.

(8) Raw materials and ingredients that are food allergens, and rework that contains food allergens, must be identified and held in a manner that prevents cross-contact.

(c) Manufacturing operations. (1) Equipment and utensils and finished food containers must be maintained in an acceptable condition through appropriate cleaning and sanitizing, as necessary. Insofar as necessary, equipment must be taken apart for thorough cleaning.

(2) All food manufacturing, processing, packing, and holding must be conducted under such conditions and controls as are necessary to minimize the potential for the growth of microorganisms or for the contamination of food.

(3) Food that can support the rapid growth of undesirable microorganisms must be held at temperatures that will prevent the food from becoming adulterated during manufacturing, processing, packing and holding.

(4) Measures such as sterilizing, irradiating, pasteurizing, cooking, freezing, refrigerating, controlling pH, or controlling  $a_w$  that are taken to destroy or prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms must be adequate under the conditions of manufacture, handling, and distribution to prevent food from being adulterated.

(5) Work-in-process and rework must be handled in a manner that protects against cross-contact, contamination, and growth of undesirable microorganisms.

(6) Effective measures must be taken to protect finished food from cross-contact and contamination by raw materials, ingredients, or refuse. When raw materials, ingredients, or refuse are unprotected, they must not be handled simultaneously in a receiving, loading, or shipping area if that handling could result in cross-contact or contaminated food. Food transported by conveyor must be protected against cross-contact and contamination as necessary.

(7) Equipment, containers, and utensils used to convey, hold, or store raw materials, work-in-process, rework, or food must be constructed, handled, and maintained during manufacturing, processing, packing and holding in a manner that protects against cross-contact and contamination.

(8) Effective measures must be taken to protect against the inclusion of metal or other extraneous material in food.

(9) Food, raw materials, and ingredients that are adulterated must be disposed of in a manner that protects against the contamination of other food or, if the adulterated food is capable

of being reconditioned, it must be reconditioned using a method that has been proven to be effective.

(10) Steps such as washing, peeling, trimming, cutting, sorting and inspecting, mashing, dewatering, cooling, shredding, extruding, drying, whipping, defatting, and forming must be performed so as to protect food against cross-contact and contamination. Food should be protected from contaminants that may drip, drain, or be drawn into the food.

(11) Heat blanching, when required in the preparation of food, should be effected by heating the food to the required temperature, holding it at this temperature for the required time, and then either rapidly cooling the food or passing it to subsequent manufacturing without delay. Thermophilic growth and contamination in blanchers should be minimized by the use of adequate operating temperatures and by periodic cleaning.

(12) Batters, breading, sauces, gravies, dressings, and other similar preparations must be treated or maintained in such a manner that they are protected against cross-contact and contamination.

(13) Filling, assembling, packaging, and other operations must be performed in such a way that the food is protected against cross-contact, contamination and growth of undesirable microorganisms.

(14) Food, including dry mixes, nuts, intermediate moisture food, and dehydrated food, that relies on the control of  $a_w$  for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms must be processed to and maintained at a safe moisture level.

(15) Food, including acid and acidified food, that relies principally on the control of pH for preventing the growth of undesirable microorganisms must be monitored and maintained at a pH of 4.6 or below.



(16) When ice is used in contact with food, it must be made from water that is safe and of adequate sanitary quality, and must be used only if it has been manufactured in accordance with current good manufacturing practice as outlined in this part.

§ 117.93 Warehousing and distribution.

Storage and transportation of food must be under conditions that will protect against cross-contact and biological, chemical, physical, and radiological contamination of food, as well as against deterioration of the food and the container.

§ 117.110 Defect action levels.

Natural or unavoidable defects in food for human use that present no health hazard:

(a) Some foods, even when produced under current good manufacturing practice, contain natural or unavoidable defects that at low levels are not hazardous to health. FDA establishes maximum levels for these defects in foods produced under current good manufacturing practice and uses these levels in deciding whether to recommend regulatory action.

(b) Defect action levels are established for foods when it is necessary and feasible to do so. These levels are subject to change upon the development of new technology or the availability of new information.

(c) Compliance with defect action levels does not excuse violation of the requirement in section 402(a)(4) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act that food not be prepared, packed, or held under unsanitary conditions whereby it may have become contaminated with filth, or whereby it may have been rendered injurious to health, or the requirements in this part that food manufacturers, processors, packers, and holders must observe current good manufacturing practice. Evidence indicating that such a violation exists causes the food to be adulterated, even though the amounts of natural or unavoidable defects are lower than the

currently established defect action levels. The manufacturer, processor, packer and holder of food must at all times utilize quality control operations that reduce natural or unavoidable defects to the lowest level currently feasible.

(d) The mixing of a food containing defects at levels that render that food adulterated with another lot of food is not permitted and renders the final food adulterated, regardless of the defect level of the final food.

#### Subpart C—Hazard Analysis and Risk-Based Preventive Controls

##### § 117.126 Requirement for a food safety plan.

(a) Food safety plan. The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must prepare, or have prepared, and implement a written food safety plan.

(b) Contents of a Food Safety Plan. The food safety plan must include:

- (1) The written hazard analysis as required by § 117.130(a)(2);
- (2) The written preventive controls as required by § 117.135(b);
- (3) The written procedures, and the frequency with which they are to be performed, for monitoring the implementation of the preventive controls as required by § 117.140(a);
- (4) The written corrective action procedures as required by § 117.145(a)(1);
- (5) The written verification procedures as required by § 117.150(e); and
- (6) The written recall plan as required by § 117.137(a).

(c) Qualified individual. The food safety plan must be prepared by (or its preparation overseen by) a qualified individual.

##### § 117.130 Hazard analysis.

(a) Requirement for a hazard analysis. (1) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must identify and evaluate known or reasonably foreseeable hazards for each type of

food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at the facility to determine whether there are hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

(2) The hazard analysis must be written.

(b) Hazard identification. The hazard identification must consider hazards that may occur naturally or may be unintentionally introduced, including:

(1) Biological hazards, including microbiological hazards such as parasites, environmental pathogens, and other microorganisms of public health significance;

(2) Chemical hazards, including substances such as pesticide and drug residues, natural toxins, decomposition, unapproved food or color additives, and food allergens;

(3) Physical hazards; and

(4) Radiological hazards.

(c) Hazard evaluation. (1) The hazard analysis must include an evaluation of the hazards identified in paragraph (b) of this section to determine whether the hazards are reasonably likely to occur, including an assessment of the severity of the illness or injury if the hazard were to occur.

(2) The hazard analysis must include an evaluation of whether environmental pathogens are reasonably likely to occur whenever a ready-to-eat food is exposed to the environment prior to packaging.

(3) The hazard evaluation must consider the effect of the following on the safety of the finished food for the intended consumer:

(i) The formulation of the food;

(ii) The condition, function, and design of the facility and equipment;

(iii) Raw materials and ingredients;

- (iv) Transportation practices;
- (v) Manufacturing/processing procedures;
- (vi) Packaging activities and labeling activities;
- (vii) Storage, and distribution;
- (viii) Intended or reasonably foreseeable use;
- (ix) Sanitation, including employee hygiene; and
- (x) Any other relevant factors.

§ 117.135 Preventive controls for hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

For hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur:

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must identify and implement preventive controls, including at critical control points, if any, to provide assurances that hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur will be significantly minimized or prevented and the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held by such facility will not be adulterated under section 402 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) Preventive controls must be written.

(c) Preventive controls must include, as appropriate to the facility and the food:

(1) Parameters associated with the control of the hazard, such as parameters associated with heat processing, acidifying, irradiating, and refrigerating foods, and

(2) The maximum or minimum value, or combination of values, to which any biological, chemical, physical, or radiological parameter must be controlled to significantly minimize or prevent a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur.

(d) Preventive controls must include, as appropriate:

(1) Process controls. Process controls must include those procedures, practices, and processes performed on a food during manufacturing/processing that are employed to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur.

(2) Food allergen controls. Food allergen controls must include those procedures, practices, and processes employed for:

(i) Ensuring protection of food from cross-contact, including during storage and use; and

(ii) Labeling the finished food, including ensuring that the finished food is not misbranded under section 403(w) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(3) Sanitation controls. (i) Where necessary to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that are reasonably likely to occur (including any environmental pathogen that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food that is exposed to the environment prior to packaging, any microorganism of public health significance that is reasonably likely to occur in a ready-to-eat food due to employee handling, and any food allergen hazard) sanitation controls must include procedures for the:

(A) Cleanliness of food-contact surfaces, including food-contact surfaces of utensils and equipment;

(B) Prevention of cross-contact and cross-contamination from insanitary objects and from personnel to food, food packaging material, and other food-contact surfaces and from raw product to processed product.

(ii) The owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility must take action to correct, in a timely manner, conditions and practices that are not consistent with the procedures in paragraphs (d)(3)(i)(A) or (d)(3)(i)(B) of this section.

(iii) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility is not required to follow the corrective actions established in § 117.145(a) and (b) when the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility takes action, in accordance with paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section, to correct conditions and practices that are not consistent with the procedures in paragraphs (d)(3)(i)(A) or (d)(3)(i)(B) of this section.

(iv) All corrective actions taken in accordance with paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section must be documented in records that are subject to verification in accordance with § 117.150(c) and records review in accordance with § 117.150(d)(5)(i).

(4) Recall plan. Recall plan as required by § 117.137.

(5) Other controls. Preventive controls must include any other controls necessary to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(e)(1) Except as provided by paragraph (e)(2) of this section, the preventive controls required under this section are subject to:

- (i) Monitoring as required by § 117.140;
- (ii) Corrective actions as required by § 117.145; and
- (iii) Verification as required by § 117.150.

(2) The recall plan established in § 117.137 is not subject to the requirements of paragraph (e)(1) of this section.

§ 117.137 Recall plan for food with a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur.

For food with a hazard that is reasonably likely to occur:

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish a written recall plan for the food.

(b) The recall plan must include procedures that describe the steps to be taken, and assign responsibility for taking those steps, to perform the following actions:

(1) Directly notify the direct consignees of the food being recalled, including how to return or dispose of the affected food;

(2) Notify the public about any hazard presented by the food when appropriate to protect public health;

(3) Conduct effectiveness checks to verify that the recall is carried out; and

(4) Appropriately dispose of recalled food--e.g., through reprocessing, reworking, diverting to a use that does not present a safety concern, or destroying the food.

§ 117.140 Monitoring.

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and implement written procedures, including the frequency with which they are to be performed, for monitoring the preventive controls.

(b) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must monitor the preventive controls with sufficient frequency to provide assurance that they are consistently performed.

(c) All monitoring of preventive controls in accordance with this section must be documented in records that are subject to verification in accordance with § 117.150(b) and records review in accordance with § 117.150(d)(5)(i).

§ 117.145 Corrective actions.

(a) Corrective action procedures. (1) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and implement written corrective action procedures that must be taken if preventive controls are not properly implemented.

(2) The corrective action procedures must describe the steps to be taken to ensure that:

(i) Appropriate action is taken to identify and correct a problem with implementation of a preventive control to reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur;

(ii) All affected food is evaluated for safety; and

(iii) All affected food is prevented from entering into commerce, if the owner, operator or agent in charge of such facility cannot ensure that the affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or misbranded under section 403(w) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) Corrective action in the event of an unanticipated problem. If a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action procedure has not been established, or a preventive control is found to be ineffective, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must:

(1) Take corrective action to identify and correct the problem to reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur, evaluate all affected food for safety, and, as necessary, prevent affected food from entering commerce as would be done following a corrective action procedure under paragraphs (a)(2)(i) through (a)(2)(iii) of this section; and

(2) Reanalyze the food safety plan in accordance with § 117.150(f) to determine whether modification of the food safety plan is required.

(c) Documentation. All corrective actions taken in accordance with this section must be documented in records that are subject to verification in accordance with § 117.150(c) and records review in accordance with § 117.150(d)(5)(i).

#### § 117.150 Verification.

(a) Validation. Except as provided by paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must validate that the preventive controls identified and



implemented in accordance with § 117.135 to control the hazards identified in the hazard analysis as reasonably likely to occur are adequate to do so. The validation of the preventive controls:

(1) Must be performed by (or overseen by) a qualified individual:

(i) Prior to implementation of the food safety plan or, when necessary, during the first 6 weeks of production; and

(ii) Whenever a reanalysis of the food safety plan reveals the need to do so;

(2) Must include collecting and evaluating scientific and technical information (or, when such information is not available or is insufficient, conducting studies) to determine whether the preventive controls, when properly implemented, will effectively control the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur; and

(3) Need not address:

(i) The food allergen controls in § 117.135(d)(2);

(ii) The sanitation controls in § 117.135(d)(3); and

(iii) The recall plan in § 117.137.

(b) Monitoring. The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must verify that monitoring is being conducted, as required by § 117.140.

(c) Corrective actions. The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must verify that appropriate decisions about corrective actions are being made, as required by § 117.145 and § 117.135(d)(3)(ii).

(d) Implementation and effectiveness. The owner, operator, or agent in charge must verify that the preventive controls are consistently implemented and are effectively and

significantly minimizing or preventing the hazards that are reasonably likely to occur. This must include the following activities, as appropriate to the facility and the food:

(1) Calibration of process monitoring instruments and verification instruments; and

(2) Review of the following records within the specified timeframes, by (or under the oversight of) a qualified individual, to ensure that the records are complete, the activities reflected in the records occurred in accordance with the food safety plan, the preventive controls are effective, and appropriate decisions were made about corrective actions:

(i) Records of monitoring and corrective action records within a week after the records are made.

(ii) Records of calibration within a reasonable time after the records are made.

(e) Written procedures for verification activities. As appropriate to the facility and the food, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and implement written procedures for the frequency of calibrating process monitoring instruments and verification instruments.

(f) Reanalysis. (1) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must:

(i) Conduct a reanalysis of the food safety plan;

(A) At least once every 3 years;

(B) Whenever a significant change is made in the activities conducted at a facility operated by such owner, operator, or agent in charge if the change creates a reasonable potential for a new hazard or a significant increase in a previously identified hazard;

(C) Whenever such owner, operator or agent in charge becomes aware of new information about potential hazards associated with the food;

(D) Whenever a preventive control is not properly implemented and a specific corrective action procedure has not been established; and

(E) Whenever a preventive control is found to be ineffective.

(ii) Complete such reanalysis and implement any additional preventive controls needed to address the hazard identified, if any, before the change in activities at the facility is operative or, when necessary, during the first 6 weeks of production; and

(iii) Revise the written plan if a significant change is made or document the basis for the conclusion that no additional or revised preventive controls are needed.

(2) The reanalysis must be performed (or overseen) by a qualified individual.

(3) FDA may require a reanalysis of the food safety plan to respond to new hazards and developments in scientific understanding.

(g) Documentation. All verification activities taken in accordance with this section must be documented in records.

§ 117.155 Requirements applicable to a qualified individual.

(a) One or more qualified individuals must do or oversee the following:

(1) Preparation of the food safety plan (§ 117.126(c));

(2) Validation of the preventive controls (§ 117.150(a)(1));

(3) Review of records for implementation and effectiveness of preventive controls and appropriateness of corrective actions (§ 117.150(d)(2)); and

(4) Reanalysis of the food safety plan (§ 117.150(f)(2)).

(b) To be qualified, an individual must have successfully completed training in the development and application of risk-based preventive controls at least equivalent to that received under a standardized curriculum recognized as adequate by FDA or be otherwise qualified

through job experience to develop and apply a food safety system. Job experience may qualify an individual to perform these functions if such experience has provided an individual with knowledge at least equivalent to that provided through the standardized curriculum. This individual may be, but is not required to be, an employee of the facility.

(c) All applicable training must be documented in records, including the date of the training, the type of training, and the person(s) trained.

§ 117.175 Records required for subpart C.

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and maintain the following records:

(1) The written food safety plan, including the written hazard analysis, preventive controls, monitoring procedures, corrective action procedures, verification procedures, and recall plan.

(2) Records that document the monitoring of preventive controls;

(3) Records that document corrective actions;

(4) Records that document verification, including, as applicable, those related to:

(i) Validation,

(ii) Monitoring,

(iii) Corrective actions,

(iv) Calibration of process monitoring and verification instruments,

(v) Records review, and

(vi) Reanalysis; and

(5) Records that document applicable training for the qualified individual.

(b) The records that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility must establish and maintain are subject to the requirements of subpart F of this part.

#### Subpart D—Modified Requirements

##### § 117.201 Modified requirements that apply to a qualified facility.

(a) Documentation to be submitted. A qualified facility must submit the following documentation to the FDA:

(1) Documentation that the facility is a qualified facility as defined in § 117.3. For the purpose of determining whether a facility satisfies the definition of qualified facility, the baseline year for calculating the adjustment for inflation is 2011; and

(2)(i) Documentation that demonstrates that the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility has identified the potential hazards associated with the food being produced, is implementing preventive controls to address the hazards, and is monitoring the performance of the preventive controls to ensure that such controls are effective; or

(ii) Documentation (which may include licenses, inspection reports, certificates, permits, credentials, certification by an appropriate agency (such as a State department of agriculture), or other evidence of oversight) that the facility is in compliance with State, local, county, or other applicable non-Federal food safety law, including relevant laws and regulations of foreign countries.

(b) Procedure for submission. The documentation required by paragraph (a) of this section must be submitted to FDA by one of the following means:

(1) Electronic submission. To submit electronically, go to <http://www.access.fda.gov> and follow the instructions. This Web site is available from wherever the Internet is accessible,

including libraries, copy centers, schools, and Internet cafes. FDA encourages electronic submission.

(2) Submission by mail. To submit documents in a paper format or in an electronic format on a CD-ROM, by mail to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, ATTN: Qualified Facility Coordinator, 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20993. We recommend that an owner, operator or agent in charge of a facility submit by mail only if the facility does not have reasonable access to the Internet.

(c) Frequency of submission. The documentation required by paragraph (a) of this section must be:

(1) Submitted to FDA initially within 90 days of the applicable compliance date of this part; and

(2) Resubmitted at least every 2 years, or whenever there is a material change to the information described in paragraph (a) of this section. For the purpose of this section, a material change is one that changes whether or not a facility is a “qualified facility.”

(d) Notification to consumers. A qualified facility that does not submit documentation under paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section must provide notification to consumers as to the name and complete business address of the facility where the food was manufactured or processed (including the street address or P.O. box, city, state, and zip code for domestic facilities, and comparable full address information for foreign facilities), as follows:

(1) If a food packaging label is required, the notification required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section must appear prominently and conspicuously on the label of the food.

(2) If a food packaging label is not required, the notification required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section must appear prominently and conspicuously, at the point of purchase, on a label,

poster, sign, placard, or documents delivered contemporaneously with the food in the normal course of business, or in an electronic notice, in the case of Internet sales.

(e) Records. (1) A qualified facility must maintain those records relied upon to support the documentation required by § 117.201(a).

(2) The records that a qualified facility must maintain are subject to the requirements of subpart F of this part.

§ 117.206 Modified requirements that apply to a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment.

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility solely engaged in the storage of packaged food that is not exposed to the environment must conduct the following activities for any such refrigerated packaged food that requires time/temperature control to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance:

(1) Establish and implement temperature controls adequate to significantly minimize or prevent the growth of, or toxin production by, microorganisms of public health significance;

(2) Monitor the temperature controls with sufficient frequency to provide assurance they are consistently performed;

(3) If there is a problem with the temperature controls for such refrigerated packaged food, take appropriate corrective actions to:

(i) Correct the problem and reduce the likelihood that the problem will recur;

(ii) Evaluate all affected food for safety; and

(iii) Prevent the food from entering commerce, if the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility cannot ensure the affected food is not adulterated under section 402 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) Verify that temperature controls are consistently implemented by:

(i) Calibrating temperature monitoring and recording devices;

(ii) Reviewing records of calibration within a reasonable time after the records are made;

and

(iii) Reviewing records of monitoring and corrective actions taken to correct a problem with the control of temperature within a week after the records are made;

(5) Establish and maintain the following records:

(i) Records documenting the monitoring of temperature controls for any such refrigerated packaged food;

(ii) Records of corrective actions taken when there is a problem with the control of temperature for any such refrigerated packaged food; and

(iii) Records documenting verification activities.

(b) The records that a facility must establish and maintain under paragraph (a)(5) of this section are subject to the requirements of subpart F of this part.

Subpart E—Withdrawal of an Exemption Applicable to a Qualified Facility

§ 117.251 Circumstances that may lead FDA to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

FDA may withdraw the exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a):

(a) In the event of an active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to the qualified facility; or



(b) If FDA determines that it is necessary to protect the public health and prevent or mitigate a foodborne illness outbreak based on conduct or conditions associated with the qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility.

§ 117.254 Issuance of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

(a) If FDA determines that an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a) should be withdrawn, any officer or qualified employee of FDA may issue an order to withdraw the exemption.

(b) An FDA District Director in whose district the qualified facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition), or an FDA official senior to such Director, must approve an order to withdraw the exemption.

(c) FDA must issue an order to withdraw the exemption to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility.

(d) FDA must issue an order to withdraw the exemption in writing, signed and dated by the officer or qualified employee of FDA who is issuing the order.

§ 117.257 Contents of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

An order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a) must include the following information:

(a) The date of the order;

(b) The name, address, and location of the qualified facility;

(c) A brief, general statement of the reasons for the order, including information relevant to:

(1) An active investigation of a foodborne illness outbreak that is directly linked to the facility; or

(2) Conduct or conditions associated with a qualified facility that are material to the safety of the food manufactured, processed, packed, or held at such facility.

(d) A statement that the facility must comply with subpart C of this part on the date that is 60 calendar days after the date of the order;

(e) The text of section 418(l) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and of this subpart E;

(f) A statement that any informal hearing on an appeal of the order must be conducted as a regulatory hearing under part 16 of this chapter, with certain exceptions described in § 117.270;

(g) The mailing address, telephone number, email address, and facsimile number of the FDA district office and the name of the FDA District Director in whose district the facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the same information for the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition); and

(h) The name and the title of the FDA representative who approved the order.

§ 117.260 Compliance with, or appeal of, an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of a qualified facility that receives an order under § 117.251 to withdraw an exemption applicable to that facility under § 117.5(a) must either:

(1) Comply with applicable requirements of this part within 60 calendar days of the date of the order; or

(2) Appeal the order within 10 calendar days of the date of the order in accordance with the requirements of § 117.264.

(b) Submission of an appeal, including submission of a request for an informal hearing, will not operate to delay or stay any administrative action, including enforcement action by FDA, unless the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, as a matter of discretion, determines that delay or a stay is in the public interest.

(c) If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the qualified facility appeals the order, and FDA confirms the order, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility must comply with applicable requirements of this part within 60 calendar days of the date of the order.

§ 117.264 Procedure for submitting an appeal.

(a) To appeal an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a), the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility must:

(1) Submit the appeal in writing to the FDA District Director in whose district the facility is located (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition), at the mailing address, email address, or facsimile number identified in the order within 10 calendar days of the date of the order;

(2) Respond with particularity to the facts and issues contained in the order, including any supporting documentation upon which the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility relies.

(b) In a written appeal of the order withdrawing an exemption provided under § 117.5(a), the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility may include a written request for an informal hearing as provided in § 117.267.

§ 117.267 Procedure for requesting an informal hearing.

(a) If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order, the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility:

(1) May request an informal hearing; and

(2) Must submit any request for an informal hearing together with its written appeal submitted in accordance with § 117.264 within 10 calendar days of the date of the order.

(b) A request for an informal hearing may be denied, in whole or in part, if the presiding officer determines that no genuine and substantial issue of material fact has been raised by the material submitted. If the presiding officer determines that a hearing is not justified, written notice of the determination will be given to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility explaining the reason for the denial.

§ 117.270 Requirements applicable to an informal hearing.

If the owner, operator or agent in charge of the facility requests an informal hearing, and FDA grants the request:

(a) The hearing will be held within 10 calendar days after the date the appeal is filed or, if applicable, within a time frame agreed upon in writing by the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility and FDA.

(b) The presiding officer may require that a hearing conducted under this subpart be completed within 1 calendar day, as appropriate.

(c) FDA must conduct the hearing in accordance with part 16 of this chapter, except that:

(1) The order withdrawing an exemption under §§ 117.254 and 117.257, rather than the notice under § 16.22(a) of this chapter, provides notice of opportunity for a hearing under this section and is part of the administrative record of the regulatory hearing under § 16.80(a) of this chapter.

(2) A request for a hearing under this subpart must be addressed to the FDA District Director (or, in the case of a foreign facility, the Director of the Office of Compliance in the Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition) as provided in the order withdrawing an exemption.

(3) Section 117.274, rather than § 16.42(a) of this chapter, describes the FDA employees who preside at hearings under this subpart.

(4) Section 16.60(e) and (f) of this chapter does not apply to a hearing under this subpart. The presiding officer must prepare a written report of the hearing. All written material presented at the hearing will be attached to the report. The presiding officer must include as part of the report of the hearing a finding on the credibility of witnesses (other than expert witnesses) whenever credibility is a material issue, and must include a proposed decision, with a statement of reasons. The hearing participant may review and comment on the presiding officer's report within 2 calendar days of issuance of the report. The presiding officer will then issue the final decision.

(5) Section 16.80(a)(4) of this chapter does not apply to a regulatory hearing under this subpart. The presiding officer's report of the hearing and any comments on the report by the hearing participant under § 117.270(c)(4) are part of the administrative record.

(6) No party shall have the right, under § 16.119 of this chapter to petition the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for reconsideration or a stay of the presiding officer's final decision.

(7) If FDA grants a request for an informal hearing on an appeal of an order withdrawing an exemption, the hearing must be conducted as a regulatory hearing under a regulation in accordance with part 16 of this chapter, except that § 16.95(b) does not apply to a hearing under

this subpart. With respect to a regulatory hearing under this subpart, the administrative record of the hearing specified in §§ 16.80(a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), and (a)(5), and 117.270(c)(5) constitutes the exclusive record for the presiding officer's final decision. For purposes of judicial review under § 10.45 of this chapter, the record of the administrative proceeding consists of the record of the hearing and the presiding officer's final decision.

§ 117.274 Presiding officer for an appeal and for an informal hearing.

The presiding officer for an appeal, and for an informal hearing, must be an FDA Regional Food and Drug Director or another FDA official senior to an FDA District Director.

§ 117.277 Time frame for issuing a decision on an appeal.

(a) If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility appeals the order without requesting a hearing, the presiding officer must issue a written report that includes a final decision confirming or revoking the withdrawal by the 10th calendar day after the appeal is filed.

(b) If the owner, operator, or agent in charge of a facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing:

(1) If FDA grants the request for a hearing and the hearing is held, the presiding officer must provide a 2 calendar day opportunity for the hearing participants to review and submit comments on the report of the hearing under § 117.270(c)(4), and must issue a final decision within 10 calendar days after the hearing is held; or

(2) If FDA denies the request for a hearing, the presiding officer must issue a final decision on the appeal confirming or revoking the withdrawal within 10 calendar days after the date the appeal is filed.

§ 117.280 Revocation of an order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility.

An order to withdraw an exemption applicable to a qualified facility under § 117.5(a) is revoked if:

(a) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing, FDA grants the request for an informal hearing, and the presiding officer does not confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the hearing, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time; or

(b) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order and requests an informal hearing, FDA denies the request for an informal hearing, and FDA does not confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the appeal is filed, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time; or

(c) The owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility appeals the order without requesting an informal hearing, and FDA does not confirm the order within the 10 calendar days after the appeal is filed, or issues a decision revoking the order within that time.

§ 117.284 Final agency action.

Confirmation of a withdrawal order by the presiding officer is considered a final agency action for purposes of 5 U.S.C. 702.

Subpart F—Requirements Applying to Records That Must Be Established and Maintained

§ 117.301 Records subject to the requirements of this subpart F.

(a) Except as provided by paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, all records required by this part are subject to all requirements of this subpart F.

(b) The requirements of § 117.310 apply only to the written food safety plan.

(c) The requirements of § 117.305(b), (d), (e), and (f) do not apply to the records required by § 117.201(e).

§ 117.305 General requirements applying to records.

Records must:

(a) Be kept as original records, true copies (such as photocopies, pictures, scanned copies, microfilm, microfiche, or other accurate reproductions of the original records), or electronic records, which must be kept in accordance with part 11 of this chapter;

(b) Contain the actual values and observations obtained during monitoring;

(c) Be accurate, indelible, and legible;

(d) Be created concurrently with performance of the activity documented;

(e) Be as detailed as necessary to provide history of work performed; and

(f) Include:

(1) The name and location of the plant or facility;

(2) The date and time of the activity documented;

(3) The signature or initials of the person performing the activity; and

(4) Where appropriate, the identity of the product and the production code, if any.

§ 117.310 Additional requirements applying to the food safety plan.

The food safety plan must be signed and dated by the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the facility:

(a) Upon initial completion; and

(b) Upon any modification.

§ 117.315 Requirements for record retention.

(a) All records required by this part must be retained at the plant or facility for at least 2 years after the date they were prepared.



(b) Records that relate to the general adequacy of the equipment or processes being used by a facility, including the results of scientific studies and evaluations, must be retained at the facility for at least 2 years after their use is discontinued (e.g., because the facility has updated the written food safety plan (§ 117.126) or records that document validation of the written food safety plan (§ 117.150(a));

(c) Except for the food safety plan, offsite storage of records is permitted after 6 months following the date that the record was made if such records can be retrieved and provided onsite within 24 hours of request for official review. The food safety plan must remain onsite. Electronic records are considered to be onsite if they are accessible from an onsite location.

(d) If the plant or facility is closed for a prolonged period, the records may be transferred to some other reasonably accessible location but must be returned to the plant or facility within 24 hours for official review upon request.

§ 117.320 Requirements for official review.

All records required by this part must be made promptly available to a duly authorized representative of the Secretary of Health and Human Services upon oral or written request.

§ 117.325 Public disclosure.

Records required by this part are subject to the disclosure requirements under part 20 of this chapter.

Subpart G—[Reserved]

**PART 120--HAZARD ANALYSIS AND CRITICAL CONTROL POINT (HACCP) SYSTEMS**

16. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 120 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 321, 342, 343, 346, 348, 371, 374, 379e, 381, 393; 42 U.S.C. 241.

17. Amend § 120.3 by revising the first sentence of the introductory text to read as follows:

§ 120.3 Definitions.

The definitions of terms in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, § 101.9(j)(18)(vi), and parts 110 and 117 of this chapter are applicable to such terms when used in this part, except that the definitions and terms in parts 110 and 117 do not govern such terms where such terms are redefined in this part and except that the terms facility, hazard, and manufacturing/processing in parts 110 and 117 do not govern such terms where used in this part.

\* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*

18. Revise § 120.5 to read as follows:

§ 120.5 Current good manufacturing practice.

Except as provided by § 117.5(c), parts 110 and 117 of this chapter apply in determining whether the facilities, methods, practices, and controls used to process juice are safe, and whether the food has been processed under sanitary conditions.

19. Amend § 120.6 by revising the first sentence of paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 120.6 Sanitation standard operating procedures.

\* \* \* \* \*

(b) Monitoring. The processor shall monitor the conditions and practices during processing with sufficient frequency to ensure, at a minimum, conformance with those conditions and practices specified in part 110 and in subpart B of part 117 of this chapter that are appropriate both to the plant and to the food being processed. \* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*

PART 123--FISH AND FISHERY PRODUCTS

20. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 123 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 321, 342, 343, 346, 348, 371, 374, 379e, 381, 393; 42 U.S.C. 241, 2411, 264.

21. Revise the first sentence of the introductory text in § 123.3 to read as follows:

§ 123.3 Definitions.

The definitions and interpretations of terms in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) and in parts 110 and 117 of this chapter are applicable to such terms when used in this part, except that the definitions and terms in parts 110 and 117 do not govern such terms where such terms are redefined in this part and except that the terms facility, hazard, and manufacturing/processing in parts 110 and 117 do not govern such terms where used in this part.

\* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*

22. Revise paragraph (a) of § 123.5 to read as follows:

§ 123.5 Current good manufacturing practice.

(a) Except as provided by § 117.5(b), parts 110 and 117 of this chapter apply in determining whether the facilities, methods, practices, and controls used to process fish and fishery products are safe, and whether these products have been processed under sanitary conditions.

\* \* \* \* \*

23. Amend § 123.11 by revising the introductory text of paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 123.11 Sanitation control procedures.

\* \* \* \* \*

(b) Sanitation monitoring. Each processor shall monitor the conditions and practices during processing with sufficient frequency to ensure, at a minimum, conformance with those conditions and practices specified in part 110 and in subpart B of part 117 of this chapter that are both appropriate to the plant and the food being processed and relate to the following:

\* \* \* \* \*

#### PART 129--PROCESSING AND BOTTLING OF BOTTLED DRINKING WATER

24. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 129 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 342, 348, 371, 374; 42 U.S.C. 264.

25. Revise § 129.1 to read as follows:

##### § 129.1 Current good manufacturing practice.

The applicable criteria in parts 110 and 117 of this chapter, as well as the criteria in §§ 129.20, 129.35, 129.37, 129.40, and 129.80 shall apply in determining whether the facilities, methods, practices, and controls used in the processing, bottling, holding, and shipping of bottled drinking water are in conformance with or are operated or administered in conformity with good manufacturing practice to assure that bottled drinking water is safe and that it has been processed, bottled, held, and transported under sanitary conditions.

#### PART 179--IRRADIATION IN THE PRODUCTION, PROCESSING AND HANDLING OF FOOD

26. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 179 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 321, 342, 343, 348, 373, 374.

27. Revise paragraph (a) of § 179.25 to read as follows:

##### § 179.25 General provisions for food irradiation.

\* \* \* \* \*

(a) Any firm that treats foods with ionizing radiation shall comply with the requirements of parts 110 and 117 of this chapter and other applicable regulations.

\* \* \* \* \*

PART 211--CURRENT GOOD MANUFACTURING PRACTICE FOR FINISHED  
PHARMACEUTICALS

28. The authority citation for 21 CFR part 211 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 21 U.S.C. 321, 351, 352, 355, 360b, 371, 374; 42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263a, 264.

29. Amend § 211.1 by revising the last sentence in paragraph (c) to read as follows:

§ 211.1 Scope.

\* \* \* \* \*

(c) \* \* \* Therefore, until further notice, regulations under parts 110 and 117 of this chapter, and where applicable, parts 113 to 129 of this chapter, shall be applied in determining whether these OTC drug products that are also foods are manufactured, processed, packed, or held under current good manufacturing practice.

Dated: January 3, 2013.

Leslie Kux,

Assistant Commissioner for Policy.

Note: The following appendix will not appear in the Code of Federal Regulations.

Appendix

Although the proposed rule that is the subject of this document does not include provisions for environmental monitoring or finished product testing, we believe that these regimes can play a critical role in a modern food safety system. In sections XII.J.2 and XII.J.3 of the preamble of this document, we request comment on when and how these types of testing are an appropriate means of implementing the statutory directives set out in section 418 of the FD&C Act. In this Appendix, we provide background material on these testing measures.

## I. The Role of Testing as a Verification Measure in a Modern Food Safety System

### A. Verification of Preventive Controls

The safety of food is principally ensured by the effective implementation of scientifically valid preventive control measures throughout the food chain (Ref. 34) (Ref. 110). Prevention of hazards in food is much more effective than trying to differentiate safe from unsafe food using testing. Although testing is rarely considered a control measure, it plays a very important role in ensuring the safety of food. An important purpose of testing is to verify that control measures, including those related to suppliers and those verified through environmental monitoring, are controlling the hazard (Ref. 111) (Ref. 112). Testing is used in conjunction with other verification measures in the food safety system, such as audits of suppliers, observations of whether activities are being conducted according to the food safety plan, and reviewing records to determine whether process controls are meeting specified limits for parameters established in the food safety plan. Although testing may be conducted for biological, chemical, physical or radiological hazards, the most common testing is for microbiological hazards. Thus, much of the testing described below focuses on microbial testing, but many of the issues discussed apply to testing for other hazards as well. We focus more of our discussion below on verification testing of the environment because of the increasing recognition of the benefits of such testing in

identifying conditions that could result in environmental pathogens contaminating food; thus such verification testing is important in preventing contamination in food, whereas verification testing of raw materials, ingredients, and finished products is used to detect contamination that has already occurred.

As discussed in sections I.C, I.E, and I.F of this Appendix, microbial testing may include:

- Testing raw materials and ingredients to verify that suppliers have significantly minimized or prevented hazards reasonably likely to occur in the raw materials and ingredients;
- Testing the environment to verify that sanitation controls have significantly minimized or prevented the potential for environmental pathogens to contaminate RTE food; and
- Testing finished product to verify that preventive controls have significantly minimized or prevented hazards reasonably likely to occur in the food.

Each type of testing provides information applicable to managing hazards in foods, depending on the food and process. For example, a dry blending operation, e.g., for spices and seasonings, often verifies its supplier controls by testing incoming ingredients before use (as discussed in section I.C of this Appendix) and periodically sampling and testing finished products. If all the ingredients being blended had been treated to adequately reduce hazards such as Salmonella spp., a dry blending operation generally does less testing to verify supplier controls than if this were not the case. (We use the term “adequately reduce” (which is a term used in some of our guidance documents) (Ref. 6) (Ref. 156) to mean the same as “significantly minimize or prevent” as described in section 418 of the FD&C Act or “prevent, eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level” as used in our seafood and juice HACCP regulations. All these terms mean to reduce a hazard to an extent that it is not reasonably likely to cause illness or injury.) A dry blending operation generally does not test incoming ingredients if the facility

treats the blended materials to ensure adequate reduction of pathogens but sometimes tests finished product to verify preventive controls have been effective. A dry blending operation also sometimes uses environmental monitoring to verify that sanitation controls to significantly minimize or prevent the potential for environmental pathogens to contaminate the blended materials have been effective.

For acidified canned vegetables in which a lethal process is delivered in the final package, microbial testing of incoming ingredients and of finished product provides little benefit as a verification activity (although it would be used in process validation); however, facilities producing such products sometimes conduct periodic testing of incoming ingredients for pesticides as an appropriate supplier verification activity.

#### B. Scientifically Valid Sampling and Testing

Consistent with our previous discussion of the term “scientifically valid” in the proposed rule to establish CGMP requirements for dietary ingredients and dietary supplements (68 FR 12158 at 12198), we use the term “scientifically valid” with respect to testing to mean using an approach to both sampling and testing that is based on scientific information, data, or results published in, for example, scientific journals, references, text books, or proprietary research. A scientifically valid analytical method is one that is based on scientific data or results published in, for example, scientific journals, references, text books, or proprietary research (68 FR 12158 at 12198). Sampling and testing used for verification in a food safety system must be scientifically valid if they are to provide assurance that preventive controls are effective.

#### C. Verification Testing of Raw Materials and Ingredients

Raw materials and ingredients are often tested as part of a supplier approval and verification program, as one of the verification activities when a preventive control that is



adequate to significantly minimize or prevent the hazard is not applied at the receiving facility.

The utility and frequency of raw material and ingredient testing for verification of supplier controls depend on many factors, including:

- The hazard and its association with the raw material or ingredient;
- The likelihood that the consumer would become ill if the hazard were present in the raw material or ingredient;
- How that raw material or ingredient will be used by the receiving facility (e.g., the effect of processing on the hazard); and
- The potential for contamination of the facility's environment with the hazard in the raw material or ingredient.

Testing a raw material or ingredient occurs more frequently when there is a history of the hazard in the raw material or ingredient, e.g., from a specific supplier or from the country of origin. Once a facility has developed a relationship with a supplier and there is a history of tests negative for the hazard, the frequency is often reduced.

Testing a raw material or ingredient is more useful, and a facility generally tests a raw material or ingredient more frequently, when the raw material or ingredient contains a hazard for which there is a reasonable probability that exposure to the hazard will result in serious adverse health consequences or death to humans or animals. However, when a hazard that the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur in a raw material or ingredient is one for which the receiving facility has preventive controls that significantly minimize or prevent the hazard, testing generally is less frequent. An exception to this general paradigm is when the process control depends on the amount of the hazard present in the raw material or ingredient (e.g., when the process control is effective at eliminating 100 microorganisms per gram of

ingredient, but not 1000 microorganisms per gram of ingredient) and there is a need to verify that the hazard is not present in amounts that would render the process control ineffective. A receiving facility often finds that testing of raw materials or ingredients is most useful, and generally tests more frequently, when the receiving facility does not have a process that would significantly minimize the hazard and is relying on preventive controls earlier in the supply chain to significantly minimize or prevent the hazard in the raw material or ingredient, as in a bagged salad facility or a dry-mix operation producing, for example, spice blends or trail mix. In such situations, the testing is conducted to verify the preventive controls used to ensure that hazards in the raw material or ingredient have been significantly minimized or prevented.

The frequency of the testing conducted by a facility generally depends in part on the likelihood and severity of illness to the consumer if the hazard were present, the ability of supplier controls to significantly minimize or prevent the hazard in the raw material or ingredient, the practicality of testing to detect the hazard, and other factors. For example, a facility generally tests a raw material or ingredient more frequently from a supplier that does not have a kill step for Salmonella spp. in shelled nutmeats compared to a supplier that steam treats the nuts to kill Salmonella spp. As another example, if a facility tests a raw material or ingredient as part of its food safety program for salad greens, the facility is more likely to test more frequently for E. coli O157:H7 than for other Shiga-toxin producing E. coli (pathogenic E. coli that produce the same toxin as E. coli O157:H7 but are less likely to cause severe illness (Ref. 195)), based on both the severity of the illness to the consumer and practical problems with testing fresh produce for pathogenic strains of Shiga-toxin producing E. coli. Where a raw material or ingredient could introduce an environmental pathogen such as Salmonella spp. or L. monocytogenes to the facility (e.g., raw nuts or soy powder for Salmonella spp.; chopped celery

to be used in a salad for L. monocytogenes), a facility generally tests the raw material or ingredient more frequently to verify that supplier controls for the raw material or ingredient minimize to the extent possible the potential for a contaminated raw material or ingredient to introduce the environmental pathogen to the facility's environment.

As discussed in section I.F of this Appendix, there are limitations to testing food. Thus, as with other testing, raw material or ingredient testing is rarely the sole basis for making a determination on the safety of a raw material or ingredient.

#### D. Verification of Sanitation Controls to Significantly Minimize or Prevent the Potential for an Environmental Pathogen to Contaminate Food

##### 1. Environmental Pathogens in Food

As discussed in section II.D of the preamble of this document, food can become contaminated with pathogenic microorganisms at many different steps in the farm-to-table continuum. Any time a food is exposed to the environment during a manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding activity, there is the potential for the food to be contaminated with pathogenic microorganisms. As discussed in section X.B of the preamble of this document, proposed § 117.3 would define the term “environmental pathogen” to mean a microorganism that is of public health significance and is capable of surviving and persisting within the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding environment. The environmental pathogens most frequently involved in the contamination of foods leading to foodborne illness are Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes.

##### 2. Salmonella spp. as an Environmental Pathogen.

We discuss Salmonella spp. in section II.D.2.a of the preamble of this document. Salmonella has been isolated from a variety of foods and it can get into food by a variety of

mechanisms (see section II.D of the preamble of this document). Our focus here is on Salmonella contamination from the environment (discussed further in section I.D.2 of this Appendix), particularly as a hazard associated with low-moisture foods (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179) . Low-moisture foods include cereal, peanuts, nuts, nut butters (including peanut butter), spices, dried herbs, milk powder, chocolate and many other foods. Although Salmonella outbreaks from low-moisture foods are less common than from foods such as eggs and produce, several such outbreaks in the last decade have involved hundreds of illnesses (Ref. 145). The low-moisture foods causing outbreaks included cereal, raw almonds, dried snacks, spices, and peanut butter (Ref. 145) (Ref. 196). Chocolate also has been a source of outbreaks from Salmonella spp., although none in the U.S. in recent years (Ref. 145). Dried dairy products, such as milk and whey, also present a risk of contamination with Salmonella spp. from the environment (Ref. 197). A review of FDA recall data from 1970 to 2003 showed there were 21 recalls of spices and herbs contaminated with Salmonella spp. (Ref. 198). Almost half of the 86 primary RFR entries reported in the first RFR Annual Report due to finding Salmonella spp. were from low-moisture foods (Ref. 60).

### 3. Listeria monocytogenes as an environmental pathogen.

We discuss L. monocytogenes in section II.D.2.a of the preamble of this document. As discussed in that section, the FDA/FSIS Lm RA shows that the risk of illness from L. monocytogenes increases with the number of cells ingested and that there is greater risk of illness from RTE foods that support growth of L. monocytogenes than from those that do not (Ref. 56). A key finding of the risk assessment released by FAO in 2004 was that the models developed predict that nearly all cases of listeriosis result from the consumption of high numbers of the pathogen (Ref. 54). Refrigerated foods present a greater risk from L. monocytogenes because some refrigerated foods that support growth may be held for an extended period of time,

thus increasing the risk if L. monocytogenes is present in a food. Growth of L. monocytogenes does not occur if the food is frozen, but the organism may survive. If a frozen food contaminated with L. monocytogenes is thawed and held at temperatures that support growth, e.g., under refrigeration, the risk of illness from L. monocytogenes in that food increases. As discussed in section II.D.1 of the preamble of this document, contamination of RTE food with L. monocytogenes from the environment is common and, thus, targeted preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent L. monocytogenes contamination of RTE foods are warranted.

#### 4. Environmental pathogens in the plant environment.

Environmental pathogens may be introduced into a facility through raw materials or ingredients, people, or objects (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179) (Ref. 199) (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185). Once in the facility, environmental pathogens can be a source of contamination of food. Environmental pathogens may be transient strains or resident strains (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179) (Ref. 199). Transient strains are environmental pathogens that contaminate a site in the facility where they can be eliminated by normal cleaning and sanitizing (Ref. 199). Transient strains tend to vary over time within a facility, e.g., they will be found in different areas and the specific strain will differ. Resident strains are environmental pathogens that contaminate a site in the facility that is difficult to clean and sanitize with normal cleaning and sanitizing procedures and, thus, these strains become established in what is referred to as a “niche” or harborage site (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179) (Ref. 199) (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185) (Ref. 200). The finding of the same specific strain multiple times in a facility often indicates a resident strain.

If a harborage site contains nutrients (i.e., food) and water and is exposed to a temperature that falls within the growth range of the environmental pathogen, the pathogen can multiply, which increases the chance that it will be transferred to other sites (including food-

contact surfaces) and to food. Transfer can occur by people (e.g., if a person touches the contaminated site and then touches other objects, or tracks the pathogen from the contamination site to other sites on shoes), by equipment (e.g., if the pathogen is picked up by the wheels of a cart or forklift and is transferred to other locations), by water (e.g., water that contacts the harborage site is splashed onto other areas, including equipment, or aerosols containing the pathogen transfer it to other areas) or by air (dissemination of contaminated dust particles by air handling systems) (Ref. 145) (Ref. 179) (Ref. 200) (Ref. 144). Such transfer mechanisms from harborage sites can result in intermittent contamination of food-contact surfaces and food over long periods of time, often with the same strain of the pathogen (Ref. 145) (Ref. 199) (Ref. 200) (Ref. 201).

##### 5. Contamination of food with Salmonella spp. from the plant environment.

As discussed immediately below, the available data and information associate insanitary conditions in food facilities with contamination of a number of foods with the environmental pathogen Salmonella spp. Such contamination has led to recalls and to outbreaks of foodborne illness.

In 1998, a breakfast cereal product was implicated in an outbreak, due to Salmonella Agona, that caused 409 illnesses and one death in 23 states (Ref. 201) (Ref. 202) (Ref. 203). During the outbreak investigation, Salmonella was isolated from various locations in the plant, including the floor, processing equipment, and the exhaust system of the implicated processing line (Ref. 201). In 2008, the same Salmonella Agona strain was again implicated in an outbreak linked to a similar cereal product from the same manufacturing facility (Ref. 204). In the 2008 outbreak, the same strain was isolated from patients, cereal and the plant environment (Ref. 204).

In 2006-2007, a commercial brand peanut butter contaminated with Salmonella Tennessee caused 715 illnesses and 129 hospitalizations (Ref. 62). FDA isolated Salmonella Tennessee from 13 unopened jars of peanut butter with production dates ranging from August 2006 to January 2007 and from two plant environmental samples (Ref. 63).

During the years 2008 through 2010, there were three large recalls of foods containing ingredients contaminated with Salmonella spp. where FDA's investigation identified insanitary conditions at the facility that manufactured the ingredient and detected Salmonella spp. in the plant environment (Ref. 19) (Ref. 23) (Ref. 66) (Ref. 67) (Ref. 68) (Ref. 69) (Ref. 205) (Ref. 155) (Ref. 206). In 2008-2009, an outbreak was linked to Salmonella Typhimurium in peanut butter and peanut paste (Ref. 66) (Ref. 67) (Ref. 205). This outbreak resulted in an estimated 714 illnesses, 166 hospitalizations, and 9 deaths (Ref. 67). Implicated foods included contaminated peanut butter consumed at institutional settings and crackers made with the contaminated peanut butter as an ingredient (Ref. 66) (Ref. 67). Inspections conducted by FDA at the two implicated ingredient manufacturing facilities (which shared ingredients) revealed lack of controls to prevent product contamination from pests, from an insanitary air-circulation system, from insanitary food-contact surfaces, and from the processing environment (Ref. 19) (Ref. 68) (Ref. 69). Several strains of Salmonella spp. were found in multiple products and in the plant environment (Ref. 68). This outbreak led to the recall of more than 3900 products containing peanut-derived ingredients (Ref. 20).

In 2009, USDA detected Salmonella spp. in a powdered dairy shake and FDA began an investigation of the suppliers of ingredients used to manufacture the product. The inspection of the supplier of one of the ingredients uncovered insanitary conditions that resulted in the recall of multiple ingredients manufactured by that supplier, including instant nonfat dried milk and whey

proteins, produced over a 2-year period (Ref. 155). During its investigation of the supplier's facility, FDA identified several strains of Salmonella spp. on food-contact and non-food-contact surfaces and in other areas of the plant environment, as well as a number of sanitation deficiencies (Ref. 206).

In 2010, FDA received a report through the RFR of Salmonella contamination of hydrolyzed vegetable proteins that a company purchased as an ingredient. Both the company that submitted the report and FDA found multiple Salmonella-positive samples collected from the plant environment, including food-contact surfaces. FDA found numerous sanitation deficiencies during its inspection of the production facility. There were no reports of illness associated with the contamination, but multiple product recalls resulted (Ref. 23).

#### 6. Contamination of food with L. monocytogenes from the plant environment.

As discussed immediately below, the available data and information associate insanitary conditions in food facilities with contamination of a number of foods with the environmental pathogen L. monocytogenes. Such contamination has led to recalls and to outbreaks of foodborne illness.

Between October 2008 and March 2009, eight cases of listeriosis from five states were linked to Mexican-style cheese that was likely contaminated post-pasteurization (Ref. 72). The outbreak strain was isolated from product and from a vat gasket in a post-pasteurization section of the processing line.

In October 2010, the Texas Department of State Health Services ordered a fresh-cut produce facility to stop processing after laboratory tests of chopped celery indicated the presence of L. monocytogenes (Ref. 207). The testing was done as part of an investigation of 10 cases of listeriosis, six of which were linked to chopped celery from the facility. Texas Department of



State Health Services and FDA inspectors found sanitation deficiencies at the plant (Ref. 207) (Ref. 208) and suggested that the L. monocytogenes in the chopped celery may have contaminated other produce. FDA laboratory testing found L. monocytogenes in multiple locations in the plant environment, including on food-contact surfaces; the DNA fingerprint of the L. monocytogenes in the FDA samples matched the DNA fingerprint of the clinical cases reported by the Texas Department of State Health Services (Ref. 209).

In 2011, an outbreak of listeriosis from cantaloupes was attributed to insanitary conditions at a facility that washed, packed, cooled, and stored intact cantaloupes (Ref. 79) (Ref. 80). The outbreak appears to have occurred due to a combination of factors, including pooled water on the floor of the facility (which was also difficult to clean), poorly designed equipment (not easily cleaned and sanitized) that was previously used for a different commodity, no pre-cool step, a truck parked near the packing area that had visited a cattle operation, and possible low level contamination from the growing/harvesting operation (Ref. 79).

There have been several outbreaks in which meat or poultry products produced in FSIS-inspected establishments were contaminated with L. monocytogenes from the plant environment (Ref. 210), and much of our understanding of sources of L. monocytogenes in the plant environment, as well as appropriate ways to control this organism, has come from the efforts of FSIS and the meat and poultry industry to control this hazard in FSIS-inspected establishments (Ref. 185). For example, harborage sites such as hollow rollers, rubber seals, close-fitting metal-to-metal spaces in equipment such as slicers, and on-off switches of equipment were identified in meat and poultry establishments. The increased risk of contamination resulting from construction, and the importance of control of traffic and water in the RTE area also became

widely known as a result of investigations at meat and poultry establishments (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185).

Outbreaks of listeriosis resulting from environmental contamination have also occurred in other countries. For example, an outbreak of listeriosis in Finland in 1999 was associated with butter (Ref. 211). The outbreak strain was isolated from the manufacturing facility, including from the packaging machine and the floor (Ref. 211). An outbreak of listeriosis in 2009 in Austria and Germany was associated with acid curd cheese; the outbreak strain was found in the production facility (Ref. 212).

Many foods without a known association with illnesses have been recalled due to the presence of L. monocytogenes (Ref. 188) (Ref. 189) (Ref. 190) (Ref. 213). There is also an extensive body of literature on isolation of L. monocytogenes in the food processing environment. Information on the environment as a source of Listeria has been available for many years. For example, in a 1989 study involving 6 different types of food plants (frozen food, fluid dairy, cheese, ice cream, potato processing, and dry food), drains, floors, standing water, food residues, and food-contact surfaces were found to be positive (Ref. 214). No finished foods were tested, but the authors concluded that food production environments could be the source of contamination for foods that have received listericidal treatments and that measures should be taken to prevent survival and growth of these organisms in food environments (Ref. 214).

Listeria testing in 62 dairy facilities during 1987-1988 (including facilities producing fluid milk, frozen product, butter, processed cheese, natural cheese and dry products) found Listeria in a variety of locations, including packaging equipment, conveyors, coolers, drains and floors (Ref. 215). Listeria was detected more frequently in wet locations, including drains, conveyors and floors (Ref. 215). Pritchard and co-workers also examined 21 dairy processing

environments for Listeria and found 80 of 378 sites positive for Listeria spp. (Ref. 216). Sites positive for L. monocytogenes included holding tanks, table tops, conveyor/chain systems, a milk filler and a brine pre-filter machine (Ref. 216).

The packaging machine was found to be the main problem with L. monocytogenes that persisted in an ice cream plant in Finland for several years and occasionally contaminated finished product (Ref. 217). A volumetric doser was found to be the source of L. monocytogenes in sauces produced in a fresh sauce production plant in Italy (Ref. 218), and slicers and conveyor belts were found to contribute to contamination of sandwiches in a Swiss sandwich producing plant (Ref. 219). L. monocytogenes also has been found on tables, water hoses, air guns, floors, gloves, drains and a bread-feeding machine (Ref. 219).

Some of the available data and information about the potential presence of the environmental pathogen L. monocytogenes comes from studies conducted to detect the presence of Listeria spp. in lieu of L. monocytogenes. Listeria spp. are “indicators” of the potential presence of L. monocytogenes. (See section I.E of this Appendix for a discussion of indicator organisms). A study conducted over a 4-year time period on the prevalence of L. monocytogenes on produce and in the plant environment in a large produce processing plant in Poland demonstrated that the indicator organism Listeria spp., and the environmental pathogen L. monocytogenes, could be isolated from conveyor belts after blanching and from freezing tunnels (Ref. 220). Studies in a vegetable processing plant in Spain found the indicator organism L. innocua (commonly found when the species of Listeria spp. are determined) in frozen RTE vegetables and in the plant environment, e.g., washing tunnels, conveyor belts and floors (Ref. 221). L. innocua was more prevalent than L. monocytogenes in the frozen RTE vegetables and in the plant environment. In both of these examples, the presence of an “indicator organism”

(either Listeria spp. or L. innocua) demonstrated that insanitary conditions existed that were conducive to the presence and harborage of L. monocytogenes.

E. Role of Environmental Monitoring in Verifying the Implementation and Effectiveness of Sanitation Controls in Significantly Minimizing or Preventing the Potential for an Environmental Pathogen to Contaminate Food

1. Purpose of Environmental Monitoring

Appropriate sanitation controls can minimize the presence of environmental pathogens in the plant and the transfer of environmental pathogens to food-contact surfaces and to food (Ref. 199). The purpose of monitoring for environmental pathogens in facilities where food is manufactured, processed, packed or held is to verify the implementation and effectiveness of sanitation controls intended to significantly minimize or prevent the potential for an environmental pathogen to contaminate food. In so doing, environmental monitoring can find sources of environmental pathogens that remain in the facility after routine cleaning and sanitizing (particularly strains that may have become established in the facility as resident strains) so that the environmental pathogens can be eliminated by appropriate corrective actions (e.g., intensified cleaning and sanitizing, sometimes involving equipment disassembly). Pritchard et al. noted that daily cleaning and sanitizing appeared to be effective in eliminating transient contaminants from equipment and concluded that greater emphasis needs to be placed on cleaning and sanitizing the plant environment (Ref. 216). A robust environmental monitoring program for environmental pathogens can detect these strains and enables the facility to eliminate them from the environment which can prevent contamination of food with these pathogens and, thus, prevent foodborne illnesses (Ref. 52) (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185) (Ref. 186) (Ref. 184). In the situations described in sections I.D.5 and I.D.6 of this Appendix, such a program for

the environmental pathogens Salmonella spp. and L. monocytogenes might have allowed the facility to detect a problem before product contamination occurred, thereby preventing an outbreak, recall, or both, or minimizing the amount of product affected by a recall. Studies of environmental pathogens have clearly demonstrated that environmental monitoring can identify the presence of situations that can lead to contamination of food and allow actions to be taken to prevent such contamination (Ref. 216) (Ref. 187).

## 2. Indicator Organisms.

The term “indicator organism” can have different meanings, depending on the purpose of using an indicator organism. As discussed in the scientific literature, the term “indicator organism” means a microorganism or group of microorganisms that is indicative that (1) a food has been exposed to conditions that pose an increased risk for contamination of the food with a pathogen or (2) a food has been exposed to conditions under which a pathogen can increase in numbers (Ref. 222). This definition in the scientific literature is consistent with a definition of indicator organism established by NACMCF as one that indicates a state or condition and an index organism as one for which the concentration or frequency correlates with the concentration or frequency of another microorganism of concern (Ref. 223). FDA considers the NACMCF definition of an indicator organism to be an appropriate working definition for the purpose of this document.

The use of “indicator organisms” as a verification of hygiene measures in facilities is common practice (Ref. 224). For example, it is common practice to use the presence of generic (nonpathogenic) E. coli in a food processing plant as an indication of whether food was prepared, packed, or held under insanitary conditions, without considering whether the insanitary conditions reflect a specific pathogen, such as E. coli O157:H7 or Salmonella spp. However,

such use of an indicator organism is distinct from the use of indicator organisms as discussed in the remainder of this document – i.e., for the specific purpose of monitoring for the presence of environmental pathogens.

Environmental monitoring for environmental pathogens can be conducted by testing for the specific pathogenic microorganism (e.g., Salmonella spp.) or by testing for an “indicator organism.” The presence of an indicator organism indicates conditions in which the environmental pathogen may be present. An organism is useful as an indicator organism if there is sufficient association of conditions that could result in the presence of the indicator organism and conditions that could result in the pathogen such that there can be confidence that the pathogen would not be present if the indicator is not present. Attributes that provide scientific support for use of an indicator organism in lieu of a specific pathogen include:

- Similar survival and growth characteristics;
- A shared common source for both organisms; and
- A direct relationship between the state or condition that contributes to the

presence of pathogen and the indicator organism (Ref. 223).

The presence of an indicator organism in the plant environment, including on a food-contact surface, does not necessarily mean that an environmental pathogen is in the plant or in a food produced using that food-contact surface – the indicator may be present but the pathogen may be absent. Pritchard et al., in their study on the presence of Listeria in dairy plant environments, concluded that, because the level of contamination was higher in environmental samples than in equipment samples, environmental contamination with Listeria does not necessarily translate into contamination of equipment in the plant (Ref. 216).

Typically, a facility that finds an indicator organism during environmental monitoring conducts microbial testing of surrounding surfaces and areas to determine the potential source of the contamination, cleans and sanitizes the contaminated surfaces and areas, and conducts additional microbial testing to determine whether the contamination has been eliminated. If the indicator organism is found on retest, the facility generally takes more aggressive corrective actions (e.g., more intensified cleaning and sanitizing, including dismantling equipment, scrubbing surfaces, and heat-treating equipment parts) (Ref. 144). In general, whether a facility takes subsequent steps to determine an indicator organism detected on a food-contact surface is actually the environmental pathogen depends, in part, on the risk of foodborne illness if the food being produced on a food-contact surface that has tested positive for an indicator organism were to be contaminated. For example, the risk of listeriosis is greater if the food supports growth of L. monocytogenes. In some cases, a facility simply assumes that a food produced using a food-contact surface that is contaminated with an indicator organism is contaminated with the environmental pathogen and takes corrective action to either reprocess it or divert it to a use that would not present a food safety concern.

### 3. Environmental Monitoring for L. monocytogenes and the Use of an Indicator Organism.

Tests for the indicator organism Listeria spp. detect multiple species of Listeria, including the pathogen L. monocytogenes. There is Federal precedent for the use of Listeria spp. as an appropriate indicator organism for L. monocytogenes. FSIS has established regulations requiring FSIS-regulated establishments that produce RTE meat or poultry products exposed to the processing environment after a lethality procedure (e.g., cooking) to prevent product adulteration by L. monocytogenes.

FSIS has issued guidelines (FSIS Compliance Guideline for Controlling Listeria monocytogenes in Post-lethality Exposed Ready-to-Eat Meat and Poultry Products) (hereinafter the FSIS Listeria Compliance Guideline) to help FSIS-regulated establishments that produce RTE meat or poultry products exposed to the processing environment after a lethality procedure comply with the requirements of 9 CFR part 430 (Ref. 225). Under the FSIS Listeria Compliance Guideline, FSIS-regulated establishments may establish an environmental monitoring program for Listeria spp. rather than for the pathogen, L. monocytogenes.

In general, under the FSIS Listeria Compliance Guideline, an FSIS-regulated establishment that receives a positive test result for an indicator organism on a food-contact surface:

- Takes corrective action (i.e., intensify the cleaning and sanitizing of the affected food-contact surface);
- Retests the affected food-contact surface; and
- Takes additional corrective action (intensified each time the test is positive for the indicator organism) and conducts additional testing until the affected food-contact surface is negative for the indicator organism.

Some segments of the food industry subject to regulation by FDA have adopted the principles, described in the FSIS Listeria Compliance Guideline, for corrective actions after a finding of Listeria spp. on food-contact surfaces in the plant. For example, in response to a request for comments on a draft guidance document directed to control of L. monocytogenes in refrigerated or frozen ready-to-eat foods, we received letters describing programs similar to the program in the FSIS Listeria Compliance Guideline, using Listeria spp. as an indicator organism during environmental monitoring for L. monocytogenes (Ref. 226) (Ref. 227) (Ref. 228) (Ref.



229). In addition, as discussed in section II.A.1 of the preamble of this document, a key finding of the CGMP Working Group Report was the importance of updating CGMP requirements to require a written environmental pathogen control program for food processors that produce RTE foods that support the growth of L. monocytogenes. Written comments from the food industry supported such a control program (Ref. 230). Thus, the importance of controlling L. monocytogenes in the environment of RTE food production facilities and using environmental monitoring to detect the presence of L. monocytogenes or Listeria spp. (as an indicator organism for L. monocytogenes) has been well-established.

FDA's current thinking is that Listeria spp. is an appropriate indicator organism for L. monocytogenes, because tests for Listeria spp. will detect multiple species of Listeria, including L. monocytogenes, and because the available information supports a conclusion that modern sanitation programs, which incorporate environmental monitoring for Listeria spp., have public health benefits.

#### 4. Environmental Monitoring for Salmonella spp. and the Use of an Indicator Organism.

Salmonella spp. is a member of the family Enterobacteriaceae, and thus there is some relationship between the presence of Salmonella spp. and the presence of Enterobacteriaceae. There are few studies that have investigated the use of organisms such as Enterobacteriaceae or other members of the family Enterobacteriaceae, such as E. coli, to serve as an indicator organism for Salmonella spp. in the environment. The European Food Safety Agency (EFSA) evaluated whether environmental monitoring for Enterobacteriaceae as an indicator organism for Salmonella spp. (or for Cronobacter spp.) could be useful. Although EFSA's focus was on the utility of Enterobacteriaceae as an indicator organism in the production of a single product – i.e., powdered infant formula – their analysis may be relevant to the utility of Enterobacteriaceae as

an indicator organism in other dried foods. EFSA concluded that, although there are insufficient data to establish a correlation between the presence of Enterobacteriaceae and Salmonella spp. in powdered infant formula because Salmonella spp. is so rarely present, monitoring for Enterobacteriaceae in the product environment can be used to confirm the application of GMPs (Ref. 231). ICMSF also considered the utility of environmental monitoring for Enterobacteriaceae as an indicator organism for Salmonella spp. ICMSF indicates that, for powdered infant formula manufacturing, low levels of Enterobacteriaceae do not guarantee the absence of Salmonella spp. (Ref. 232) and recommends testing directly for the pathogen, as well as for Enterobacteriaceae. FDA agrees with EFSA and ICMSF that there are insufficient data to establish a correlation between the presence of Enterobacteriaceae and Salmonella spp. during the production of powdered infant formula; FDA is not aware of any information supporting the use of an indicator organism for the purpose of environmental monitoring for Salmonella spp. during the production of other foods, particularly dried foods.

ICMSF recommends testing for Salmonella spp. in the environment for a number of other products, e.g., baked dough products (Ref. 233), dry spices receiving a kill step (Ref. 234), dried cereal products (Ref. 235), nuts (Ref. 236), cocoa powder, chocolate and confectionary (Ref. 237), and dried dairy products (Ref. 238). For most of these products ICMSF also recommends testing the environment for Enterobacteriaceae as a hygiene indicator, but not in lieu of the environmental pathogen Salmonella spp. Likewise, food industry guidance for low-moisture foods recommends testing for Salmonella spp. in the environment (Ref. 184). FDA's current thinking is that there is no currently available indicator organism for Salmonella spp. We request data, information, and other comment bearing on whether there is a currently available indicator organism for Salmonella spp. that could be used for environmental monitoring.

## 5. Environmental Monitoring Procedures.

The procedures associated with an environmental monitoring program generally include the collection of environmental samples at locations within the facility and testing the samples for the presence of an environmental pathogen or indicator organism. One approach to defining sampling locations is to divide the facility into zones based on the risk with respect to contamination of product. A common industry practice is to use four zones (Ref. 199) (Ref. 184):

- Zone 1 consists of food-contact surfaces;
- Zone 2 consists of non-food-contact surfaces in close proximity to food and food-contact surfaces;
- Zone 3 consists of more remote non-food-contact surfaces that are in the process area and could lead to contamination of zones 1 and 2; and
- Zone 4 consists of non-food-contact surfaces, outside of the processing area, from which environmental pathogens can be introduced into the processing environment.

Generally the number of samples and frequency of testing is higher in zones 1 and 2 because of the greater risk of food contamination if the environmental pathogen is detected in these zones. Information on appropriate locations for sampling within these zones can be found in the literature (Ref. 197) (Ref. 144) (Ref. 215) (Ref. 216) (Ref. 184). Facilities should become familiar with locations in which environmental pathogens have been found in other facilities and use this information in selecting sites to sample.

Examples of appropriate food-contact surfaces that could be monitored include hoppers, bins, conveyors, tables, slicers, blenders, knives and scrapers. Testing food-contact surfaces for Listeria spp. is a commonly recommended verification measure for facilities producing

refrigerated RTE foods (Ref. 52) (Ref. 199) (Ref. 144). Although some literature suggests that routine environmental monitoring for Salmonella spp. in low-moisture food environments would not normally target food-contact surfaces (Ref. 184), the data (discussed in the preamble of this document) available from investigations of food facilities following outbreaks, recalls, or reports to the RFR warrant including food-contact surfaces in a routine environmental testing program for Salmonella spp. However, a routine environmental monitoring program for Salmonella spp. may not contain the same level of food-contact surface testing (including the frequency of testing and number of samples collected) as a routine environmental monitoring program for Listeria, because the same benefits may not be achieved. For example:

- L. monocytogenes is usually the environmental pathogen of concern for most wet RTE food production environments. It is important to sample areas where the organisms are likely to be present in relatively high numbers. L. monocytogenes frequently establishes itself in a harborage site on equipment and grows (increases in number) there, where both food and moisture are available. L. monocytogenes organisms work their way out of the harborage site during production and contaminate food.

- Salmonella spp. is usually the environmental pathogen of concern for most dry (e.g., low-moisture) RTE food environments. Equipment used in the production of dry products is rarely wet and, thus, there is no moisture to allow growth of Salmonella spp. As a result, Salmonella harborage sites are less likely to be found on equipment and are more likely to be found in the environment in locations where food particles lodge and escape a dry cleaning process. When these locations get wet, the Salmonella spp. grows and contaminates other areas of the facility, eventually contaminating food-contact surfaces and food. Nevertheless, sampling

food-contact surfaces (e.g., filler hoppers, conveyors, valves, sifter cuffs) can be useful, as can sampling residues such as sifter tailings and product scrapings.

Examples of appropriate non-food-contact surfaces that could be monitored include exteriors of equipment, equipment supports, control panels, door handles, floors, drains, refrigeration units, ducts, overhead structures, cleaning tools, motor housings and vacuum canisters. Standing water in production areas and areas that have become wet and then have dried are also appropriate places to monitor. Testing non-food-contact surfaces for L. monocytogenes or Listeria spp. is a commonly recommended verification measure for facilities producing refrigerated or frozen RTE foods (Ref. 52) (Ref. 199) (Ref. 144) and can detect L. monocytogenes that is brought into the plant by people or objects. Corrective actions can prevent transferring the organisms to a food-contact surface (where they can contaminate food) or from establishing a harborage that can serve as a source of contamination. Recommendations for routine environmental monitoring for Salmonella spp. in low moisture food environments generally target non-food-contact surfaces because equipment used in the production of low-moisture foods where Salmonella spp. is the environmental pathogen of concern does not have the moisture to allow Salmonella spp. to grow and, thus, sampling non-food-contact surfaces for Salmonella spp. may be more effective in finding the organism than sampling food-contact surfaces. Scrapings or residues that accumulate under or above equipment are more useful samples than sponges or swabs of food-contact surfaces (Ref. 237).

As discussed in section I.E.2 of this Appendix with respect to indicator organisms, a facility that finds an indicator organism or an environmental pathogen during environmental monitoring typically conducts microbial testing of surrounding surfaces and areas to determine the potential source of the contamination, cleans and sanitizes the contaminated surfaces and

areas, and conducts additional microbial testing to determine whether the contamination has been eliminated. If the organism is found on retest, the facility generally takes more aggressive corrective actions (e.g., more intensified cleaning and sanitizing, including dismantling equipment, scrubbing surfaces, and heat-treating equipment parts) (Ref. 144).

The adequacy of a corrective action in response to environmental monitoring depends in part on the following factors related to the risk presented in a particular situation:

- Whether the environmental contamination is on a food-contact surface or a non-food-contact surface;
- The proximity of a contaminated non- food-contact surface to one or more food-contact surfaces;
- Whether there have been previous positives on the specific food-contact surface or non- food-contact surface or in the same area; and
- The environmental monitoring strategy for the type of food, and whether the food supports growth of the environmental pathogen (see the discussion of the relevance of whether a food supports the growth of an environmental pathogen in section I.D.4 of this Appendix).

If an environmental pathogen or an appropriate indicator organism (the test organism) is detected in the environment, corrective actions are taken to eliminate the organism, including finding a harborage site if one exists (Ref. 144) (Ref. 185) (Ref. 184). Otherwise, the presence of the environmental pathogen could result in contamination of food-contact surfaces or food. The presence of the indicator organism suggests that conditions exist in which the environmental pathogen may be present and could result in contamination of food-contact surfaces or food. Corrective actions are taken for every finding of an environmental pathogen or indicator organism in the environment to prevent contamination of food-contact surfaces or food.

Sampling and microbial testing from surfaces surrounding the area where the test organism was found are necessary to determine whether the test organism is more widely distributed than on the original surface where it was found and to help find the source of contamination if other sites are involved. Cleaning and sanitizing the contaminated surfaces and surrounding areas are necessary to eliminate the test organism that was found there. Additional sampling and microbial testing are necessary to determine the efficacy of cleaning and sanitizing. For example, detection of the test organism after cleaning and sanitizing indicates that the initial cleaning was not effective, and additional, more intensified cleaning and sanitizing, or other actions may be needed, including dismantling equipment, scrubbing surfaces, and heat-treating equipment parts (Ref. 144). Examples of additional corrective actions that could be taken include reinforcing employee hygiene practices and traffic patterns; repairing damaged floors; eliminating damp insulation, water leaks, and sources of standing water; replacing equipment parts that can become harborage sites (e.g., hollow conveyor rollers and equipment framework), and repairing roof leaks (Ref. 144) (Ref. 184). The types of corrective actions would depend on the type of food, the facility and the environmental pathogen.

The finding of a test organism on a food-contact surface usually represents transient contamination rather than a harborage site (Ref. 185). However, finding the test organism on multiple surfaces in the same area, or continuing to find the test organism after cleaning and sanitizing the surfaces where it was found, suggests a harborage site for the test organism. Mapping the location of contamination sites, whether the harborage site is on equipment or in the environment, can help locate the source of the harborage site or identify additional locations to sample (Ref. 184).

The types of facilities that may conduct environmental monitoring and that could implement corrective actions on finding the test organism in the facility are quite diverse, and include facilities producing low-moisture products such as cereals, chocolate and dried milk powders and facilities producing a variety of RTE refrigerated products such as deli salads, cheeses and bagged salads. The number of sites appropriate for testing and the applicable cleaning and sanitizing procedures would depend on the facility and the equipment.

Corrective actions may involve investigative procedures when the initial corrective actions have not been successful in eliminating the environmental pathogen or indicator organism. One example of an investigative procedure is taking samples from food-contact surfaces and/or product from the processing line at multiple times during the day while the equipment is operating and producing product (Ref. 144). Another example of an investigative procedure is conducting molecular strain typing such as pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE), ribotyping, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis to determine if particular strains are persistent in the environment (Ref. 200) (Ref. 239) (Ref. 219) (Ref. 217) (Ref. 218) (Ref. 240). Molecular strain typing can indicate that strains isolated at different points in time have the same molecular “fingerprint,” suggesting a common source, and perhaps a harborage site, that has not been detected based on the results of routine environmental monitoring (Ref. 217) (Ref. 218). Molecular strain typing can also be used when trying to determine if a specific ingredient is the source of contamination (Ref. 239).

If environmental monitoring identifies the presence of an environmental pathogen or appropriate indicator organism, the facility may conduct finished product testing. As discussed in section I.F of this Appendix, there are shortcomings for microbiological testing of food for process control purposes. Testing cannot ensure the absence of a hazard, particularly when the



hazard is present at very low levels and is not uniformly distributed. If an environmental pathogen is detected on a food-contact surface, finished product testing would be appropriate only to confirm actual contamination or assess the extent of contamination, because negative findings from product testing could not adequately assure that the environmental pathogen is not present in food exposed to the food-contact surface. If a facility detects an environmental pathogen on a food-contact surface, the facility should presume that the environmental pathogen is in the food.

Finished product testing could be appropriate if an environmental pathogen is detected on a non-food-contact surface, such as on the exterior of equipment, on a floor or in a drain. The potential for food to be contaminated directly from contamination in or on a non-food-contact surface is generally low, but transfer from non-food-contact surfaces to food-contact surfaces can occur. Finished product testing can provide useful information on the overall risk of a food when pathogens have been detected in the environment. In general, finished product testing is most appropriate when an indicator organism, rather than an environmental pathogen, is detected on a food-contact surface.

The results of finished product testing can be used in combination with the results of environmental monitoring and corrective actions to help ensure that the food released into commerce is not adulterated. For example, if a facility with an aggressive environmental monitoring program detects an indicator organism on a food-contact surface, it may use information such as the following in determining whether to release product into commerce:

- The number and location of positive sample findings, including from the original sampling and from additional/follow-up testing of areas surrounding the site of the original finding;

- The root cause analysis of the source of the contamination;
- Information on the efficacy of the facility's corrective actions (including the results of additional follow-up sampling);
- Information obtained from any finished product testing, taking into consideration the statistical confidence associated with the results.

#### F. The Role of Finished Product Testing in Verifying the Implementation and Effectiveness of Preventive Controls

Although FDA is not including a provision for finished product testing in this proposed rule, here we set out some considerations regarding the appropriate use of such testing. The utility of finished product testing for verification depends on many factors that industry currently considers in determining whether finished product testing is an appropriate approach to reducing the risk that contaminated food would reach the consumer and cause foodborne illness. The first such consideration is the nature of the hazard and whether there is evidence of adverse health consequences from that hazard in the food being produced or in a similar food. If the hazard were to be present in the food, how likely is it that illness will occur and how serious would the consequences be? The more likely and severe the illness, the greater the frequency of conducting verification testing. For example, Salmonella spp. is a hazard that if consumed could cause serious illness, particularly in children and the elderly. In contrast, in situations where unlawful pesticide residues are considered reasonably likely to occur, the presence of a pesticide residue that is not approved for a specific commodity but that is within the tolerance approved for other commodities, while deemed unsafe as a matter of law, may not actually result in illness. Thus, a firm is more likely to conduct finished product testing to verify Salmonella spp. control than to verify control of pesticides.

Another consideration in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is the intended consumer of the food. The greater the sensitivity of the intended consumer (as would be the case, for example, for a medical food provided to hospitalized adults), the greater the likelihood that finished product testing would be used as a verification activity.

Another consideration in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is the impact of the food on the contaminant. For example, depending on the food, pathogens may survive in food, increase in number, or die off. Finished product testing generally is not conducted if pathogens that may be in a food would die off in a relatively short period of time (e.g., before the food reaches the consumer). For example, many salad dressings have antimicrobial properties, including low pH, high acidity, and preservatives, that are lethal for pathogens such as Salmonella spp. or E. coli O157:H7. If a facility has validated the lethality of the formulation of the salad dressing, the facility is unlikely to conduct finished product testing for pathogens such as Salmonella spp. or E. coli O157:H7, as this would not be an effective use of resources, particularly if proper formulation of the food is verified during production. In contrast, verification testing is more likely in food where pathogens can survive in a food, particularly where pathogens may grow in a food.

Another consideration in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is the intended use of the food. For example, consumers cook many foods, e.g., dried pasta, cake mixes, and most frozen vegetables, thereby reducing pathogens. A facility should not rely on the consumer to eliminate hazards that can be prevented. However, there is little benefit in testing a food that is normally consumed following a step that can be relied on to inactivate the hazard. It is important to validate that the instructions provided to the consumer adequately reduce the pathogen of concern. It is also important to understand the customary use of the food, which

may include uses that do not include the hazard reduction step. For example, dried soup mixes may be mixed with sour cream to make a dip, without the pathogen inactivation step that occurs when boiling the soup mix with water. If Salmonella spp. may be present in an ingredient for the soup mix, e.g., dried parsley or black pepper, and neither the supplier nor the facility treats the ingredient or the soup mix in a way that significantly reduces Salmonella spp., then finished product testing for Salmonella spp. would be warranted. Likewise, frozen peas and corn may be added to fresh salads, deli-type salads, or salsas without a pathogen inactivation step; finished product testing for L. monocytogenes could be warranted for these foods where this is a likely use.

Another consideration in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is the type of controls the supplier has implemented to minimize the potential for the hazard to be present, e.g., whether the supplier uses a kill step for a pathogen or has other programs in place that will adequately reduce the hazard. A facility generally is more likely to conduct finished product testing when the supplier does not have a program that can ensure the hazard has been adequately reduced in the ingredient supplied. Another consideration is the verification procedures that are in place at the supplier and at the receiving facility. If the supplier has a well-executed control program, including a supplier approval and verification program that has been verified through audits to adequately reduce the hazard, the receiving facility performs periodic verification testing of the ingredient provided by the supplier, and the supplier has a good compliance history, the frequency of finished product verification testing by the receiving facility is low, particularly if the receiving facility has a process that further reduces the hazard. However, if the ingredient is associated with a hazard and the processes used by the supplier and

the receiving facility will not significantly minimize it, or if a facility is using a new supplier, the frequency of finished product verification testing increases.

One of the most important considerations in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is the effect of processing on the hazard. The frequency of finished product testing generally is low when a manufacturing process significantly minimize the hazard (e.g., a 5-log reduction of a pathogen) and procedures are in place to prevent recontamination after that process; the frequency of finished product testing increases when a manufacturing process does not significantly minimize the hazard (e.g., 1- or 2-log reduction of a pathogen). For example, testing is not common for bagged spinach that is irradiated to provide a 5-log reduction of Salmonella spp. and E. coli O157:H7; finished product verification testing would be more common if the only pathogen reduction step is washing the spinach leaves in chlorinated water. Likewise, FDA noted in the preamble to the juice HACCP regulation that it was not requiring end product verification testing for juice treated to achieve a 5-log reduction in a target pathogen because the post-treatment level of microorganisms would be too low to be detected using reasonable sampling and analytical methods (68 FR 6138 at 6174).

Another important consideration in determining whether finished product testing is appropriate is whether a hazard can be reintroduced into a food that has been treated to significantly minimize the hazard, either through exposure to the environment or by the addition of an ingredient after a treatment to significantly minimize a hazard. For example, verification testing is not common if a lethal treatment for a pathogen is given to food in its final package (such as a marinara sauce heated in the jar or hot-filled into the jar) but would be more common if food exposed to the environment, such as a cold gazpacho filled into a container. Likewise, verification testing generally is more frequent for foods given significant handling before

packaging, regardless of whether they have previously received a treatment that would significantly minimize a hazard, if they will be consumed without a treatment lethal for pathogens that can be introduced during handling (e.g., L. monocytogenes or Salmonella spp. from the environment; pathogens such as Staphylococcus aureus or Salmonella spp. from food handlers). Verification testing also would be more frequent if an ingredient that has potential to be contaminated with a pathogen is added to a food that was previously treated to significantly minimize a hazard (e.g., adding seasonings to chips or crackers after frying or baking) than if all ingredients are added before the treatment.

In assessing whether to conduct verification testing and determine the frequency of that testing, a facility generally considers the impact of all the preventive control measures applied in producing the food, because multiple control measures provide greater assurance that a hazard is being controlled. For example, the frequency of finished product verification testing generally could be lower for a food that is subject to supplier controls that include audits and certificates of analysis (COAs); that contains ingredients that have been subjected to ingredient testing; that is produced under well-implemented sanitation controls that are verified through a robust environmental monitoring program; and that is treated using a validated process that significantly minimizes the hazard than for a food that is not subject to all these controls. Finished product testing generally is more frequent during initial production cycles until there is an accumulation of historical data (e.g., finished product test results that are negative for the hazard) to confirm the adequacy of preventive controls. Once this history has been established, the frequency of testing generally is reduced to that needed to provide ongoing assurance that the preventive controls continue to be effective and to signal a possible loss of control, as discussed further immediately below.

There are well-known shortcomings of product testing, especially microbiological testing, for process control purposes, and it is generally recognized that testing cannot ensure the absence of a hazard, particularly when the hazard is present at very low levels and is not uniformly distributed (Ref. 222) (Ref. 241)). Moreover, the number of samples used for routine testing often is statistically inadequate to provide confidence in the safety of an individual lot in the absence of additional information about adherence to validated control measures. This is illustrated below for Salmonella spp.

FDA's Investigations Operations Manual (IOM) (Ref. 242) and Bacteriological Analytical Manual, BAM, (Ref. 243) provide sampling plans to determine the presence of Salmonella in processed foods intended for human consumption. The stringency of the sampling plan is based on the category of the food. Category III foods are those that would normally be subject to a process lethal to Salmonella spp. between the time of sampling and consumption (e.g., macaroni and noodle products, frozen and dried vegetables, frozen dinners, food chemicals). Category II foods are those that would not normally be subject to a process lethal to Salmonella spp. between the time of sampling and consumption (e.g., fluid milk products, cheeses, nut products, spices, chocolate, prepared salads, ready-to-eat sandwiches). Category I foods are Category II foods intended for consumption by the aged, the infirm, and infants (e.g., foods produced for a hospital). FDA takes 15 samples for Category III foods, 30 for Category II foods, and 60 for Category I foods and tests a 25 g subsample (analytical unit) from each sample. To reduce the analytical workload, the analytical units may be composited (Ref. 244), with the maximum size of a composite unit being 375 g (15 analytical units). This composite is tested in its entirety for Salmonella spp. The probability of detecting Salmonella spp. for various

contamination rates under the three IOM Salmonella sampling plans is shown in Table 1.

(Probability of Detecting Salmonella.)

Table 1. Probability of Detecting Salmonella spp. in Lots at Various Contamination Rates under the Three Different IOM Salmonella Sampling Plans (left) and the Expected Number of Positive Composite Samples Using Weekly Testing for 1 Year under the IOM Salmonella Sampling Plans (right).

Contamination Rate	CFU/g or CFU/kg	Probability of Detecting <u>Salmonella</u> spp. in a Lot (Percent)			Expected # of Positive Composites per year (weekly testing)		
		N=15*	n=30*	n=60*	n=15*	n=30*	n=60*
1 in 10	1/250g	79	96	>99	40	81	162
1 in 30	1/750g	40	64	87	20	41	82
1 in 100	1/2.5kg	14	26	45	7	15	29
1 in 300	1/7.5kg	4.9	10	18	2.5	5	10
1 in 1000	1/25kg	1.5	3	5.8	0.8	1.5	3
1 in 3000	1/75kg	0.5	1	2	0.3	0.5	1

\* In the table, “n” is the number of subsamples (which are composited in groups of 15 for analysis).

The probability of detecting Salmonella spp. increases as the defect rate increases. For example, when 15 samples are tested, the probability of detecting Salmonella spp. is 14 percent when the contamination rate is 1 in 100, but 79 percent when the contamination rate is 1 in 10. For a given contamination rate, the probability of detecting Salmonella spp. increases with the number of samples tested. For example, at a contamination rate of 1 in 30, the probability of detecting Salmonella spp. increases from 40 percent if 15 samples are tested to 87 percent if 60 samples are tested.

Table 1 shows that it is clearly not feasible to attempt to identify low levels of contamination in an individual lot based on the IOM Salmonella sampling plan. If the contamination levels are high and 1 in 10 products are contaminated, then Salmonella spp. would be detected in the lot greater than 99 percent, 96 percent, and 79 percent of the time using Category I, II, and III testing, respectively. If the frequency of contaminated units is reduced to



1 in 300, then the contaminated lot would only be detected 18 percent, 10 percent, and 4.9 percent of the time using Category I, II, and III testing, respectively. At a very low frequency of contamination (e.g., 1 in 1000) even with testing 60 samples the contaminated lot would be detected only about 6 percent of the time.

Periodic testing for trend analysis and statistical process control, however, does provide information to assess whether processes (or the food safety system) are under control over time. Data collected from multiple lots of product produced over days, months or years are used to establish a baseline for the level of control that can be attained under a functioning food safety system and to verify the system is in control or to indicate loss of control. In addition to showing the probability of detecting contamination in a lot of product for a given contamination rate, Table 1 also shows the value of periodic testing when contamination levels are low. Even though a product with 1 in 300 contaminated units is unlikely to be rejected when sampling a single lot at the Category III sampling schedule (i.e., 4.9 percent of the time), testing of finished products with this level of contamination on a weekly basis would be expected to find 2.5 positive composite samples per year. Similarly, if the background contamination rate is thought to be near 1 in 1000 but periodic testing using the Category III schedule has found 3 positives in the last year, then it seems clear that the actual frequency of contaminated units is closer to 1 in 300. Periodic testing according to the Category I Salmonella plan has the potential to detect situations where the contamination rates are as low as 1 in 1000. If 60 samples of a food are collected weekly, then 3,120 samples would be collected over the course of a year. Compositing these 3,120 samples into 375g analytical units would reduce the number of analytical tests to 208 (4 tests per week). If 30 samples are collected weekly, and composited, there would be 104 tests annually, or two each week. At the 1 in 1000 contamination rate there would be a greater than 95

percent confidence in seeing one or more positive tests during the year for testing composites from either 60 or 30 samples weekly. At higher rates of contamination, more positives would be detected.

There can be significant benefits to a facility testing finished products over time for process control. First, if a lot of product tests positive for a hazard, that lot of product can be disposed of such that the consumer is not exposed to the hazard (i.e., the product can be destroyed, reprocessed, or diverted to another use, as appropriate). If the testing involves enumeration of an indicator organism, it may even be possible to detect a trend toward loss of control before exceeding the criterion that separates acceptable from unacceptable. The process can be adjusted before there is a need to dispose of product. Second, the detection of loss of control, or potential loss of control, e.g., an unusual number of positives in a given period of time, allows a facility to evaluate and modify its processes, procedures, and food safety plan as appropriate to prevent loss of control in the future. In fact, the nature of the trends can provide information useful in determining the root cause of the problem (Ref. 222). A third benefit to ongoing verification testing is the accumulation of data that can help bracket any problem that occurs. For products in which there are large production runs without intervening sanitation cycles, this may provide data that can be used in conjunction with other information to limit the scope of a recall. A fourth benefit may be in detection of a problem associated with an ingredient supplier that results in changes to a supplier's processes, procedures, or food safety plan. For example, a positive in finished product due to routine verification testing was responsible for determining that hydrolyzed vegetable protein was contaminated with Salmonella spp., resulting in over 177 products being recalled (Ref. 24) and a recognition of the need for enhanced preventive controls for the production of this ingredient (Ref. 23). Industry commonly

uses finished product testing to verify preventive controls used by the facility and by the facility's suppliers. Additionally, it is common for customers to require suppliers to conduct testing of products and ingredients being provided.

#### G. Metrics for Microbiological Risk Management

Recently there has been much attention paid to microbiological risk management metrics for verifying that food safety systems achieve a specified level of public health control, e.g., the Appropriate Level of Protection (ALOP), for microbial hazards. Microbiological risk management metrics are fully discussed in Annex II of the Codex "Principles and Guidelines for the Conduct of Microbiological Risk Management (MRM)" (Ref. 245). These metrics include traditional metrics such as microbiological criteria, process criteria, and product criteria and emerging metrics such as food safety objectives (FSO), performance objectives and performance criteria. Of particular relevance are performance objectives and performance criteria. A performance objective is the maximum frequency and/or concentration of a microbiological hazard in a food at a specified step in the food chain before the time of consumption that provides or contributes to an FSO or ALOP, as applicable (Ref. 119). A performance criterion is the effect in frequency and/or concentration of a hazard in a food that must be achieved by the application of one or more control measures to provide or contribute to a performance objective or an FSO (Ref. 119). FDA established a performance criterion (or performance standard) when we required that processors of juice products apply a control measure that will consistently produce, at a minimum, a 5-log reduction for the most resistant microorganism of public health significance (§ 120.24). Section 104 of FSMA (Performance Standards) requires the Secretary to determine the most significant foodborne contaminants and issue contaminant-specific and science-based guidance documents, including guidance documents regarding action levels, or

regulations for products or product classes. The proposed rule that is the subject of this document would not establish criteria or metrics for verifying that preventive controls in food safety plans achieve a specified level of public health control in this proposed rule. However, FDA will give consideration to appropriate microbiological risk management metrics in the future.

## II. The Role of Supplier Approval and Verification Programs in a Food Safety System

A food can become contaminated through the use of contaminated raw materials or ingredients. In the past several years, thousands of food products have been recalled as a result of contamination of raw materials or ingredients with pathogens such as Salmonella spp. and E. coli O157:H7. The ingredients included peanut-derived ingredients (Ref. 19) (Ref. 20), pistachio-derived ingredients (Ref. 152), instant nonfat dried milk, whey protein, fruit stabilizers (Ref. 21) Ref. 22) (Ref. 155) and hydrolyzed vegetable protein (Ref. 153).

The incident involving Salmonella spp. in hydrolyzed vegetable protein illustrates the impact one supplier can have on the food industry (Ref. 60). A receiving facility (manufacturer) detected Salmonella spp. in verification testing of finished product. In determining the source of the contamination, the manufacturer detected Salmonella spp. in samples of a hydrolyzed vegetable protein ingredient and reported the finding through FDA's RFR. After FDA determined that the ingredient was a reportable food, FDA requested that the supplier notify the immediate subsequent recipients of the reported hydrolyzed vegetable protein ingredient. Over one thousand reportable food reports were submitted to FDA from numerous companies concerning the potentially contaminated hydrolyzed vegetable protein or products made with the hydrolyzed vegetable protein. The hydrolyzed vegetable protein recall involved at least eleven different commodity categories and 177 products, showing the magnitude of this contamination event originating from one supplier (Ref. 60).

FDA recently reviewed CGMP-related food recall information from 2008-2009 to assess potential root causes for the contamination events. We determined that 36.9 percent of the 960 Class I and Class II recalls were directly linked to lack of supplier controls (Ref. 59). The recent large recalls of foods containing contaminated or potentially contaminated ingredients have focused attention on supplier approval and verification programs intended to help a manufacturer/processor prevent the introduction of a contaminated raw material or other ingredient into another product (Ref. 20) (Ref. 24) (Ref. 22). The application of preventive approaches by the entire supply chain (including ingredient vendors, brokers and other suppliers and, ultimately, the manufacturer of a food product) is recognized as essential to effective food safety management (Ref. 246).

The development of a supplier approval and verification program is part of a preventive approach. Because many facilities acting as suppliers procure their raw materials and ingredients from other suppliers, there is often a chain of suppliers before a raw material or other ingredient reaches the manufacturer/processor. To ensure safe food and minimize the potential for contaminated food to reach the consumer, each supplier in the chain must implement preventive controls appropriate to the food and operation for hazards reasonably likely to occur in the raw material or other ingredient. A facility receiving raw materials or ingredients from a supplier must ensure that the supplier (or a supplier to the supplier) has implemented preventive controls to significantly minimize or prevent hazards that the receiving facility has identified as reasonably likely to occur in that raw material or other ingredient unless the receiving facility will itself control the identified hazard.

A supplier approval and verification program is a means of ensuring that raw materials and ingredients are procured from those suppliers that can meet company specifications and have

appropriate programs in place, including those related to the safety of the raw materials and ingredients. A supplier approval program can ensure a methodical approach to identifying such suppliers. A supplier verification program provides initial and ongoing assurance that suppliers are complying with practices to achieve adequate control of hazards in raw materials or ingredients.

Supplier approval and verification is widely accepted in the domestic and international food safety community. The NACMCF HACCP guidelines describe Supplier Control as one of the common prerequisite programs for the safe production of food products and recommend that each facility should ensure that its suppliers have in place effective GMP and food safety programs (Ref. 34). The American Spice Trade Association advocates that spice manufacturers establish robust supplier prerequisite programs to evaluate and approve suppliers (Ref. 247). The Grocery Manufacturers Association's (GMA's) Food Supply Chain Handbook, developed for ingredient suppliers to the food industry, recommends that all suppliers in the food chain consider approval programs for their own suppliers; such supplier approval programs consist of a collection of appropriate programs, specifications, policies, and procedures (Ref. 246). GMA recommends a number of verification activities that suppliers can take in its Food Supply Chain Handbook, including self-auditing, third-party auditing and product testing. GMA's handbook also references verification activities that a supplier's customers might take, including second-party audits (done by an employee of the customer) or third-party (independent) audits (conducted by persons who do not work for either the supplier or the customer). Codex specifies that no raw material or ingredient should be accepted by an establishment if it is known to contain parasites, undesirable microorganisms, pesticides, veterinary drugs or toxic, decomposed or extraneous substances which would not be reduced to an acceptable level by normal sorting

and/ or processing (Ref. 44). Codex also specifies that, where appropriate, specifications for raw materials should be identified and applied and that, where necessary, laboratory tests should be made to establish fitness for use (Ref. 44).

Supplier verification activities include auditing a supplier to ensure the supplier is complying with applicable food safety requirements, such as CGMP requirements of current part 110. Audit activities may include a range of activities, such as on-site examinations of establishments, review of records, review of quality assurance systems, and examination or laboratory testing of product samples (Ref. 248). Other supplier verification activities include conducting testing or requiring supplier COAs, review of food safety plans and records, or combinations of activities such as audits and periodic testing.

An increasing number of establishments that sell foods to the public, such as retailers and food service providers, are independently requiring, as a condition of doing business, that their suppliers, both foreign and domestic, become certified as meeting safety (as well as other) standards. In addition, domestic and foreign suppliers (such as producers, co-manufacturers, or re-packers) are increasingly looking to third-party certification programs to assist them in meeting U.S. regulatory requirements (Ref. 248). There are many established third-party certification programs designed for various reasons that are currently being used by industry. Many third party audit schemes used to assess the industry's food safety management systems incorporate requirements for manufacturers and processors to establish supplier approval programs.

The GFSI was established in 2000 to drive continuous improvement in food safety management systems to ensure confidence in the delivery of safe food to consumers worldwide. Their objectives include reducing risk by delivering equivalence and convergence between

effective food safety management systems and managing cost in the global food system by eliminating redundancy and improving operational efficiency (Ref. 249). GFSI has developed a guidance document as a tool that fulfils the GFSI objectives of determining equivalency between food safety management systems (Ref. 249). The document is not a food safety standard, but rather specifies a process by which food safety schemes may gain recognition, the requirements to be put in place for a food safety scheme seeking recognition by GFSI, and the key elements for production of safe food or feed, or for service provision (e.g., contract sanitation services or food transportation) in relation to food safety (Ref. 249). This benchmark document has provisions relevant to supplier approval and verification programs. For example, it specifies that a food safety standard must require that the organization control purchasing processes to ensure that all externally sourced materials and services that have an effect on food safety conform to requirements. It also specifies that a food safety standard must require that the organization establish, implement, and maintain procedures for the evaluation, approval and continued monitoring of suppliers that have an effect on food safety. Thus, all current GFSI-recognized schemes require supplier controls to ensure that the raw materials and ingredients that have an impact on food safety conform to specified requirements. The GFSI guidance document also requires audit scheme owners to have a clearly defined and documented audit frequency program, which must ensure a minimum audit frequency of one audit per year of an organization's facility (Ref. 249).

Because GFSI is a document that outlines elements of a food safety management system for benchmarking a variety of standards, it does not have details about how facilities should comply with the elements. This type of information is found in the food safety schemes that are the basis for certification programs. For example, the Safe Quality Food (SQF) 2000 Code, a



HACCP-based supplier assurance code for the food industry, specifies that raw materials and services that impact on finished product safety be supplied by an Approved Supplier. SQF 2000 specifies that the responsibility and methods for selecting, evaluating, approving and monitoring an Approved Supplier be documented and implemented, and that a register of Approved Suppliers and records of inspections and audits of Approved Suppliers be maintained. SQF 2000 requires that the Approved Supplier Program contain, among other items, agreed specifications; methods for granting Approved Supplier status; methods and frequency of monitoring Approved Suppliers; and details of certificates of analysis if required.

According to SQF, the monitoring of Approved Suppliers is to be based on the prior good performance of a supplier and the risk level of the raw materials supplied. The monitoring and assessment of Approved Suppliers can include:

- The inspection of raw materials received;
- The provision of certificates of analysis;
- Third party certification of an Approved Supplier; or
- The completion of 2nd party supplier audits.

### III. References

The following references have been placed on display in the Division of Dockets Management (see ADDRESSES) and may be seen by interested persons between 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday. (FDA has verified the Web site addresses, but FDA is not responsible for any subsequent changes to the Web sites after this document publishes in the Federal Register.)

1. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point Principles and Application Guidelines," Journal of Food Protection, 61:1246-1259, 1998.
2. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Principles for the Establishment and Application of Microbiological Criteria for Foods, CAC/GL 21 - 1997," 1997.
3. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Microbiological Hazards and Their Control," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 1, pp. 1-21, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.
4. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Selection and Use of Acceptance Criteria," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 4, pp. 79-97, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.
5. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Measures to Address the Risk for Contamination by Salmonella Species in Food Containing a Peanut-Derived Product as an Ingredient," 2009.
6. FDA, "Guidance for Industry: Measures to Address the Risk for Contamination by Salmonella Species in Food Containing a Pistachio-Derived Product as an Ingredient," 2011.
7. CDC, "General Information. Escherichia coli (E. coli)," (<http://www.cdc.gov/ecoli/general/index.html>), July 17, 2012. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.

8. Scott, V. N., C. Yuhuan, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods I: Minimizing Entry of Salmonella into a Processing Facility," Food Protection Trends, 29:342-353, 2009.
9. Chen, Y., V. N. Scott, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods II: Hygiene Practices to Minimize Salmonella Contamination and Growth," Food Protection Trends, 29:435-445, 2009.
10. California Department of Public Health, "Union International Food Company Recall Widened Again," (<http://www.cdph.ca.gov/Pages/NR2009-23.aspx>), April 4, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 6, 2011.
11. Gabis, D. A., R. S. Flowers, D. Evanson, and R. E. Faust, "A Survey of 18 Dry Product Processing Plant Environments for Salmonella, Listeria and Yersinia," Journal of Food Protection, 52:122-124, 1989.
12. Vij, V., E. Ailes, C. Wolyniak, F. J. Angulo, and K. C. Klontz, "Recalls of Spices Due to Bacterial Contamination Monitored by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration: The Predominance of Salmonellae," Journal of Food Protection, 69:233-237, 2006.
13. FDA, "FDA Foods Program, The Reportable Food Registry: A New Approach to Targeting Inspection Resources and Identifying Patterns of Adulteration. First Annual Report: September 8, 2009 - September 7, 2010," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Food/FoodSafety/FoodSafetyPrograms/RFR/UCM240647.pdf>), January, 2011. Accessed and printed on August 29, 2011.

14. FDA and USDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Risk Assessment: VII. Interpretation and Conclusions," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/ucm185289.htm>), September, 2003. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.
15. Food and Agriculture Organization and World Health Organization, "Risk Assessment of Listeria monocytogenes in Ready-to-Eat Foods, Technical Report," 2004.
16. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Sampling to Assess Control of the Environment," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 11, pp. 199-224, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.
17. Tompkin, R. B., V. N. Scott, D. T. Bernard, W. H. Sveum, and K. Sullivan Gombas, "Guidelines to Prevent Post-Processing Contamination from Listeria monocytogenes," Dairy, Food and Environmental Sanitation, 19:551-562, 1999.
18. Tompkin, R. B., "Control of Listeria monocytogenes in the Food-Processing Environment," Journal of Food Protection, 65:709-725, 2002.
19. Carpentier, B. and O. Cerf, "Review: Persistence of Listeria monocytogenes in Food Industry Equipment and Premises," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 145:1-8, 2011.
20. Breuer, T., "CDC Investigations: The May 1998 Outbreak of Salmonella Agona Linked to Cereal," Cereal Foods World, 44:185-186, 1999.
21. CDC, "EPI-AID 98-60 Trip-Report: Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Agona Infection Linked to Consumption of Oat Cereal, April-June 1997," 1999.

22. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 1998 Salmonella Agona Outbreak in Dry Cereal," 2011. Accessed and printed on October 21, 2011.
23. CDC, "Investigation of Outbreak of Infections Caused by Salmonella Agona," (<http://www.cdc.gov/salmonella/agona/>), May 13, 2008. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
24. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2006-2007 Salmonella Tennessee Outbreak in Peanut Butter.," 2011. Accessed and printed on October 18, 2011.
25. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Serotype Tennessee Infections Associated with Peanut Butter - United States, 2006-2007," MMWR, 56:521-524, 2007.
26. FDA, "Peanut Products Recall," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/Peanut/default.htm>), June 18, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
27. FDA, "Hydrolyzed Vegetable Protein Product Recalls," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/HVP/default.htm>), December 21, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
28. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Salmonella Infections Associated with Peanut Butter and Peanut Butter-Containing Products - United States, 2008-2009," MMWR, 58:85-90, 2009.
29. Cavallaro, E., K. Date, C. Medus, S. Meyer, B. Miller, C. Kim, S. Nowicki, S. Cosgrove, D. Sweat, P. Quyen, J. Flint, E. R. Daly, J. Adams, E. Hyytia-Trees, P. Gerner-Smidt, R. M. Hoekstra, C. Schwensohn, A. Langer, S. V. Sodha, M. C. Rogers, F. J. Angulo, R. V.

Tauxe, I. T. Williams, and C. Barton Behravesh, "Salmonella Typhimurium Infections Associated with Peanut Products," New England Journal of Medicine, 365:601-610, 2011.

30. FDA, "Amended Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Peanut Corporation of America, Blakely, GA, 02/05/2009," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM109834.pdf>), February 5, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 19, 2011.

31. FDA, "Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Peanut Corporation of America, Plainview, TX, 02/26/2009," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM114852.pdf>), February 26, 2009. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.

32. CDC, "Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD). Search Results Highlighted for 2008 Salmonella Typhimurium Outbreak in Peanut Butter and Peanut Paste," 2011. Accessed and printed on November 23, 2011.

33. FDA, "Company Recalls Various Products Due to Potential Salmonella Contamination. FDA, USDA, CDC Investigating; No Link to Human Illnesses at This Time," (<http://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm169471.htm>), June 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

34. FDA, "FDA Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Plainview Milk Products Cooperative," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM173030.pdf>), July 15, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

35. FDA, "Peanut Butter and Other Peanut Containing Products Recall List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/peanutbutterrecall/index.cfm>), October 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
36. Jackson, K. A., M. Biggerstaff, M. Tobin-D'Angelo, D. Sweat, R. Klos, J. Nosari, O. Garrison, E. Boothe, L. Saathoff-Huber, L. Hainstock, and R. P. Fagan, "Multistate Outbreak of Listeria monocytogenes Associated with Mexican-Style Cheese Made from Pasteurized Milk Among Pregnant, Hispanic Women," Journal of Food Protection, 74:949-953, 2011.
37. Texas Department of State Health Services, "DSHS Orders Sangar Produce to Close, Recall Products," (<http://www.dshs.state.tx.us/news/releases/20101020.shtm>), October 20, 2010. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
38. FDA, "FDA Form 483 (Inspectional Observations) for Sangar Fresh Cut Produce Co., LLC," (<http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/ORA/ORAElectronicReadingRoom/UCM232412.pdf>), October 26, 2010. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
39. FDA, "FDA Lab Results Positive for Listeria at SanGar Fresh Produce," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/Product-SpecificInformation/FruitsVegetablesJuices/ucm232237.htm>), November 3, 2010. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
40. FDA, "Information on the Recalled Jensen Farms Whole Cantaloupes," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/CORENetwork/ucm272372.htm>), January 9, 2012. Accessed and printed on July 19, 2012.

41. CDC, "Multistate Outbreak of Listeriosis Linked to Whole Cantaloupes from Jensen Farms, Colorado," (<http://www.cdc.gov/listeria/outbreaks/cantaloupes-jensen-farms/>), December 8, 2011. Accessed and printed on July 27, 2012.
42. FDA and USDA, "Listeria monocytogenes Risk Assessment: II. Hazard Identification," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/RiskAssessmentSafetyAssessment/ucm183981.htm>), September, 2003. Accessed and printed on October 20, 2011.
43. Lyytikäinen, O., T. Autio, R. Maijala, P. Ruutu, T. Honkanen-Buzalski, M. Miettinen, M. Hatakka, J. Mikkola, V. J. Anttila, T. Johansson, L. Rantala, T. Aalto, H. Korkeala, and A. Siitonen, "An Outbreak of Listeria monocytogenes Serotype 3a Infections from Butter in Finland," Journal of Infectious Diseases, 181:1838-1841, 2000.
44. Fretz, R., J. Pichler, U. Sagel, P. Much, W. Ruppitsch, A. T. Pietzka, A. Stoeger, S. Huhulescu, S. Heuberger, G. Appl, D. Werber, K. Stark, R. Prager, A. Fliieger, R. Karpiskova, G. Pfaff, and F. Allerberger, "Update: Multinational Listeriosis Outbreak Due to "Quargel", a Sour Milk Curd Cheese, Caused by Two Different L. Monocytogenes Serotype 1/2a Strains, 2009-2010," Eurosurveillance, 15:2, 2010.
45. FDA, "River Ranch Recalls Products Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm275854.htm>), October 13, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 26, 2011.
46. FDA, "Taylor Farms Retail Inc. Initiates a Precautionary Recall Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm276459.htm>), October 19, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 20, 2011.



47. FDA, "Del Bueno Recalls Queso Fresco Casero Cheese Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm272268.htm>), September 16, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 26, 2011.
48. FDA, "Fine Mexican Food Products, Inc. Recalls 2.2 lb. Frozen Avocado Pulp & 3 lb. IQF Avocado Halves from Peru Because of Possible Health Risk," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/ucm271686.htm>), September 13, 2011. Accessed and printed on November 23, 2011.
49. Cox, L. J., T. Kleiss, J. L. Cordier, C. Cordellana, P. Konkel, C. Pedrazzini, R. Beumer, and A. Siebenga, "Listeria spp. in Food Processing, Non-Food and Domestic Environments," Food Microbiology, 6:49-61, 1989.
50. Nelson, J. H., "Where Are Listeria Likely to be Found in Dairy Plants?" Dairy, Food and Environmental Sanitation, 10:344-345, 1990.
51. Pritchard, T. J., K. J. Flanders, and C. W. Donnelly, "Comparison of the Incidence of Listeria on Equipment Versus Environmental Sites Within Dairy Processing Plants," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 26:375-384, 1995.
52. Miettinen, M. K., K. J. Bjorkroth, and H. J. Korkeala, "Characterization of Listeria monocytogenes from an Ice Cream Plant by Serotyping and Pulsed-Field Gel Electrophoresis," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 46:187-192, 1999.
53. Pourshaban, M., M. Gianfranceschi, A. Gattuso, F. Menconi, and P. Aureli, "Identification of Listeria monocytogenes Contamination Sources in Two Fresh Sauce Production Plants by Pulsed-Field Gel Electrophoresis," Food Microbiology, 17:393-400, 2000.

54. Blatter, S., N. Giezendanner, R. Stephan, and C. Zweifel, "Phenotypic and Molecular Typing of Listeria monocytogenes Isolated from the Processing Environment and Products of a Sandwich-Producing Plant," Food Control, 21:1519-1523, 2010.
55. Pappelbaum, K., K. Grif, I. Heller, R. Wuerzner, I. Hein, L. Ellerbroek, and M. Wagner, "Monitoring Hygiene On- and At-Line Is Critical for Controlling Listeria monocytogenes During Produce Processing," Journal of Food Protection, 71:735-741, 2008.
56. Aguado, V., A. I. Vitas, and I. Garcia-Jalon, "Characterization of Listeria monocytogenes and Listeria innocua from a Vegetable Processing Plant by RAPD and REA," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 90:341-347, 2004.
57. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Guidelines on the Application of General Principles of Food Hygiene to the Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Ready-to-Eat Foods, CAC/GL 61 - 2007," 2007.
58. Scott, V. N., M. Wiedmann, D. Hicks, R. Collette, M. L. Jahncke, and K. Gall, "Guidelines for Listeria Testing of Environmental, Raw Product and Finished Product Samples in Smoked Seafood Processing Facilities," Food Protection Trends, 25:23-34, 2005.
59. Chen, Y., V. N. Scott, T. A. Freier, J. Kuehm, M. Moorman, J. Meyer, T. Morille-Hinds, L. Post, L. Smoot, S. Hood, J. Shebuski, and J. Banks, "Control of Salmonella in Low-Moisture Foods III: Process Validation and Environmental Monitoring," Food Protection Trends, 29:493-508, 2009.
60. Jarl, D. L. and E. A. Arnold, "Influence of Drying Plant Environment on Salmonellae Contamination of Dry Milk Products," Journal of Food Protection, 45:16, 1982.
61. Buchanan, R. L., "Acquisition of Microbiological Data to Enhance Food Safety," Journal of Food Protection, 63:832-838, 2000.

62. National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods, "Response to the Questions Posed by FSIS Regarding Performance Standards with Particular Reference to Ground Beef Products," ([http://www.fsis.usda.gov/OPHS/NACMCF/2002/rep\\_stand2.pdf](http://www.fsis.usda.gov/OPHS/NACMCF/2002/rep_stand2.pdf)), October 8, 2002. Accessed and printed on September 12, 2011.

63. Evancho, G. M., W. H. Sveum, L. J. Moberg, and J. F. Frank, "Microbiological Monitoring of the Food Processing Environment," In: Compendium of Methods for the Microbiological Examination of Foods, edited by F. P. Downes and K. Ito, 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Washington, D.C., Chapter 3, pp. 25-35, American Public Health Association, 2001.

64. FSIS, "FSIS Compliance Guideline: Controlling Listeria monocytogenes in Post-Lethality Exposed Ready-to-Eat Meat and Poultry Products," 2012.

65. Kraft Foods, "Re: Docket No. 2007D-0494; Draft Guidance for Industry: Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Refrigerated or Frozen Ready-to-Eat Foods; Availability," 2008.

66. Kraft Foods, "Appendix, Comments on the FDA Guidance for Industry, Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Refrigerated or Frozen Ready-to-Eat Foods," 2008.

67. Grocery Manufacturers Association, "Re: Docket No. 2007-D-0494: Draft Guidance for Industry: Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Refrigerated or Frozen Ready-to-Eat Foods; Availability," 2008.

68. Alliance for Listeriosis Prevention, "Re: Docket No. 2007-D-0494: Draft Guidance for Industry: Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Refrigerated or Frozen Ready-to-Eat Foods; Availability," 2008.

69. CGMP Coalition, "Re: Docket No. 2004N-0230; Food, Current Good Manufacturing Practice Regulations," 2006.

70. European Food Safety Authority, "Scientific Opinion of BIOHAZ Panel on the Request from the Commission for Review of the Opinion on Microbiological Risks in Infant Formulae and Follow-on Formulae with Regard to Enterobacteriaceae As Indicators," The EFSA Journal, 444:1-14, 2007.

71. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Drying Foods for Infants and Young Children," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 25, pp. 339-348, Springer, 2011.

72. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Cereal and Cereal Products," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 15, pp. 218-219, Springer, 2011.

73. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Spice, Dry Soups and Asian Flavorings," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 14, pp. 199, Springer, 2011.

74. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Cereal and Cereal Products," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier,

R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 15, pp. 216, Springer, 2011.

75. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Nuts, Oilseeds, Dried Legumes and Coffee," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 16, pp. 230, Springer, 2011.

76. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Cocoa, Chocolate and Confectionery," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 17, pp. 241-246, Springer, 2011.

77. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Milk and Dairy Products," In: Microorganisms in Foods 8. Use of Data for Assessing Process Control and Product Acceptance, edited by K. M. J. Swanson, R. L. Buchanan, M. B. Cole, J.-L. Cordier, R. S. Flowers, L. G. M. Gorris, M. H. Taniwaki, and R. B. Tompkin, New York, Chapter 23, pp. 315, Springer, 2011.

78. Proudly, I., D. Bougle, R. Leclercq, and M. Vergnaud, "Tracing of Enterobacter sakazakii Isolates in Infant Milk Formula Processing by BOX-PCR Genotyping," Journal of Applied Microbiology, 105:550-558, 2008.

79. Mullane, N. R., P. Whyte, P. G. Wall, T. Quinn, and S. Fanning, "Application of Pulsed-Field Gel Electrophoresis to Characterise and Trace the Prevalence of Enterobacter

sakazakii in an Infant Formula Processing Facility," International Journal of Food Microbiology, 116:73-81, 2007.

80. International Commission on Microbiological Specifications for Foods, "Establishment of Microbiological Criteria for Lot Acceptance," In: Microorganisms in Foods 7. Microbiological Testing in Food Safety Management, edited by R. B. Tompkin, L. Gram, T. A. Roberts, R. L. Buchanan, M. van Schothorst, S. Dahms, and M. B. Cole, New York, Chapter 5, pp. 99-112, Kluwer Academic / Plenum Publishers, 2002.

81. FDA, "Investigations Operations Manual (IOM)," 2011.

82. FDA, "Bacteriological Analytical Manual, 8th Edition, Revision A, 1998," 1998.

83. FDA, "Bacteriological Analytical Manual (BAM), Chapter 1. Food Sampling and Preparation of Sample Homogenate," 2003.

84. FDA, "Recall: Products Containing Hydrolyzed Vegetable Protein," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/HVPCP/>), April 1, 2010. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

85. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Principles and Guidelines for the Conduct of Microbiological Risk Management (MRM), CAC/GL 63-2007," 2007.

86. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "Codex Alimentarius Commission Procedural Manual, Twentieth Edition," 2011.

87. FDA, "Pistachios and Other Pistachio Containing Products Recall List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/pistachiorecall/index.cfm>), June 23, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.

88. FDA, "Plainview Milk Cooperative Ingredient Recall," (<http://www.fda.gov/Safety/Recalls/MajorProductRecalls/Milk/default.htm>), July 23, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
89. FDA, "Plainview Milk Cooperative Ingredient Recall Product List," (<http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/Milk/>), July 28, 2009. Accessed and printed on September 9, 2011.
90. FDA, "For Consumers: The HVP Recall (Updated)," (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/NewsEvents/WhatsNewinFood/ucm202989.htm>), March 24, 2010. Accessed and printed on October 14, 2011.
91. FDA Memorandum, "Analysis of Food Recalls Initiated in 2008-2009 by an FDA CGMP Working Group," 2012.
92. Grocery Manufacturers Association, "Food Supply Chain Handbook," 2008.
93. American Spice Trade Association, "Clean, Safe Spices," 2011.
94. Codex Alimentarius Commission, "General Principles of Food Hygiene, CAC/RCP 1-1969 (Rev. 4-2003)," 2003.
95. FDA, "Guidance for Industry - Voluntary Third-Party Certification Programs for Foods and Feeds," 2009.
96. Global Food Safety Initiative, "GFSI Guidance Document, Version 6.1," ([http://www.mygfsi.com/gfsifiles/Guidance\\_Document\\_Sixth\\_Edition\\_Version\\_6.1.pdf](http://www.mygfsi.com/gfsifiles/Guidance_Document_Sixth_Edition_Version_6.1.pdf)), August, 2011. Accessed and printed on October 17, 2011.